

Contents

Euthyphro	2
Apology	60
Crito	135
Phaedo	175

vocabulary

ἀγανακτέω be vexed, in a ferment
 ἀγεννής low-born; sordid
 ἀγνοέω be ignorant of ~gnostic
 ἀγνώς -τος (m) unknown, unrecognizable
 ἀγωνίζομαι contend, exert oneself
 ἄδηλος invisible, unknown
 ἀηδής unpleasant
 αἷτιος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
 ἀκριβής (ῑ) exact
 ἀλλότριος someone else's; alien
 ~alien
 ἀλλοτριόω estrange from
 ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course
 ἀνδροφόνος murderous ~offend
 ἄνευ away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin
 ἀνόσιος unholy
 ἀποβαίνω leave, get off; turn out
 ~basis
 ἀποσφάζω cut the throat
 ἀρχαῖος ancient, from the beginning
 ~oligarch
 ἄτοπος strange, unnatural, disgusting
 ἀφοσιόω purify, atone
 βέλτιστος best, noblest
 βλαστάνω bud, sprout
 γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at
 γέλοιος laughable; joking
 γεωργέω farm, till land
 γεωργός farming
 δαιμόνιος voc: you crazy guy
 δεσμέω to chain
 δεσμός bond, latch, strap; also (pl) headdress
 δεῦρο here, come here!
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous
 διαβάλλω throw across; slander

~ballistic
 διάγω lead through; pass a time
 ~demagogue
 διατριβή activity, waste of time
 διατρίβω (ιῑ) wear down, delay
 ~tribology
 δικάζω judge
 δικαστήριον court
 ἔγκλημα -τος (n, 3) accusation
 εἰκός likely
 εἴτε if, whenever; either/or
 ἐκάστοτε each time
 ἐκκαθαίρω clear out
 ἐνθάδε here, hither
 ἐννοέω consider
 ἐξηγητής -οῦ (m, 1) leader, expounder
 ἐπέξειμι attack, prosecute
 ἐπεξέρχομαι sally
 ἐπίγρυπος (ῑ) hook-nosed
 ἐπιθυμέω (ῑ) wish, covet
 ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee
 ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
 ἐπιτυγχάνω meet, attain
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
 ἐστία hearth ~Hestia
 εὐγένειος well-bearded
 ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
 ἡλικιώτης -ου (m, 1) equal in age, contemporary
 θαυμάσιος wonderful
 θητεύω work
 θυμός (ῑ) anger
 καθοράω look down ~panorama
 καινός new, fresh, strange
 καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
 κακουργέω do evil
 καταβάλλω throw down, cast off
 ~ballistic

καταγελάω laugh at, deride
 καταγιγνώσκω judge negatively
 καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon
 κατηγορώ accuse; indicate
 κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf) there is a danger that
 λιμός (l, f) famine
 μαίνομαι be berserk ~maenad
 μάντις -ος (m) seer ~mantis
 μέλος -ους (n, 3) limb; melody
 μέλω concern, interest, be one's responsibility
 μισθός reward, wages
 ναός (ā) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
 νή yea
 οἰκεῖος household, familiar, proper
 οἰκέτης -ου (m, 1) household; house slave
 οἰκέω inhabit ~economics
 ὀλιγωρέω consider unimportant
 ὁμόσε to the same spot ~homoerotic
 ὁμοτράπεζος messmate
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
 ὀνομάζω to address, name ~name
 ὅπη wherever, however
 ὀργίζω anger, provoke, annoy
 ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just ~orthogonal
 ὀρθόω stand up
 ὀρρωδέω dread, shrink from
 οὐτάω pierce, wound
 παίζω play ~pediatrician
 παροινέω drunkly act badly
 πετάννυμι (ū) spread, spread out
 πέτομαι to fly ~petal
 ποιητής -ου (m, 1) maker, author

ποιητός made, well-made ~poet
 πρεσβύτης -ου (ū, m, 1) old person
 προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
 προεῖπον foretell, proclaim, order before
 προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect ~legion
 προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis
 πρόσω forward, in the future; far
 ῥίγος -ους (n, 3) miserable, cold ~frigid
 σαυτοῦ yourself
 σεαυτοῦ yourself
 σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
 σοφός skilled, clever, wise
 σπάνιος rare, scanty
 σπουδάζω be busy, earnest ~repudiate
 στοά στῶς roofed colonnade, storehouse
 συνδέω bind together
 σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion
 συνίημι send together; hear, notice, understand ~jet
 σύνοιδα know about someone; think proper
 σφόδρα very much
 τάφος (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph
 φαῦλος trifling
 φθονέω envy
 φθόνος malice, envy
 φιланθρωπία benevolence
 φόνος killing ~offend
 φροντίζω consider, ponder
 φυτός natural

ΕΥΘΥΦΩΝ. τί νεώτερον, ὦ Σώκρατες, γέγονεν, ὅτι σὺ τὰς ἐν Λυκείῳ καταλιπὼν διατριβὰς ἐνθάδε νῦν διατρίβεις περὶ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως στοάν;¹ οὐ γάρ που καὶ σοί γε δίκη τις οὔσα τυγχάνει πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ὥσπερ ἐμοί.

ΣΩΚΡΑΤΗΣ. οὗτοι δὲ Ἀθηναῖοί γε, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, δίκην αὐτὴν καλοῦσιν ἀλλὰ γραφήν.

ΕΥΘ. τί φής; γραφήν σέ τις, ὡς ἔοικε, γέγραπται· οὐ γὰρ ἐκείνό γε καταγνώσσομαι, ὡς σὺ ἔτερον.

ΣΩ. οὐ γὰρ οὖν.

ΕΥΘ. ἀλλὰ σέ ἄλλος;

ΣΩ. πάνυ γε.

ΕΥΘ. τίς οὗτος;

ΣΩ. οὐδ' αὐτὸς πάνυ τι γινώσκω, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, τὸν ἄνδρα, νέος γάρ τίς μοι φαίνεται καὶ ἀγνώστ· ὀνομάζουσι μέντοι αὐτόν, ὡς ἐγῶμαι, Μέλητον. ἔστι δὲ τῶν δήμων Πιτθεύς, εἴ τινα νῶ ἔχεις Πιτθέα Μέλητον οἷον τετανότριχα καὶ οὐ πάνυ εὐγένειον, ἐπίγρυπον δέ.

ΕΥΘ. οὐκ ἐννοῶ, ὦ Σώκρατες· ἀλλὰ δὴ τίνα γραφήν σε γέγραπται;

ΣΩ. ἦντινα; οὐκ ἀγεννή, ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ· τὸ γὰρ νέον ὄντα τοσοῦτον πρᾶγμα ἐγνώκεναι οὐ φαῦλόν ἐστιν. ἐκείνος γάρ, ὥς φησιν, οἶδε τίνα τρόπον οἱ νέοι διαφθείρονται καὶ τίνες οἱ διαφθείροντες αὐτούς. καὶ κινδυνεύει σοφός τις εἶναι, καὶ τὴν ἐμὴν ἀμαθίαν κατιδὼν ὡς διαφθείροντος τοὺς ἡλικιώτας αὐτοῦ, ἔρχεται κατηγορήσων μου ὥσπερ πρὸς μητέρα πρὸς τὴν πόλιν. καὶ φαίνεται μοι τῶν πολιτικῶν μόνος ἄρχεσθαι ὀρθῶς· ὀρθῶς γάρ ἐστι τῶν νέων πρῶτον ἐπιμεληθῆναι ὅπως ἔσονται ὅτι ἄριστοι, ὥσπερ γεωργὸν ἀγαθὸν τῶν νέων φυτῶν εἰκὸς πρῶτον ἐπιμεληθῆναι, μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο καὶ τῶν ἄλλων.

¹ roofed colonnade, storehouse

ΣΩ. καὶ δὴ καὶ Μέλητος ἴσως πρῶτον μὲν ἡμᾶς ἐκκαθαίρει τοὺς τῶν νέων τὰς βλάστας διαφθείροντας, ὥς φησιν· ἔπειτα μετὰ τοῦτο δῆλον ὅτι τῶν πρεσβυτέρων ἐπιμεληθεὶς πλείστων καὶ μεγίστων ἀγαθῶν αἴτιος τῇ πόλει γενήσεται, ὥς γε τὸ εἰκὸς συμβῆναι ἐκ τοιαύτης ἀρχῆς ἀρξαμένῳ.

ΕΥΘ. βουλοίμην ἄν, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἀλλ' ὀρρωδῶ² μὴ τοῦναντίον γένηται· ἀτεχνῶς γάρ μοι δοκεῖ ἀφ' ἐστίας ἀρχεσθαι κακουργεῖν³ τὴν πόλιν, ἐπιχειρῶν ἀδικεῖν σέ. καί μοι λέγε, τί καὶ ποιοῦντά σέ φησι διαφθείρειν τοὺς νέους;

ΣΩ. ἄτοπα,⁴ ὦ θαυμάσιε, ὡς οὕτω γ' ἀκοῦσαι. φησὶ γάρ με ποιητὴν εἶναι θεῶν, καὶ ὡς καινοὺς ποιοῦντα θεοὺς τοὺς δ' ἀρχαίους οὐ νομίζοντα ἐγράψατο τούτων αὐτῶν ἔνεκα, ὥς φησιν.

ΕΥΘ. μαυθάνω, ὦ Σώκρατες· ὅτι δὴ σὺ τὸ δαιμόνιον φῆς σαρτῶ ἐκάστοτε⁵ γίνεσθαι. ὡς οὖν καινοτομοῦντός σου περὶ τὰ θεῖα γέγραπται ταύτην τὴν γραφήν, καὶ ὡς διαβαλὼν δὴ ἔρχεται εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον, εἰδὼς ὅτι εὐδιάβολα τὰ τοιαῦτα πρὸς τοὺς πολλοὺς. καὶ ἐμοὶ γάρ τοι, ὅταν τι λέγω ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ περὶ τῶν θείων, προλέγων αὐτοῖς τὰ μέλλοντα, καταγελῶσι ὡς μαινομένον· καί τοι οὐδὲν ὅτι οὐκ ἀληθὲς εἶρηκα ὧν προείπον, ἀλλ' ὅμως φθονοῦσιν ἡμῖν πᾶσι τοῖς τοιούτοις. ἀλλ' οὐδὲν αὐτῶν χρή φροντίζειν, ἀλλ' ὁμόσε⁶ ἵεναι.

ΣΩ. ὦ φίλε Εὐθύφρων, ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν καταγελασθῆναι ἴσως οὐδὲν πρᾶγμα. Ἀθηναίοις γάρ τοι, ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, οὐ σφόδρα μέλει ἂν τινα δεινὸν οἶωνται εἶναι, μὴ μέντοι διδασκαλικὸν τῆς αὐτοῦ σοφίας· ὃν δ' ἂν καὶ ἄλλους οἶωνται ποιεῖν τοιούτους, θυμοῦνται,⁷ εἴτ' οὖν φθόνῳ ὡς σὺ λέγεις, εἴτε δι' ἄλλο τι.

ΕΥΘ. τούτου οὖν πέρι ὅπως ποτὲ πρὸς ἐμὲ ἔχουσιν, οὐ πάνυ ἐπιθυμῶ πειραθῆναι.

ΣΩ. ἴσως γὰρ σὺ μὲν δοκεῖς σπάνιον⁸ σεαυτὸν παρέχειν καὶ

² dread, shrink from ³ do evil ⁴ strange, unnatural, disgusting

⁵ each time ⁶ to the same spot ⁷ anger ⁸ rare, scanty

διδάσκειν οὐκ ἐθέλειν τὴν σεαυτοῦ σοφίαν· ἐγὼ δὲ φοβοῦμαι μὴ ὑπὸ φιланθρωπίας δοκῶ αὐτοῖς ὅτιπερ ἔχω ἐκκεχυμένως παντὶ ἀνδρὶ λέγειν, οὐ μόνον ἄνεν μισθοῦ, ἀλλὰ καὶ προστιθεὶς ἂν ἡδέως εἴ τις μου ἐθέλει ἀκούειν. εἰ μὲν οὖν, ὃ νυνδὴ ἔλεγον, μέλλοιέν μου καταγελᾶν ὥσπερ σὺ φῆς σαυτοῦ, οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη ἀηδὲς⁹ παίζοντας καὶ γελώντας ἐν τῷ δικαστηρίῳ διαγαγείν· εἰ δὲ σπουδάσονται, τοῦτ' ἤδη ὅπη ἀποβήσεται ἄδηλον πλὴν ὑμῖν τοῖς μάντεσιν.

ΕΥΘ. ἀλλ' ἴσως οὐδὲν ἔσται, ὦ Σώκρατες, πρᾶγμα, ἀλλὰ σύ τε κατὰ νοῦν ἀγωνιῇ τὴν δίκην, οἶμαι δὲ καὶ ἐμὲ τὴν ἐμήν.

ΣΩ. ἔστιν δὲ δὴ σοί, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, τίς ἡ δίκη; φεύγεις αὐτὴν ἢ διώκεις;

ΕΥΘ. διώκω.

ΣΩ. τίνα;

ΕΥΘ. ὃν διώκων αὐτὸν δοκῶ μαίνεσθαι.

ΣΩ. τί δέ; πετόμενόν τινα διώκεις;

ΕΥΘ. πολλοῦ γε δεῖ πέτεσθαι, ὅς γε τυγχάνει ὢν εὖ μάλα πρεσβύτης.

ΣΩ. τίς οὗτος;

ΕΥΘ. ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ.

ΣΩ. ὁ σός, ὦ βέλτιστε;

ΕΥΘ. πάννυ μὲν οὖν.

ΣΩ. ἔστιν δὲ τί τὸ ἔγκλημα καὶ τίνος ἡ δίκη;

ΕΥΘ. φόνου, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ΣΩ. Ἡράκλεις. ἡ που, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, ἀγνοεῖται ὑπὸ τῶν πολλῶν ὅπη ποτὲ ὀρθῶς ἔχει· οὐ γὰρ οἶμαί γε τοῦ ἐπιτυχόντος ὀρθῶς αὐτὸ πρᾶξαι ἀλλὰ πόρρω που ἤδη σοφίας ἐλαύνοντος.

ΕΥΘ. πόρρω μέντοι νῆ Δία, ὦ Σώκρατες.

⁹ unpleasant

ΣΩ. ἔστιν δὲ δὴ τῶν οἰκείων τις ὁ τεθνεὺς ὑπὸ τοῦ σοῦ πατρός; ἢ δῆλα δῆ; οὐ γὰρ ἂν που ὑπὲρ γε ἀλλοτρίου ἐπεξῆσθα φόνου αὐτῷ.

ΕΥΘ. γελοῖον, ὦ Σώκρατες, ὅτι οἶε τι διαφέρειν εἴτε ἀλλότριος εἴτε οἰκείος ὁ τεθνεὺς, ἀλλ' οὐ τοῦτο μόνον δεῖν φυλάττειν, εἴτε ἐν δίκῃ ἔκτεινεν ὁ κτείνας εἴτε μὴ, καὶ εἰ μὲν ἐν δίκῃ, ἔαν, εἰ δὲ μὴ, ἐπεξιέναι, ἐάνπερ ὁ κτείνας συνέστιός σοι καὶ ὁμοτράπεζος¹⁰ ἦ· ἴσον γὰρ τὸ μίasma γίνεται ἐὰν συνῆς τῷ τοιούτῳ συνειδὼς καὶ μὴ ἀφοσιούσας αὐτόν τε καὶ ἐκείνον τῇ δίκῃ ἐπεξιῶν. ἐπεὶ ὁ γε ἀποθανὼν πελάτης τις ἦν ἐμός, καὶ ὡς ἐγεωργοῦμεν¹¹ ἐν τῇ Νάξῳ, ἐθήτευν ἐκεῖ παρ' ἡμῶν. παροινήσας οὖν καὶ ὀργισθεὶς τῶν οἰκετῶν τινι τῶν ἡμετέρων ἀποσφάττει αὐτόν. ὁ οὖν πατήρ συνδήσας τοὺς πόδας καὶ τὰς χεῖρας αὐτοῦ, καταβαλὼν εἰς τάφρον τινά, πέμπει δεῦρο ἄνδρα πευσόμενον τοῦ ἐξηγητοῦ ὅτι χρεῖη ποιεῖν. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ τοῦ δεδεμένου ὠλιγῶρει¹² τε καὶ ἡμέλει ὡς ἀνδροφόνου καὶ οὐδὲν ὄν πρᾶγμα εἰ καὶ ἀποθάνοι, ὅπερ οὖν καὶ ἔπαθεν· ὑπὸ γὰρ λιμοῦ καὶ ρίγους¹³ καὶ τῶν δεσμῶν ἀποθνήσκει πρὶν τὸν ἄγγελον παρὰ τοῦ ἐξηγητοῦ ἀφικέσθαι. ταῦτα δὴ οὖν καὶ ἀγανακτεῖ ὁ τε πατήρ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἰκείοι, ὅτι ἐγὼ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ἀνδροφόνου τῷ πατρὶ φόνου ἐπεξέρχομαι οὔτε ἀποκτείναντι, ὡς φασιν ἐκεῖνοι, οὔτ' εἰ ὅτι μάλιστα ἀπέκτεινεν, ἀνδροφόνου γε ὄντος τοῦ ἀποθανόντος, οὐ δεῖν φροντίζειν ὑπὲρ τοῦ τοιούτου— ἀνόσιον γὰρ εἶναι τὸ ὑὸν πατρὶ φόνου ἐπεξιέναι— κακῶς εἰδότες, ὦ Σώκρατες, τὸ θεῖον ὡς ἔχει τοῦ ὀσίου τε πέρι καὶ τοῦ ἀνοσίου.

ΣΩ. σὺ δὲ δὴ πρὸς Διός, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, οὕτως ἀκριβῶς οἶε ἐπίστασθαι περὶ τῶν θείων ὅπῃ ἔχει, καὶ τῶν ὀσίων τε καὶ ἀνοσίων, ὥστε τούτων οὕτω πραχθέντων ὡς σὺ λέγεις, οὐ φοβῆ ἰδικαζόμενος τῷ πατρὶ ὅπως μὴ αὖ σὺ ἀνόσιον πρᾶγμα τυγχάνῃς πράττων;

¹⁰ messmate ¹¹ farm, till land ¹² consider unimportant

¹³ miserable, cold

EUTHYPHRO: Why have you left the Lyceum, Socrates? and what are you doing in the Porch of the King Archon? Surely you cannot be concerned in a suit before the King, like myself?

SOCRATES: Not in a suit, Euthyphro; impeachment is the word which the Athenians use.

EUTHYPHRO: What! I suppose that some one has been prosecuting you, for I cannot believe that you are the prosecutor of another.

SOCRATES: Certainly not.

EUTHYPHRO: Then some one else has been prosecuting you?

SOCRATES: Yes.

EUTHYPHRO: And who is he?

SOCRATES: A young man who is little known, Euthyphro; and I hardly know him: his name is Meletus, and he is of the deme of Pitthis. Perhaps you may remember his appearance; he has a beak, and long straight hair, and a beard which is ill grown.

EUTHYPHRO: No, I do not remember him, Socrates. But what is the charge which he brings against you?

SOCRATES: What is the charge? Well, a very serious charge, which shows a good deal of character in the young man, and for which he is certainly not to be despised. He says he knows how the youth are corrupted and who are their corruptors. I fancy that he must be a wise man, and seeing that I am the reverse of a wise man, he has found me out, and is going to accuse me of corrupting his young friends. And of this our mother the state is to be the judge. Of all our political men he is the only one who seems to me to begin in the right way, with the cultivation of virtue in youth; like a good husbandman, he makes the young shoots his first care, and clears away us who are the destroyers of them. This is only the first step; he will afterwards attend to the elder branches; and if he goes on as he has begun, he will be a very great public benefactor.

EUTHYPHRO: I hope that he may; but I rather fear, Socrates, that the opposite will turn out to be the truth. My opinion is that in attacking you he is simply aiming a blow at the foundation of the state. But in what way does he say that you corrupt the young?

SOCRATES: He brings a wonderful accusation against me, which at first hearing excites surprise: he says that I am a poet or maker of gods, and

that I invent new gods and deny the existence of old ones; this is the ground of his indictment.

EUTHYPHRO: I understand, Socrates; he means to attack you about the familiar sign which occasionally, as you say, comes to you. He thinks that you are a neologian, and he is going to have you up before the court for this. He knows that such a charge is readily received by the world, as I myself know too well; for when I speak in the assembly about divine things, and foretell the future to them, they laugh at me and think me a madman. Yet every word that I say is true. But they are jealous of us all; and we must be brave and go at them.

SOCRATES: Their laughter, friend Euthyphro, is not a matter of much consequence. For a man may be thought wise; but the Athenians, I suspect, do not much trouble themselves about him until he begins to impart his wisdom to others, and then for some reason or other, perhaps, as you say, from jealousy, they are angry.

EUTHYPHRO: I am never likely to try their temper in this way.

SOCRATES: I dare say not, for you are reserved in your behaviour, and seldom impart your wisdom. But I have a benevolent habit of pouring out myself to everybody, and would even pay for a listener, and I am afraid that the Athenians may think me too talkative. Now if, as I was saying, they would only laugh at me, as you say that they laugh at you, the time might pass gaily enough in the court; but perhaps they may be in earnest, and then what the end will be you soothsayers only can predict.

EUTHYPHRO: I dare say that the affair will end in nothing, Socrates, and that you will win your cause; and I think that I shall win my own.

SOCRATES: And what is your suit, Euthyphro? are you the pursuer or the defendant?

EUTHYPHRO: I am the pursuer.

SOCRATES: Of whom?

EUTHYPHRO: You will think me mad when I tell you.

SOCRATES: Why, has the fugitive wings?

EUTHYPHRO: Nay, he is not very volatile at his time of life.

SOCRATES: Who is he?

EUTHYPHRO: My father.

SOCRATES: Your father! my good man?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes.

SOCRATES: And of what is he accused?

EUTHYPHRO: Of murder, Socrates.

SOCRATES: By the powers, Euthyphro! how little does the common herd know of the nature of right and truth. A man must be an extraordinary man, and have made great strides in wisdom, before he could have seen his way to bring such an action.

EUTHYPHRO: Indeed, Socrates, he must.

SOCRATES: I suppose that the man whom your father murdered was one of your relatives—clearly he was; for if he had been a stranger you would never have thought of prosecuting him.

EUTHYPHRO: I am amused, Socrates, at your making a distinction between one who is a relation and one who is not a relation; for surely the pollution is the same in either case, if you knowingly associate with the murderer when you ought to clear yourself and him by proceeding against him. The real question is whether the murdered man has been justly slain. If justly, then your duty is to let the matter alone; but if unjustly, then even if the murderer lives under the same roof with you and eats at the same table, proceed against him. Now the man who is dead was a poor dependant of mine who worked for us as a field labourer on our farm in Naxos, and one day in a fit of drunken passion he got into a quarrel with one of our domestic servants and slew him. My father bound him hand and foot and threw him into a ditch, and then sent to Athens to ask of a diviner what he should do with him. Meanwhile he never attended to him and took no care about him, for he regarded him as a murderer; and thought that no great harm would be done even if he did die. Now this was just what happened. For such was the effect of cold and hunger and chains upon him, that before the messenger returned from the diviner, he was dead. And my father and family are angry with me for taking the part of the murderer and prosecuting my father. They say that he did not kill him, and that if he did, the dead man was but a murderer, and I ought not to take any notice, for that a son is impious who prosecutes a father. Which shows, Socrates, how little they know what the gods think about piety and impiety.

SOCRATES: Good heavens, Euthyphro! and is your knowledge of religion and of things pious and impious so very exact, that, supposing the circumstances to be as you state them, you are not afraid lest you too may be doing an impious thing in bringing an action against your father?

vocabulary

ἀκριβής (ι) exact
 ἀκρόπολις -εως (f) citadel, high part
 of a city ~acute
 ἀνόσιος unholy
 ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
 ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be
 freed, depart
 ἀποβλέπω stare at, adore
 ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
 ἄρα interrogative pcl
 ἀριθμέω to count ~arithmetic
 ἀριθμός number
 ἄρνυμαι get, win
 ἄρτι at the same time
 ἀσέβεια impiety
 ἀσεβέω be impious
 ἀσεβής profane
 βαρὺς heavy ~baritone
 γραφεύς -ος (m) painter
 γραφή painting; writing
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous
 δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
 διάγω lead through; pass a time
 ~demagogue
 διακελεύομαι give orders to,
 encourage
 διακρίνω (ιι) separate, sort ~critic
 διαφορά disagreement
 διδάσκαλος teacher
 διηγέομαι detail, describe
 δικάζω judge
 δικαστήριον court
 εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form
 ~-oid
 ἐκπλήγνυμι (υ) panic, be knocked
 out
 ἐκτέμνω cut out, fell ~tonsure
 ἐλαχύς small; comp.: less ~light
 ἐξαμαρτάνω miss; err, do wrong
 ἐπειδάν when, after
 ἐπέξειμι attack, prosecute

ἐπεξέρχομαι sally
 ἐπιθυμέω (υ) wish, covet
 ἐπισκέπτομαι look upon, inspect
 ἐπισκοπέω look upon, inspect
 ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow
 ~trophy
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
 ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go
 searching through
 ἐρωτάω ask about something
 εὐσεβής pious
 ἔχθρα hate
 ἔχθρη hate
 θαυμάσιος wonderful
 θεοφιλής beloved by the gods;
 loving God
 ἰδέα ἰδῆς semblance; kind, style
 καθοράω look down ~panorama
 καταπίνω (ι) swallow
 κατεῖδον look upon
 κλοπή theft, fraud
 κολάζω punish
 κοῦφος light, nimble
 κράτιστος best
 λαγχάνω be allotted; (esp. λελα-
 forms) allot; receive
 λάχος lot
 λογισμός calculation
 μεστός full
 μετρέω measure, traverse ~metric
 μνημονεύω remember, remind
 ναί yea
 νουθετέω remind, warn
 ὁμολογέω agree with/to
 ὅπη wherever, however
 ὁπότερος which of two, either of two
 ὀργή urge, impulse; anger
 ὀργίζω anger, provoke, annoy
 ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just
 ~orthogonal
 ὀρθόω stand up
 οὐκοῦν not so?; and so

οὐνεκα because
 οὐπω no longer
 ὄφελος -εος (n, 3) a use, a help
 πάντως by all means
 παράδειγμα -τος (n, 3) model,
 precedent
 πέπλος woman's dress, a folded
 cylinder of cloth
 ποίκιμα -τος (n, 3) embroidery
 ποῖος what kind
 προκαλέω challenge, call out ~gallo
 προσφιλής beloved
 σαφής clear, understandable

σκοπάω watch, observe
 σκοπέω behold, consider
 σοφός skilled, clever, wise
 στασιάζω revolt, be divided
 συγχωρέω accede, concede
 συνδοκέω seem good also
 σχολή rest, leisure
 τεκμήριον sign; proof
 τοίνυν well, then
 φίλιος friendly
 φόνος killing ~offend
 χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage

ΕΥΘΥΦΩΝ. οὐδὲν γὰρ ἂν μου ὄφελος εἴη, ὦ Σώκρατες, οὐδέ τῳ ἂν διαφέροι Εὐθύφρων τῶν πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων, εἰ μὴ τὰ τοιαῦτα πάντα ἀκριβῶς εἰδείην.

ΣΩΚΡΑΤΗΣ. ἄρ' οὖν μοι, ὦ θαυμάσιε Εὐθύφρων, κράτιστόν ἐστι μαθητῇ σὼ γενέσθαι, καὶ πρὸ τῆς γραφῆς τῆς πρὸς Μέλητον αὐτὰ ταῦτα προκαλεῖσθαι αὐτόν, λέγοντα ὅτι ἔγωγε καὶ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ τὰ θεῖα περὶ πολλοῦ ἐποιούμην εἰδέναι, καὶ νῦν ἐπειδὴ με ἐκείνος αὐτοσχεδιάζοντά φησι καὶ καινοτομοῦντα περὶ τῶν θείων ἐξαμαρτάνειν, μαθητῆς δὴ γέγονα σός— καὶ εἰ μὲν, ὦ Μέλητε, φαίην ἂν, Εὐθύφρονα ὁμολογεῖς σοφὸν εἶναι τὰ τοιαῦτα, καὶ ὁρθῶς νομίζειν καὶ ἐμὲ ἡγοῦ καὶ μὴ δικάζου· εἰ δὲ μὴ, ἐκείνῳ τῷ διδασκάλῳ λάχε δίκην πρότερον ἢ ἐμοί, ὥς τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους διαφθείροντι ἐμέ τε καὶ τὸν αὐτοῦ πατέρα, ἐμὲ μὲν διδάσκοντι, ἐκείνον δὲ νουθετοῦντί¹ τε καὶ κολάζοντι—καὶ ἂν μὴ μοι πείθεται μηδὲ ἀφήτῃ τῆς δίκης ἢ ἀντ' ἐμοῦ γράφηται σέ, αὐτὰ ταῦτα λέγειν ἐν τῷ δικαστηρίῳ ἂ προυκαλούμην αὐτόν;

ΕΥΘ. ναὶ μὰ Δία, ὦ Σώκρατες, εἰ ἄρα ἐμὲ ἐπιχειρήσειε γράφεσθαι, εὖροιμ' ἂν, ὥς οἶμαι, ὅπη σαθρός ἐστιν, καὶ πολὺ ἂν ἡμῖν πρότερον περὶ ἐκείνου λόγος ἐγένετο ἐν τῷ δικαστηρίῳ ἢ περὶ ἐμοῦ.

ΣΩ. καὶ ἐγὼ τοι, ὦ φίλε ἐταῖρε, ταῦτα γινώσκων μαθητῆς ἐπιθυμῶ γενέσθαι σός, εἰδὼς ὅτι καὶ ἄλλος πού τις καὶ ὁ Μέλητος οὗτος σέ μὲν οὐδὲ δοκεῖ ὁρᾶν, ἐμὲ δὲ οὕτως ὀξέως ἀτεχνῶς καὶ ῥαδίως κατείδεν ὥστε ἀσεβείας ἐγράψατο. νῦν οὖν πρὸς Διὸς λέγε μοι ὃ νυνδὴ σαφῶς εἰδέναι δισχυρίζου, ποῖόν τι τὸ εὐσεβὲς φῆς εἶναι καὶ τὸ ἀσεβὲς καὶ περὶ φόνου καὶ περὶ τῶν ἄλλων; ἢ οὐ ταῦτόν ἐστιν ἐν πάσῃ πράξει τὸ ὅσιον αὐτὸ αὐτῷ, καὶ τὸ ἀνόσιον αὐτὸ τοῦ μὲν ὁσίου παντὸς ἐναντίον, αὐτὸ δὲ αὐτῷ ὁμοιον καὶ ἔχον μίαν τινὰ ἰδέαν κατὰ τὴν ἀνοσιότητα πᾶν ὅτιπερ ἂν μέλλῃ ἀνόσιον εἶναι;

ΕΥΘ. πάντως δήπου, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ΣΩ. λέγε δή, τί φῆς εἶναι τὸ ὅσιον καὶ τί τὸ ἀνόσιον;

¹ remind, warn

ΕΥΘ. λέγω τοίνυν ὅτι τὸ μὲν ὅσιόν ἐστιν ὅπερ ἐγὼ νῦν ποιῶ, τῷ ἀδικοῦντι ἢ περὶ φόνους ἢ περὶ ἱερῶν κλοπὰς² ἢ τι ἄλλο τῶν τοιούτων ἐξαμαρτάνοντι ἐπεξιέναι, ἐάντε πατὴρ ὢν τυγχάνῃ ἐάντε μήτηρ ἐάντε ἄλλος ὅστισοῦν, τὸ δὲ μὴ ἐπεξιέναι ἀνόσιον· ἐπεὶ, ὦ Σώκρατες, θέασαι ὡς μέγα σοι ἐρῶ τεκμήριον τοῦ νόμου ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει— ὁ καὶ ἄλλοις ἤδη εἶπον, ὅτι ταῦτα ὀρθῶς ἂν εἴῃ οὕτω γιγνόμενα— μὴ ἐπιτρέπειν τῷ ἀσεβοῦντι μηδ' ἂν ὅστισοῦν τυγχάνῃ ὢν. αὐτοὶ γὰρ οἱ ἄνθρωποι τυγχάνουσι νομίζοντες τὸν Δία τῶν θεῶν ἄριστον καὶ δικαιοτάτον, καὶ τοῦτον ὁμολογοῦσι τὸν αὐτοῦ πατέρα δῆσαι ὅτι τοὺς υἱεὶς κατέπινεν οὐκ ἐν δίκῃ, ἀκείνόν γε αὖ τὸν αὐτοῦ πατέρα ἐκτεμεῖν δι' ἕτερα τοιαῦτα· ἐμοὶ δὲ χαλεπαίνουσιν ὅτι τῷ πατρὶ ἐπεξέρχομαι ἀδικοῦντι, καὶ οὕτως αὐτοὶ αὐτοῖς τὰ ἐναντία λέγουσι περὶ τε τῶν θεῶν καὶ περὶ ἐμοῦ.

ΣΩ. ἀρά γε, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, τοῦτ' ἔστιν οὐδ' οὐνεκα τὴν γραφὴν φεύγω, ὅτι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐπειδὴν τις περὶ τῶν θεῶν λέγῃ, δυσχερῶς πως ἀποδέχομαι; διὸ δὴ, ὡς ἔοικε, φήσῃ τίς με ἐξαμαρτάνειν. νῦν οὖν εἰ καὶ σοὶ ταῦτα συνδοκεῖ τῷ εὖ εἰδότει περὶ τῶν τοιούτων, ἀνάγκη δὴ, ὡς ἔοικε, καὶ ἡμῖν συγχωρεῖν. τί γὰρ καὶ φήσομεν, οἳ γε καὶ αὐτοὶ ὁμολογοῦμεν περὶ αὐτῶν μηδὲν εἰδέναι; ἀλλὰ μοι εἰπὲ πρὸς Φιλίου,³ σὺ ὡς ἀληθῶς ἡγῇ ταῦτα οὕτως γεγρονέναι;

ΕΥΘ. καὶ ἔτι γε τούτων θαυμασιώτερα, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἃ οἱ πολλοὶ οὐκ ἴσασι.

ΣΩ. καὶ πόλεμον ἄρα ἡγῇ σὺ εἶναι τῷ ὄντι ἐν τοῖς θεοῖς πρὸς ἀλλήλους, καὶ ἔχθρας γε δεινὰς καὶ μάχας καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα πολλὰ, οἷα λέγεται τε ὑπὸ τῶν ποιητῶν, καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ἀγαθῶν γραφέων τά τε ἄλλα ἱερὰ ἡμῖν καταπεποίκιλται, καὶ δὴ καὶ τοῖς μεγάλοις Παναθηναίοις ὁ πέπλος⁴ μεστὸς τῶν τοιούτων ποικιλμάτων⁵ ἀνάγεται εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν; ταῦτα ἀληθῆ φῶμεν εἶναι, ὦ Εὐθύφρων;

ΕΥΘ. μὴ μόνον γε, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἀλλ' ὅπερ ἄρτι εἶπον, καὶ ἄλλα σοι

² theft, fraud ³ friendly ⁴ woman's dress, a folded cylinder of cloth ⁵ embroidery

ἐγὼ πολλά, ἐάνπερ βούλῃ, περὶ τῶν θείων διηγήσομαι, ἃ σὺ ἀκούων εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι ἐκπλαγήσῃ.

ΣΩ. οὐκ ἂν θαναμάζοιμι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν μοι εἰς αὐθις ἐπὶ σχολῆς⁶ διηγήσῃ· νυνὶ δὲ ὅπερ ἄρτι σε ἡρόμην πειρῶ σαφέστερον εἰπεῖν. οὐ γάρ με, ὦ ἑταῖρε, τὸ πρότερον ἱκανῶς ἐδίδαξας ἐρωτήσαντα τὸ ὅσιον ὅτι ποτ' εἴῃ, ἀλλά μοι εἶπες ὅτι τοῦτο τυγχάνει ὅσιον ὃν ὁ σὺ νῦν ποιεῖς, φόνου ἐπεξιῶν τῷ πατρί.

ΕΥΘ. καὶ ἀληθῇ γε ἔλεγον, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ΣΩ. ἴσως. ἀλλὰ γάρ, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ φῆς εἶναι ὅσια.

ΕΥΘ. καὶ γὰρ ἔστιν.

ΣΩ. μέμνησαι οὖν ὅτι οὐ τοῦτό σοι διεκελευόμην, ἔν τι ἢ δύο με διδάξαι τῶν πολλῶν ὁσίων, ἀλλ' ἐκεῖνο αὐτὸ τὸ εἶδος ᾧ πάντα τὰ ὅσια ὁσιά ἐστιν; ἔφησθα γάρ που μῆ ἰδέα τά τε ἀνόσια ἀνόσια εἶναι καὶ τὰ ὅσια ὅσια· ἢ οὐ μνημονεύεις;

ΕΥΘ. ἔγωγε.

ΣΩ. ταύτην τοίνυν με αὐτὴν διδάξον τὴν ἰδέαν τίς ποτέ ἐστιν, ἵνα εἰς ἐκείνην ἀποβλέπων καὶ χρώμενος αὐτῇ παραδείγματι, ὃ μὲν ἂν τοιοῦτον ἦ ὣν ἂν ἢ σὺ ἢ ἄλλος τις πράττη φῶ ὅσιον εἶναι, ὃ δ' ἂν μὴ τοιοῦτον, μὴ φῶ.

ΕΥΘ. ἀλλ' εἰ οὕτω βούλει, ὦ Σώκρατες, καὶ οὕτω σοι φράσω.

ΣΩ. ἀλλὰ μὴν βούλομαί γε.

ΕΥΘ. ἔστι τοίνυν τὸ μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς προσφιλὲς ὅσιον, τὸ δὲ μὴ προσφιλὲς ἀνόσιον.

ΣΩ. παγκάλως, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, καὶ ὡς ἐγὼ ἐζήτουν ἀποκρίνασθαί σε, οὕτω νῦν ἀπεκρίνω. εἰ μέντοι ἀληθῶς, τοῦτο οὕτω οἶδα, ἀλλὰ σὺ δῆλον ὅτι ἐπεκιδιάξεις ὡς ἔστιν ἀληθὴ ἃ λέγεις.

⁶ rest, leisure

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

ΣΩ. φέρε δὴ, ἐπισκεψώμεθα τί λέγομεν. τὸ μὲν θεοφιλές τε καὶ θεοφιλῆς ἄνθρωπος ὅσιος, τὸ δὲ θεομισῆς καὶ ὁ θεομισῆς ἀνόσιος· οὐ ταῦτόν δ' ἐστίν, ἀλλὰ τὸ ἐναντιώτατον, τὸ ὅσιον τῷ ἀνοσίῳ· οὕτως;

ΕΥΘ. οὕτω μὲν οὖν.

ΣΩ. καὶ εὖ γε φαίνεται εἰρῆσθαι;

ΕΥΘ. δοκῶ, ὦ Σώκρατες. εἴρηται γάρ. γ ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν καὶ ὅτι στασιάζουσιν οἱ θεοί, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, καὶ διαφέρονται ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἔχθρα ἐστὶν ἐν αὐτοῖς πρὸς ἀλλήλους, καὶ τοῦτο εἴρηται;

ΕΥΘ. εἴρηται γάρ.

ΣΩ. ἔχθραν δὲ καὶ ὀργάς, ὦ ἄριστε, ἢ περὶ τίνων διαφορὰ ποιεῖ; ὧδε δὲ σκοπῶμεν. ἄρ' ἂν εἰ διαφεροίμεθα ἐγώ τε καὶ σὺ περὶ ἀριθμοῦ ὁπότερα πλείω, ἢ περὶ τούτων διαφορὰ ἔχθρους ἂν ἡμᾶς ποιοῖ καὶ ὀργίζεσθαι ἀλλήλοις, ἢ ἐπὶ λογισμὸν ἐλθόντες περὶ γε τῶν τοιούτων ταχὺ ἂν ἀπαλλαγείμεν;

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ γε.

ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν καὶ περὶ τοῦ μείζονος καὶ ἐλάττονος εἰ διαφεροίμεθα, ἐπὶ τὸ μετρεῖν⁷ ἐλθόντες ταχὺ παυσαίμεθ' ἂν τῆς διαφορᾶς;

ΕΥΘ. ἔστι ταῦτα.

ΣΩ. καὶ ἐπὶ γε τὸ ιστάναι ἐλθόντες, ὡς ἐγῶμαι, περὶ τοῦ βαρυτέρου τε καὶ κουφοτέρου⁸ διακριθεῖμεν ἄν;

ΕΥΘ. πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

⁷ measure, traverse ⁸ light, nimble

EUTHYPHRO: The best of Euthyphro, and that which distinguishes him, Socrates, from other men, is his exact knowledge of all such matters. What should I be good for without it?

SOCRATES: Rare friend! I think that I cannot do better than be your disciple. Then before the trial with Meletus comes on I shall challenge him, and say that I have always had a great interest in religious questions, and now, as he charges me with rash imaginations and innovations in religion, I have become your disciple. You, Meletus, as I shall say to him, acknowledge Euthyphro to be a great theologian, and sound in his opinions; and if you approve of him you ought to approve of me, and not have me into court; but if you disapprove, you should begin by indicting him who is my teacher, and who will be the ruin, not of the young, but of the old; that is to say, of myself whom he instructs, and of his old father whom he admonishes and chastises. And if Meletus refuses to listen to me, but will go on, and will not shift the indictment from me to you, I cannot do better than repeat this challenge in the court.

EUTHYPHRO: Yes, indeed, Socrates; and if he attempts to indict me I am mistaken if I do not find a flaw in him; the court shall have a great deal more to say to him than to me.

SOCRATES: And I, my dear friend, knowing this, am desirous of becoming your disciple. For I observe that no one appears to notice you — not even this Meletus; but his sharp eyes have found me out at once, and he has indicted me for impiety. And therefore, I adjure you to tell me the nature of piety and impiety, which you said that you knew so well, and of murder, and of other offences against the gods. What are they? Is not piety in every action always the same? and impiety, again — is it not always the opposite of piety, and also the same with itself, having, as impiety, one notion which includes whatever is impious?

EUTHYPHRO: To be sure, Socrates.

SOCRATES: And what is piety, and what is impiety?

EUTHYPHRO: Piety is doing as I am doing; that is to say, prosecuting any one who is guilty of murder, sacrilege, or of any similar crime — whether he be your father or mother, or whoever he may be — that makes no difference; and not to prosecute them is impiety. And please to consider, Socrates, what a notable proof I will give you of the truth of my words, a proof which I have already given to others: — of the principle, I mean, that the impious, whoever he may be, ought not to go unpunished. For do not men regard Zeus as the best and most righteous of the gods? — and yet they admit that he bound his father (Cronos) because he wickedly devoured his sons, and that he too

had punished his own father (Uranus) for a similar reason, in a nameless manner. And yet when I proceed against my father, they are angry with me. So inconsistent are they in their way of talking when the gods are concerned, and when I am concerned.

SOCRATES: May not this be the reason, Euthyphro, why I am charged with impiety — that I cannot away with these stories about the gods? and therefore I suppose that people think me wrong. But, as you who are well informed about them approve of them, I cannot do better than assent to your superior wisdom. What else can I say, confessing as I do, that I know nothing about them? Tell me, for the love of Zeus, whether you really believe that they are true.

EUTHYPHRO: Yes, Socrates; and things more wonderful still, of which the world is in ignorance.

SOCRATES: And do you really believe that the gods fought with one another, and had dire quarrels, battles, and the like, as the poets say, and as you may see represented in the works of great artists? The temples are full of them; and notably the robe of Athene, which is carried up to the Acropolis at the great Panathenaea, is embroidered with them. Are all these tales of the gods true, Euthyphro?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes, Socrates; and, as I was saying, I can tell you, if you would like to hear them, many other things about the gods which would quite amaze you.

SOCRATES: I dare say; and you shall tell me them at some other time when I have leisure. But just at present I would rather hear from you a more precise answer, which you have not as yet given, my friend, to the question, What is ‘piety’? When asked, you only replied, Doing as you do, charging your father with murder.

EUTHYPHRO: And what I said was true, Socrates.

SOCRATES: No doubt, Euthyphro; but you would admit that there are many other pious acts?

EUTHYPHRO: There are.

SOCRATES: Remember that I did not ask you to give me two or three examples of piety, but to explain the general idea which makes all pious things to be pious. Do you not recollect that there was one idea which made the impious impious, and the pious pious?

EUTHYPHRO: I remember.

SOCRATES: Tell me what is the nature of this idea, and then I shall have a standard to which I may look, and by which I may measure actions, whether yours or those of any one else, and then I shall be able to say that such and such an action is pious, such another impious.

EUTHYPHRO: I will tell you, if you like.

SOCRATES: I should very much like.

EUTHYPHRO: Piety, then, is that which is dear to the gods, and impiety is that which is not dear to them.

SOCRATES: Very good, Euthyphro; you have now given me the sort of answer which I wanted. But whether what you say is true or not I cannot as yet tell, although I make no doubt that you will prove the truth of your words.

EUTHYPHRO: Of course.

SOCRATES: Come, then, and let us examine what we are saying. That thing or person which is dear to the gods is pious, and that thing or person which is hateful to the gods is impious, these two being the extreme opposites of one another. Was not that said?

EUTHYPHRO: It was.

SOCRATES: And well said?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes, Socrates, I thought so; it was certainly said.

SOCRATES: And further, Euthyphro, the gods were admitted to have enmities and hatreds and differences?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes, that was also said.

SOCRATES: And what sort of difference creates enmity and anger? Suppose for example that you and I, my good friend, differ about a number; do differences of this sort make us enemies and set us at variance with one another? Do we not go at once to arithmetic, and put an end to them by a sum?

EUTHYPHRO: True.

SOCRATES: Or suppose that we differ about magnitudes, do we not quickly end the differences by measuring?

EUTHYPHRO: Very true.

SOCRATES: And we end a controversy about heavy and light by resorting to a weighing machine?

EUTHYPHRO: To be sure.

vocabulary

ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad
αἰσχύρος shameful
ἄλλοθι elsewhere, abroad
ἀμφισβητέω dispute
ἀνδροφόνος murderous ~offend
ἀνόσιος unholy
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
ἄρα interrogative pcl
ἄρnuμαι get, win
ἄρτι at the same time
γενναῖος noble, sincere ~genesis
δεσμός bond, latch, strap; also (pl) headress
δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
δῆλος visible, conspicuous
δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
διαφορά disagreement
δικάζω judge
δικαστήριον court
δικαστής -οῦ (m, 1) judge, juror
δράω do, accomplish
εἴπερ if indeed
ἐνδείκνυμι (ὑ) address, consider
ἐννοέω consider
ἐξηγητής -οῦ (m, 1) leader, expounder
ἐπέξιμι attack, prosecute
ἐπιδείκνυμι (ὑ) display, exhibit
ἐπισκήπτω lay something on
ἐπισκοπέω look upon, inspect
ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go searching through
ἔρωτάω ask about something
θαυμάσιος wonderful
θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable
θεοφιλής beloved by the gods; loving God
θητεύω work
κεφάλαιος main point; chief
κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf) there is a danger that

κολάζω punish
κρίσις -εως (f) decision, issue
κωλύω (ὑ) hinder, prevent
μισέω (ἰ) hate, wish to prevent ~misogyny
ναί yea
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
ὀργίζω anger, provoke, annoy
ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just ~orthogonal
ὀρθόω stand up
ὀρίζω divide; ordain, define ~horizon
οὐδαμὸς not anyone
οὐδέποτε never
οὐδέτερος neither
οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
πάμπoλyς very great
πρᾶξις -εως (f) result, business ~practice
προσφιλής beloved
σαφής clear, understandable
σκεπτέος thing to consider, one who must consider
σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch ~skeptc
σκοπάω watch, observe
σκοπέω behold, consider
σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
σοφός skilled, clever, wise
στασιάζω revolt, be divided
συγχωρέω accede, concede
συνδέω bind together
τάχα quickly, soon; perhaps ~tachometer
τάχος -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer
τεκμήριον sign; proof
τελευτάω bring about, finish ~apostle
τοιόσδε such
ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's

hand; submit to
ὑποτίθημι suggest, advise
~hypothesis

φθάζω do first, outstrip
φθάνω (ᾱ) do first, outstrip
φόνος killing ~offend

ΣΩΚΡΑΤΗΣ. περὶ τίνος δὲ δὴ διενεχθέντες καὶ ἐπὶ τίνα κρίσιν οὐ δυνάμενοι ἀφικέσθαι ἐχθροὶ γε ἂν ἀλλήλοις εἶμεν καὶ ὀργιζόμεθα; ἴσως οὐ πρόχειρόν σοί ἐστιν, ἀλλ' ἐμοῦ λέγοντος σκόπει εἰ τάδε ἐστὶ τό τε δίκαιον καὶ τὸ ἀδίκον καὶ καλὸν καὶ αἰσχρὸν καὶ ἀγαθὸν καὶ κακόν. ἄρα οὐ ταῦτά ἐστιν περὶ ὧν διενεχθέντες καὶ οὐ δυνάμενοι ἐπὶ ἱκανὴν κρίσιν αὐτῶν ἐλθεῖν ἐχθροὶ ἀλλήλοις γιγνώμεθα, ὅταν γιγνώμεθα, καὶ ἐγὼ καὶ σὺ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἄνθρωποι πάντες;

ΕΥΘΥΦΩΝ. ἀλλ' ἔστιν αὕτη ἡ διαφορά, ὦ Σώκρατες, καὶ περὶ τούτων.

ΣΩ. τί δὲ οἱ θεοί, ὦ Εὐθύφρων; οὐκ εἴπερ τι διαφέρονται, δι' αὐτὰ ταῦτα διαφέρουσιν ἄν;

ΕΥΘ. πολλὴ ἀνάγκη.

ΣΩ. καὶ τῶν θεῶν ἄρα, ὦ γενναῖε Εὐθύφρων, ἄλλοι ἄλλα δίκαια ἡγοῦνται κατὰ τὸν σὸν λόγον, καὶ καλὰ καὶ αἰσχροὶ καὶ ἀγαθὰ καὶ κακά· οὐ γὰρ ἂν που ἐστασίαζον ἀλλήλοις εἰ μὴ περὶ τούτων διεφέροντο· ἦ γάρ; γ ΕΥΘ. ὀρθῶς λέγεις.

ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν ἅπερ καλὰ ἡγοῦνται ἕκαστοι καὶ ἀγαθὰ καὶ δίκαια, ταῦτα καὶ φιλοῦσιν, τὰ δὲ ἐναντία τούτων μισοῦσιν;

ΕΥΘ. πάννυ γε.

ΣΩ. ταῦτά δέ γε, ὥς σὺ φήσ, οἱ μὲν δίκαια ἡγοῦνται, οἱ δὲ ἄδικοι, περὶ ἃ καὶ ἀμφισβητοῦντες στασιάζουσιν τε καὶ πολεμοῦσιν ἀλλήλοις· ἄρα οὐχ οὕτω;

ΕΥΘ. οὕτω.

ΣΩ. ταῦτ' ἄρα, ὥς ἔοικεν, μισεῖται τε ὑπὸ τῶν θεῶν καὶ φιλεῖται, καὶ θεομισῇ τε καὶ θεοφιλεῖται ταῦτ' ἂν εἴη.

ΕΥΘ. ἔοικεν.

ΣΩ. καὶ ὅσα ἄρα καὶ ἀνόσια τὰ αὐτὰ ἂν εἴη, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, τούτω τῷ λόγῳ.

ΕΥΘ. κινδυνεύει.

ΣΩ. οὐκ ἄρα ὁ ἡρόμην ἀπεκρίνω, ὦ θαυμάσιε. οὐ γὰρ τοῦτό γε ἡρώτων, ὁ τυγχάνει ταῦτον ὃν ὁσίον τε καὶ ἀνόσιον· ὁ δ' ἂν θεοφιλὲς ἦ καὶ θεομισὲς ἔστιν, ὡς ἔοικεν. ὥστε, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, ὁ σὺ νῦν ποιεῖς τὸν πατέρα κολάζων, οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν εἰ τοῦτο δρῶν τῷ μὲν Διὶ προσφιλὲς ποιεῖς, τῷ δὲ Κρόνῳ καὶ τῷ Οὐρανῷ ἐχθρόν, καὶ τῷ μὲν Ἥφαιστῳ φίλον, τῇ δὲ Ἥρᾳ ἐχθρόν, καὶ εἴ τις ἄλλος τῶν θεῶν ἕτερος ἑτέρῳ διαφέρεται περὶ αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἐκείνοις κατὰ τὰ αὐτά.

ΕΥΘ. ἀλλ' οἶμαι, ὦ Σώκρατες, περὶ γε τούτου τῶν θεῶν οὐδένα ἕτερον ἑτέρῳ διαφέρεσθαι, ὡς οὐ δεῖ δίκην διδόναι ἐκείνῳ ὃς ἂν ἀδίκως τινὰ ἀποκτείνῃ.

ΣΩ. τί δέ; ἀνθρώπων, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, ἤδη τινὸς ἤκουσας ἀμφισβητοῦντος ὡς τὸν ἀδίκως ἀποκτείναντα ἢ ἄλλο ἀδίκως ποιοῦντα ὅτιοῦν οὐ δεῖ δίκην διδόναι;

ΕΥΘ. οὐδὲν μὲν οὖν παύονται ταῦτα ἀμφισβητοῦντες καὶ ἄλλοι¹ καὶ ἐν τοῖς δικαστηρίοις· ἀδικοῦντες γὰρ πάμπολλα, πάντα ποιοῦσι καὶ λέγουσι φεύγοντες τὴν δίκην.

ΣΩ. ἦ καὶ ὁμολογοῦσιν, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, ἀδικεῖν, καὶ ὁμολογοῦντες ὅμως οὐ δεῖν φασὶ σφᾶς διδόναι δίκην;

ΕΥΘ. οὐδαμῶς² τοῦτό γε.

ΣΩ. οὐκ ἄρα πᾶν γε ποιοῦσι καὶ λέγουσι· τοῦτο γὰρ οἶμαι οὐ πολμῶσι λέγειν οὐδ' ἀμφισβητεῖν, ὡς οὐχὶ εἴπερ ἀδικοῦσί γε δοτέον δίκην, ἀλλ' οἶμαι οὗ φασιν ἀδικεῖν· ἦ γάρ;

ΕΥΘ. ἀληθῇ λέγεις.

ΣΩ. οὐκ ἄρα ἐκείνῳ γε ἀμφισβητοῦσιν, ὡς οὐ τὸν ἀδικοῦντα δεῖ διδόναι δίκην, ἀλλ' ἐκείνο ἴσως ἀμφισβητοῦσιν, τὸ τίς ἔστιν ὁ ἀδικῶν καὶ τί δρῶν καὶ πότε.

¹ elsewhere, abroad ² not anyone

ΕΥΘ. ἀληθῆ λέγεις.

ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν αὐτά γε ταῦτα καὶ οἱ θεοὶ πεπόνθασιν, εἴπερ στασιάζουσι περὶ τῶν δικαίων καὶ ἀδίκων ὡς ὁ σὸς λόγος, καὶ οἱ μὲν φασιν ἀλλήλους ἀδικεῖν, οἱ δὲ οὐ φασιν; ἐπεὶ ἐκεῖνό γε δήπου, ὦ θαυμάσιε, οὐδεὶς οὔτε θεῶν οὔτε ἀνθρώπων τολμᾷ λέγειν, ὡς οὐ τῷ γε ἀδικοῦντι δοτέον δίκην.

ΕΥΘ. ναί, τοῦτο μὲν ἀληθὲς λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες, τό γε κεφάλαιον.

ΣΩ. ἀλλ' ἕκαστόν γε οἶμαι, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, τῶν πραχθέντων ἀμφισβητοῦσιν οἱ ἀμφισβητοῦντες, καὶ ἄνθρωποι καὶ θεοί, εἴπερ ἀμφισβητοῦσιν θεοί· πράξεώς τινος πέρι διαφερόμενοι οἱ μὲν δικαίως φασὶν αὐτὴν πεπραῆχθαι, οἱ δὲ ἀδίκως· ἄρ' οὐχ οὕτω;

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ γε.

ΣΩ. ἴθι νυν, ὦ φίλε Εὐθύφρων, διδάξον καὶ ἐμέ, ἵνα σοφώτερος γένωμαι, τί σοι τεκμήριόν ἐστιν ὡς πάντες θεοὶ ἡγοῦνται ἐκείνον ἀδίκως τεθνάναι, ὃς ἂν θητεύων ἀνδροφόνος γενόμενος, συνδεθεὶς ὑπὸ τοῦ δεσπότη τοῦ ἀποθανόντος, φθάσῃ τελευτήσας διὰ τὰ δεσμὰ πρὶν τὸν συνδήσαντα παρὰ τῶν ἐξηγητῶν περὶ αὐτοῦ πυθέσθαι τί χρὴ ποιεῖν, καὶ ὑπὲρ τοῦ τοιούτου δὴ ὀρθῶς ἔχει ἐπεξιέναι καὶ ἐπισκῆπτεσθαι φόνου τὸν ὕδν τῷ πατρί; ἴθι, περὶ τούτων πειρῶ τί μοι σαφὲς ἐνδείξασθαι ὡς παντὸς μᾶλλον πάντες θεοὶ ἡγοῦνται ὀρθῶς ἔχειν ταύτην τὴν πράξιν· κἄν μοι ἰκανῶς ἐνδείξῃ, ἐγκωμιάζων σε ἐπὶ σοφίᾳ οὐδέποτε παύσομαι.

ΕΥΘ. ἀλλ' ἴσως οὐκ ὀλίγον ἔργον ἐστίν, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐπεὶ πάνυ γε σαφῶς ἔχοιμι ἂν ἐπιδειξαί σοι.

ΣΩ. μανθάνω· ὅτι σοι δοκῶ τῶν δικαστῶν δυσμαθέστερος εἶναι, ἐπεὶ ἐκείνοις γε ἐνδείξῃ δηλὸν ὅτι ὡς ἄδικά τέ ἐστιν καὶ οἱ θεοὶ ἅπαντες τὰ τοιαῦτα μισοῦσιν.

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ γε σαφῶς, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐάνπερ ἀκούωσί γέ μου λέγοντος.

ΣΩ. ἀλλ' ἀκούσονται. ἐάνπερ εὖ δοκῇς λέγειν. τότε δέ σου ἐνενόησα

ἅμα λέγοντος καὶ πρὸς ἑμᾶντὸν σκοπῶ· εἰ ὅτι μάλιστα με Εὐθύφρων διδάξειεν ὥς οἱ θεοὶ ἅπαντες τὸν τοιοῦτον θάνατον ἡγοῦνται ἄδικον εἶναι, τί μᾶλλον ἐγὼ μεμάθηκα παρ' Εὐθύφρονος τί ποτ' ἐστὶν τὸ ὀσιόν τε καὶ τὸ ἀνόσιον; θεομισὲς μὲν γὰρ τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον, ὥς ἔοικεν, εἶη ἄν. ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὐ τούτῳ ἐφάνη ἄρτι ὠρισμένα τὸ ὀσιον καὶ μὴ· τὸ γὰρ θεομισὲς ὃν καὶ θεοφιλὲς ἐφάνη. ὥστε τούτου μὲν ἀφήμι σε, ὦ Εὐθύφρων· εἰ βούλει, πάντες αὐτὸ ἡγείσθων θεοὶ ἄδικον καὶ πάντες μισούντων. ἀλλ' ἄρα τοῦτο ὃ νῦν ἐπανορθούμεθα ἐν τῷ λόγῳ— ὥς ὃ μὲν ἂν πάντες οἱ θεοὶ μισῶσιν ἀνόσιόν ἐστιν, ὃ δ' ἂν φιλῶσιν, ὀσιον· ὃ δ' ἂν οἱ μὲν φιλῶσιν οἱ δὲ μισῶσιν, οὐδέτερά³ ἢ ἀμφοτέρω— ἄρ' οὕτω βούλει ἡμῖν ὠρίσθαι νῦν περὶ τοῦ ὀσίου καὶ τοῦ ἀνοσίου;

ΕΥΘ. τί γὰρ κωλύει, ὦ Σώκρατες; γ ΣΩ. οὐδὲν ἐμέ γε, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, ἀλλὰ σὺ δὴ τὸ σὸν σκοπεῖς, εἰ τοῦτο ὑποθέμενος οὕτω ῥᾶστά με διδάξεις ὃ ὑπέσχοι.

ΕΥΘ. ἀλλ' ἔγωγε φαίην ἂν τοῦτο εἶναι τὸ ὀσιον ὃ ἂν πάντες οἱ θεοὶ φιλῶσιν, καὶ τὸ ἐναντίον, ὃ ἂν πάντες θεοὶ μισῶσιν, ἀνόσιον.

ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν ἐπισκοπῶμεν αὐτὸ τοῦτο, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, εἰ καλῶς λέγεται, ἢ ἐώμεν καὶ οὕτω ἡμῶν τε αὐτῶν ἀποδεχόμεθα καὶ τῶν ἄλλων, ἐὰν μόνον φῇ τίς τι ἔχειν οὕτω συγχωροῦντες ἔχειν; ἢ σκεπτέον τί λέγει ὁ λέγων;

ΕΥΘ. σκεπτέον· οἶμαι μέντοι ἔγωγε τοῦτο νυνὶ καλῶς λέγεσθαι.

ΣΩ. τάχ', ὦγαθέ, βέλτιον εἰσόμεθα. ἐννόησον γὰρ τὸ τοιόνδε· ἄρα τὸ ὀσιον ὅτι ὀσιόν ἐστιν φιλεῖται ὑπὸ τῶν θεῶν, ἢ ὅτι φιλεῖται ὀσιόν ἐστιν;

ΕΥΘ. οὐκ οἶδ' ὅτι λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες.

³ neither

SOCRATES: But what differences are there which cannot be thus decided, and which therefore make us angry and set us at enmity with one another? I dare say the answer does not occur to you at the moment, and therefore I will suggest that these enmities arise when the matters of difference are the just and unjust, good and evil, honourable and dishonourable. Are not these the points about which men differ, and about which when we are unable satisfactorily to decide our differences, you and I and all of us quarrel, when we do quarrel? (Compare Alcib.)

EUTHYPHRO: Yes, Socrates, the nature of the differences about which we quarrel is such as you describe.

SOCRATES: And the quarrels of the gods, noble Euthyphro, when they occur, are of a like nature?

EUTHYPHRO: Certainly they are.

SOCRATES: They have differences of opinion, as you say, about good and evil, just and unjust, honourable and dishonourable: there would have been no quarrels among them, if there had been no such differences—would there now?

EUTHYPHRO: You are quite right.

SOCRATES: Does not every man love that which he deems noble and just and good, and hate the opposite of them?

EUTHYPHRO: Very true.

SOCRATES: But, as you say, people regard the same things, some as just and others as unjust,—about these they dispute; and so there arise wars and fightings among them.

EUTHYPHRO: Very true.

SOCRATES: Then the same things are hated by the gods and loved by the gods, and are both hateful and dear to them?

EUTHYPHRO: True.

SOCRATES: And upon this view the same things, Euthyphro, will be pious and also impious?

EUTHYPHRO: So I should suppose.

SOCRATES: Then, my friend, I remark with surprise that you have not answered the question which I asked. For I certainly did not ask you to tell me what action is both pious and impious: but now it would seem that

what is loved by the gods is also hated by them. And therefore, Euthyphro, in thus chastising your father you may very likely be doing what is agreeable to Zeus but disagreeable to Cronos or Uranus, and what is acceptable to Hephaestus but unacceptable to Here, and there may be other gods who have similar differences of opinion.

EUTHYPHRO: But I believe, Socrates, that all the gods would be agreed as to the propriety of punishing a murderer: there would be no difference of opinion about that.

SOCRATES: Well, but speaking of men, Euthyphro, did you ever hear any one arguing that a murderer or any sort of evil-doer ought to be let off?

EUTHYPHRO: I should rather say that these are the questions which they are always arguing, especially in courts of law: they commit all sorts of crimes, and there is nothing which they will not do or say in their own defence.

SOCRATES: But do they admit their guilt, Euthyphro, and yet say that they ought not to be punished?

EUTHYPHRO: No; they do not.

SOCRATES: Then there are some things which they do not venture to say and do: for they do not venture to argue that the guilty are to be unpunished, but they deny their guilt, do they not?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes.

SOCRATES: Then they do not argue that the evil-doer should not be punished, but they argue about the fact of who the evil-doer is, and what he did and when?

EUTHYPHRO: True.

SOCRATES: And the gods are in the same case, if as you assert they quarrel about just and unjust, and some of them say while others deny that injustice is done among them. For surely neither God nor man will ever venture to say that the doer of injustice is not to be punished?

EUTHYPHRO: That is true, Socrates, in the main.

SOCRATES: But they join issue about the particulars—gods and men alike; and, if they dispute at all, they dispute about some act which is called in question, and which by some is affirmed to be just, by others to be unjust. Is not that true?

EUTHYPHRO: Quite true.

SOCRATES: Well then, my dear friend Euthyphro, do tell me, for my better instruction and information, what proof have you that in the opinion of all the gods a servant who is guilty of murder, and is put in chains by the master of the dead man, and dies because he is put in chains before he who bound him can learn from the interpreters of the gods what he ought to do with him, dies unjustly; and that on behalf of such an one a son ought to proceed against his father and accuse him of murder. How would you show that all the gods absolutely agree in approving of his act? Prove to me that they do, and I will applaud your wisdom as long as I live.

EUTHYPHRO: It will be a difficult task; but I could make the matter very clear indeed to you.

SOCRATES: I understand; you mean to say that I am not so quick of apprehension as the judges: for to them you will be sure to prove that the act is unjust, and hateful to the gods.

EUTHYPHRO: Yes indeed, Socrates; at least if they will listen to me.

SOCRATES: But they will be sure to listen if they find that you are a good speaker. There was a notion that came into my mind while you were speaking; I said to myself: 'Well, and what if Euthyphro does prove to me that all the gods regarded the death of the serf as unjust, how do I know anything more of the nature of piety and impiety? for granting that this action may be hateful to the gods, still piety and impiety are not adequately defined by these distinctions, for that which is hateful to the gods has been shown to be also pleasing and dear to them.' And therefore, Euthyphro, I do not ask you to prove this; I will suppose, if you like, that all the gods condemn and abominate such an action. But I will amend the definition so far as to say that what all the gods hate is impious, and what they love pious or holy; and what some of them love and others hate is both or neither. Shall this be our definition of piety and impiety?

EUTHYPHRO: Why not, Socrates?

SOCRATES: Why not! certainly, as far as I am concerned, Euthyphro, there is no reason why not. But whether this admission will greatly assist you in the task of instructing me as you promised, is a matter for you to consider.

EUTHYPHRO: Yes, I should say that what all the gods love is pious and holy, and the opposite which they all hate, impious.

SOCRATES: Ought we to enquire into the truth of this, Euthyphro, or simply to accept the mere statement on our own authority and that of others? What do you say?

EUTHYPHRO: We should enquire; and I believe that the statement will stand the test of enquiry.

SOCRATES: We shall know better, my good friend, in a little while. The point which I should first wish to understand is whether the pious or holy is beloved by the gods because it is holy, or holy because it is beloved of the

vocabulary

ἄδην to satiety; enough
ἄδος weariness
ἄέκων unwilling
αἰδέομαι respect, be ashamed
αἰδώς awe, shame, respect; genitals
αἰσχύνω (ὑ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar
ἄκίνητος motionless, immovable
ἄκων javelin; unwilling ~acme
ἄλλότριος someone else's; alien
 ~alien
ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἀνδάνω please ~hedonism
ἀνόσιος unholy
ἀποδιδράσκω escape
ἀποκρύπτω hide away ~cryptic
ἄρα interrogative pcl
ἀριθμέω to count ~arithmetic
ἀριθμός number
δείκνυμι (ὑ) show, point out
δέος fear ~Deimos
δηλώω show, disclose
δῆτα emphatic δῆ
διότι because; that
εἴτε if, whenever; either/or
ἐντίθημι load; mp: take to heart
 ~thesis
ἐρωτάω ask about something
θεοφιλῆς beloved by the gods; loving God
ἰδρύω establish
κατάδηλος manifest, visible
κατανοέω notice, realize, learn
κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf) there is a danger that
μακάριος blessed
μόριον piece, member; part of speech
ναί yea
νεικέω revile, quarrel, scold
νόσος (f) plague, pestilence

~noisome
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὅπη wherever, however
ὅπου where
ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just
 ~orthogonal
ὀρθόω stand up
οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
οὐπω no longer
οὐσία property; essence
πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition
παντάπασι altogether; yes, certainly
πανταχοῦ everywhere; completely
πενία poverty ~osteopenia
περίεμι be superior to; be left over; still exist
περιέρχομαι go around; come next to
περισσός prodigious, superfluous
πλοῦτος wealth ~plutocrat
ποιητής -οῦ (m, 1) maker, author
ποιητός made, well-made ~poet
πότε when?
πότερος which, whichever of two
πρόγονος elder, ancestor ~genus
προθέω run from, lead to the fray
πρόθυμος (ὑ) willing, eager ~fume
σαυτοῦ yourself
σαφής clear, understandable
σκῶμμα -τος (n, 3) joke
σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
σοφός skilled, clever, wise
συγγένεια kinship
συγχωρέω accede, concede
συμπροθυμέομαι (υῦ) share in eagerness with
σχεδόν near, approximately at
 ~ischemia
τέχνη craft, art, plan, contrivance
 ~technology

τοίνυν well, then

τρυφάω luxuriate, revel ~drop

ὑπόθεσις -εως (f) proposal; subject;

hypothesis

φυτεύω plant, grow, cause, prepare

~physics

ΣΩΚΡΑΤΗΣ. ἀλλ' ἐγὼ πειράσομαι σαφέστερον φράσαι. λέγομέν τι φερόμενον καὶ φέρον καὶ ἀγόμενον καὶ ἄγον καὶ ὀρώμενον καὶ ὀρών καὶ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα μανθάνεις ὅτι ἕτερα ἀλλήλων ἐστὶ καὶ ἡ ἕτερα;

ΕΥΘΥΦΩΝ. ἔγωγέ μοι δοκῶ μανθάνειν.

ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν καὶ φιλούμενόν τί ἐστὶν καὶ τούτου ἕτερον τὸ φιλοῦν;

ΕΥΘ. πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

ΣΩ. λέγε δή μοι, πότερον τὸ φερόμενον διότι φέρεται φερόμενόν ἐστιν, ἢ δι' ἄλλο τι; γ ΕΥΘ. οὐκ, ἀλλὰ διὰ τοῦτο.

ΣΩ. καὶ τὸ ἀγόμενον δὴ διότι ἄγεται, καὶ τὸ ὀρώμενον διότι ὀράται;

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ γε.

ΣΩ. οὐκ ἄρα διότι ὀρώμενόν γέ ἐστιν, διὰ τοῦτο ὀράται, ἀλλὰ τὸ ἐναντίον διότι ὀράται, διὰ τοῦτο ὀρώμενον· οὐδὲ διότι ἀγόμενόν ἐστιν, διὰ τοῦτο ἄγεται, ἀλλὰ διότι ἄγεται, διὰ τοῦτο ἀγόμενον· οὐδὲ διότι φερόμενον φέρεται, ἀλλὰ διότι φέρεται φερόμενον. ἄρα κατάδηλον, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, ὃ βούλομαι λέγειν; βούλομαι δὲ τόδε, ὅτι εἴ τι γίγνεται ἢ τι πάσχει, οὐχ ὅτι γιγνόμενόν ἐστι γίγνεται, ἀλλ' ὅτι γίγνεται γιγνόμενόν ἐστιν· οὐδ' ὅτι πάσχον ἐστὶ πάσχει, ἀλλ' ὅτι πάσχει πάσχον ἐστίν· ἢ οὐ συγχωρεῖς οὕτω;

ΕΥΘ. ἔγωγε.

ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν καὶ τὸ φιλούμενον ἢ γιγνόμενόν τί ἐστὶν ἢ πάσχον τι ὑπὸ του;

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ γε.

ΣΩ. καὶ τοῦτο ἄρα οὕτως ἔχει ὥσπερ τὰ πρότερα· οὐχ ὅτι φιλούμενόν ἐστὶν φιλεῖται ὑπὸ ὧν φιλεῖται, ἀλλ' ὅτι φιλεῖται φιλούμενον;

ΕΥΘ. ἀνάγκη.

ΣΩ. τί δὴ οὖν λέγομεν περὶ τοῦ οσίου, ὦ Εὐθύφρων; ἄλλο τι φιλεῖται ὑπὸ θεῶν πάντων, ὥς ὁ σὸς λόγος; γ ΕΥΘ. ναί.

ΣΩ. ἄρα διὰ τοῦτο, ὅτι ὁσιόν ἐστιν, ἢ δι' ἄλλο τι;

ΕΥΘ. οὐκ, ἀλλὰ διὰ τοῦτο.

ΣΩ. διότι ἄρα ὁσιόν ἐστιν φιλεῖται, ἀλλ' οὐχ ὅτι φιλεῖται, διὰ τοῦτο ὁσιόν ἐστιν;

ΕΥΘ. ἔοικεν.

ΣΩ. ἀλλὰ μὲν δὴ διότι γε φιλεῖται ὑπὸ θεῶν φιλούμενόν ἐστι καὶ θεοφιλές.

ΕΥΘ. πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

ΣΩ. οὐκ ἄρα τὸ θεοφιλές ὁσιόν ἐστιν, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, οὐδὲ τὸ ὅσιον θεοφιλές, ὡς σὺ λέγεις, ἀλλ' ἕτερον τοῦτο τούτου.

ΕΥΘ. πῶς δὴ, ὦ Σώκρατες; γ ΣΩ. ὅτι ὁμολογοῦμεν τὸ μὲν ὅσιον διὰ τοῦτο φιλεῖσθαι, ὅτι ὁσιόν ἐστιν, ἀλλ' οὐ διότι φιλεῖται ὅσιον εἶναι· ἢ γάρ;

ΕΥΘ. ναί.

ΣΩ. τὸ δέ γε θεοφιλές ὅτι φιλεῖται ὑπὸ θεῶν, αὐτῷ τούτῳ τῷ φιλεῖσθαι θεοφιλές εἶναι, ἀλλ' οὐχ ὅτι θεοφιλές, διὰ τοῦτο φιλεῖσθαι.

ΕΥΘ. ἀληθῆ λέγεις.

ΣΩ. ἀλλ' εἰ γε ταῦτόν ἦν, ὦ φίλε Εὐθύφρων, τὸ θεοφιλές καὶ τὸ ὅσιον, εἰ μὲν διὰ τὸ ὅσιον εἶναι ἐφιλεῖτο τὸ ὅσιον, καὶ διὰ τὸ θεοφιλές εἶναι ἐφιλεῖτο ἂν τὸ θεοφιλές, εἰ δὲ διὰ τὸ φιλεῖσθαι ὑπὸ θεῶν τὸ θεοφιλές θεοφιλές ἦν, καὶ τὸ ὅσιον ἂν διὰ τὸ φιλεῖσθαι ὅσιον ἦν· νῦν δὲ ὁρᾷς ὅτι ἐναντίως ἔχοντες, ὡς παντάπασιν ἐτέρω ὄντι ἀλλήλων. τὸ μὲν γάρ, ὅτι φιλεῖται, ἐστὶν οἶον φιλεῖσθαι· τὸ δ' ὅτι ἐστὶν οἶον φιλεῖσθαι, διὰ τοῦτο φιλεῖται. καὶ κινδυνεύεις, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, ἐρωτώμενος τὸ ὅσιον ὅτι ποτ' ἐστίν, τὴν μὲν οὐσίαν¹ μοι αὐτοῦ οὐ βούλεσθαι δηλῶσαι, πάθος δέ τι περὶ αὐτοῦ λέγειν, ὅτι πέπονθε τοῦτο τὸ ὅσιον, φιλεῖσθαι ὑπὸ πάντων θεῶν· ὅτι δὲ ὄν, οὐπω εἶπες. εἰ οὖν σοι φίλον, μή με

¹ property; essence

ἀποκρύψει ἀλλὰ πάλιν εἰπὲ ἐξ ἀρχῆς τί ποτε ὄν τὸ ὅσιον εἴτε φιλεῖται ὑπὸ θεῶν εἴτε ὀτιδὴ πάσχει— οὐ γὰρ περὶ τούτου διοισόμεθα— ἀλλ' εἰπὲ προθύμως τί ἐστὶν τό τε ὅσιον καὶ τὸ ἀνόσιον;

ΕΥΘ. ἀλλ', ὦ Σώκρατες, οὐκ ἔχω ἔγωγε ὅπως σοι εἴπω ὃ νοῶ· περιέρχεται γάρ πως ἡμῖν αἰὲ ὃ ἂν προθώμεθα καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλει μένειν ὅπου ἂν ἰδρυσώμεθα αὐτό.

ΣΩ. τοῦ ἡμετέρου προγόνου, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, ἔοικεν εἶναι Δαιδάλου τὰ ὑπὸ σοῦ λεγόμενα. καὶ εἰ μὲν αὐτὰ ἐγὼ ἔλεγον καὶ ἐτιθέμην, ἴσως ἂν με ἐπέσκωπτες ὡς ἄρα καὶ ἐμοὶ κατὰ τὴν ἐκείνου συγγένειαν τὰ ἐν τοῖς λόγοις ἔργα ἀποδιδράσκει καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλει μένειν ὅπου ἂν τις αὐτὰ θῇ· νῦν δὲ σαὶ γὰρ αἱ ὑποθέσεις εἰσὶν. ἄλλου δὴ τίνος δεῖ σκώμματος;² οὐ γὰρ ἐθέλουσι σοὶ μένειν, ὡς καὶ αὐτῷ σοὶ δοκεῖ.

ΕΥΘ. ἐμοὶ δὲ δοκεῖ σχεδόν τι τοῦ αὐτοῦ σκώμματος, ὦ Σώκρατες, δεῖσθαι τὰ λεγόμενα· τὸ γὰρ περιέναι αὐτοῖς τοῦτο καὶ μὴ μένειν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ οὐκ ἐγὼ εἰμι ὁ ἐντιθείς, ἀλλὰ σύ μοι δοκεῖς ὁ Δαίδαλος, ἐπεὶ ἐμοῦ γε ἔνεκα ἔμενεν ἂν ταῦτα οὕτως.

ΣΩ. κινδυνεύω ἄρα, ὦ ἐταῖρε, ἐκείνου τοῦ ἀνδρὸς δεινότερος γεγονέναι τὴν τέχνην τοσοῦτῳ, ὅσῳ ὁ μὲν τὰ αὐτοῦ μόνᾳ ἐποίει οὐ μένοντα, ἐγὼ δὲ πρὸς τοῖς ἑμαυτοῦ, ὡς ἔοικε, καὶ τὰ ἀλλότρια. καὶ δῆτα³ τοῦτό μοι τῆς τέχνης ἐστὶ κομψότατον, ὅτι ἄκων εἰμὶ σοφός· ἐβουλόμην γὰρ ἂν μοι τοὺς λόγους μένειν καὶ ἀκινήτως ἰδρῦσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ πρὸς τῇ Δαιδάλου σοφίᾳ τὰ Ταντάλου χρήματα γενέσθαι. καὶ τούτων μὲν ἄδην· ἐπειδὴ δέ μοι δοκεῖς σὺ τρυφᾶν,⁴ αὐτός σοι συμπροθυμήσομαι δεῖξαι ὅπως ἂν με διδάξης περὶ τοῦ ὀσίου. καὶ μὴ προαποκάμης· ἰδὲ γὰρ εἰ οὐκ ἀναγκαῖόν σοι δοκεῖ δίκαιον εἶναι πᾶν τὸ ὅσιον.

ΕΥΘ. ἔμοιγε.

ΣΩ. ἄρ' οὖν καὶ πᾶν τὸ δίκαιον ὅσιον; ἢ τὸ μὲν ὅσιον πᾶν δίκαιον, τὸ δὲ δίκαιον οὐ πᾶν ὅσιον, ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν αὐτοῦ ὅσιον, τὸ δέ τι καὶ ἄλλο;

ΕΥΘ. οὐχ ἔπομαι, ὦ Σώκρατες, τοῖς λεγομένοις.

² joke ³ emphatic δῆ ⁴ luxuriate, revel

ΣΩ. καὶ μὴν νεώτερός γέ μου εἶ οὐκ ἔλαττον ἢ ὅσω σοφώτερος· ἀλλ', ὁ λέγω, τρυφᾷς ὑπὸ πλούτου τῆς σοφίας. ἀλλ', ὦ μακάριε, σύντεινε σαυτόν· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ χαλεπὸν κατανοῆσαι ὁ λέγω. λέγω γὰρ δὴ τὸ ἐναντίον ἢ ὁ ποιητῆς ἐποίησεν ὁ ποιήσας— Ζῆνα δὲ τὸν θ' ἔρξαντα καὶ ὃς τάδε πάντ' ἐφύτευσεν οὐκ ἐθέλει νεικεῖν· ἵνα γὰρ δέος ἔνθα καὶ αἰδώς. . 20 ἐγὼ οὖν τούτῳ διαφέρομαι τῷ ποιητῇ. εἵπω σοι ὅπη;

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ γε.

ΣΩ. οὐ δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι ἵνα δέος ἔνθα καὶ αἰδώς πολλοὶ γάρ μοι δοκοῦσι καὶ νόσους καὶ πενίας καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ τοιαῦτα δεδιότες δεδιέναι μὲν, αἰδεῖσθαι δὲ μηδὲν ταῦτα ἃ δεδίασιν· οὐ καὶ σοὶ δοκεῖ;

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ γε.

ΣΩ. ἀλλ' ἵνα γε αἰδώς ἔνθα καὶ δέος εἶναι· ἐπεὶ ἔστιν ὅστις αἰδούμενός τι πρᾶγμα καὶ αἰσχυρόμενος οὐ πεφόβηται τε καὶ δέδοικεν ἅμα δόξαν πονηρίας;

ΕΥΘ. δέδοικε μὲν οὖν.

ΣΩ. οὐκ ἄρ' ὀρθῶς ἔχει λέγειν· ἵνα γὰρ δέος ἔνθα καὶ αἰδώς, ἀλλ' ἵνα μὲν αἰδώς ἔνθα καὶ δέος, οὐ μέντοι ἵνα γε δέος πανταχοῦ αἰδώς· ἐπὶ πλεόν γὰρ οἶμαι δέος αἰδοῦς. μόριον γὰρ αἰδώς δέους ὥσπερ ἀριθμοῦ περιττόν, ὥστε οὐχ ἵναπερ ἀριθμὸς ἔνθα καὶ περιττόν, ἵνα δὲ περιττόν ἔνθα καὶ ἀριθμός. ἔπη γὰρ που νῦν γε;

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ γε.

ΣΩ. τὸ τοιοῦτον τοίνυν καὶ ἐκεῖ λέγων ἡρώτων· ἄρα ἵνα

gods.

EUTHYPHRO: I do not understand your meaning, Socrates.

SOCRATES: I will endeavour to explain: we, speak of carrying and we speak of being carried, of leading and being led, seeing and being seen. You know that in all such cases there is a difference, and you know also in what the difference lies?

EUTHYPHRO: I think that I understand.

SOCRATES: And is not that which is beloved distinct from that which loves?

EUTHYPHRO: Certainly.

SOCRATES: Well; and now tell me, is that which is carried in this state of carrying because it is carried, or for some other reason?

EUTHYPHRO: No; that is the reason.

SOCRATES: And the same is true of what is led and of what is seen?

EUTHYPHRO: True.

SOCRATES: And a thing is not seen because it is visible, but conversely, visible because it is seen; nor is a thing led because it is in the state of being led, or carried because it is in the state of being carried, but the converse of this. And now I think, Euthyphro, that my meaning will be intelligible; and my meaning is, that any state of action or passion implies previous action or passion. It does not become because it is becoming, but it is in a state of becoming because it becomes; neither does it suffer because it is in a state of suffering, but it is in a state of suffering because it suffers. Do you not agree?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes.

SOCRATES: Is not that which is loved in some state either of becoming or suffering?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes.

SOCRATES: And the same holds as in the previous instances; the state of being loved follows the act of being loved, and not the act the state.

EUTHYPHRO: Certainly.

SOCRATES: And what do you say of piety, Euthyphro: is not piety, according to your definition, loved by all the gods?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes.

SOCRATES: Because it is pious or holy, or for some other reason?

EUTHYPHRO: No, that is the reason.

SOCRATES: It is loved because it is holy, not holy because it is loved?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes.

SOCRATES: And that which is dear to the gods is loved by them, and is in a state to be loved of them because it is loved of them?

EUTHYPHRO: Certainly.

SOCRATES: Then that which is dear to the gods, Euthyphro, is not holy, nor is that which is holy loved of God, as you affirm; but they are two different things.

EUTHYPHRO: How do you mean, Socrates?

SOCRATES: I mean to say that the holy has been acknowledged by us to be loved of God because it is holy, not to be holy because it is loved.

EUTHYPHRO: Yes.

SOCRATES: But that which is dear to the gods is dear to them because it is loved by them, not loved by them because it is dear to them.

EUTHYPHRO: True.

SOCRATES: But, friend Euthyphro, if that which is holy is the same with that which is dear to God, and is loved because it is holy, then that which is dear to God would have been loved as being dear to God; but if that which is dear to God is dear to him because loved by him, then that which is holy would have been holy because loved by him. But now you see that the reverse is the case, and that they are quite different from one another. For one (theophiles) is of a kind to be loved cause it is loved, and the other (osion) is loved because it is of a kind to be loved. Thus you appear to me, Euthyphro, when I ask you what is the essence of holiness, to offer an attribute only, and not the essence—the attribute of being loved by all the gods. But you still refuse to explain to me the nature of holiness. And therefore, if you please, I will ask you not to hide your treasure, but to tell me once more what holiness or piety really is, whether dear to the gods or not (for that is a matter about which we will not quarrel); and what is impiety?

EUTHYPHRO: I really do not know, Socrates, how to express what I mean. For somehow or other our arguments, on whatever ground we rest them, seem to turn round and walk away from us.

SOCRATES: Your words, Euthyphro, are like the handiwork of my ancestor Daedalus; and if I were the sayer or propounder of them, you might say that my arguments walk away and will not remain fixed where they are placed because I am a descendant of his. But now, since these notions are your own, you must find some other gibe, for they certainly, as you yourself allow, show an inclination to be on the move.

EUTHYPHRO: Nay, Socrates, I shall still say that you are the Daedalus who sets arguments in motion; not I, certainly, but you make them move or go round, for they would never have stirred, as far as I am concerned.

SOCRATES: Then I must be a greater than Daedalus: for whereas he only made his own inventions to move, I move those of other people as well. And the beauty of it is, that I would rather not. For I would give the wisdom of Daedalus, and the wealth of Tantalus, to be able to detain them and keep them fixed. But enough of this. As I perceive that you are lazy, I will myself endeavour to show you how you might instruct me in the nature of piety; and I hope that you will not grudge your labour. Tell me, then—Is not that which is pious necessarily just?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes.

SOCRATES: And is, then, all which is just pious? or, is that which is pious all just, but that which is just, only in part and not all, pious?

EUTHYPHRO: I do not understand you, Socrates.

SOCRATES: And yet I know that you are as much wiser than I am, as you are younger. But, as I was saying, revered friend, the abundance of your wisdom makes you lazy. Please to exert yourself, for there is no real difficulty in understanding me. What I mean I may explain by an illustration of what I do not mean. The poet (Stasinus) sings—‘Of Zeus, the author and creator of all these things, You will not tell: for where there is fear there is also reverence.’

Now I disagree with this poet. Shall I tell you in what respect?

EUTHYPHRO: By all means.

SOCRATES: I should not say that where there is fear there is also reverence; for I am sure that many persons fear poverty and disease, and the like evils, but I do not perceive that they reverence the objects of their fear.

EUTHYPHRO: Very true.

SOCRATES: But where reverence is, there is fear; for he who has a feeling of reverence and shame about the commission of any action, fears and is afraid

of an ill reputation.

EUTHYPHRO: No doubt.

SOCRATES: Then we are wrong in saying that where there is fear there is also reverence; and we should say, where there is reverence there is also fear. But there is not always reverence where there is fear; for fear is a more extended notion, and reverence is a part of fear, just as the odd is a part of number, and number is a more extended notion than the odd. I suppose that you follow me now?

EUTHYPHRO: Quite well.

SOCRATES: That was the sort of question which I meant to raise

vocabulary

αἰτέω ask for ~etiology
 αἵτησις -εως (f) request, demand
 ἀκολουθέω follow
 ἀκριβής (i) exact
 ἀνατρέπω defeat, thwart ~trophy
 ἀνέρομαι ask a question, ask about,
 go searching through
 ἀπλός single; simple ~haploid
 ἀποτρέπω divert from ~trophy
 ἀριθμέω to count ~arithmetic
 ἀριθμός number
 ἄρτιος suitable
 ἀσέβεια impiety
 ἀσεβής profane
 βλάβη harm
 βλάπτω break, make fail
 βραχύς low, short
 γεωργός farming
 δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous
 διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
 ~practice
 δόσις -εως (f) gift, loan ~donate
 δωρέω give ~donate
 ἐνδεής inadequate
 ἐξευρίσκω find; discover ~eureka
 ἐπειδάν when, after
 ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
 ἐπιστήμη skill, knowledge
 ἐργασία work, business; guild
 ἐρωτάω ask about something
 εὐσεβής pious
 ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,
 direct, stop ~station
 θεραπείη -ας service, tending
 θεραπεύω help, serve ~therapy
 θύον kind of tree

θύω (i) rush; sacrifice ~θύω
 ἱατρός (α) physician
 ἵππικός of horses ~hippo
 κεφάλαιος main point; chief
 κοινός communal, ordinary
 μηκέτι no more
 μόριον piece, member; part of
 speech
 ναί yea
 ναυπηγέω build ships
 νίκη (i) victory ~Nike
 οἰκοδόμος builder, architect
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
 ὀνομάζω to address, name ~name
 ὅπη wherever, however
 ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just
 ~orthogonal
 ὀρθόω stand up
 ὀσιότης -τος (f) piety
 οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
 οὐπω no longer
 πανταχοῦ everywhere; completely
 ποῖος what kind
 πρόθυμος (i) willing, eager ~fume
 συγχωρέω accede, concede
 συνίημι send together; hear, notice,
 understand ~jet
 τοίνυν well, then
 τοιόσδε such
 τροφή food, upkeep ~atrophy
 ὑγία health
 ὑπάγω lead under the yoke, lead
 away from ~demagogue
 ὑπηρέτης -ου (m, 1) servant, officer
 χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma
 ὡσαύτως in the same way
 ὠφέλεια -ίας profit
 ὠφελέω help, be useful

δίκαιον ἔνθα καὶ ὅσιον; ἢ ἵνα μὲν ὅσιον ἔνθα καὶ δίκαιον, ἵνα δὲ δίκαιον οὐ πανταχοῦ ὅσιον· μόριον γὰρ τοῦ δικαίου τὸ ὅσιον; οὕτω φῶμεν ἢ ἄλλως σοι δοκεῖ;

ΕΥΘΥΦΩΝ. οὐκ, ἀλλ' οὕτω. φαίνη γάρ μοι ὀρθῶς λέγειν.

ΣΩΚΡΑΤΗΣ. ὄρα δὴ τὸ μετὰ τοῦτο. εἰ γὰρ μέρος τὸ ὅσιον τοῦ δικαίου, δεῖ δὴ ἡμᾶς, ὥς ἔοικεν, ἐξευρεῖν τὸ ποῖον μέρος ἂν εἴη τοῦ δικαίου τὸ ὅσιον. εἰ μὲν οὖν σύ με ἡρώτας τι τῶν νυνδῆ, οἷον ποῖον μέρος ἐστὶν ἀριθμοῦ τὸ ἄρτιον¹ καὶ τίς ὢν τυγχάνει οὗτος ὁ ἀριθμός, εἶπον ἂν ὅτι ὅς ἂν μὴ σκαληνὸς ᾖ ἀλλ' ἰσοσκελὴς· ἢ οὐ δοκεῖ σοι;

ΕΥΘ. ἔμοιγε.

ΣΩ. πειρῶ δὴ καὶ σὺν ἐμὲ οὕτω διδάξαι τὸ ποῖον μέρος τοῦ δικαίου ὁσιόν ἐστιν, ἵνα καὶ Μελήτω λέγωμεν μηκέθ' ἡμᾶς ἀδικεῖν μηδὲ ἀσεβείας γράφεσθαι, ὥς ἱκανῶς ἤδη παρὰ σοῦ μεμαθηκότας τά τε εὐσεβῆ καὶ ὅσια καὶ τὰ μὴ.

ΕΥΘ. τοῦτο τοίνυν ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ, ὦ Σώκρατες, τὸ μέρος τοῦ δικαίου εἶναι εὐσεβές τε καὶ ὅσιον, τὸ περὶ τὴν τῶν θεῶν θεραπείαν, τὸ δὲ περὶ τὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων τὸ λοιπὸν εἶναι τοῦ δικαίου μέρος.

ΣΩ. καὶ καλῶς γέ μοι, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, φαίνη λέγειν, ἀλλὰ σμικροῦ τινος ἔτι ἐνδείξ ειμι· τὴν γὰρ θεραπείαν οὕτω συνήμι ἥντινα ὀνομάζεις. οὐ γάρ που λέγεις γε, οἰαίπερ καὶ αἱ περὶ τὰ ἄλλα θεραπείαι εἰσιν, τοιαύτην καὶ περὶ θεοῦς— λέγομεν γάρ που— οἷον φαμεν ἵππους οὐ πᾶς ἐπίσταται θεραπεύειν ἀλλὰ ὁ ἵππικός· ἢ γάρ;

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ γε.

ΣΩ. ἢ γάρ που ἵππικὴ ἵππων θεραπεία.

ΕΥΘ. ναί.

ΣΩ. οὐδέ γε κύνας πᾶς ἐπίσταται θεραπεύειν ἀλλὰ ὁ κυνηγετικός.

ΕΥΘ. οὕτω.

¹ suitable

ΣΩ. ἡ γάρ που κυνηγετικὴ κυνῶν θεραπεία.

ΕΥΘ. ναί.

ΣΩ. ἡ δέ γε βοηλατικὴ βοῶν.

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ γε.

ΣΩ. ἡ δὲ δὴ ὁσιότης τε καὶ εὐσέβεια θεῶν, ὦ Εὐθύφρων; οὕτω λέγεις;

ΕΥΘ. ἔγωγε.

ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν θεραπεία γε πᾶσα ταῦτόν διαπράττεται; οἷον τοιόνδε· ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ τινί ἐστι καὶ ὠφελία τοῦ θεραπευομένου, ὥσπερ ὁρᾷς δὴ ὅτι οἱ ἵπποι ὑπὸ τῆς ἵππικῆς θεραπευόμενοι ὠφελοῦνται καὶ βελτίους γίνονται· ἢ οὐ δοκοῦσί σοι;

ΕΥΘ. ἔμοιγε.

ΣΩ. καὶ οἱ κύνες γέ που ὑπὸ τῆς κυνηγετικῆς, καὶ οἱ βόες ὑπὸ τῆς βοηλατικῆς, καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα ὡσαύτως· ἢ ἐπὶ βλάβῃ οἶε τοῦ θεραπευομένου τὴν θεραπείαν εἶναι;

ΕΥΘ. μὰ Δί' οὐκ ἔγωγε.

ΣΩ. ἀλλ' ἐπ' ὠφελία;

ΕΥΘ. πῶς δ' οὔ;

ΣΩ. ἡ οὖν καὶ ἡ ὁσιότης θεραπεία οὔσα θεῶν ὠφελία τέ ἐστι θεῶν καὶ βελτίους τοὺς θεοὺς ποιεῖ; καὶ σὺ τοῦτο συγχωρήσῃς ἄν, ὥς ἐπειδάν τι ὅσιον ποιῇς, βελτίω τινὰ τῶν θεῶν ἀπεργάζῃ;

ΕΥΘ. μὰ Δί' οὐκ ἔγωγε.

ΣΩ. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἐγώ, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, οἶμαί σε τοῦτο λέγειν —πολλοῦ καὶ δέω— ἀλλὰ τούτου δὴ ἔνεκα καὶ ἀνηρόμην τίνα ποτὲ λέγοις τὴν θεραπείαν τῶν θεῶν, οὐχ ἡγούμενός σε τοιαύτην λέγειν.

ΕΥΘ. καὶ ὁρθῶς γε, ὦ Σώκρατες· οὐ γὰρ τοιαύτην λέγω.

ΣΩ. εἶεν· ἀλλὰ τίς δὴ θεῶν θεραπεία εἴη ἂν ἡ ὁσιότης;

ΕΥΘ. ἤνπερ, ὦ Σώκρατες, οἱ δοῦλοι τοὺς δεσπότας θεραπεύουσιν.

ΣΩ. μανθάνω· ὑπηρετική τις ἂν, ὡς ἔοικεν, εἴη θεοῖς.

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

ΣΩ. ἔχouis ἂν οὖν εἰπεῖν ἡ ἱατροῖς ὑπηρετική εἰς τίνος ἔργου ἀπεργασίαν τυγχάνει οὐσα ὑπηρετική; οὐκ εἰς ὑγείας² οἶε;

ΕΥΘ. ἔγωγε.

ΣΩ. τί δὲ ἡ ναυπηγοῖς ὑπηρετική; εἰς τίνος ἔργου ἀπεργασίαν ὑπηρετική ἐστιν;

ΕΥΘ. δῆλον ὅτι, ὦ Σώκρατες, εἰς πλοίου.

ΣΩ. καὶ ἡ οἰκοδόμοις γέ που εἰς οἰκίας;

ΕΥΘ. ναί.

ΣΩ. εἰπέ δὴ, ὦ ἄριστε· ἡ δὲ θεοῖς ὑπηρετική εἰς τίνος ἔργου ἀπεργασίαν ὑπηρετική ἂν εἴη; δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι σὺ οἶσθα, ἐπειδήπερ τά γε θεῖα κάλλιστα φῆς εἰδέναι ἀνθρώπων.

ΕΥΘ. καὶ ἀληθῆ γε λέγω, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ΣΩ. εἰπέ δὴ πρὸς Διὸς τί ποτέ ἐστιν ἐκείνο τὸ πάγκαλον ἔργον ὃ οἱ θεοὶ ἀπεργάζονται ἡμῖν ὑπηρεταῖς χρώμενοι;

ΕΥΘ. πολλὰ καὶ καλά, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ΣΩ. καὶ γὰρ οἱ στρατηγοί, ὦ φίλε· ἀλλ' ὅμως τὸ κεφάλαιον αὐτῶν ῥαδίως ἂν εἴποις, ὅτι νίκην ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ἀπεργάζονται· ἢ οὐ; γ ΕΥΘ. πῶς δ' οὐ;

ΣΩ. πολλὰ δέ γ', οἶμαι, καὶ καλὰ καὶ οἱ γεωργοί· ἀλλ' ὅμως τὸ κεφάλαιον αὐτῶν ἐστιν τῆς ἀπεργασίας ἡ ἐκ τῆς γῆς τροφή.

² health

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ γε.

ΣΩ. τί δὲ δὴ τῶν πολλῶν καὶ καλῶν ἃ οἱ θεοὶ ἀπεργάζονται; τί τὸ κεφάλαιόν ἐστι τῆς ἐργασίας;³

ΕΥΘ. καὶ ὀλίγον σοι πρότερον εἶπον, ὦ Σώκρατες, ὅτι πλείονος ἔργου ἐστὶν ἀκριβῶς πάντα ταῦτα ὥς ἔχει μαθεῖν· τόδε μέντοι σοι ἀπλῶς λέγω, ὅτι ἐὰν μὲν κεχαρισμένα τις ἐπίσθηται τοῖς θεοῖς λέγειν τε καὶ πράττειν εὐχόμενός τε καὶ θύων, ταῦτ' ἐστὶ τὰ ὅσια, καὶ σφίζει τὰ τοιαῦτα τοὺς τε ἰδίους οἴκους καὶ τὰ κοινὰ τῶν πόλεων· τὰ δ' ἐναντία τῶν κεχαρισμένων ἀσεβῇ, ἃ δὴ καὶ ἀνατρέπει ἅπαντα καὶ ἀπόλλυσιν.

ΣΩ. ἦ πολὺ μοι διὰ βραχυτέρων, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, εἰ ἐβούλου, εἶπες ἂν τὸ κεφάλαιον ὧν ἡρώτων· ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὐ πρόθυμός με εἰ διδάξει— δῆλος εἶ. καὶ γὰρ νῦν ἐπειδὴ ἐπ' αὐτῷ ἦσθα ἀπετράπου, ὃ εἰ ἀπεκρίνω, ἱκανῶς ἂν ἤδη παρὰ σοῦ τὴν ὁσιότητα ἐμεμαθήκη. νῦν δὲ ἀνάγκη γὰρ τὸν ἐρώντα τῷ ἐρωμένῳ ἀκολουθεῖν ὅπῃ ἂν ἐκεῖνος ὑπάγῃ, τί δὴ αὖ λέγεις τὸ ὅσιον εἶναι καὶ τὴν ὁσιότητα; οὐχὶ ἐπιστήμην τινὰ τοῦ θύειν τε καὶ εὐχέσθαι;

ΕΥΘ. ἔγωγε.

ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν τὸ θύειν δωρεῖσθαι⁴ ἐστὶ τοῖς θεοῖς, τὸ δ' εὐχέσθαι αἰτεῖν τοὺς θεούς;

ΕΥΘ. καὶ μάλα, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ΣΩ. ἐπιστήμη ἄρα αἰτήσεως⁵ καὶ δόσεως θεοῖς ὁσιότης ἂν εἴη ἐκ τούτου τοῦ λόγου.

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ καλῶς, ὦ Σώκρατες, συνήκας ὃ εἶπον.

³ work, business; guild ⁴ give ⁵ request, demand

when I asked whether the just is always the pious, or the pious always the just; and whether there may not be justice where there is not piety; for justice is the more extended notion of which piety is only a part. Do you dissent?

EUTHYPHRO: No, I think that you are quite right.

SOCRATES: Then, if piety is a part of justice, I suppose that we should enquire what part? If you had pursued the enquiry in the previous cases; for instance, if you had asked me what is an even number, and what part of number the even is, I should have had no difficulty in replying, a number which represents a figure having two equal sides. Do you not agree?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes, I quite agree.

SOCRATES: In like manner, I want you to tell me what part of justice is piety or holiness, that I may be able to tell Meletus not to do me injustice, or indict me for impiety, as I am now adequately instructed by you in the nature of piety or holiness, and their opposites.

EUTHYPHRO: Piety or holiness, Socrates, appears to me to be that part of justice which attends to the gods, as there is the other part of justice which attends to men.

SOCRATES: That is good, Euthyphro; yet still there is a little point about which I should like to have further information, What is the meaning of 'attention'? For attention can hardly be used in the same sense when applied to the gods as when applied to other things. For instance, horses are said to require attention, and not every person is able to attend to them, but only a person skilled in horsemanship. Is it not so?

EUTHYPHRO: Certainly.

SOCRATES: I should suppose that the art of horsemanship is the art of attending to horses?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes.

SOCRATES: Nor is every one qualified to attend to dogs, but only the huntsman?

EUTHYPHRO: True.

SOCRATES: And I should also conceive that the art of the huntsman is the art of attending to dogs?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes.

SOCRATES: As the art of the oxherd is the art of attending to oxen?

EUTHYPHRO: Very true.

SOCRATES: In like manner holiness or piety is the art of attending to the gods?—that would be your meaning, Euthyphro?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes.

SOCRATES: And is not attention always designed for the good or benefit of that to which the attention is given? As in the case of horses, you may observe that when attended to by the horseman's art they are benefited and improved, are they not?

EUTHYPHRO: True.

SOCRATES: As the dogs are benefited by the huntsman's art, and the oxen by the art of the oxherd, and all other things are tended or attended for their good and not for their hurt?

EUTHYPHRO: Certainly, not for their hurt.

SOCRATES: But for their good?

EUTHYPHRO: Of course.

SOCRATES: And does piety or holiness, which has been defined to be the art of attending to the gods, benefit or improve them? Would you say that when you do a holy act you make any of the gods better?

EUTHYPHRO: No, no; that was certainly not what I meant.

SOCRATES: And I, Euthyphro, never supposed that you did. I asked you the question about the nature of the attention, because I thought that you did not.

EUTHYPHRO: You do me justice, Socrates; that is not the sort of attention which I mean.

SOCRATES: Good: but I must still ask what is this attention to the gods which is called piety?

EUTHYPHRO: It is such, Socrates, as servants show to their masters.

SOCRATES: I understand—a sort of ministration to the gods.

EUTHYPHRO: Exactly.

SOCRATES: Medicine is also a sort of ministration or service, having in view the attainment of some object—would you not say of health?

EUTHYPHRO: I should.

SOCRATES: Again, there is an art which ministers to the ship-builder with a view to the attainment of some result?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes, Socrates, with a view to the building of a ship.

SOCRATES: As there is an art which ministers to the house-builder with a view to the building of a house?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes.

SOCRATES: And now tell me, my good friend, about the art which ministers to the gods: what work does that help to accomplish? For you must surely know if, as you say, you are of all men living the one who is best instructed in religion.

EUTHYPHRO: And I speak the truth, Socrates.

SOCRATES: Tell me then, oh tell me—what is that fair work which the gods do by the help of our ministrations?

EUTHYPHRO: Many and fair, Socrates, are the works which they do.

SOCRATES: Why, my friend, and so are those of a general. But the chief of them is easily told. Would you not say that victory in war is the chief of them?

EUTHYPHRO: Certainly.

SOCRATES: Many and fair, too, are the works of the husbandman, if I am not mistaken; but his chief work is the production of food from the earth?

EUTHYPHRO: Exactly.

SOCRATES: And of the many and fair things done by the gods, which is the chief or principal one?

EUTHYPHRO: I have told you already, Socrates, that to learn all these things accurately will be very tiresome. Let me simply say that piety or holiness is learning how to please the gods in word and deed, by prayers and sacrifices. Such piety is the salvation of families and states, just as the impious, which is displeasing to the gods, is their ruin and destruction.

SOCRATES: I think that you could have answered in much fewer words the chief question which I asked, Euthyphro, if you had chosen. But I see plainly that you are not disposed to instruct me—clearly not: else why, when we reached the point, did you turn aside? Had you only answered me I should have truly learned of you by this time the nature of piety. Now, as the asker of a question is necessarily dependent on the answerer, whither he leads I

must follow; and can only ask again, what is the pious, and what is piety?
Do you mean that they are a sort of science of praying and sacrificing?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes, I do.

SOCRATES: And sacrificing is giving to the gods, and prayer is asking of the gods?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes, Socrates.

SOCRATES: Upon this view, then, piety is a science of asking and giving?

vocabulary

ἄγνοια ignorance
 αἰσχύνω (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar
 αἰτέω ask for ~etiology
 αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology
 ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble
 ἀνόσιος unholy
 ἀντιδωρέομαι give in return, instead of
 ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
 ἀποκρύπτω hide away ~cryptic
 ἄρτι at the same time
 ἀτιμάζω (ι) insult, dishonor
 ἀτιμάω (ι) dishonor
 βαδίζω walk, proceed
 βέλτιστος best, noblest
 βίος life ~biology
 βιόω live; (mp) make a living ~biology
 γραφεύς -ος (m) painter
 γραφή painting; writing
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous
 δήποτε at some time
 εἴπερ if indeed
 ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily
 ἐμπορία commerce
 ἐμπορικός mercantile
 ἐνδείκνυμι (ῶ) address, consider
 ἐννοέω consider
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
 θεοφιλής beloved by the gods; loving God
 θής θητός (m) temporary worker?
 καταβάλλω throw down, cast off

~ballistic
 κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle
 ὁμολογέω agree with/to
 ὀνομάζω to address, name ~name
 ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just ~orthogonal
 ὀρθόω stand up
 ὀσιότης -τος (f) piety
 οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
 περίεμι be superior to; be left over; still exist
 περιέρχομαι go around; come next to
 πλεονεκτέω be greedy, take advantage
 ποῖ whither? how long?
 πότε when?
 πρεσβύτης -ου (ῶ, m, f) old person
 προσέχω direct to; think about
 σαφής clear, understandable
 σκεπτέος thing to consider, one who must consider
 σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch ~skeptical
 σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
 σοφός skilled, clever, wise
 σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry ~repudiate
 τέχνη craft, art, plan, contrivance ~technology
 τεχνικός skillful
 τοίνυν well, then
 φόνος killing ~offend
 χαμαί on/near the ground
 χαρίζομαι gratify ~charisma
 ὠφέλεια -ίας profit
 ὠφελέω help, be useful
 ὠφέλιμος helping, useful

ΣΩΚΡΑΤΗΣ. ἐπιθυμητῆς γάρ εἰμι, ὦ φίλε, τῆς σῆς σοφίας καὶ προσέχω τὸν νοῦν αὐτῇ, ὥστε οὐ χαμαὶ πεσεῖται ὅτι ἂν εἴπῃς. ἀλλὰ μοι λέξον τίς αὕτη ἡ ὑπηρεσία ἐστὶ τοῖς θεοῖς; αἰτεῖν τε φῆς αὐτοὺς καὶ διδόναι ἐκείνοις;

ΕΥΘΥΦΩΝ. ἔγωγε.

ΣΩ. ἄρ' οὖν οὐ τό γε ὀρθῶς αἰτεῖν ἂν εἴη ὧν δεόμεθα παρ' ἐκείνων, ταῦτα αὐτοὺς αἰτεῖν;

ΕΥΘ. ἀλλὰ τί;

ΣΩ. καὶ αὐτὸ διδόναι ὀρθῶς, ὧν ἐκείνοι τυγχάνουσιν δεόμενοι παρ' ἡμῶν, ταῦτα ἐκείνοις αὐτὸ ἀντιδωρεῖσθαι; οὐ γάρ που τεχνικόν γ' ἂν εἴη δωροφορεῖν διδόντα τῶ ταῦτα ὧν οὐδὲν δεῖται.

ΕΥΘ. ἀληθῆ λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ΣΩ. ἐμπορικὴ ἄρα τις ἂν εἴη, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, τέχνη ἡ ὁσιότης θεοῖς καὶ ἀνθρώποις παρ' ἀλλήλων.

ΕΥΘ. ἐμπορικὴ, εἰ οὕτως ἡδιόν σοι ὀνομάζω.

ΣΩ. ἀλλ' οὐδὲν ἡδιον ἔμοιγε, εἰ μὴ τυγχάνει ἀληθὲς ὄν. φράσον δέ μοι, τίς ἡ ὠφελία τοῖς θεοῖς τυγχάνει οὐσα ἀπὸ τῶν δώρων ὧν παρ' ἡμῶν λαμβάνουσιν; ἃ μὲν γὰρ διδῶσι παντὶ δῆλον· οὐδὲν γὰρ ἡμῖν ἐστὶν ἀγαθὸν ὅτι ἂν μὴ ἐκείνοι δῶσιν. ἃ δὲ παρ' ἡμῶν λαμβάνουσιν, τί ὠφελοῦνται; ἢ τοσοῦτον αὐτῶν πλεονεκτοῦμεν κατὰ τὴν ἐμπορίαν, ὥστε πάντα τὰ ἀγαθὰ παρ' αὐτῶν λαμβάνομεν, ἐκείνοι δὲ παρ' ἡμῶν οὐδέν;

ΕΥΘ. ἀλλ' οἶε, ὦ Σώκρατες, τοὺς θεοὺς ὠφελεῖσθαι ἀπὸ τούτων ἃ παρ' ἡμῶν λαμβάνουσιν; γ ΣΩ. ἀλλὰ τί δήποτ'¹ ἂν εἴη ταῦτα, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, τὰ παρ' ἡμῶν δῶρα τοῖς θεοῖς;

ΕΥΘ. τί δ' οἶε ἄλλο ἢ τιμὴ τε καὶ γέρα καί, ὅπερ ἐγὼ ἄρτι ἔλεγον, χάρις;

¹ at some time

ΣΩ. κεχαρισμένον ἄρα ἐστίν, ὦ Εὐθύφρων, τὸ ὅσιον, ἀλλ' οὐχὶ ὠφέλιμον οὐδὲ φίλον τοῖς θεοῖς; γ ΕΥΘ. οἶμαι ἔγωγε πάντων γε μάλιστα φίλον.

ΣΩ. τοῦτο ἄρ' ἐστὶν αὖ, ὡς ἔοικε, τὸ ὅσιον, τὸ τοῖς θεοῖς φίλον.

ΕΥΘ. μάλιστα γε.

ΣΩ. θαυμάσῃ οὖν ταῦτα λέγων ἐάν σοι οἱ λόγοι φαίνωνται μὴ μένοντες ἀλλὰ βαδίζοντες, καὶ ἐμὲ αἰτιάσῃ τὸν Δαίδαλον βαδίζοντας αὐτοὺς ποιεῖν, αὐτὸς ὢν πολὺ γε τεχνικώτερος τοῦ Δαιδάλου καὶ κύκλω περιμόντα ποιῶν; ἢ οὐκ αἰσθάνῃ ὅτι ὁ λόγος ἡμῖν περιελθὼν πάλιν εἰς ταῦτόν ἤκει; μέμνησαι γάρ που ὅτι ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν τό τε ὅσιον καὶ τὸ θεοφιλὲς οὐ ταῦτόν ἡμῖν ἐφάνη ἀλλ' ἕτερα ἀλλήλων· ἢ οὐ μέμνησαι;

ΕΥΘ. ἔγωγε.

ΣΩ. νῦν οὖν οὐκ ἐννοεῖς ὅτι τὸ τοῖς θεοῖς φίλον φῆς ὅσιον εἶναι; τοῦτο δ' ἄλλο τι ἢ θεοφιλὲς γίγνεται; ἢ οὐ;

ΕΥΘ. πάνυ γε.

ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν ἢ ἄρτι οὐ καλῶς ὡμολογοῦμεν, ἢ εἰ τότε καλῶς, νῦν οὐκ ὀρθῶς τιθέμεθα.

ΕΥΘ. ἔοικεν.

ΣΩ. ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἄρα ἡμῖν πάλιν σκεπτέον τί ἐστι τὸ ὅσιον, ὡς ἐγὼ πρὶν ἂν μάθω ἐκὼν εἶναι οὐκ ἀποδειλιάσω. ἀλλὰ μὴ με ἀτιμάσῃς ἀλλὰ παντὶ τρόπῳ προσσχὼν τὸν νοῦν ὅτι μάλιστα νῦν εἰπὲ τὴν ἀλήθειαν· οἶσθα γὰρ εἶπερ τις ἄλλος ἀνθρώπων, καὶ οὐκ ἀφετέος εἰ ὥσπερ ὁ Πρωτεύς πρὶν ἂν εἴπῃς. εἰ γὰρ μὴ ᾔδησθα σαφῶς τό τε ὅσιον καὶ τὸ ἀνόσιον, οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως ἂν ποτε ἐπεχείρησας ὑπὲρ ἀνδρὸς θητὸς² ἀνδρα πρεσβύτην πατέρα διωκᾶσθαι φόνου, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς θεοὺς ἂν ἔδεισας παρακινδυνεύειν μὴ οὐκ ὀρθῶς αὐτὸ ποιήσεις, καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἢ σχύνηθης· νῦν δὲ εἰ οἶδα ὅτι σαφῶς οἶε εἰδέναί

² temporary worker?

τό τε ὅσιον καὶ μή. εἰπὲ οὖν, ὦ βέλτιστε Εὐθύφρων, καὶ μὴ ἀποκρύψῃ
ὅτι αὐτὸ ἡγῇ.

ΕΥΘ. εἰς αὐθις τοῖνυν, ὦ Σώκρατες· νῦν γὰρ σπεύδω ποι, καί μοι ὥρα
ἀπιέναι.

ΣΩ. οἶα ποιεῖς, ὦ ἐταῖρε. ἀπ' ἐλπίδος με καταβαλὼν μεγάλης
ἀπέρχῃ ἣν εἶχον, ὥς παρὰ σοῦ μαθὼν τά τε ὅσια καὶ μὴ καὶ τῆς
πρὸς Μέλητον γραφῆς ἀπαλλάξομαι, ἐνδειξάμενος ἐκείνῳ ὅτι σοφὸς
ἤδη παρ' Εὐθύφρονος τὰ θεῖα γέγονα καὶ ὅτι οὐκέτι ὑπ' ἀγνοίας³
αὐτοσχεδιάζω οὐδὲ καινοτομῶ περὶ αὐτά, καὶ δὴ καὶ τὸν ἄλλον βίον
ὅτι ἄμεινον βιωσοίμην.⁴

³ ignorance ⁴ live; (mp) make a living

EUTHYPHRO: You understand me capitally, Socrates.

SOCRATES: Yes, my friend; the reason is that I am a votary of your science, and give my mind to it, and therefore nothing which you say will be thrown away upon me. Please then to tell me, what is the nature of this service to the gods? Do you mean that we prefer requests and give gifts to them?

EUTHYPHRO: Yes, I do.

SOCRATES: Is not the right way of asking to ask of them what we want?

EUTHYPHRO: Certainly.

SOCRATES: And the right way of giving is to give to them in return what they want of us. There would be no meaning in an art which gives to any one that which he does not want.

EUTHYPHRO: Very true, Socrates.

SOCRATES: Then piety, Euthyphro, is an art which gods and men have of doing business with one another?

EUTHYPHRO: That is an expression which you may use, if you like.

SOCRATES: But I have no particular liking for anything but the truth. I wish, however, that you would tell me what benefit accrues to the gods from our gifts. There is no doubt about what they give to us; for there is no good thing which they do not give; but how we can give any good thing to them in return is far from being equally clear. If they give everything and we give nothing, that must be an affair of business in which we have very greatly the advantage of them.

EUTHYPHRO: And do you imagine, Socrates, that any benefit accrues to the gods from our gifts?

SOCRATES: But if not, Euthyphro, what is the meaning of gifts which are conferred by us upon the gods?

EUTHYPHRO: What else, but tributes of honour; and, as I was just now saying, what pleases them?

SOCRATES: Piety, then, is pleasing to the gods, but not beneficial or dear to them?

EUTHYPHRO: I should say that nothing could be dearer.

SOCRATES: Then once more the assertion is repeated that piety is dear to the gods?

EUTHYPHRO: Certainly.

SOCRATES: And when you say this, can you wonder at your words not standing firm, but walking away? Will you accuse me of being the Daedalus who makes them walk away, not perceiving that there is another and far greater artist than Daedalus who makes them go round in a circle, and he is yourself; for the argument, as you will perceive, comes round to the same point. Were we not saying that the holy or pious was not the same with that which is loved of the gods? Have you forgotten?

EUTHYPHRO: I quite remember.

SOCRATES: And are you not saying that what is loved of the gods is holy; and is not this the same as what is dear to them — do you see?

EUTHYPHRO: True.

SOCRATES: Then either we were wrong in our former assertion; or, if we were right then, we are wrong now.

EUTHYPHRO: One of the two must be true.

SOCRATES: Then we must begin again and ask, What is piety? That is an enquiry which I shall never be weary of pursuing as far as in me lies; and I entreat you not to scorn me, but to apply your mind to the utmost, and tell me the truth. For, if any man knows, you are he; and therefore I must detain you, like Proteus, until you tell. If you had not certainly known the nature of piety and impiety, I am confident that you would never, on behalf of a serf, have charged your aged father with murder. You would not have run such a risk of doing wrong in the sight of the gods, and you would have had too much respect for the opinions of men. I am sure, therefore, that you know the nature of piety and impiety. Speak out then, my dear Euthyphro, and do not hide your knowledge.

EUTHYPHRO: Another time, Socrates; for I am in a hurry, and must go now.

SOCRATES: Alas! my companion, and will you leave me in despair? I was hoping that you would instruct me in the nature of piety and impiety; and then I might have cleared myself of Meletus and his indictment. I would have told him that I had been enlightened by Euthyphro, and had given up rash innovations and speculations, in which I indulged only through ignorance, and that now I am about to lead a better life.

vocabulary

αἰσχύνω (ō) spoil, disgrace,
 disfigure, mar
ἄλλοθι elsewhere, abroad
ἄλλοιός of another kind ~alien
ἄλογος without speech or reckoning
ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός,
 noble
ἀναβιβάζω make to mount, promote
ἀναγιγνώσκω recognize, read,
 understand, persuade
ἀναζητέω investigate, discover
ἀναίσχυντος shameless; shameful
ἀναλαμβάνω take up, recover,
 resume
ἀναπείθω (aor, plupf) seduce,
 persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust,
 obey, be confident in
ἀνέρομαι ask a question, ask about,
 go searching through
ἀνθρώπινος human
ἀποδείκνυμι (ō) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse
ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail
ἀπολογέομαι defend one's conduct
ἄπορος impassable, difficult
ἄρτι at the same time
ἀτιμάζω (i) insult, dishonor
γούν at least then
δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
διαβάλλω throw across; slander
 ~ballistic
διαβολή slander
διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
δικάζω judge
δικαστήριον court
δικαστής -οῦ (m, 1) judge, juror
δισσός double
ἐβδομήκοντα 70
εἰκῇ haphazardly; in vain
εἴσειμι go in; come in range; come

to mind ~ion
εἰσίσμι (mid) speed to ~jet
εἴωθα be accustomed, in the habit
ἐλέγχω shame; try, examine
ἐμμελής harmonious
ἐνθάδε here, hither
ἐνιοι some
ἐνταυθοῖ there
ἐξαιρέω pick, steal; dedicate;
 destroy ~heresy
ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus
ἔξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐξελέγχω convict, refute, test
ἐπαῖω (ᾱ) listen to, perceive
ἐπειδάν when, after
ἐπιδημέω inhabit; visit
ἐπιλανθάνω mp: forget ~Lethe
ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
ἐπιστάτης -ου (m, 1) suppliant,
 dependant ~station
ἐπιστήμη skill, knowledge
ἐπιστήμων skillful, clever ~station
ἐπιτυγχάνω meet, attain
ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
ἐρίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,
 direct, stop ~station
ἡλικία time of life, contemporaries
θορυβέω roar, cheer; disturb
ἵππικός of horses ~hippo
καίπερ even if
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
κατηγορέω accuse; indicate
κατηγορία accusation
κατήγορος accuser
κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf)
 there is a danger that
κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos
κρείσσων more powerful; better
κτησίς -ος (f) chattels
κωμωδία comedy
μακαρίζω congratulate ~macarism

μάρτυς witness
μειράκιον youngster
μέτειμι be among, go, follow ~ion
μετέωρος up in the air ~meteor
μισθόω rent out; (pass) be hired
μινᾶ mina
μόσχος calf (animal)
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὅπη wherever, however
οὐράνιος heavenly
παιδεύω raise; train
παίζω play ~pediatrician
πάλαι long ago ~paleo
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow
 ~jet
περιεργάζομαι belabor, work too
 hard on
περισσός prodigious, superfluous
περιφέρω carry around
πιθανός persuasive
πλάσσω form ~plaster
ποδαπός from what country, of
 what sort?
πόθεν from where?
ποῖος what kind
πόσος how many, much, far?
πραγματεύομαι work at
πρέπω be conspicuous, preeminent
 ~refurbish
προίξ -χός (f) gift, dowry
προσδοκάω expect
προσδοκέω be thought besides
προσέρχομαι come forward,
 surrender, come in
προσέχω direct to; think about
προσήκω belong to, it seems
πρόσοιδα (+χάριν) be grateful

besides
πῶλος (f) foal ~foal
πῶποτε never
ῥῆμα -τος (n, 3) a thing said
ῥήτωρ public speaker
σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptical
σκιαμαχέω shadow-box
σκοπάω watch, observe
σκοπέω behold, consider
σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
σοφιστής -οῦ (m, 1) expert
σοφός skilled, clever, wise
συγγιγνώσκω acknowledge; pardon
σύμπας (α) all together
σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion
συνίημι send together; hear, notice,
 understand ~jet
συνουσία society, sex
τέχνη craft, art, plan, contrivance
 ~technology
τράπεζα a table ~trapezoid
τραπεζεύς -ος (m) dog at a table
 ~trapezoid
ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's
 support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy
φάσκω declare, promise, think
 ~fame
φήμη speech, rumor ~fame
φθόνος malice, envy
φλυαρέω talk foolishly
φλυαρία nonsense
χείρων worse, more base, inferior,
 weaker
ψευδής lying, false ~pseudo-
ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie
 ~pseudo-

Ὅτι μὲν ὑμεῖς, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, πεπόνθατε ὑπὸ τῶν ἐμῶν κατηγορῶν, οὐκ οἶδα· ἐγὼ δ' οὖν καὶ αὐτὸς ὑπ' αὐτῶν ὀλίγου ἐμαυτοῦ ἐπελαθόμην, οὕτω πιθανῶς ἔλεγον. καίτοι ἀληθές γε ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν οὐδὲν εἰρήκασιν. μάλιστα δὲ αὐτῶν ἐν ἐθαύμασα τῶν πολλῶν ὧν ἐψεύσαντο, τοῦτο ἐν ᾧ ἔλεγον ὡς χρὴν ὑμᾶς εὐλαβεῖσθαι μὴ ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἐξαπατηθῆτε ὡς δεινοῦ ὄντος λέγειν. τὸ γὰρ μὴ αἰσχυνθῆναι ὅτι αὐτίκα ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἐξελεγχθήσονται ἔργῳ, ἐπειδὰν μηδ' ὅπωςτιοῦν φαίνωμαι δεινὸς λέγειν, τοῦτό μοι ἔδοξεν αὐτῶν ἀναισχυντότατον εἶναι, εἰ μὴ ἄρα δεινὸν καλοῦσιν οὗτοι λέγειν τὸν τάληθῃ λέγοντα· εἰ μὲν γὰρ τοῦτο λέγουσιν, ὁμολογοῖν ἂν ἔγωγε οὐ κατὰ τούτους εἶναι ῥήτωρ. οὗτοι μὲν οὖν, ὥσπερ ἐγὼ λέγω, ἢ τι ἢ οὐδὲν ἀληθὲς εἰρήκασιν, ὑμεῖς δέ μου ἀκούσεσθε πᾶσαν τὴν ἀλήθειαν— οὐ μέντοι μὰ Δία, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, κεκαλλιεπημένους γε λόγους, ὥσπερ οἱ τούτων, ῥήμασί τε καὶ ὀνόμασιν οὐδὲ κεκοσμημένους, ἀλλ' ἀκούσεσθε εἰκῇ¹ λεγόμενα τοῖς ἐπιτυχοῦσιν ὀνόμασιν— πιστεῦω γὰρ δίκαια εἶναι ἃ λέγω— καὶ μηδεὶς ὑμῶν προσδοκησάτω ἄλλως· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν δήπου πρέποι, ὦ ἄνδρες, τῇδε τῇ ἡλικίᾳ ὥσπερ μειρακίῳ πλάττοντι λόγους εἰς ὑμᾶς εἰσιέναι. καὶ μέντοι καὶ πάνν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, τοῦτο ὑμῶν δέομαι καὶ παρίεμαι· ἐὰν διὰ τῶν αὐτῶν λόγων ἀκούητέ μου ἀπολογουμένον δι' ὧν περ εἴωθα λέγειν καὶ ἐν ἀγορᾷ ἐπὶ τῶν τραπεζῶν, ἵνα ὑμῶν πολλοὶ ἀκηκόασι, καὶ ἄλλοι,² μῆτε θαυμάζωιν μῆτε θορυβεῖν τούτου ἔνεκα. ἔχει γὰρ οὕτως. νῦν ἐγὼ πρῶτον ἐπὶ δικαστήριον ἀναβέβηκα, ἔτη γεγωνὸς ἐβδομήκοντα· ἀτεχνῶς οὖν ξένως ἔχω τῆς ἐνθάδε λέξεως.

Ὡσπερ οὖν ἂν, εἰ τῷ ὄντι ξένος ἐτύγχανον ὧν, συνεγιγνώσκετε δήπου ἂν μοι εἰ ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ φωνῇ τε καὶ τῷ τρόπῳ ἔλεγον ἐν οἷσπερ ἐτεθράμμην, καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν τοῦτο ὑμῶν δέομαι δίκαιον, ὥς γέ μοι δοκῶ, τὸν μὲν τρόπον τῆς λέξεως ἔαν— ἴσως μὲν γὰρ χείρων, ἴσως δὲ βελτίων ἂν εἴη— αὐτὸ δὲ τοῦτο σκοπεῖν καὶ τούτῳ τὸν νοῦν προσέχειν, εἰ δίκαια λέγω ἢ μὴ· δικαστοῦ μὲν γὰρ αὕτη ἀρετὴ, ῥήτορος δὲ τάληθῃ λέγειν.

¹ haphazardly; in vain ² elsewhere, abroad

Πρώτον μὲν οὖν δίκαιός εἰμι ἀπολογήσασθαι, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, πρὸς τὰ πρῶτά μου ψευδῆ³ κατηγορημένα καὶ τοὺς πρώτους κατηγοροὺς, ἔπειτα δὲ πρὸς τὰ ὕστερον καὶ τοὺς ὑστέρους. & ; ἐμοῦ γὰρ πολλοὶ κατήγοροι γεγόνασι πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ πάλοι πολλὰ ἤδη ἔτη καὶ οὐδὲν ἀληθὲς λέγοντες, οὓς ἐγὼ μᾶλλον φοβοῦμαι ἢ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ἄνυτον, καίπερ ὄντας καὶ τούτους δεινούς· ἀλλ' ἐκείνοι δεινότεροι, ὦ ἄνδρες, οἱ ὑμῶν τοὺς πολλοὺς ἐκ παίδων παραλαμβάνοντες ἔπειθόν τε καὶ κατηγοροῦν ἐμοῦ μᾶλλον οὐδὲν ἀληθές, ὥς ἔστιν τις Σωκράτης σοφὸς ἀνὴρ, τά τε μετέωρα φροντιστὴς καὶ τὰ ὑπὸ γῆς πάντα ἀνεζητηκῶς καὶ τὸν ἥττω λόγον κρείττω ποιῶν. οὗτοι, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, οἱ ταύτην τὴν φήμην κατασκεδάσαντες, οἱ δεινοὶ εἰσὶν μου κατήγοροι· οἱ γὰρ ἀκούοντες ἡγοῦνται τοὺς ταῦτα ζητοῦντας οὐδὲ θεοὺς νομίζειν. ἔπειτὰ εἰσιν οὗτοι οἱ κατήγοροι πολλοὶ καὶ πολὺν χρόνον ἤδη κατηγορηκότες, ἔτι δὲ καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ἡλικίᾳ λέγοντες πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἐν ᾗ ἂν μάλιστα ἐπιστεύσατε, παῖδες ὄντες ἔνιοι ὑμῶν καὶ μειράκια, ἀτεχνῶς ἐρήμην κατηγοροῦντες ἀπολογουμένου οὐδενός. ὁ δὲ πάντων ἀλογώτατος,⁴ ὅτι οὐδὲ τὰ ὀνόματα οἰόν τε αὐτῶν εἰδέναι καὶ εἰπεῖν, πλὴν εἴ τις κωμωδοποιὸς τυγχάνει ὦν. ὅσοι δὲ φθόνῳ καὶ διαβολῇ χρώμενοι ὑμᾶς ἀνέπειθον—οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ πεπεισμένοι ἄλλους πείθοντες—οὗτοι πάντες ἀπορώτατοί εἰσιν· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀναβιβάσασθαι οἰόν τ' ἐστὶν αὐτῶν ἐνταυθοῖ οὐδ' ἐλέγξει οὐδένα, ἀλλ' ἀνάγκη ἀτεχνῶς ὥσπερ σκιαμαχεῖν⁵ ἀπολογούμενόν τε καὶ ἐλέγχειν μηδενὸς ἀποκρινομένου. ἀξιώσατε οὖν καὶ ὑμεῖς, ὥσπερ ἐγὼ λέγω, διττούς⁶ μου τοὺς κατηγοροὺς γεγονέναι, ἐτέρους μὲν τοὺς ἄρτι κατηγορήσαντας, ἐτέρους δὲ τοὺς πάλοι οὓς ἐγὼ λέγω, καὶ οἰήθητε δεῖν πρὸς ἐκείνους πρῶτόν με ἀπολογήσασθαι· καὶ γὰρ ὑμεῖς ἐκείνων πρότερον ἠκούσατε κατηγορούντων καὶ πολὺ μᾶλλον ἢ τῶνδε τῶν ὕστερον.

Εἶεν· ἀπολογητέον δὴ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, καὶ ἐπιχειρητέον ὑμῶν ἐξελέσθαι τὴν διαβολὴν ἣν ὑμεῖς ἐν πολλῷ χρόνῳ ἔσχετε ταύτην ἐν οὕτως ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ. βουλοίμην μὲν οὖν ἂν τοῦτο οὕτως γενέσθαι, εἴ

³ lying, false ⁴ without speech or reckoning ⁵ shadow-box

⁶ double

τι ἄμεινον καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἐμοί, καὶ πλεόν τί με ποιῆσαι ἀπολογούμενον· οἶμαι δὲ αὐτὸ χαλεπὸν εἶναι, καὶ οὐ πάννυ με λανθάνει οἶόν ἐστιν. ὅμως τοῦτο μὲν ἴτω ὅπῃ τῷ θεῷ φίλον, τῷ δὲ νόμῳ πειστέον καὶ ἀπολογητέον.

Ἀναλάβωμεν οὖν ἐξ ἀρχῆς τίς ἡ κατηγορία ἐστὶν ἐξ ἧς ἡ ἐμὴ διαβολὴ γέγονεν, ἣ δὴ καὶ πιστεύων Μέλητος με ἐγράψατο τὴν γραφὴν ταύτην. εἶεν· τί δὴ λέγοντες διέβαλλον οἱ διαβάλλοντες; ὥσπερ οὖν κατηγορῶν τὴν ἀντωμοσίαν δεῖ ἀναγνῶναι αὐτῶν· Σωκράτης ἀδικεῖ καὶ περιεργάζεται ζητῶν τά τε ὑπὸ γῆς καὶ οὐράνια⁷ καὶ τὸν ἥττω λόγον κρείττω ποιῶν καὶ ἄλλους ταῦτά ταῦτα διδάσκων. τοιαύτη τίς ἐστίν· ταῦτα γὰρ ἐωρᾶτε καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐν τῇ Ἀριστοφάνους κωμῳδίᾳ,⁸ Σωκράτη τινα ἐκεῖ περιφερόμενον, φάσκοντά τε ἀεροβατεῖν καὶ ἄλλην πολλὴν φλυαρίαν⁹ φλυαροῦντα,¹⁰ ὧν ἐγὼ οὐδὲν οὔτε μέγα οὔτε μικρὸν πέρι ἐπαῖω. καὶ οὐχ ὥς ἀτιμάζων λέγω τὴν τοιαύτην ἐπιστήμην, εἴ τις περὶ τῶν τοιούτων σοφός ἐστιν— μὴ πως ἐγὼ ὑπὸ Μελήτου τοσαύτας δίκας φεύγοιμι— ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐμοὶ τούτων, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, οὐδὲν μέτεστιν. μάρτυρας δὲ αὐτῶν τοὺς πολλοὺς παρέχομαι, καὶ ἀξιῶ ὑμᾶς ἀλλήλους διδάσκειν τε καὶ φράζειν, ὅσοι ἐμοῦ πώποτε ἀκηκόατε διαλεγομένου— πολλοὶ δὲ ὑμῶν οἱ τοιοῦτοί εἰσιν— φράζετε οὖν ἀλλήλοις εἰ πώποτε ἢ μικρὸν ἢ μέγα ἤκουσέ τις ὑμῶν ἐμοῦ περὶ τῶν τοιούτων διαλεγομένου, καὶ ἐκ τούτου γνώσεσθε ὅτι τοιαῦτ ἐστὶ καὶ τᾶλλα περὶ ἐμοῦ ἃ οἱ πολλοὶ λέγουσιν.

Ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὔτε τούτων οὐδὲν ἐστίν, οὐδέ γ' εἴ τις ἀκηκόατε ὥς ἐγὼ παιδεύειν ἐπιχειρῶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ χρήματα πράττομαι, οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἀληθές. ἐπεὶ καὶ τοῦτό γέ μοι δοκεῖ καλὸν εἶναι, εἴ τις οἶός τ' εἴη παιδεύειν ἀνθρώπους ὥσπερ Γοργίας τε ὁ Λεοντίνος καὶ Πρόδικος ὁ Κεῖος καὶ Ἰππίας ὁ Ἡλείος.

Τούτων γὰρ ἕκαστος, ὦ ἄνδρες, οἶός τ' ἐστὶν ἰὼν εἰς ἐκάστην τῶν πόλεων τοὺς νέους— οἷς ἔξεστι τῶν ἐαυτῶν πολιτῶν προῖκα¹¹ συνεῖναι ᾧ ἂν βούλωνται— τούτους πείθουσι τὰς ἐκείνων

⁷ heavenly ⁸ comedy ⁹ nonsense ¹⁰ talk foolishly ¹¹ gift, dowry

συνουσίας ἀπολιπόντας σφίσιν συνείναι χρήματα διδόντας καὶ χάριν προσειδέναι. ἐπεὶ καὶ ἄλλος ἀνὴρ ἐστὶ Πάριος ἐνθάδε σοφὸς ὃν ἐγὼ ἡσθόμην ἐπιδημοῦντα· ἔτυχον γὰρ προσελθὼν ἀνδρὶ ὃς τετέλεκε χρήματα σοφισταῖς¹² πλείω ἢ σύμπαντες οἱ ἄλλοι, Καλλία τῷ Ἱππονίκου· τοῦτον οὖν ἀνηρόμην— ἐστὸν γὰρ αὐτῷ δύο ὑεῖ— ὦ Καλλία, ἦν δ' ἐγώ, εἰ μὲν σου τῷ ὑεῖ πῶλῳ¹³ ἢ μόσχῳ¹⁴ ἐγενέσθην, εἴχομεν ἂν αὐτοῖν ἐπιστάτην λαβεῖν καὶ μισθώσασθαι¹⁵ ὃς ἔμελλεν αὐτῷ καλῶ τε κἀγαθῷ ποιήσῃ τὴν προσήκουσαν ἀρετὴν, ἦν δ' ἂν οὗτος ἢ τῶν ἵππικῶν τις ἢ τῶν γεωργικῶν· νῦν δ' ἐπειδὴ ἀνθρώπῳ ἐστὸν, τίνα αὐτοῖν ἐν νῷ ἔχεις ἐπιστάτην λαβεῖν; τίς τῆς τοιαύτης ἀρετῆς, τῆς ἀνθρωπίνης τε καὶ πολιτικῆς, ἐπιστήμων ἐστίν; οἶμαι γάρ σε ἐσκέφθαι διὰ τὴν τῶν ὑέων κτῆσιν. ἔστιν τις, ἔφη ἐγώ, ἢ οὐ; πάνυ γε, ἦ δ' ὅς. τίς, ἦν δ' ἐγώ, καὶ ποδαπός,¹⁶ καὶ πόσου διδάσκει; Εὐννος, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, Πάριος, πέντε μνῶν. καὶ ἐγὼ τὸν Εὐννον ἐμακάρισα¹⁷ εἰ ὥς ἀληθῶς ἔχει ταύτην τὴν τέχνην καὶ οὕτως ἐμμελῶς διδάσκει. ἐγὼ γοῦν καὶ αὐτὸς ἐκαλλυνόμην τε καὶ ἡβρυνόμην ἂν εἰ ἡπιστάμην ταῦτα· ἄλλ' οὐ γὰρ ἐπίσταμαι, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι.

Ὑπολάβοι ἂν οὖν τις ὑμῶν ἴσως· ἄλλ', ὦ Σώκρατες, τὸ σὸν τί ἐστὶ πρᾶγμα; πόθεν αἱ διαβολαὶ σοι αὐταὶ γεγόνασιν; οὐ γὰρ δήπου σοῦ γε οὐδὲν τῶν ἄλλων περιττότερον πραγματευομένου ἔπειτα τοσαύτη φήμη τε καὶ λόγος γέγονεν, εἰ μὴ τι ἔπραττες ἀλλοῖον¹⁸ ἢ οἱ πολλοί. λέγε οὖν ἡμῖν τί ἐστίν, ἵνα μὴ ἡμεῖς περὶ σοῦ αὐτοσχεδιάζωμεν. ταυτί μοι δοκεῖ δίκαια λέγειν ὁ λέγων, κἀγὼ ὑμῖν πειράσομαι ἀποδείξαι τί ποτ' ἐστὶν τοῦτο ὃ ἐμοὶ πεποίηκεν τό τε ὄνομα καὶ τὴν διαβολήν. ἀκούετε δή. καὶ ἴσως μὲν δόξω τισὶν ὑμῶν παίζειν· εὖ μέντοι ἴστε, πᾶσαν ὑμῖν τὴν ἀλήθειαν ἐρώ. ἐγὼ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, δι' οὐδὲν ἄλλ' ἢ διὰ σοφίαν τινὰ τοῦτο τὸ ὄνομα ἔσχικα. ποίαν δὲ σοφίαν ταύτην; ἥπερ ἐστὶν ἴσως ἀνθρωπίνη σοφία· τῷ ὄντι γὰρ κινδυνεύω ταύτην εἶναι σοφός. οὗτοι δὲ τάχ' ἂν, οὓς ἄρτι ἔλεγον, μεῖζον τινὰ ἢ κατ' ἀνθρωπον σοφίαν σοφοὶ εἶεν, ἢ οὐκ ἔχω τί λέγω· οὐ γὰρ δὴ

¹² expert ¹³ foal ¹⁴ calf (animal) ¹⁵ rent out; (pass) be hired

¹⁶ from what country, of what sort? ¹⁷ congratulate ¹⁸ of another kind

How you, O Athenians, have been affected by my accusers, I cannot tell; but I know that they almost made me forget who I was— so persuasively did they speak; and yet they have hardly uttered a word of truth. But of the many falsehoods told by them, there was one which quite amazed me;— I mean when they said that you should be upon your guard and not allow yourselves to be deceived by the force of my eloquence. To say this, when they were certain to be detected as soon as I opened my lips and proved myself to be anything but a great speaker, did indeed appear to me most shameless— unless by the force of eloquence they mean the force of truth; for if such is their meaning, I admit that I am eloquent. But in how different a way from theirs! Well, as I was saying, they have scarcely spoken the truth at all; but from me you shall hear the whole truth: not, however, delivered after their manner in a set oration duly ornamented with words and phrases. No, by heaven! but I shall use the words and arguments which occur to me at the moment; for I am confident in the justice of my cause (Or, I am certain that I am right in taking this course.): at my time of life I ought not to be appearing before you, O men of Athens, in the character of a juvenile orator— let no one expect it of me. And I must beg of you to grant me a favour:— If I defend myself in my accustomed manner, and you hear me using the words which I have been in the habit of using in the agora, at the tables of the money-changers, or anywhere else, I would ask you not to be surprised, and not to interrupt me on this account. For I am more than seventy years of age, and appearing now for the first time in a court of law, I am quite a stranger to the language of the place; and therefore I would have you regard me as if I were really a stranger, whom you would excuse if he spoke in his native tongue, and after the fashion of his country:— Am I making an unfair request of you? Never mind the manner, which may or may not be good; but think only of the truth of my words, and give heed to that: let the speaker speak truly and the judge decide justly.

And first, I have to reply to the older charges and to my first accusers, and then I will go on to the later ones. For of old I have had many accusers, who have accused me falsely to you during many years; and I am more afraid of them than of Anytus and his associates, who are dangerous, too, in their own way. But far more dangerous are the others, who began when you were children, and took possession of your minds with their falsehoods, telling of one Socrates, a wise man, who speculated about the heaven above, and searched into the earth beneath, and made the worse appear the better cause. The disseminators of this tale are the accusers whom I dread; for their hearers are apt to fancy that such enquirers do not believe in the existence of the gods. And they are many, and their charges against me are of ancient date, and they were made by them in the days when you were more impressible than you are now— in childhood, or it may have been in youth— and the cause when

heard went by default, for there was none to answer. And hardest of all, I do not know and cannot tell the names of my accusers; unless in the chance case of a Comic poet. All who from envy and malice have persuaded you—some of them having first convinced themselves— all this class of men are most difficult to deal with; for I cannot have them up here, and cross-examine them, and therefore I must simply fight with shadows in my own defence, and argue when there is no one who answers. I will ask you then to assume with me, as I was saying, that my opponents are of two kinds; one recent, the other ancient: and I hope that you will see the propriety of my answering the latter first, for these accusations you heard long before the others, and much oftener.

Well, then, I must make my defence, and endeavour to clear away in a short time, a slander which has lasted a long time. May I succeed, if to succeed be for my good and yours, or likely to avail me in my cause! The task is not an easy one; I quite understand the nature of it. And so leaving the event with God, in obedience to the law I will now make my defence.

I will begin at the beginning, and ask what is the accusation which has given rise to the slander of me, and in fact has encouraged Meletus to proof this charge against me. Well, what do the slanderers say? They shall be my prosecutors, and I will sum up their words in an affidavit: «Socrates is an evil-doer, and a curious person, who searches into things under the earth and in heaven, and he makes the worse appear the better cause; and he teaches the aforesaid doctrines to others.” Such is the nature of the accusation: it is just what you have yourselves seen in the comedy of Aristophanes, who has introduced a man whom he calls Socrates, going about and saying that he walks in air, and talking a deal of nonsense concerning matters of which I do not pretend to know either much or little— not that I mean to speak disparagingly of any one who is a student of natural philosophy. I should be very sorry if Meletus could bring so grave a charge against me. But the simple truth is, O Athenians, that I have nothing to do with physical speculations. Very many of those here present are witnesses to the truth of this, and to them I appeal. Speak then, you who have heard me, and tell your neighbours whether any of you have ever known me hold forth in few words or in many upon such matters... You hear their answer. And from what they say of this part of the charge you will be able to judge of the truth of the rest.

As little foundation is there for the report that I am a teacher, and take money; this accusation has no more truth in it than the other. Although, if a man were really able to instruct mankind, to receive money for giving instruction would, in my opinion, be an honour to him. There is Gorgias of Leontium, and Prodicus of Ceos, and Hippias of Elis, who go the round of the cities,

and are able to persuade the young men to leave their own citizens by whom they might be taught for nothing, and come to them whom they not only pay, but are thankful if they may be allowed to pay them. There is at this time a Parian philosopher residing in Athens, of whom I have heard; and I came to hear of him in this way:— I came across a man who has spent a world of money on the Sophists, Callias, the son of Hipponicus, and knowing that he had sons, I asked him: «Callias,” I said, «if your two sons were foals or calves, there would be no difficulty in finding some one to put over them; we should hire a trainer of horses, or a farmer probably, who would improve and perfect them in their own proper virtue and excellence; but as they are human beings, whom are you thinking of placing over them? Is there any one who understands human and political virtue? You must have thought about the matter, for you have sons; is there any one?” «There is,” he said. «Who is he?” said I; «and of what country? and what does he charge?” «Evenus the Parian,” he replied; «he is the man, and his charge is five minae.” Happy is Evenus, I said to myself, if he really has this wisdom, and teaches at such a moderate charge. Had I the same, I should have been very proud and conceited; but the truth is that I have no knowledge of the kind.

I dare say, Athenians, that some one among you will reply, «Yes, Socrates, but what is the origin of these accusations which are brought against you; there must have been something strange which you have been doing? All these rumours and this talk about you would never have arisen if you had been like other men: tell us, then, what is the cause of them, for we should be sorry to judge hastily of you.” Now I regard this as a fair challenge, and I will endeavour to explain to you the reason why I am called wise and have such an evil fame. Please to attend then. And although some of you may think that I am joking, I declare that I will tell you the entire truth. Men of Athens, this reputation of mine has come of a certain sort of wisdom which I possess. If you ask me what kind of wisdom, I reply, wisdom such as may perhaps be attained by man, for to that extent I am inclined to believe that

vocabulary

ἄγνοέω be ignorant of ~gnostic
 αἰνίσσομαι hint, speak in riddles
 αἰσχύνω (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar
 ἄμαθής ignorant
 ἀμάρτημα -τος (n, 3) failure, fault
 ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
 ἀναλαμβάνω take up, recover, resume
 ἀναφέρω bring up ~bear
 ἀνερωτάω question
 ἀνθρώπινος human
 ἀπεχθάνομαι become hated
 ~external
 ἀπέχθομαι be hated, incur hatred
 ~external
 ἀποκρύπτω hide away ~cryptic
 ἀπολογέομαι defend one's conduct
 ἀπολογία verbal defense
 ἀπορέω be confused, distressed
 ἀποφαίνω display, declare
 ἄρνημαι get, win
 ἀστή inhabitant
 ἀστός townsman
 ἀσχολία business, being busy
 ἄτε as if; since
 αὐτόματος self-willed, accidental
 ~after
 αὐτόφωρος notoriously, manifestly
 ἀφθονία abundance
 ἄχθομαι be burdened with
 βαρὺς heavy ~baritone
 γοῦν at least then
 δημιουργός public worker
 ~ergonomics
 δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
 διαβάλλω throw across; slander
 ~ballistic
 διαβολή slander
 διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
 διασκοπέω consider from all angles

διθύραμβος (ῑ) dithyramb
 εἴπερ if indeed
 εἴτα then, therefore, next
 ἐκάστοτε each time
 ἐλέγχω shame; try, examine
 ἐμπίμπλημι fill with
 ἐνδεής inadequate
 ἐνδείκνυμι (ῶ) address, consider
 ἐνθυμέομαι (ῶ) take to heart
 ἐνταῦθα there, here
 ἐντεῦθεν thence
 ἐξαιρέω pick, steal; dedicate; destroy ~heresy
 ἐξελέγχω convict, refute, test
 ἐξεργάζομαι accomplish; undo
 ἐξετάζω inspect, interrogate, estimate
 ἐξέτασις scrutiny
 ἐπακολουθέω chase; accrue
 ἐπιδείκνυμι (ῶ) display, exhibit
 ἐπιεικής fitting ~icon
 ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
 ἐρευνάω hunt for
 ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go searching through
 εὐδοκιμέω be esteemed
 ἐφεξῆς in order, in a row
 ζητήσις -εως (f) search, inquiry
 θέμις -τος (f) custom, law
 θορυβέω roar, cheer; disturb
 καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
 κατάδηλος manifest, visible
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen
 ~epilepsy
 κατέρχομαι come down, out from
 κατήγορος accuser
 κρείσσων more powerful; better
 λογίζομαι reckon, consider
 λυπέω (ῶ) annoy, distress

λυσιτελέω (ὁ) be useful
 μαντεία oracular power
 μαντεῖον prophetic warning
 ~mantis
 μαντεύομαι to divine ~mantis
 μαρτυρέω testify, bear witness
 μαρτύρομαι (ὁ) call to witness;
 protest
 μάρτυς witness
 μετέωρος up in the air ~meteor
 μισρός stained, polluted ~miasma
 μιμέομαι (ἵ) imitate, represent
 μόγεις with difficulty, barely
 μυρίος (ὁ) 10,000 ~myriad
 ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
 ὀργίζω anger, provoke, annoy
 οὐδέτερος neither
 οὖς οὖατος (n) ear
 πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience,
 passion, condition
 πάλαι long ago ~paleo
 πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
 πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
 παράδειγμα -τος (n, 3) model,
 precedent
 πενία poverty ~osteopenia
 περιγίγνομαι surpass; survive;
 attain ~genus
 περίεμι be superior to; be left over;
 still exist
 πιθανός persuasive
 πλάνη wandering
 ποιήεις grassy ~pastor
 ποίημα -τος (n, 3) work, deed
 ποίησις -εως (f) creation
 ποιητής -οῦ (m, 1) maker, author
 ποιητός made, well-made ~poet
 πονέω work; be busy ~osteopenia

πότε when?
 πότερος which, whichever of two
 πραγματεύομαι work at
 προσποιέω give over to; pretend
 ~poet
 ῥήτωρ public speaker
 σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptic
 σκοπᾶω watch, observe
 σκοπέω behold, consider
 σκοπός (f) lookout, overseer, spy,
 target ~telescope
 σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
 σοφός skilled, clever, wise
 συμφεύγω flee with; take refuge
 σύννοιδά know about someone;
 think proper
 σφοδρός vehement
 σχολή rest, leisure
 τεκμήριον sign; proof
 τελευτή conclusion, fulfilment
 ~apostle
 τέχνη craft, art, plan, contrivance
 ~technology
 τραγωδία tragedy, serious poem
 φαῦλος trifling
 φιλοσοφέω philosophize, study
 φρόνιμος sensible, prudent
 φυγή flight, means of escape
 ~fugitive
 φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)
 ~physics
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
 χειροτέχνης -ου (m, 1) artisan
 χρησμός oracular response
 ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie
 ~pseudo-

ἔγωγε αὐτὴν ἐπίσταμαι, ἀλλ' ὅστις φησὶ ψεύδεται τε καὶ ἐπὶ διαβολῇ τῇ ἐμῇ λέγει. καὶ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, μὴ θορυβήσητε, μηδ' ἐὰν δόξω τι ὑμῖν μέγα λέγειν· οὐ γὰρ ἐμὸν ἐρῶ τὸν λόγον ὃν ἂν λέγω, ἀλλ' εἰς ἀξιώχρεων ὑμῖν τὸν λέγοντα ἀνοίσω. τῆς γὰρ ἐμῆς, εἰ δὴ τίς ἐστιν σοφία καὶ οἷα, μάρτυρα ὑμῖν παρέξομαι τὸν θεὸν τὸν ἐν Δελφοῖς. Χαιρεφῶντα γὰρ ἴστε που.

Οὗτος ἐμός τε ἐταῖρος ἦν ἐκ νέου καὶ ὑμῶν τῷ πλήθει ἐταῖρός τε καὶ συνέφυγε τὴν φυγὴν ταύτην καὶ μεθ' ὑμῶν κατήλθε. καὶ ἴστε δὴ οἷος ἦν Χαιρεφῶν, ὡς σφοδρὸς ἐφ' ὅτι ὀρμήσειεν. καὶ δὴ ποτε καὶ εἰς Δελφοὺς ἐλθὼν ἐτόλμησε τοῦτο μαντεύσασθαι¹—καί, ὅπερ λέγω, μὴ θορυβεῖτε, ὦ ἄνδρες—ἤρετο γὰρ δὴ εἴ τις ἐμοῦ εἴη σοφώτερος. ἀνείλεν οὖν ἡ Πυθία μηδένα σοφώτερον εἶναι. καὶ τούτων πέρι ὁ ἀδελφὸς ὑμῖν αὐτοῦ οὐτοσί μαρτυρήσει, ἐπειδὴ ἐκείνος τετελεύτηκεν.

Σκέψασθε δὴ ὧν ἕνεκα ταῦτα λέγω· μέλλω γὰρ ὑμᾶς διδάξαι ὅθεν μοι ἡ διαβολὴ γέγονεν. ταῦτα γὰρ ἐγὼ ἀκούσας ἐνεθυμούμην οὕτως· τί ποτε λέγει ὁ θεός, καὶ τί ποτε αἰνίττεται; ἐγὼ γὰρ δὴ οὔτε μέγα οὔτε σμικρὸν σύννοδα ἐμαυτῷ σοφὸς ὢν· τί οὖν ποτε λέγει φάσκων ἐμὲ σοφώτατον εἶναι; οὐ γὰρ δὴ πού ψεύδεται γε· οὐ γὰρ θέμις αὐτῷ. καὶ πολὺν μὲν χρόνον ἠπόρουν τί ποτε λέγει· ἔπειτα μόγις πάννυ ἐπὶ ζήτησιν² αὐτοῦ τοιαύτην τινὰ ἐτραπόμην. ἦλθον ἐπὶ τινὰ τῶν δοκούντων σοφῶν εἶναι, ὡς ἐνταῦθα εἶπερ που ἐλέγχων τὸ μαντεῖον καὶ ἀποφανῶν τῷ χρησμῷ ὅτι οὐτοσί ἐμοῦ σοφώτερός ἐστι, σὺ δ' ἐμὲ ἔφησθα. διασκοπῶν οὖν τοῦτον—ὀνόματι γὰρ οὐδὲν δέομαι λέγειν, ἦν δέ τις τῶν πολιτικῶν πρὸς ὃν ἐγὼ σκοπῶν τοιοῦτόν τι ἔπαθον, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, καὶ διαλεγόμενος αὐτῷ—ἔδοξέ μοι οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ δοκεῖν μὲν εἶναι σοφὸς ἄλλοις τε πολλοῖς ἀνθρώποις καὶ μάλιστα ἑαυτῷ, εἶναι δ' οὐ· κᾷπειτα ἐπειρώμην αὐτῷ δεικνύναι ὅτι οἶοιτο μὲν εἶναι σοφός, εἶη δ' οὐ. ἐντεῦθεν οὖν τούτῳ τε ἀπηχθόμην καὶ πολλοῖς τῶν παρόντων· πρὸς ἐμαυτὸν δ' οὖν ἀπιὼν ἐλογιζόμην ὅτι τούτου μὲν τοῦ ἀνθρώπου ἐγὼ σοφώτερός εἰμι· κινδυνεύει μὲν γὰρ ἡμῶν οὐδέτερος³ οὐδὲν καλὸν κάγαθον εἰδέναι, ἀλλ' οὗτος μὲν οἶεται τι

¹ to divine ² search, inquiry ³ neither

εἰδέναι οὐκ εἰδώς, ἐγὼ δέ, ὥσπερ οὖν οὐκ οἶδα, οὐδὲ οἶμαι· ἔοικα γοῦν τούτου γε σμικρῷ τινι αὐτῷ τούτῳ σοφώτερος εἶναι, ὅτι ἂ μὴ οἶδα οὐδὲ οἶμαι εἰδέναι. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπ' ἄλλον ἦα τῶν ἐκείνου δοκούντων σοφωτέρων εἶναι καί μοι ταῦτα ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ἐνταῦθα κακείνῳ καὶ ἄλλοις πολλοῖς ἀπηχθόμην.

Μετὰ ταῦτ' οὖν ἤδη ἐφεξῆς ἦα, αἰσθανόμενος μὲν καὶ λυπούμενος καὶ δεδιώς ὅτι ἀπηχθανόμην, ὅμως δὲ ἀναγκαῖον ἐδόκει εἶναι τὸ τοῦ θεοῦ περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖσθαι— ἰτέον οὖν, σκοποῦντι τὸν χρησμὸν τί λέγει, ἐπὶ ἅπαντας τοὺς τι δοκοῦντας εἰδέναι.

Καὶ νῆ τὸν κύνα, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι— δεῖ γὰρ πρὸς ὑμᾶς τάληθῇ λέγειν— ἡ μὲν ἐγὼ ἔπαθόν τι τοιοῦτον· οἱ μὲν μάλιστα εὐδοκιμοῦντες ἔδοξάν μοι ὀλίγου δεῖν τοῦ πλείστου ἐνδεεῖς εἶναι ζητοῦντι κατὰ τὸν θεόν, ἄλλοι δὲ δοκοῦντες φαυλότεροι ἐπιεικέστεροι εἶναι ἄνδρες πρὸς τὸ φρονίμως ἔχειν. δεῖ δὴ ὑμῖν τὴν ἐμὴν πλάνην⁴ ἐπιδείξαι ὥσπερ πόνους τινὰς ποιοῦντος ἵνα μοι καὶ ἀνέλεγκτος ἢ μαντεία γένοιτο. μετὰ γὰρ τοὺς πολιτικούς ἦα ἐπὶ τοὺς ποιητὰς τοὺς τε τῶν τραγωδιῶν⁵ καὶ τοὺς τῶν διθυράμβων⁶ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους, ὥς ἐνταῦθα ἐπ' αὐτοφάρῳ καταληψόμενος ἐμαυτὸν ἀμαθέστερον ἐκείνων ὄντα. ἀναλαμβάνων οὖν αὐτῶν τὰ ποιήματα⁷ ἃ μοι ἐδόκει μάλιστα πεπραγματεῦσθαι αὐτοῖς, διηρώτων ἂν αὐτοὺς τί λέγοιεν, ἵν' ἅμα τι καὶ μανθάνοιμι παρ' αὐτῶν. αἰσχύνομαι οὖν ὑμῖν εἰπεῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τάληθ' ὅμως δὲ ῥητέον. ὥς ἔπος γὰρ εἰπεῖν ὀλίγου αὐτῶν ἅπαντες οἱ παρόντες ἂν βέλτιον ἔλεγον περὶ ὧν αὐτοὶ ἐπεποιήκεσαν. ἔγνω οὖν αὖ καὶ περὶ τῶν ποιητῶν ἐν ὀλίγῳ τοῦτο, ὅτι οὐ σοφία ποιοῖεν ἂ ποιοῖεν, ἀλλὰ φύσει τινὶ καὶ ἐνθουσιάζοντες ὥσπερ οἱ θεομάντεις καὶ οἱ χρησμοῦδοί· καὶ γὰρ οὗτοι λέγουσι μὲν πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ, ἴσασιν δὲ οὐδέν ὧν λέγουσι. τοιοῦτόν τί μοι ἐφάνησαν πάθος καὶ οἱ ποιηταὶ πεπονθότες, καὶ ἅμα ἡσθόμην αὐτῶν διὰ τὴν ποίησιν οἰομένων καὶ τᾶλλα σοφωτάτων εἶναι ἀνθρώπων ἂ οὐκ ἦσαν. ἀπῆα οὖν καὶ ἐντεῦθεν τῷ αὐτῷ οἰόμενος περιγεγονέναι ᾧπερ καὶ τῶν πολιτικῶν.

⁴ wandering ⁵ tragedy, serious poem ⁶ dithyramb ⁷ work, deed

Τελευτῶν οὖν ἐπὶ τοὺς χειροτέχνας⁸ ἦα· ἐμαυτῷ γὰρ συνήδη οὐδὲν ἐπισταμένῳ ὥς ἔπος εἰπεῖν, τούτους δέ γ' ἤδη ὅτι εὐρήσοιμι πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ἐπισταμένους. καὶ τούτου μὲν οὐκ ἐψεύσθην, ἀλλ' ἠπίσταντο ἃ ἐγὼ οὐκ ἠπιστάμην καί μου ταύτῃ σοφώτεροι ἦσαν. ἀλλ' , ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ταυτόν μοι ἔδοξαν ἔχειν ἀμάρτημα ὅπερ καὶ οἱ ποιηταὶ καὶ οἱ ἀγαθοὶ δημιουργοί⁹— διὰ τὸ τὴν τέχνην καλῶς ἐξεργάζεσθαι ἕκαστος ἡξίου καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ μέγιστα σοφώτατος εἶναι— καὶ αὐτῶν αὕτη ἢ πλημμέλεια ἐκέκινεν τὴν σοφίαν ἀποκρύπτειν· ὥστε με ἐμαυτὸν ἀνερωτᾶν ὑπὲρ τοῦ χρησμοῦ πότερα δεξαίμην ἂν οὕτως ὥσπερ ἔχω ἔχειν, μήτε τι σοφὸς ὢν τὴν ἐκείνων σοφίαν μήτε ἀμαθὴς τὴν ἀμαθίαν, ἢ ἀμφοτέρω ἃ ἐκείνοι ἔχουσιν ἔχειν. ἀπεκρινάμην οὖν ἐμαυτῷ καὶ τῷ χρησμῷ ὅτι μοι λυσιτελοῖ¹⁰ ὥσπερ ἔχω ἔχειν.

Ἐκ ταυτησὶ δὴ τῆς ἐξετάσεως, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, πολλὰ μὲν ἀπέχθειά μοι γεγόνاسι καὶ οἶαι χαλεπώταται καὶ βαρύταται, ὥστε πολλὰς διαβολὰς ἀπ' αὐτῶν γεγονέναι, ὄνομα δὲ τοῦτο λέγεσθαι, σοφὸς εἶναι· οἴονται γάρ με ἐκάστοτε¹¹ οἱ παρόντες ταῦτα αὐτὸν εἶναι σοφὸν ἃ ἂν ἄλλον ἐξελέγξω. τὸ δὲ κινδυνεύει, ὦ ἄνδρες, τῷ ὄντι ὁ θεὸς σοφὸς εἶναι, καὶ ἐν τῷ χρησμῷ τούτῳ τοῦτο λέγειν, ὅτι ἢ ἀνθρωπίνῃ σοφίᾳ ὀλίγου τινὸς ἀξία ἐστὶν καὶ οὐδενός. καὶ φαίνεται τοῦτον λέγειν τὸν Σωκράτη, προσκεκρῆσθαι δὲ τῷ ἐμῷ ὀνόματι, ἐμὲ παράδειγμα ποιούμενος, ὥσπερ ἂν εἰ εἴποι ὅτι οὗτος ὑμῶν, ὦ ἄνθρωποι, σοφώτατός ἐστιν, ὅστις ὥσπερ Σωκράτης ἔγνωκεν ὅτι οὐδενὸς ἀξίός ἐστι τῇ ἀληθείᾳ πρὸς σοφίαν. ταῦτ' οὖν ἐγὼ μὲν ἔτι καὶ νῦν περιῶν ζητῶ καὶ ἐρευνῶ¹² κατὰ τὸν θεὸν καὶ τῶν ἀστών καὶ ξένων ἂν τινα οἶωμαι σοφὸν εἶναι· καὶ ἐπειδάν μοι μὴ δοκῇ, τῷ θεῷ βοηθῶν ἐνδείκνυμαι ὅτι οὐκ ἔστι σοφός. καὶ ὑπὸ ταύτης τῆς ἀσχολίας¹³ οὔτε τι τῶν τῆς πόλεως πράξαι μοι σχολή¹⁴ γέγονεν ἄξιον λόγου οὔτε τῶν οἰκείων, ἀλλ' ἐν πενία μυρία εἰμὶ διὰ τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ λατρείαν.

Πρὸς δὲ τούτοις οἱ νέοι μοι ἐπακολουθοῦντες— οἷς μάλιστα σχολή

⁸ artisan ⁹ public worker ¹⁰ be useful ¹¹ each time ¹² hunt
for ¹³ business, being busy ¹⁴ rest, leisure

ἐστιν, οἱ τῶν πλουσιωτάτων— αὐτόματοι, χαίρουσιν ἀκούοντες ἐξεταζομένων τῶν ἀνθρώπων, καὶ αὐτοὶ πολλάκις ἐμὲ μιμοῦνται,¹⁵ εἶτα ἐπιχειροῦσιν ἄλλους ἐξετάζειν· κᾶπειτα οἶμαι εὐρίσκουσι πολλὴν ἀφθονίαν οἰομένων μὲν εἰδέναι τι ἀνθρώπων, εἰδόντων δὲ ὀλίγα ἢ οὐδέν. ἐντεῦθεν οὖν οἱ ὑπὸ αὐτῶν ἐξεταζόμενοι ἐμοὶ ὀργίζονται, οὐχ αὐτοῖς, καὶ λέγουσιν ὥς Σωκράτης τίς ἐστι μαρώτατος¹⁶ καὶ διαφθείρει τοὺς νέους· καὶ ἐπειδὴν τις αὐτοὺς ἐρωτᾷ ὅτι ποιῶν καὶ ὅτι διδάσκων, ἔχουσι μὲν οὐδὲν εἰπεῖν ἀλλ' ἀγνοοῦσιν, ἵνα δὲ μὴ δοκῶσιν ἀπορεῖν, τὰ κατὰ πάντων τῶν φιλοσοφούντων πρόχειρα ταῦτα λέγουσιν, ὅτι τὰ μετέωρα καὶ τὰ ὑπὸ γῆς καὶ θεοὺς μὴ νομίζην καὶ τὸν ἥττω λόγον κρείττω ποιεῖν. τὰ γὰρ ἀληθῆ οἶμαι οὐκ ἂν ἐθέλοιεν λέγειν, ὅτι κατὰδηλοι γίνονται προσποιούμενοι μὲν εἰδέναι, εἰδότες δὲ οὐδέν. ἄτε οὖν οἶμαι φιλότιμοι ὄντες καὶ σφοδροὶ καὶ πολλοί, καὶ συντεταμένως καὶ πιθανῶς λέγοντες περὶ ἐμοῦ, ἐμπεπλήκασιν ὑμῶν τὰ ὦτα καὶ πάλαι καὶ σφοδρῶς διαβάλλοντες.

Ἐκ τούτων καὶ Μέλητός μοι ἐπέθετο καὶ Ἄνυτος καὶ Λύκων, Μέλητος μὲν ὑπὲρ τῶν ποιητῶν ἀχθόμενος, Ἄνυτος δὲ ὑπὲρ τῶν δημιουργῶν καὶ τῶν πολιτικῶν, Λύκων δὲ ὑπὲρ τῶν ῥητόρων· ὥστε, ὅπερ ἀρχόμενος ἐγὼ ἔλεγον, θαυμάζοιμι ἂν εἰ οἷός τ' εἶην ἐγὼ ὑμῶν ταύτην τὴν διαβολὴν ἐξελέσθαι ἐν οὕτως ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ οὕτω πολλὴν γεγонуῖαν. ταῦτ' ἔστιν ὑμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, τὰληθῆ, καὶ ὑμᾶς οὔτε μέγα οὔτε μικρὸν ἀποκρυψάμενος ἐγὼ λέγω οὐδ' ὑποστευλάμενος. καίτοι οἶδα σχεδὸν ὅτι αὐτοῖς τούτοις ἀπεχθάνομαι, ὁ καὶ τεκμήριον ὅτι ἀληθῆ λέγω καὶ ὅτι αὕτη ἐστὶν ἡ διαβολὴ ἣ ἐμὴ καὶ τὰ αἷτια ταῦτά ἐστιν. καὶ ἐάντε νῦν ἐάντε αὖθις ζητήσητε ταῦτα, οὕτως εὐρήσετε.

Περὶ μὲν οὖν ὧν οἱ πρῶτοί μου κατήγοροι κατηγόρουν αὕτη ἔστω ἱκανὴ ἀπολογία πρὸς ὑμᾶς· πρὸς δὲ Μέλητον τὸν ἀγαθὸν καὶ φιλόποιν, ὥς φησι, καὶ τοὺς ὑστέρους μετὰ ταῦτα πειράσομαι ἀπολογήσασθαι. αὖθις γὰρ δῆ, ὥσπερ ἐτέρων τούτων ὄντων κατηγόρων, λάβωμεν αὖ τὴν τούτων ἀντωμοσίαν. ἔχει δέ πως

¹⁵ imitate, represent ¹⁶ stained, polluted

I am wise; whereas the persons of whom I was speaking have a superhuman wisdom which I may fail to describe, because I have it not myself; and he who says that I have, speaks falsely, and is taking away my character. And here, O men of Athens, I must beg you not to interrupt me, even if I seem to say something extravagant. For the word which I will speak is not mine. I will refer you to a witness who is worthy of credit; that witness shall be the God of Delphi—he will tell you about my wisdom, if I have any, and of what sort it is. You must have known Chaerephon; he was early a friend of mine, and also a friend of yours, for he shared in the recent exile of the people, and returned with you. Well, Chaerephon, as you know, was very impetuous in all his doings, and he went to Delphi and boldly asked the oracle to tell him whether—as I was saying, I must beg you not to interrupt—he asked the oracle to tell him whether anyone was wiser than I was, and the Pythian prophetess answered, that there was no man wiser. Chaerephon is dead himself; but his brother, who is in court, will confirm the truth of what I am saying.

Why do I mention this? Because I am going to explain to you why I have such an evil name. When I heard the answer, I said to myself, What can the god mean? and what is the interpretation of his riddle? for I know that I have no wisdom, small or great. What then can he mean when he says that I am the wisest of men? And yet he is a god, and cannot lie; that would be against his nature. After long consideration, I thought of a method of trying the question. I reflected that if I could only find a man wiser than myself, then I might go to the god with a refutation in my hand. I should say to him, «Here is a man who is wiser than I am; but you said that I was the wisest.» Accordingly I went to one who had the reputation of wisdom, and observed him—his name I need not mention; he was a politician whom I selected for examination—and the result was as follows: When I began to talk with him, I could not help thinking that he was not really wise, although he was thought wise by many, and still wiser by himself; and thereupon I tried to explain to him that he thought himself wise, but was not really wise; and the consequence was that he hated me, and his enmity was shared by several who were present and heard me. So I left him, saying to myself, as I went away: Well, although I do not suppose that either of us knows anything really beautiful and good, I am better off than he is,—for he knows nothing, and thinks that he knows; I neither know nor think that I know. In this latter particular, then, I seem to have slightly the advantage of him. Then I went to another who had still higher pretensions to wisdom, and my conclusion was exactly the same. Whereupon I made another enemy of him, and of many others besides him.

Then I went to one man after another, being not unconscious of the enmity

which I provoked, and I lamented and feared this: but necessity was laid upon me,— the word of God, I thought, ought to be considered first. And I said to myself, Go I must to all who appear to know, and find out the meaning of the oracle. And I swear to you, Athenians, by the dog I swear!— for I must tell you the truth— the result of my mission was just this: I found that the men most in repute were all but the most foolish; and that others less esteemed were really wiser and better. I will tell you the tale of my wanderings and of the «Herculean” labours, as I may call them, which I endured only to find at last the oracle irrefutable. After the politicians, I went to the poets; tragic, dithyrambic, and all sorts. And there, I said to myself, you will be instantly detected; now you will find out that you are more ignorant than they are. Accordingly, I took them some of the most elaborate passages in their own writings, and asked what was the meaning of them— thinking that they would teach me something. Will you believe me? I am almost ashamed to confess the truth, but I must say that there is hardly a person present who would not have talked better about their poetry than they did themselves. Then I knew that not by wisdom do poets write poetry, but by a sort of genius and inspiration; they are like diviners or soothsayers who also say many fine things, but do not understand the meaning of them. The poets appeared to me to be much in the same case; and I further observed that upon the strength of their poetry they believed themselves to be the wisest of men in other things in which they were not wise. So I departed, conceiving myself to be superior to them for the same reason that I was superior to the politicians.

At last I went to the artisans. I was conscious that I knew nothing at all, as I may say, and I was sure that they knew many fine things; and here I was not mistaken, for they did know many things of which I was ignorant, and in this they certainly were wiser than I was. But I observed that even the good artisans fell into the same error as the poets;— because they were good workmen they thought that they also knew all sorts of high matters, and this defect in them overshadowed their wisdom; and therefore I asked myself on behalf of the oracle, whether I would like to be as I was, neither having their knowledge nor their ignorance, or like them in both; and I made answer to myself and to the oracle that I was better off as I was.

This inquisition has led to my having many enemies of the worst and most dangerous kind, and has given occasion also to many calumnies. And I am called wise, for my hearers always imagine that I myself possess the wisdom which I find wanting in others: but the truth is, O men of Athens, that God only is wise; and by his answer he intends to show that the wisdom of men is worth little or nothing; he is not speaking of Socrates, he is only using my name by way of illustration, as if he said, He, O men, is the wisest, who,

like Socrates, knows that his wisdom is in truth worth nothing. And so I go about the world, obedient to the god, and search and make enquiry into the wisdom of any one, whether citizen or stranger, who appears to be wise; and if he is not wise, then in vindication of the oracle I show him that he is not wise; and my occupation quite absorbs me, and I have no time to give either to any public matter of interest or to any concern of my own, but I am in utter poverty by reason of my devotion to the god.

There is another thing:— young men of the richer classes, who have not much to do, come about me of their own accord; they like to hear the pretenders examined, and they often imitate me, and proceed to examine others; there are plenty of persons, as they quickly discover, who think that they know something, but really know little or nothing; and then those who are examined by them instead of being angry with themselves are angry with me: This confounded Socrates, they say; this villainous misleader of youth!— and then if somebody asks them, Why, what evil does he practise or teach? they do not know, and cannot tell; but in order that they may not appear to be at a loss, they repeat the ready-made charges which are used against all philosophers about teaching things up in the clouds and under the earth, and having no gods, and making the worse appear the better cause; for they do not like to confess that their pretence of knowledge has been detected— which is the truth; and as they are numerous and ambitious and energetic, and are drawn up in battle array and have persuasive tongues, they have filled your ears with their loud and inveterate calumnies. And this is the reason why my three accusers, Meletus and Anytus and Lycon, have set upon me; Meletus, who has a quarrel with me on behalf of the poets; Anytus, on behalf of the craftsmen and politicians; Lycon, on behalf of the rhetoricians: and as I said at the beginning, I cannot expect to get rid of such a mass of calumny all in a moment. And this, O men of Athens, is the truth and the whole truth; I have concealed nothing, I have dissembled nothing. And yet, I know that my plainness of speech makes them hate me, and what is their hatred but a proof that I am speaking the truth?— Hence has arisen the prejudice against me; and this is the reason of it, as you will find out either in this or in any future enquiry.

I have said enough in my defence against the first class of my accusers; I turn to the second class. They are headed by Meletus, that good man and true lover of his country, as he calls himself. Against these, too, I must try to make a defence:— Let their affidavit be read: it contains something

vocabulary

ἀγνοέω be ignorant of ~gnostic
 ἀγών -ος (m, 3) gathering place
 ~agony
 ἀέκων unwilling
 ἄθεος godless; by the gods
 αἰσχρός shameful
 ἀκολασία debauchery
 ἀκόλαστος wild, licentious
 ἀκροατής -οῦ (αᾶ, m, 1) listener
 ἄκων javelin; unwilling ~acme
 ἀμάρτημα -τος (n, 3) failure, fault
 ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός,
 noble
 ἀμέλεια indifference, negligence
 ἄπειρος untested; infinite
 ἀπείρων boundless
 ἄπιστος not trusting, not
 trustworthy ~stand
 ἀποφαίνω display, declare
 ἄτοπος strange, unnatural,
 disgusting
 ἀφθονία abundance
 βέλτιστος best, noblest
 βιβλίον paper, book
 βλάπτω break, make fail
 βουλευτής -οῦ (m, 1) councillor
 ~volunteer
 γέμω be full of
 γράμμα -τος (n, 3) writing, letter
 γραμματεύς -ος (m) clerk,
 schoolmaster
 δαιμόνιος voc: you crazy guy
 δεῦρο here, come here!
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous
 δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
 δῆτα emphatic δῆ
 δικαστής -οῦ (m, 1) judge, juror
 δραχμή drachma
 ἐγγύς near
 ἐγκαλέω demand payment; accuse
 ἐγκλημα -τος (n, 3) accusation

εἰσάγω lead in ~demagogue
 ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving
 in too easily
 ἐνίστε sometimes
 ἔξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion
 ἐξετάζω inspect, interrogate,
 estimate
 ἐξευρίσκω find; discover ~eureka
 ἐπιδείκνυμι (ῶ) display, exhibit
 ἐρωτάω ask about something
 εὐδαιμονία prosperity
 ζῶον being, animal; picture
 θαυμάσιος wonderful
 ἵππικὸς of horses ~hippo
 ἴσχω imitate, liken to, guess ~victor
 καινός new, fresh, strange
 καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
 καταγελάω laugh at, deride
 καταγιγνώσκω judge negatively
 καταφρονέω scorn; think of
 κατηγορέω accuse; indicate
 κήδω distress, hurt; mp: care about
 (+gen) ~heinous
 κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf)
 there is a danger that
 λίθος (f) stone ~monolith
 μέλω concern, interest, be one's
 responsibility
 μὴνύω disclose, betray, accuse
 ναός (ᾶ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
 νεότης -τος (f, 3) youth ~neon
 νή yea
 νουθετέω remind, warn
 οἰκέω inhabit ~economics
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
 παιδεύω raise; train
 παντάπασιν altogether; yes,
 certainly
 πάντως by all means
 παράπαν completely
 πλησίος near, neighboring
 πότερος which, whichever of two

πρίαμαι buy
προσποιέω give over to; pretend
 ~poet
πώποτε never
σαυτοῦ yourself
σαφής clear, understandable
σελήνη moon
σιγάω (ι) be silent
σοφός skilled, clever, wise
σπουδάζω be busy, earnest
 ~repudiate
σπουδῇ zeal; (dat) with difficulty,
 hastily ~repudiate
συγγίγνομαι associate with, meet,
 have sex ~genus
σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion

συνίημι send together; hear, notice,
 understand ~jet
σφόδρα very much
τεκμήριον sign; proof
τηλίκος of such an age
τοίνυν well, then
ὔβρις -εως (f) pride, insolence,
 outrage
ὑβριστής -οῦ (m, 1) wanton, savage
φροντίζω consider, ponder
φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie
 ~pseudo-
ὠνέομαι buy
ὠφελέω help, be useful

ὦδε· Σωκράτη φησὶν ἀδικεῖν τοὺς τε νέους διαφθείροντα καὶ θεοὺς οὓς ἡ πόλις νομίζει οὐ νομίζοντα, ἕτερα δὲ δαμόνια καινά. τὸ μὲν δὴ ἔγκλημα τοιοῦτόν ἐστιν· τούτου δὲ τοῦ ἐγκλήματος ἐν ἑκάστον ἐξετάσωμεν.

Φησὶ γὰρ δὴ τοὺς νέους ἀδικεῖν με διαφθείροντα. ἐγὼ δέ γε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ἀδικεῖν φημι Μέλητον, ὅτι σπουδῇ χαριεντίζεται, ῥαδίως εἰς ἀγῶνα καθιστὰς ἀνθρώπους, περὶ πραγμάτων προσποιούμενος σπουδάζειν καὶ κήδεσθαι ὣν οὐδὲν τούτῳ πώποτε ἐμέλησεν· ὡς δὲ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει, πειράσομαι καὶ ὑμῖν ἐπιδείξαι. καὶ μοι δεῦρο, ὦ Μέλητε, εἰπέ· ἄλλο τι ἢ περὶ πλείστου ποιῇ ὅπως ὡς βέλτιστοι οἱ νεώτεροι ἔσονται;

Ἐγωγε.

Ἴθι¹ δὴ νυν εἰπὲ τούτοις, τίς αὐτοὺς βελτίους ποιεῖ; δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι οἶσθα, μέλον γέ σοι. τὸν μὲν γὰρ διαφθείροντα ἐξευρών, ὡς φῆς, ἐμέ, εἰσάγεις τουτοισὶ καὶ κατηγορεῖς· τὸν δὲ δὴ βελτίους ποιοῦντα ἴθι εἰπὲ καὶ μῆνυσον² αὐτοῖς τίς ἐστιν. —ὁρᾷς, ὦ Μέλητε, ὅτι σιγᾷς καὶ οὐκ ἔχεις εἰπεῖν; καίτοι οὐκ αἰσχρόν σοι δοκεῖ εἶναι καὶ ἱκανὸν τεκμήριον οὗ δὴ ἐγὼ λέγω, ὅτι σοι οὐδὲν μεμέληκεν; ἀλλ' εἰπέ, ὦγαθέ, τίς αὐτοὺς ἀμείνους ποιεῖ;

Οἱ νόμοι.

Ἄλλ' οὐ τοῦτο ἐρωτῶ, ὦ βέλτιστε, ἀλλὰ τίς ἄνθρωπος, ὅστις πρῶτον καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο οἶδε, τοὺς νόμους;

Οὔτοι, ὦ Σώκρατες, οἱ δικασταί.

Πῶς λέγεις, ὦ Μέλητε; οἶδε τοὺς νέους παιδεύειν οἱοί τέ εἰσι καὶ βελτίους ποιοῦσιν;

Μάλιστα.

Πότερον ἅπαντες, ἢ οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν, οἱ δ' οὐ;

¹ imitate, liken to, guess ² disclose, betray, accuse

Ἄπαντες.

Εὖ γε νῆ τὴν Ἥραν λέγεις καὶ πολλὴν ἀφθονίαν τῶν ὠφελούντων.

Τί δὲ δῆ; οἱ δὲ ἀκροαταὶ³ βελτίους ποιοῦσιν ἢ οὐ;

Καὶ οὗτοι.

Τί δέ, οἱ βουλευταί;

Καὶ οἱ βουλευταί.

Ἄλλ ἄρα, ὦ Μέλητε, μὴ οἱ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ, οἱ ἐκκλησιασταί, διαφθείρουσι τοὺς νεωτέρους; ἢ κακέينوι βελτίους ποιοῦσιν ἅπαντες;

Κακέينوι.

Πάντες ἄρα, ὡς ἔοικεν, Ἀθηναῖοι καλοὺς κάγαθοὺς ποιοῦσι πλὴν ἐμοῦ, ἐγὼ δὲ μόνος διαφθείρω. οὕτω λέγεις;

Πάνυ σφόδρα ταῦτα λέγω.

Πολλὴν γέ μου κατέγνωκας δυστυχίαν. καί μοι ἀπόκριναι· ἢ καὶ περὶ ἵππους οὕτω σοι δοκεῖ ἔχειν; οἱ μὲν βελτίους ποιοῦντες αὐτοὺς πάντες ἄνθρωποι εἶναι, εἷς δέ τις ὁ διαφθείρων; ἢ τοῦναντίον τούτου πᾶν εἷς μὲν τις ὁ βελτίους οἶός τ' ὢν ποιεῖν ἢ πάνυ ὀλίγοι, οἱ ἵππικοί, οἱ δὲ πολλοὶ ἐάνπερ συνῶσι καὶ χρῶνται ἵπποις, διαφθείρουσιν; οὐχ οὕτως ἔχει, ὦ Μέλητε, καὶ περὶ ἵππων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάντων ζώων; πάντως δήπου, ἐάντε σὺ καὶ Ἄνυτος οὐ φῆτε ἐάντε φῆτε· πολλὴ γὰρ ἂν τις εὐδαιμονία εἴη περὶ τοὺς νέους εἰ εἷς μὲν μόνος αὐτοὺς διαφθείρει, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ὠφελοῦσιν. ἀλλὰ γάρ, ὦ Μέλητε, ἱκανῶς ἐπιδείκνυσαι ὅτι οὐδεπώποτε ἐφρόντισας τῶν νέων, καὶ σαφῶς ἀποφαίνεις τὴν σαντοῦ ἀμέλειαν,⁴ ὅτι οὐδὲν σοι μεμέληκεν περὶ ὧν ἐμὲ εἰσάγεις.

Ἔτι δὲ ἡμῖν εἰπέ, ὦ πρὸς Διὸς Μέλητε, πότερόν ἐστιν οἰκεῖν ἄμεινον ἐν πολίταις χρηστοῖς ἢ πονηροῖς; ὦ τάν, ἀπόκριναι· οὐδὲν γάρ τοι

³ listener ⁴ indifference, negligence

χαλεπὸν ἐρωτῶ. οὐχ οἱ μὲν πονηροὶ κακὸν τι ἐργάζονται τοὺς αἰεὶ ἐγγυτάτῳ αὐτῶν ὄντας, οἱ δὲ ἀγαθοὶ ἀγαθόν τι;

Πάνυ γε.

Ἔστιν οὖν ὅστις βούλεται ὑπὸ τῶν συνόντων βλάπτεσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ ὠφελεῖσθαι; ἀποκρίνου, ὦ ἀγαθέ· καὶ γὰρ ὁ νόμος κελεύει ἀποκρίνεσθαι. ἔσθ' ὅστις βούλεται βλάπτεσθαι;

Οὐ δῆτα.⁵

Φέρε δῆ, πότερον ἐμὲ εἰσάγεις δεῦρο ὡς διαφθείροντα τοὺς νέους καὶ πονηροτέρους ποιοῦντα ἐκόντα ἢ ἄκοντα;

Ἐκόντα ἔγωγε.

Τί δῆτα, ὦ Μέλητε; τοσοῦτον σὺ ἐμοῦ σοφώτερος εἶ τηλικούτου ὄντος τηλικόσδε ὧν, ὥστε σὺ μὲν ἔγνωκας ὅτι οἱ μὲν κακοὶ κακὸν τι ἐργάζονται αἰεὶ τοὺς μάλιστα πλησίον ἑαυτῶν, οἱ δὲ ἀγαθοὶ ἀγαθόν, ἐγὼ δὲ δῆ εἰς τοσοῦτον ἀμαθίας ἤκω ὥστε καὶ τοῦτ' ἀγνοῶ, ὅτι ἔάν τινα μοχθηρὸν ποιήσω τῶν συνόντων, κινδυνεύσω κακὸν τι λαβεῖν ὑπ' αὐτοῦ, ὥστε τοῦτο τὸ τοσοῦτον κακὸν ἐκὼν ποιῶ, ὡς φῆς σύ;

Ταῦτα ἐγὼ σοι οὐ πείθομαι, ὦ Μέλητε, οἶμαι δὲ οὐδὲ ἄλλον ἀνθρώπων οὐδένα· ἀλλ' ἢ οὐ διαφθείρω, ἢ εἰ διαφθείρω, ἄκων, ὥστε σύ γε κατ' ἀμφότερα ψεύδῃ. εἰ δὲ ἄκων διαφθείρω, τῶν τοιούτων καὶ ἀκουσίων ἀμαρτημάτων οὐ δεῦρο νόμος εἰσάγειν ἐστίν, ἀλλὰ ἰδίᾳ λαβόντα διδάσκειν καὶ νοθετεῖν.⁶ δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι ἐὰν μάθω, παύσομαι ὃ γε ἄκων ποιῶ. σὺ δὲ συγγενέσθαι μὲν μοι καὶ διδάξαι ἔφυνγες καὶ οὐκ ἠθέλησας, δεῦρο δὲ εἰσάγεις, οἱ νόμος ἐστίν εἰσάγειν τοὺς κολάσεως δεομένους ἀλλ' οὐ μαθήσεως.

Ἀλλὰ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, τοῦτο μὲν ἤδη δῆλον οὐγὰρ ἔλεγον, ὅτι Μελήτωρ τούτων οὔτε μέγα οὔτε μικρὸν πρόποτε ἐμέλησεν. ὅμως δὲ δῆ λέγε ἡμῖν, πῶς με φῆς διαφθεῖρειν, ὦ Μέλητε, τοὺς νεωτέρους; ἢ δῆλον δῆ ὅτι κατὰ τὴν γραφὴν ἣν ἐγράψω θεοὺς διδάσκοντα μὴ

⁵ emphatic δῆ ⁶ remind, warn

νομίζειν οὐς ἡ πόλις νομίζει, ἔτερα δὲ δαιμόνια καινά; οὐ ταῦτα λέγεις ὅτι διδάσκων διαφθείρω;

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν σφόδρα ταῦτα λέγω.

Πρὸς αὐτῶν τοίνυν, ὦ Μέλητε, τούτων τῶν θεῶν ὧν νῦν ὁ λόγος ἐστίν, εἰπὲ ἔτι σαφέστερον καὶ ἐμοὶ καὶ τοῖς ἀνδράσιν τουτοισί. ἐγὼ γὰρ οὐ δύναμαι μαθεῖν πότερον λέγεις διδάσκειν με νομίζειν εἶναί τινας θεούς— καὶ αὐτὸς ἄρα νομίζω εἶναι θεοὺς καὶ οὐκ εἰμὶ τὸ παράπαν ἄθεος⁷ οὐδὲ ταύτῃ ἀδικῶ —οὐ μέντοι οὐσπερ γε ἡ πόλις ἀλλὰ ἐτέρους, καὶ τοῦτ' ἔστιν ὃ μοι ἐγκαλεῖς, ὅτι ἐτέρους, ἢ παντάπασί με φῆς οὔτε αὐτὸν νομίζειν θεοὺς τοὺς τε ἄλλους ταῦτα διδάσκειν.

Ταῦτα λέγω, ὥς τὸ παράπαν οὐ νομίζεις θεούς.

ᾧ θαυμάσιε Μέλητε, ἵνα τί ταῦτα λέγεις; οὐδὲ ἥλιον οὐδὲ σελήνην ἄρα νομίζω θεοὺς εἶναι, ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι ἄνθρωποι;

Μὰ Δί , ὦ ἄνδρες δικασταί, ἐπεὶ τὸν μὲν ἥλιον λίθον φησὶν εἶναι, τὴν δὲ σελήνην γῆν.

Ἀναξαγόρου οἶε κατηγορεῖν, ὦ φίλε Μέλητε; καὶ οὕτω καταφρονεῖς τῶνδε καὶ οἶε αὐτοὺς ἀπείρους γραμμάτων εἶναι ὥστε οὐκ εἰδέναι ὅτι τὰ Ἀναξαγόρου βιβλία τοῦ Κλαζομενίου γέμει τούτων τῶν λόγων; καὶ δὴ καὶ οἱ νέοι ταῦτα παρ' ἐμοῦ μαθήνουσιν, ἃ ἔξεστιν ἐνίοτε εἰ πάνυ πολλοῦ δραχμῆς ἐκ τῆς ὀρχήστρας πριαμένοις Σωκράτους καταγελᾶν, ἐὰν προσποιῇται ἑαυτοῦ εἶναι, ἄλλως τε καὶ οὕτως ἄτοπα ὄντα; ἀλλ' , ὦ πρὸς Διός, οὕτωςί σοι δοκῶ; οὐδένα νομίζω θεὸν εἶναι;

Οὐ μέντοι μὰ Δία οὐδ' ὁπωσιτοῦν.

Ἀπιστός γ' εἶ, ὦ Μέλητε, καὶ ταῦτα μέντοι, ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖς, σαυτῷ. ἐμοὶ γὰρ δοκεῖ οὕτοσί, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, πάνυ εἶναι ὑβριστῆς⁸ καὶ ἀκόλαστος,⁹ καὶ ἀτεχνῶς τὴν γραφὴν ταύτην ὑβρεῖ τινὶ καὶ ἀκολασίᾳ¹⁰ καὶ νεότητι¹¹ γράψασθαι.

⁷ godless; by the gods ⁸ wanton, savage ⁹ wild, licentious
¹⁰ debauchery ¹¹ youth

of this kind: It says that Socrates is a doer of evil, who corrupts the youth; and who does not believe in the gods of the state, but has other new divinities of his own. Such is the charge; and now let us examine the particular counts. He says that I am a doer of evil, and corrupt the youth; but I say, O men of Athens, that Meletus is a doer of evil, in that he pretends to be in earnest when he is only in jest, and is so eager to bring men to trial from a pretended zeal and interest about matters in which he really never had the smallest interest. And the truth of this I will endeavour to prove to you.

Come hither, Meletus, and let me ask a question of you. You think a great deal about the improvement of youth?

Yes, I do.

Tell the judges, then, who is their improver; for you must know, as you have taken the pains to discover their corrupter, and are citing and accusing me before them. Speak, then, and tell the judges who their improver is.—Observe, Meletus, that you are silent, and have nothing to say. But is not this rather disgraceful, and a very considerable proof of what I was saying, that you have no interest in the matter? Speak up, friend, and tell us who their improver is.

The laws.

But that, my good sir, is not my meaning. I want to know who the person is, who, in the first place, knows the laws.

The judges, Socrates, who are present in court.

What, do you mean to say, Meletus, that they are able to instruct and improve youth?

Certainly they are.

What, all of them, or some only and not others?

All of them.

By the goddess Here, that is good news! There are plenty of improvers, then. And what do you say of the audience,— do they improve them?

Yes, they do.

And the senators?

Yes, the senators improve them.

But perhaps the members of the assembly corrupt them?— or do they too improve them?

They improve them.

Then every Athenian improves and elevates them; all with the exception of myself; and I alone am their corrupter? Is that what you affirm?

That is what I stoutly affirm.

I am very unfortunate if you are right. But suppose I ask you a question: How about horses? Does one man do them harm and all the world good? Is not the exact opposite the truth? One man is able to do them good, or at least not many;— the trainer of horses, that is to say, does them good, and others who have to do with them rather injure them? Is not that true, Meletus, of horses, or of any other animals? Most assuredly it is; whether you and Anytus say yes or no. Happy indeed would be the condition of youth if they had one corrupter only, and all the rest of the world were their improvers. But you, Meletus, have sufficiently shown that you never had a thought about the young: your carelessness is seen in your not caring about the very things which you bring against me.

And now, Meletus, I will ask you another question— by Zeus I will: Which is better, to live among bad citizens, or among good ones? Answer, friend, I say; the question is one which may be easily answered. Do not the good do their neighbours good, and the bad do them evil?

Certainly.

And is there anyone who would rather be injured than benefited by those who live with him? Answer, my good friend, the law requires you to answer— does any one like to be injured?

Certainly not.

And when you accuse me of corrupting and deteriorating the youth, do you allege that I corrupt them intentionally or unintentionally?

Intentionally, I say.

But you have just admitted that the good do their neighbours good, and the evil do them evil. Now, is that a truth which your superior wisdom has recognized thus early in life, and am I, at my age, in such darkness and ignorance as not to know that if a man with whom I have to live is corrupted by me, I am very likely to be harmed by him; and yet I corrupt him, and intentionally, too— so you say, although neither I nor any other human being is ever likely to be convinced by you. But either I do not corrupt them, or I

corrupt them unintentionally; and on either view of the case you lie. If my offence is unintentional, the law has no cognizance of unintentional offences: you ought to have taken me privately, and warned and admonished me; for if I had been better advised, I should have left off doing what I only did unintentionally— no doubt I should; but you would have nothing to say to me and refused to teach me. And now you bring me up in this court, which is a place not of instruction, but of punishment.

It will be very clear to you, Athenians, as I was saying, that Meletus has no care at all, great or small, about the matter. But still I should like to know, Meletus, in what I am affirmed to corrupt the young. I suppose you mean, as I infer from your indictment, that I teach them not to acknowledge the gods which the state acknowledges, but some other new divinities or spiritual agencies in their stead. These are the lessons by which I corrupt the youth, as you say.

Yes, that I say emphatically.

Then, by the gods, Meletus, of whom we are speaking, tell me and the court, in somewhat plainer terms, what you mean! for I do not as yet understand whether you affirm that I teach other men to acknowledge some gods, and therefore that I do believe in gods, and am not an entire atheist— this you do not lay to my charge,— but only you say that they are not the same gods which the city recognizes— the charge is that they are different gods. Or, do you mean that I am an atheist simply, and a teacher of atheism?

I mean the latter— that you are a complete atheist.

What an extraordinary statement! Why do you think so, Meletus? Do you mean that I do not believe in the godhead of the sun or moon, like other men?

I assure you, judges, that he does not: for he says that the sun is stone, and the moon earth.

Friend Meletus, you think that you are accusing Anaxagoras: and you have but a bad opinion of the judges, if you fancy them illiterate to such a degree as not to know that these doctrines are found in the books of Anaxagoras the Clazomenian, which are full of them. And so, forsooth, the youth are said to be taught them by Socrates, when there are not unfrequently exhibitions of them at the theatre (price of admission one drachma at the most); and they might pay their money, and laugh at Socrates if he pretends to father these extraordinary views. And so, Meletus, you really think that I do not believe in any god?

I swear by Zeus that you believe absolutely in none at all.

Nobody will believe you, Meletus, and I am pretty sure that you do not believe yourself. I cannot help thinking, men of Athens, that Meletus is reckless and impudent, and that he has written this indictment in a spirit of mere wantonness and youthful bravado. Has he not compounded a riddle,

vocabulary

ἀδίκημα -τος (n, 3) wrong, misdeed
ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad
αἴνιγμα -τος (n, 3) dark saying
αἰνίσσομαι hint, speak in riddles
αἰσχρός shameful
αἰσχύνη (ῥ) shame, dishonor
αἰσχύνω (ῥ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar
ἁλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἀμφισβητέω dispute
ἀναγκάζω force, compel
ἄνθρωπος human
ἀντιλέγω contradict, oppose
ἀπειθέω disobey
ἀπολογία verbal defense
ἀποπειράομαι try, try out
ἀπορέω be confused, distressed
ἄρα interrogative pcl
ἀρετή goodness, excellence
ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute
ἄστος townsman
ἄτοπος strange, unnatural, disgusting
αὐλητής -οῦ (m, 1) flute player
ἀφοράω look away, at ~panorama
ἄχος -εος (n, 3) burden
βέλτιστος best, noblest
δαιμόνιος voc: you crazy guy
δαίμων -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate, doom ~demon
δεῦρο here, come here!
δημόσιος public, the state
δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
διαβολή slander
διαπειράω test; have experience in
διατρίβω (ι) wear down, delay ~tribology
δικαστήριον court
διόμνυμι (ῥ) swear solemnly
διομνύω swear solemnly
ἐγγύς near

ἐγκαλέω demand payment; accuse
εἴπερ if indeed
εἰσάγω lead in ~demagogue
εἴτε if, whenever; either/or
εἴωθα be accustomed, in the habit
ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest
ἐλέγχω shame; try, examine
ἐμπνέω inspire; pass: recover ~apnea
ἐνδείκνυμι (ῥ) address, consider
ἐνθάδε here, hither
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus
ἐξετάζω inspect, interrogate, estimate
ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee
ἐπιτήδευμα -τος (n, 3) habit, business, custom
ἐπιτηδεύω practice, pursue
ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go searching through
έτοῖμος ready; fulfilled
ἡμίθεος -οῦ half-divine ~hemisphere
ἡμίονος (f) mule ~hemisphere
ἥρως hero ~hero
ἦτοι truly; either, or
θορυβέω roar, cheer; disturb
ἵππικός of horses ~hippo
ἰσχύς -ος (f) strength; body of troops
καινός new, fresh, strange
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
καταφρονέω scorn; think of
κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf) there is a danger that
κορωνίς something crook-beaked or curved ~crown
κτάομαι acquire, possess
μαντεία oracular power
μηκέτι no more
μηχανή machine; mechanism, way
μόγισ with difficulty, barely

νόθος bastard
 νύμφα nymph; bride
 ὀλιγωρέω consider unimportant
 ὁμολογέω agree with/to
 ὀνειδίζω upbraid, reproach
 ὀνίνημι help, please, be available
 ὄνομαι blame ~name
 ὄνος (f) donkey ~onager
 οὐδέποτε never
 οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
 ὄφελος -εος (n, 3) a use, a help
 παίζω play ~pediatrician
 παλαιός old ~paleo
 παντάπασιν altogether; yes, certainly
 παραιτέομαι entreat; beg for; decline
 παρακελεύομαι recommend, encourage
 περιέρχομαι go around; come next to
 πότερος which, whichever of two
 πότμος fate ~petal
 προθυμέομαι (ῶ) be eager

σκοπάω watch, observe
 σκοπέω behold, consider
 σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
 σοφός skilled, clever, wise
 συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis
 σφόδρα very much
 τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military unit
 τελευτάω bring about, finish
 ~apostle
 τιμωρέω (ῖ) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked
 ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy
 ὑπομένω stay behind, await
 ~remain
 φαῦλος trifling
 φθόνος malice, envy
 φιλοσοφέω philosophize, study
 φόνος killing ~offend
 φροντίζω consider, ponder

Ἔοικεν γὰρ ὥσπερ αἰνιγμα¹ συντιθέντι διαπειρωμένῳ ἄρα γνώσεται Σωκράτης ὁ σοφὸς δὴ ἐμοῦ χαριεντιζομένου καὶ ἐναντί ἐμαντῶ λέγοντος, ἢ ἐξαπατήσω αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς ἀκούοντας; οὗτος γὰρ ἐμοὶ φαίνεται τὰ ἐναντία λέγειν αὐτὸς ἐαυτῷ ἐν τῇ γραφῇ ὥσπερ ἂν εἰ εἴποι· ἀδικεῖ Σωκράτης θεοὺς οὐ νομίζων, ἀλλὰ θεοὺς νομίζων. καίτοι τοῦτό ἐστι παίζωντος.

Συνεπισκέψασθε δὴ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἢ μοι φαίνεται ταῦτα λέγειν· σὺ δὲ ἡμῖν ἀπόκριναι, ὦ Μέλητε. ὑμεῖς δέ, ὅπερ κατ' ἀρχὰς ὑμᾶς παρητησάμην, μέμνησθέ μοι μὴ θορυβεῖν ἐὰν ἐν τῷ εἰωθότῳ τρόπῳ τοὺς λόγους ποιῶμαι.

Ἔστιν ὅστις ἀνθρώπων, ὦ Μέλητε, ἀνθρώπεια² μὲν νομίζει πράγματ' εἶναι, ἀνθρώπους δὲ οὐ νομίζει; ἀποκρινέσθω, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ μὴ ἄλλα καὶ ἄλλα θορυβεῖτω· ἔσθ' ὅστις ἵππους μὲν οὐ νομίζει, ἵππικὰ δὲ πράγματα; ἢ αὐλητὰς³ μὲν οὐ νομίζει εἶναι, αὐλητικὰ δὲ πράγματα; οὐκ ἔστιν, ὦ ἄριστε ἀνδρῶν· εἰ μὴ σὺ βούλει ἀποκρίνεσθαι, ἐγὼ σοὶ λέγω καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις τουτοισί. ἀλλὰ τὸ ἐπὶ τούτῳ γε ἀπόκριναι· ἔσθ' ὅστις δαίμονια μὲν νομίζει πράγματ' εἶναι, δαίμονας δὲ οὐ νομίζει;

Οὐκ ἔστιν.

Ὡς ὠνήσας ὅτι μόγις ἀπεκρίνω ὑπὸ τουτωνὶ ἀναγκαζόμενος. οὐκοῦν δαίμονια μὲν φῆς με καὶ νομίζειν καὶ διδάσκειν, εἴτ' οὖν καινὰ εἶτε παλαιά, ἀλλ' οὖν δαίμονιά γε νομίζω κατὰ τὸν σὸν λόγον, καὶ ταῦτα καὶ διωμόσω ἐν τῇ ἀντιγραφῇ. εἰ δὲ δαίμονια νομίζω, καὶ δαίμονας δῆπου πολλὴ ἀνάγκη νομίζειν μέ ἐστιν· οὐχ οὕτως ἔχει; ἔχει δὴ· τίθημι γάρ σε ὁμολογοῦντα, ἐπειδὴ οὐκ ἀποκρίνη. τοὺς δὲ δαίμονας οὐχὶ ἤτοι θεοὺς γε ἡγούμεθα ἢ θεῶν παῖδας; φῆς ἢ οὐ;

Πάνυ γε.

Οὐκοῦν εἴπερ δαίμονας ἡγούμαι, ὥς σὺ φῆς, εἰ μὲν θεοὶ τινές εἰσιν οἱ δαίμονες, τοῦτ' ἂν εἴη ὃ ἐγὼ φημί σε αἰνίττεσθαι καὶ χαριεντίζεσθαι, θεοὺς οὐχ ἡγούμενον φάναι με θεοὺς αὐτῶν ἡγεῖσθαι πάλιν, ἐπειδήπερ γε

¹ dark saying ² human ³ flute player

δαίμονας ἡγοῦμαι· εἰ δ' αὖ οἱ δαίμονες θεῶν παῖδες εἰσιν νόθοι⁴ τινές ἢ ἐκ νυμφῶν ἢ ἐκ τινων ἄλλων ὧν δὴ καὶ λέγονται, τίς ἂν ἀνθρώπων θεῶν μὲν παῖδας ἡγοῖτο εἶναι, θεοὺς δὲ μή; ὁμοίως γὰρ ἂν ἄτοπον εἶη ὥσπερ ἂν εἴ τις ἵππων μὲν παῖδας ἡγοῖτο ἢ καὶ ὄνων, τοὺς ἡμιόνους, ἵππους δὲ καὶ ὄνους μὴ ἡγοῖτο εἶναι. ἀλλ', ὦ Μέλητε, οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως σὺ ταῦτα οὐχὶ ἀποπειρώμενος ἡμῶν ἐγράψω τὴν γραφὴν ταύτην ἢ ἀπορῶν ὅτι ἐγκαλοῖς ἐμοὶ ἀληθὲς ἀδίκημα· ὅπως δὲ σύ τινα πείθοις ἂν καὶ σμικρὸν νοῦν ἔχοντα ἀνθρώπων, ὡς οὐ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἔστιν καὶ δαιμόνια καὶ θεῖα ἡγείσθαι, καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ αὐτοῦ μήτε δαίμονας μήτε θεοὺς μήτε ἥρωας, οὐδεμία μηχανή ἐστιν.

Ἀλλὰ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ὡς μὲν ἐγὼ οὐκ ἀδικῶ κατὰ τὴν Μελήτου γραφὴν, οὐ πολλῆς μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ἀπολογίας, ἀλλὰ ἱκανὰ καὶ ταῦτα· ὁ δὲ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἐμπροσθεν ἔλεγον, ὅτι πολλή μοι ἀπέχθεια γέγονεν καὶ πρὸς πολλοὺς, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι ἀληθὲς ἐστιν. καὶ τοῦτ' ἔστιν ὃ ἐμὲ αἰρεῖ, ἐάνπερ αἰρή, οὐ Μέλητος οὐδὲ Ἄνυτος ἀλλ' ἡ τῶν πολλῶν διαβολή τε καὶ φθόνος. ἃ δὴ πολλοὺς καὶ ἄλλους καὶ ἀγαθοὺς ἄνδρας ἥρηκεν, οἶμαι δὲ καὶ αἰρήσει· οὐδὲν δὲ δεινὸν μὴ ἐν ἐμοὶ στή.

Ἴσως ἂν οὖν εἴποι τις· εἰτ' οὐκ αἰσχύνῃ, ὦ Σώκρατες, τοιοῦτον ἐπιτήδευμα ἐπιτηδεύσας ἐξ οὗ κινδυνεύεις νυνὶ ἀποθανεῖν; ἐγὼ δὲ τούτῳ ἂν δίκαιον λόγον ἀντίποιμι, ὅτι οὐ καλῶς λέγεις, ὦ ἄνθρωπε, εἰ οἶμι δεῖν κίνδυνον ὑπολογίζεσθαι τοῦ ζῆν ἢ τεθνάναι ἄνδρα ὅτου τι καὶ σμικρὸν ὄφελός ἐστιν, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐκεῖνο μόνον σκοπεῖν ὅταν πράττῃ, πότερον δίκαια ἢ ἄδικα πράττει, καὶ ἀνδρὸς ἀγαθοῦ ἔργα ἢ κακοῦ. φαῦλοι γὰρ ἂν τῷ γε σῷ λόγῳ εἶεν τῶν ἡμιθέων ὅσοι ἐν Τροίᾳ τετελευτήκασιν οἳ τε ἄλλοι καὶ ὁ τῆς Θέτιδος υἱός, ὃς τοσοῦτον τοῦ κινδύνου κατεφρόνησεν παρὰ τὸ αἰσχρόν τι ὑπομεῖναι ὥστε, ἐπειδὴ εἶπεν ἢ μήτηρ αὐτῷ προθυμουμένῳ Ἑκτορα ἀποκτείνειν, θεὸς οὖσα, οὕτωςί πως, ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι· ὦ παῖ, εἰ τιμωρήσεις Πατρόκλῳ τῷ ἐταίρῳ τὸν φόνον καὶ Ἑκτορα ἀποκτενεῖς, αὐτὸς ἀποθανῇ— αὐτίκα γάρ τοι, φησί, μεθ' Ἑκτορα πότμος ἐτοῖμος—ὁ δὲ τοῦτο ἀκούσας τοῦ μὲν θανάτου καὶ τοῦ κινδύνου ὠλιγώρησε,⁵ πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον δέϊσας

⁴ bastard ⁵ consider unimportant

τὸ ζῆν κακὸς ὢν καὶ τοῖς φίλοις μὴ τιμωρεῖν, αὐτίκα, φησί, τεθναίνην, δίκην ἐπιθεῖς τῷ ἀδικοῦντι, ἵνα μὴ ἐνθάδε μένω καταγέλαστος παρὰ νηυσὶ κορωνίσιν⁶ ἄχθος⁷ ἀρούρης. ἡ αὐτὸν οἶε φροντίσαι θανάτου καὶ κινδύνου;

Οὕτω γὰρ ἔχει, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, τῇ ἀληθείᾳ· οὐδ' ἂν τις ἑαυτὸν τάξῃ ἡγησάμενος βέλτιστον εἶναι ἢ ὑπ' ἄρχοντος ταχθῇ, ἐνταῦθα δεῖ, ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, μένοντα κινδυνεύειν, μηδὲν ὑπολογιζόμενον μήτε θάνατον μήτε ἄλλο μηδὲν πρὸ τοῦ αἰσχροῦ. ἐγὼ οὖν δεινὰ ἂν εἶην εἰργασμένος, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, εἰ ὅτε μέν με οἱ ἄρχοντες ἔταττον, οὓς ὑμεῖς εἴλεσθε ἄρχειν μου, καὶ ἐν Ποτειδαίᾳ καὶ ἐν Ἀμφιπόλει καὶ ἐπὶ Δηλίῳ, τότε μὲν οὐδέ κείνοι ἔταττον ἔμενον ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλος τις καὶ ἐκινδύνευον ἀποθανεῖν, τοῦ δὲ θεοῦ τάττοντος, ὡς ἐγὼ ᾤήθην τε καὶ ὑπέλαβον, φιλοσοφοῦντά με δεῖν ζῆν καὶ ἐξετάζοντα ἑμαυτὸν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους, ἐνταῦθα δὲ φοβηθεῖς ἢ θάνατον ἢ ἄλλ' ὅτιοῦν πρᾶγμα λίπομι τὴν τάξιν.

Δεινὸν τὰν εἶη, καὶ ὡς ἀληθῶς τότε ἂν με δικαίως εἰσάγοι τις εἰς δικαστήριον, ὅτι οὐ νομίζω θεοὺς εἶναι ἀπειθῶν τῇ μαντείᾳ καὶ δεδιῶς θάνατον καὶ οἰόμενος σοφὸς εἶναι οὐκ ὢν. τὸ γάρ τοι θάνατον δεδιέναι, ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἐστὶν ἢ δοκεῖν σοφὸν εἶναι μὴ ὄντα· δοκεῖν γὰρ εἰδέναι ἐστὶν ἃ οὐκ οἶδεν. οἶδε μὲν γὰρ οὐδεὶς τὸν θάνατον οὐδ' εἰ τυγχάνει τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ πάντων μέγιστον ὄν τῶν ἀγαθῶν, δεδίασι δ' ὡς εὐεῖδότες ὅτι μέγιστον τῶν κακῶν ἐστι. καίτοι πῶς οὐκ ἀμαθία ἐστὶν αὕτη ἢ ἐπονείδιστος, ἢ τοῦ οἰεσθαι εἰδέναι ἃ οὐκ οἶδεν; ἐγὼ δ', ὦ ἄνδρες, τούτῳ καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἴσως διαφέρω τῶν πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων, καὶ εἰ δὴ τῷ σοφώτερός του φαίην εἶναι, τούτῳ ἂν, ὅτι οὐκ εἰδὼς ἱκανῶς περὶ τῶν ἐν Ἄιδου οὕτω καὶ οἶμαι οὐκ εἰδέναι· τὸ δὲ ἀδικεῖν καὶ ἀπειθεῖν τῷ βελτίονι καὶ θεῷ καὶ ἀνθρώπῳ, ὅτι κακὸν καὶ αἰσχρόν ἐστιν οἶδα. πρὸ οὖν τῶν κακῶν ὧν οἶδα ὅτι κακά ἐστιν, ἃ μὴ οἶδα εἰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ ὄντα τυγχάνει οὐδέποτε φοβήσομαι οὐδὲ φεύξομαι· ὥστε οὐδ' εἰ με νῦν ὑμεῖς ἀφίετε Ἀνύτῳ ἀπιστήσαντες, ὃς ἔφη ἢ τὴν ἀρχὴν οὐ δεῖν ἐμὲ δεῦρο εἰσελθεῖν ἢ, ἐπειδὴ εἰσῆλθον, οὐχ οἷόν τ' εἶναι

⁶ something crook-beaked or curved ⁷ burden

τὸ μὴ ἀποκτεῖναί με, λέγων πρὸς ὑμᾶς ὡς εἰ διαφευξοίμην ἤδη ἂν ὑμῶν οἱ υἱεῖς ἐπιτηδεύοντες ἅ Σωκράτης διδάσκει πάντες παντάπασι διαφθαρήσονται, —εἴ μοι πρὸς ταῦτα εἵποιτε· ὦ Σώκρατες, νῦν μὲν Ἀνύτῳ οὐ πεισόμεθα ἀλλ' ἀφίεμέν σε, ἐπὶ τούτῳ μέντοι, ἐφ' ᾧ τε μηκέτι ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ζητήσῃ διατρίβειν μηδὲ φιλοσοφεῖν· ἐὰν δὲ ἄλῳς ἔτι τοῦτο πράττων, ἀποθανῇ —εἰ οὖν με, ὅπερ εἶπον, ἐπὶ τούτοις ἀφίοιτε, εἵπομι ἂν ὑμῖν ὅτι ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ἀσπάζομαι μὲν καὶ φιλῶ, πείσομαι δὲ μᾶλλον τῷ θεῷ ἢ ὑμῖν, καὶ ἕωσπερ ἂν ἐμπνέω καὶ οἶός τε ὦ, οὐ μὴ παύσωμαι φιλοσοφῶν καὶ ὑμῖν παρακελεύομενός τε καὶ ἐνδεικνύμενος ὅτῳ ἂν αἰεὶ ἐντυγχάνω ὑμῶν, λέγων οἷά περ εἶωθα, ὅτι ὦ ἄριστε ἀνδρῶν, Ἀθηναῖος ὢν, πόλεως τῆς μεγίστης καὶ εὐδοκίμωτάτης εἰς σοφίαν καὶ ἰσχύν, χρημάτων μὲν οὐκ αἰσχύνη ἐπιμελούμενος ὅπως σοι ἔσται ὡς πλείστα, καὶ δόξης καὶ τιμῆς, φρονήσεως δὲ καὶ ἀληθείας καὶ τῆς ψυχῆς ὅπως ὡς βελτίστη ἔσται οὐκ ἐπιμελῇ οὐδὲ φροντίζεις;

Καὶ ἐάν τις ὑμῶν ἀμφισβητήσῃ καὶ φῇ ἐπιμελείσθαι, οὐκ εὐθὺς ἀφήσω αὐτὸν οὐδ' ἄπειμι, ἀλλ' ἐρήσομαι αὐτὸν καὶ ἐξετάσω καὶ ἐλέγξω, καὶ ἐάν μοι μὴ δοκῇ κεκτῆσθαι ἀρετήν, φάναι δέ, ὀνειδιῶ ὅτι τὰ πλείστου ἄξια περὶ ἐλαχίστου ποιεῖται, τὰ δὲ φαυλότερα περὶ πλείονος. ταῦτα καὶ νεωτέρῳ καὶ πρεσβυτέρῳ ὅτῳ ἂν ἐντυγχάνω ποιήσω, καὶ ξένῳ καὶ ἀσπῳ,⁸ μᾶλλον δὲ τοῖς ἀστοῖς, ὅσῳ μου ἐγγυτέρῳ ἔστ' ἐ γένει. ταῦτα γὰρ κελεύει ὁ θεός, εὖ ἴστε, καὶ ἐγὼ οἶομαι οὐδέν πω ὑμῖν μεῖζον ἀγαθὸν γενέσθαι ἐν τῇ πόλει ἢ τὴν ἐμὴν τῷ θεῷ ὑπηρεσίαν. οὐδὲν γὰρ ἄλλο πράττων ἐγὼ περιέρχομαι ἢ πείθων ὑμῶν καὶ νεωτέρους καὶ πρεσβυτέρους μῆτε σωμάτων ἐπιμελείσθαι μῆτε χρημάτων πρότερον μηδὲ οὕτω σφόδρα ὡς τῆς ψυχῆς ὅπως ὡς ἀρίστη ἔσται, λέγων ὅτι οὐκ ἐκ χρημάτων ἀρετὴ γίνεταί, ἀλλ' ἐξ ἀρετῆς χρήματα καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἀγαθὰ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἅπαντα καὶ ἰδία καὶ δημοσίᾳ. εἰ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα λέγων διαφθείρω τοὺς νέους, ταῦτ' ἂν εἴη βλαβερὰ· εἰ δέ τίς μέ φησιν ἄλλα λέγειν ἢ ταῦτα, οὐδὲν λέγει. πρὸς ταῦτα, φαίην ἂν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ἢ πείθεσθε Ἀνύτῳ ἢ μὴ, καὶ ἢ ἀφίετέ με ἢ μὴ, ὡς

⁸ townsman

thinking to try me? He said to himself:— I shall see whether the wise Socrates will discover my facetious contradiction, or whether I shall be able to deceive him and the rest of them. For he certainly does appear to me to contradict himself in the indictment as much as if he said that Socrates is guilty of not believing in the gods, and yet of believing in them— but this is not like a person who is in earnest.

I should like you, O men of Athens, to join me in examining what I conceive to be his inconsistency; and do you, Meletus, answer. And I must remind the audience of my request that they would not make a disturbance if I speak in my accustomed manner:

Did ever man, Meletus, believe in the existence of human things, and not of human beings?... I wish, men of Athens, that he would answer, and not be always trying to get up an interruption. Did ever any man believe in horsemanship, and not in horses? or in flute-playing, and not in flute-players? No, my friend; I will answer to you and to the court, as you refuse to answer for yourself. There is no man who ever did. But now please to answer the next question: Can a man believe in spiritual and divine agencies, and not in spirits or demigods?

He cannot.

How lucky I am to have extracted that answer, by the assistance of the court! But then you swear in the indictment that I teach and believe in divine or spiritual agencies (new or old, no matter for that); at any rate, I believe in spiritual agencies,— so you say and swear in the affidavit; and yet if I believe in divine beings, how can I help believing in spirits or demigods;— must I not? To be sure I must; and therefore I may assume that your silence gives consent. Now what are spirits or demigods? Are they not either gods or the sons of gods?

Certainly they are.

But this is what I call the facetious riddle invented by you: the demigods or spirits are gods, and you say first that I do not believe in gods, and then again that I do believe in gods; that is, if I believe in demigods. For if the demigods are the illegitimate sons of gods, whether by the nymphs or by any other mothers, of whom they are said to be the sons— what human being will ever believe that there are no gods if they are the sons of gods? You might as well affirm the existence of mules, and deny that of horses and asses. Such nonsense, Meletus, could only have been intended by you to make trial of me. You have put this into the indictment because you had nothing real of which to accuse me. But no one who has a particle of understanding will ever be convinced by you that the same men can believe in divine and superhuman

things, and yet not believe that there are gods and demigods and heroes.

I have said enough in answer to the charge of Meletus: any elaborate defence is unnecessary, but I know only too well how many are the enmities which I have incurred, and this is what will be my destruction if I am destroyed;—not Meletus, nor yet Anytus, but the envy and detraction of the world, which has been the death of many good men, and will probably be the death of many more; there is no danger of my being the last of them.

Some one will say: And are you not ashamed, Socrates, of a course of life which is likely to bring you to an untimely end? To him I may fairly answer: There you are mistaken: a man who is good for anything ought not to calculate the chance of living or dying; he ought only to consider whether in doing anything he is doing right or wrong— acting the part of a good man or of a bad. Whereas, upon your view, the heroes who fell at Troy were not good for much, and the son of Thetis above all, who altogether despised danger in comparison with disgrace; and when he was so eager to slay Hector, his goddess mother said to him, that if he avenged his companion Patroclus, and slew Hector, he would die himself—«Fate,” she said, in these or the like words, «waits for you next after Hector;” he, receiving this warning, utterly despised danger and death, and instead of fearing them, feared rather to live in dishonour, and not to avenge his friend. «Let me die forthwith,” he replies, «and be avenged of my enemy, rather than abide here by the beaked ships, a laughing-stock and a burden of the earth.” Had Achilles any thought of death and danger? For wherever a man’s place is, whether the place which he has chosen or that in which he has been placed by a commander, there he ought to remain in the hour of danger; he should not think of death or of anything but of disgrace. And this, O men of Athens, is a true saying.

Strange, indeed, would be my conduct, O men of Athens, if I who, when I was ordered by the generals whom you chose to command me at Potidaea and Amphipolis and Delium, remained where they placed me, like any other man, facing death— if now, when, as I conceive and imagine, God orders me to fulfil the philosopher’s mission of searching into myself and other men, I were to desert my post through fear of death, or any other fear; that would indeed be strange, and I might justly be arraigned in court for denying the existence of the gods, if I disobeyed the oracle because I was afraid of death, fancying that I was wise when I was not wise. For the fear of death is indeed the pretence of wisdom, and not real wisdom, being a pretence of knowing the unknown; and no one knows whether death, which men in their fear apprehend to be the greatest evil, may not be the greatest good. Is not this ignorance of a disgraceful sort, the ignorance which is the conceit that a man knows what he does not know? And in this respect only I believe myself to differ from men in general, and may perhaps claim to be

wiser than they are:— that whereas I know but little of the world below, I do not suppose that I know: but I do know that injustice and disobedience to a better, whether God or man, is evil and dishonourable, and I will never fear or avoid a possible good rather than a certain evil. And therefore if you let me go now, and are not convinced by Anytus, who said that since I had been prosecuted I must be put to death; (or if not that I ought never to have been prosecuted at all); and that if I escape now, your sons will all be utterly ruined by listening to my words— if you say to me, Socrates, this time we will not mind Anytus, and you shall be let off, but upon one condition, that you are not to enquire and speculate in this way any more, and that if you are caught doing so again you shall die;— if this was the condition on which you let me go, I should reply: Men of Athens, I honour and love you; but I shall obey God rather than you, and while I have life and strength I shall never cease from the practice and teaching of philosophy, exhorting any one whom I meet and saying to him after my manner: You, my friend,— a citizen of the great and mighty and wise city of Athens,— are you not ashamed of heaping up the greatest amount of money and honour and reputation, and caring so little about wisdom and truth and the greatest improvement of the soul, which you never regard or heed at all? And if the person with whom I am arguing, says: Yes, but I do care; then I do not leave him or let him go at once; but I proceed to interrogate and examine and cross-examine him, and if I think that he has no virtue in him, but only says that he has, I reproach him with undervaluing the greater, and overvaluing the less. And I shall repeat the same words to every one whom I meet, young and old, citizen and alien, but especially to the citizens, inasmuch as they are my brethren. For know that this is the command of God; and I believe that no greater good has ever happened in the state than my service to the God. For I do nothing but go about persuading you all, old and young alike, not to take thought for your persons or your properties, but first and chiefly to care about the greatest improvement of the soul. I tell you that virtue is not given by money, but that from virtue comes money and every other good of man, public as well as private. This is my teaching, and if this is the doctrine which corrupts the youth, I am a mischievous person. But if any one says that this is not my teaching, he is speaking an untruth. Wherefore, O men of Athens, I say to you, do as Anytus bids

vocabulary

ἄγροικος field-dwelling, rustic
ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad
ἀηδής unpleasant
ἄθροός grouped
αἷτιος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
αἰτίος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble
ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course
ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἀναίσχυντος shameless; shameful
ἀναπίμπλημι fulfill, endure
 ~plethora
ἀνέχω raise; mid: endure, submit
ἀνθρώπινος human
ἀνόσιος unholy
ἀπάγω lead away, back
 ~demagogue
ἀπολαύω have use, have a benefit
ἀπολογέομαι defend one's conduct
ἀποτρέπω divert from ~trophy
ἀτιμόω (i) punish, dishonor
ἄτοπος strange, unnatural, disgusting
ἄχθομαι be burdened with
βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
βλάπτω break, make fail
γέλοιος laughable; joking
γενναῖος noble, sincere ~genesis
γνήσιος born legitimate ~genus
δαιμόνιος voc: you crazy guy
δεσμός bond, latch, strap; also (pl) headdress
δημόσιος public, the state
δημότης -ου (m, 1) commoner
δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
διαβάλλω throw across; slander

~ballistic
διαγίγνομαι go through; subsist
 ~genus
διακινδυνεύω (ō) take risks
διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
διατελέω accomplish; keep doing
 ~apostle
διατριβή activity, waste of time
διατριβώ (ti) wear down, delay
 ~tribology
διδάσκαλος teacher
δόσις -εως (f) gift, loan ~donate
εἴπερ if indeed
εἴτα then, therefore, next
ἐκπλήσσω panic, be knocked out
 ~plectrum
ἐμμένω stay put, be faithful, fixed
ἐναντιόομαι oppose, contradict
ἐνδείκνυμι (ō) address, consider
ἐνθένδε hence
ἐνταυθοῖ there
ἐνύπνιος seen in dreams
ἐξαμαρτάνω miss; err, do wrong
ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic
ἐξετάζω inspect, interrogate, estimate
ἐπιθυμέω (ō) wish, covet
ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee
ἐπιπέμπω send after, again, to, besides
ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
έτοῖμος ready; fulfilled
ἴλικιότης -ου (m, 1) equal in age, contemporary
θεμιτός legal, righteous
θόλος (f) shed, outbuilding
θορυβέω roar, cheer; disturb
καθεύδω lie down
καταδέω tie up; fall short
καταλύω unyoke; destroy ~loose
κατανοέω notice, realize, learn
καταψηφίζομαι vote against

κατήγορος accuser
κῆδω distress, hurt; mp: care about (+gen) ~heinous
κρούω hit, clap, knock
μάθημα -τος (n, 3) lesson, knowledge
μαντεῖον prophetic warning ~mantis
μάρτυς witness
μέγεθος -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person) ~megaton
μέλος -ους (n, 3) limb; melody
μέλω concern, interest, be one's responsibility
μεταπέμπω send; (mid) summon ~pomp
μηδαμὸς no one
μισθός reward, wages
μύωφ -πος (m) squinting; gadfly
ναυμαχία naval warfare
νωθής lazy
οἰκέω inhabit ~economics
ὀλιγαρχία oligarchy
ὀνειδίζω upbraid, reproach
ὀνέω help, please, be available
ὀνίνημι help, please, be available
ὀνομαι blame ~name
πάλαι long ago ~paleo
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
πανταχοῦ everywhere; completely
πάντως by all means
παρακελεύομαι recommend, encourage
παράλιος seaside
παράνομος lawless, unlawful
πέμπτος fifth ~pentagon
πένης -τος (m) poor
πενία poverty ~osteopenia
περίειμι be superior to; be left over; still exist
πολλαχοῦ in many places
πολυπραγμονέω be too busy,

meddle
πότε when?
πρόκειμαι be placed by; be devoted to
πρόσεμι approach, draw near; add ~ion
προσῆκω belong to, it beseems
προσίημι be allowed near
προστάσσω post at, attach to, command
προστίθημι add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis
προτρέπω prompt, urge, compel; (mp) go, flee to ~trophý
πῶποτε never
ρήτωρ public speaker
σοφός skilled, clever, wise
συγχωρέω accede, concede
συμβουλευέω give advice; (mid) consult ~volunteer
τεκμήριον sign; proof
τελευτάω bring about, finish ~apostle
τιμωρέω (t) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked
τοίνυν well, then
τοσόσδε this much
ὕμετερος (v) yours
ὕπείκω yield, withdraw ~victor
ὕπέχω promise; hold out one's hand; submit to
φείδομαι spare, not use/harm ~aphid
φθονέω envy
φορτικός for carrying; burdensome
φυλή (v) tribe, military unit
χείρων worse, more base, inferior, weaker
χρηστός useful; brave, worthy
ψηφίζω count, vote
ὠφελέω help, be useful

ἐμοῦ οὐκ ἂν ποιήσαντος ἄλλα, οὐδ' εἰ μέλλω πολλάκις τεθνάναι.

Μὴ θορυβεῖτε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ἀλλ' ἐμμείνατέ μοι οἷς ἐδεήθην ὑμῶν, μὴ θορυβεῖν ἐφ' οἷς ἂν λέγω ἀλλ' ἀκούειν· καὶ γάρ, ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, ὀνήσεσθε ἀκούοντες. μέλλω γὰρ οὖν ἅττα ὑμῖν ἐρεῖν καὶ ἄλλα ἐφ' οἷς ἴσως βοηθήσεσθε· ἀλλὰ μηδαμῶς¹ ποιεῖτε τοῦτο. εὖ γὰρ ἴστε, ἐάν με ἀποκτείνητε τοιοῦτον ὄντα οἷον ἐγὼ λέγω, οὐκ ἐμὲ μείζω βλάψετε ἢ ὑμᾶς αὐτούς· ἐμὲ μὲν γὰρ οὐδὲν ἂν βλάβειεν οὔτε Μέλητος οὔτε Ἄνυτος— οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν δύναίτο— οὐ γὰρ οἶομαι θεμιτὸν² εἶναι ἀμείνوني ἀνδρὶ ὑπὸ χείρονος βλάπτεσθαι. ἀποκτείνειε μεντὰν ἴσως ἢ ἐξελάσειεν ἢ ἀτιμώσειεν·³ ἀλλὰ ταῦτα οὗτος μὲν ἴσως οἶεται καὶ ἄλλος τίς που μεγάλα κακά, ἐγὼ δ' οὐκ οἶομαι, ἀλλὰ πολὺ μᾶλλον ποιεῖν ἢ οὗτοισι νῦν ποιεῖ, ἄνδρα ἀδίκως ἐπιχειρεῖν ἀποκτεινύναι. νῦν οὖν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, πολλοῦ δέω ἐγὼ ὑπὲρ ἐμαυτοῦ ἀπολογεῖσθαι, ὥς τις ἂν οἴοιτο, ἀλλὰ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν, μὴ τι ἐξαμάρτητε περὶ τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ δόσιν ὑμῖν ἐμοῦ καταψηφισάμενοι. ἐὰν γάρ με ἀποκτείνητε, οὐ ῥαδίως ἄλλον τοιοῦτον εὐρήσετε, ἀτεχνῶς— εἰ καὶ γελοιότερον εἰπεῖν— προσκείμενον τῇ πόλει ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ ὥσπερ ἵππῳ μεγάλῳ μὲν καὶ γενναίῳ, ὑπὸ μεγέθους δὲ νωθεστέρῳ⁴ καὶ δεομένῳ ἐγείρεσθαι ὑπὸ μύωπός⁵ τινος, οἷον δὴ μοι δοκεῖ ὁ θεὸς ἐμὲ τῇ πόλει προστεθηκέναι τοιοῦτόν τινα, ὃς ὑμᾶς ἐγείρων καὶ πείθων καὶ ὀνειδίζων ἕνα ἕκαστον οὐδὲν παύομαι τὴν ἡμέραν ὅλην πανταχοῦ προσκαθίζων.

Τοιοῦτος οὖν ἄλλος οὐ ῥαδίως ὑμῖν γενήσεται, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' ἐὰν ἐμοὶ πείθησθε, φείσεσθέ μου· ὑμεῖς δ' ἴσως τάχ' ἂν ἀχθόμενοι, ὥσπερ οἱ νυστάζοντες ἐγειρόμενοι, κρούσαντες ἂν με, πειθόμενοι Ἀνύτῳ, ῥαδίως ἂν ἀποκτείναιτε, εἴτα τὸν λοιπὸν βίον καθεύδοντες διατελοῖτε ἂν, εἰ μὴ τινα ἄλλον ὁ θεὸς ὑμῖν ἐπιπέμψειεν κηδόμενος ὑμῶν. ὅτι δ' ἐγὼ τυγχάνω ὢν τοιοῦτος οἷος ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ τῇ πόλει δεδοσθαι, ἐνθένδε ἂν κατανοήσαίτε· οὐ γὰρ ἀνθρωπίνῳ ἔοικε τὸ ἐμὲ τῶν μὲν ἐμαυτοῦ πάντων ἡμεληκέναι καὶ ἀνέχεσθαι τῶν οἰκείων ἀμελουμένων τοσαῦτα ἤδη ἔτη, τὸ δὲ ὑμέτερον πράττειν αἰεὶ, ἰδίᾳ ἐκάστῳ προσιόντα ὥσπερ πατέρα ἢ ἀδελφὸν πρεσβύτερον πείθοντα ἐπιμελεῖσθαι ἀρετῆς.

¹ no one ² legal, righteous ³ punish, dishonor ⁴ lazy

⁵ squinting; gadfly

καὶ εἰ μὲν τι ἀπὸ τούτων ἀπέλανον καὶ μισθὸν λαμβάνων ταῦτα παρεκκελευόμεν, εἶχον ἄν τινα λόγον· νῦν δὲ ὁρᾶτε δὴ καὶ αὐτοὶ ὅτι οἱ κατήγοροι τᾶλλα πάντα ἀναισχύντως οὕτω κατηγοροῦντες τοῦτό γε οὐχ οἰοί τε ἐγένοντο ἀπαναισχυντῆσαι παρασχόμενοι μάρτυρα, ὡς ἐγὼ ποτέ τινα ἢ ἐπραξάμην μισθὸν ἢ ἥτησα. ἱκανὸν γάρ, οἶμαι, ἐγὼ παρέχομαι τὸν μάρτυρα ὡς ἀληθῆ λέγω, τὴν πενίαν.

Ἴσως ἂν οὖν δόξειεν ἄτοπον εἶναι, ὅτι δὴ ἐγὼ ἰδίᾳ μὲν ταῦτα συμβουλευῶ περιῶν καὶ πολυπραγμονῶ, δημοσίᾳ δὲ οὐ τολμῶ ἀναβαίνων εἰς τὸ πλῆθος τὸ ὑμέτερον συμβουλεύειν τῇ πόλει. τούτου δὲ αἰτίον ἐστὶν ὃ ὑμεῖς ἐμοῦ πολλάκις ἀκηκόατε πολλαχοῦ λέγοντος, ὅτι μοι θεῖόν τι καὶ δαμόνιον γίνεται φωνή, ὃ δὴ καὶ ἐν τῇ γραφῇ ἐπικωμωδῶν Μέλητος ἐγράψατο. ἐμοὶ δὲ τοῦτ ἔστιν ἐκ παιδὸς ἀρξάμενον, φωνή τις γιγνομένη, ἣ ὅταν γένηται, αἰεὶ ἀποτρέπει με τοῦτο ὃ ἂν μέλλω πράττειν, προτρέπει δὲ οὐποτε. τοῦτ ἔστιν ὃ μοι ἐναντιοῦται τὰ πολιτικὰ πράττειν, καὶ παγκάλως γέ μοι δοκεῖ ἐναντιοῦσθαι· εὖ γὰρ ἴστε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, εἰ ἐγὼ πάλαι ἐπεχείρησα πράττειν τὰ πολιτικὰ πράγματα, πάλαι ἂν ἀπολώλῃ καὶ οὗτ ἂν ὑμᾶς ὠφελήκη οὐδὲν οὗτ ἂν ἐμαυτόν. καί μοι μὴ ἄχθεσθε λέγοντι τάλῃθῃ· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ὅστις ἀνθρώπων σωθήσεται οὔτε ὑμῖν οὔτε ἄλλω πλῆθει οὐδενὶ γνησίως⁶ ἐναντιούμενος καὶ διακωλύων πολλὰ ἄδικα καὶ παράνομα ἐν τῇ πόλει γίνεσθαι, ἀλλ ἀναγκαῖόν ἐστι τὸν τῷ ὄντι μαχοῦμενον ὑπὲρ τοῦ δικαίου, καὶ εἰ μέλλει ὀλίγον χρόνον σωθήσεσθαι, ἰδιωτεύειν ἀλλὰ μὴ δημοσιεύειν.

Μεγάλα δ' ἔγωγε ὑμῖν τεκμήρια παρέξομαι τούτων, οὐ λόγους ἀλλ ὃ ὑμεῖς τιμᾶτε, ἔργα. ἀκούσατε δὴ μοι τὰ συμβεβηκότα, ἵνα εἰδῇτε ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ἐνὶ ὑπείκαθόμῃ παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον δείσας θάνατον, μὴ ὑπέκων δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀπολοίμην. ἐρῶ δὲ ὑμῖν φορτικὰ⁷ μὲν καὶ δικανικά, ἀληθῆ δέ. ἐγὼ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ἄλλην μὲν ἀρχὴν οὐδεμίαν πώποτε ἥρξα ἐν τῇ πόλει, ἐβούλευσα δέ· καὶ ἔτυχεν ἡμῶν ἡ φυλὴ Ἀντιοχὶς πρυτανεύουσα ὅτε ὑμεῖς τοὺς δέκα στρατηγούς τοὺς οὐκ ἀνελομένους τοὺς ἐκ τῆς ναυμαχίας ἐβουλεύεσασθε ἀθρόους κρίνειν,

⁶ born legitimate ⁷ for carrying; burdensome

παρανόμως, ὥς ἐν τῷ ὑστέρω χρόνῳ πᾶσιν ὑμῖν ἔδοξεν. τότε ἐγὼ μόνος τῶν πρυτάνεων ἡγαντιώθην ὑμῖν μηδὲν ποιεῖν παρὰ τοὺς νόμους καὶ ἐναντία ἐψηφισάμην· καὶ ἐτοίμων ὄντων ἐνδεικνύμαι με καὶ ἀπάγειν τῶν ῥητόρων, καὶ ὑμῶν κελευόντων καὶ βοώντων, μετὰ τοῦ νόμου καὶ τοῦ δικαίου ὥμην μᾶλλον με δεῖν διακινδυνεύειν ἢ μεθ' ὑμῶν γενέσθαι μὴ δίκαια βουλευομένων, φοβηθέντα δεσμὸν ἢ θάνατον. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν ἦν ἔτι δημοκρατουμένης τῆς πόλεως· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὀλιγαρχία ἐγένετο, οἱ τριάκοντα αὖ μεταπεμφόμενοί με πέμπτον αὐτὸν εἰς τὴν θόλον⁸ προσέταξαν ἀγαγεῖν ἐκ Σαλαμῖνος Λέοντα τὸν Σαλαμῖνιον ἵνα ἀποθάνῃ, οἳα δὴ καὶ ἄλλοις ἐκείνοι πολλοῖς πολλὰ προσέταττον, βουλόμενοι ὥς πλείστους ἀναπλῆσαι αἰτιῶν. τότε μέντοι ἐγὼ οὐ λόγῳ ἀλλ' ἔργῳ αὖ ἐνεδειξάμην ὅτι ἐμοὶ θανάτου μὲν μέλει, εἰ μὴ ἀγροικότερον⁹ ἦν εἰπεῖν, οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν, τοῦ δὲ μηδὲν ἄδικον μὴδ' ἀνόσιον ἐργάζεσθαι, τούτου δὲ τὸ πᾶν μέλει. ἐμὲ γὰρ ἐκείνη ἡ ἀρχὴ οὐκ ἐξέπληξεν, οὕτως ἰσχυρὰ οὖσα, ὥστε ἄδικόν τι ἐργάσασθαι, ἀλλ' ἐπειδὴ ἐκ τῆς θόλου ἐξήλθομεν, οἱ μὲν τέτταρες ὥχοντο εἰς Σαλαμίνα καὶ ἤγαγον Λέοντα, ἐγὼ δὲ ὥχόμην ἀπὼν οἴκαδε. καὶ ἴσως ἂν διὰ ταῦτα ἀπέθανον, εἰ μὴ ἡ ἀρχὴ διὰ ταχέων κατελύθη. καὶ τούτων ὑμῖν ἔσονται πολλοὶ μάρτυρες.

Ἄρ' οὖν ἂν με οἴεσθε τοσάδε ἔτη διαγενέσθαι εἰ ἔπραττον τὰ δημόσια, καὶ πράττων ἀξίως ἀνδρὸς ἀγαθοῦ ἐβοήθουν τοῖς δικαίοις καὶ ὥσπερ χρὴ τοῦτο περὶ πλείστου ἐποιούμην; πολλοῦ γε δεῖ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν ἄλλος ἀνθρώπων οὐδεὶς.

Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ διὰ παντὸς τοῦ βίου δημοσίᾳ τε εἰ πού τι ἔπραξα τοιοῦτος φανούμαι, καὶ ἰδίᾳ ὁ αὐτὸς οὗτος, οὐδενὶ πώποτε συγχωρήσας οὐδὲν παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον οὔτε ἄλλῳ οὔτε τούτων οὐδενὶ οὕς δὴ διαβάλλοντες ἐμέ φασιν ἐμοὺς μαθητὰς εἶναι. ἐγὼ δὲ διδάσκαλος μὲν οὐδενὸς πώποτ' ἐγενόμην· εἰ δὲ τίς μου λέγοντος καὶ τὰ ἑμαντοῦ πράττοντος ἐπιθυμοὶ ἀκούειν, εἴτε νεώτερος εἴτε πρεσβύτερος, οὐδενὶ πώποτε ἐφθόνησα, οὐδὲ χρήματα μὲν λαμβάνων διαλέγομαι μὴ λαμβάνων δὲ οὐ, ἀλλ' ὁμοίως καὶ πλουσίῳ καὶ πένητι παρέχω ἑμαντὸν ἐρωτᾶν, καὶ

⁸ shed, outbuilding ⁹ field-dwelling, rustic

ἐάν τις βούληται ἀποκρινόμενος ἀκούειν ὧν ἂν λέγω. καὶ τούτων ἐγὼ εἴτε τις χρηστὸς γίγνεται εἴτε μή, οὐκ ἂν δικαίως τὴν αἰτίαν ὑπέχοιμι, ὧν μήτε ὑπεσχόμεν μηδὲν μηδὲν πώποτε μάθημα¹⁰ μήτε ἐδίδαξα· εἰ δέ τις φησι παρ' ἐμοῦ πώποτε τι μαθεῖν ἢ ἀκούσαι ἰδίᾳ ὅτι μὴ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι οὐκ ἀληθῆ λέγει.

Ἀλλὰ διὰ τί δή ποτε μετ' ἐμοῦ χαίρουσί τινες πολὺν χρόνον διατρίβοντες; ἀκηκόατε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, πᾶσαν ὑμῖν τὴν ἀλήθειαν ἐγὼ εἶπον· ὅτι ἀκούοντες χαίρουσιν ἐξεταζομένοις τοῖς οἰομένοις μὲν εἶναι σοφοῖς, οὓσι δ' οὐ. ἔστι γὰρ οὐκ ἀηδές. ἐμοὶ δὲ τοῦτο, ὡς ἐγὼ φημι, προστέτακται ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοῦ πράττειν καὶ ἐκ μαντείων καὶ ἐξ ἐνυπνίων καὶ παντὶ τρόπῳ ᾧπέρ τις ποτε καὶ ἄλλη θεία μοῖρα ἀνθρώπῳ καὶ ὅτιοῦν προσέταξε πράττειν. ταῦτα, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, καὶ ἀληθῆ ἐστίν καὶ εὐλέγκτα. εἰ γὰρ δὴ ἔγωγε τῶν νέων τοὺς μὲν διαφθείρω τοὺς δὲ διέφθαρκα, χρῆν δήπου, εἴτε τινὲς αὐτῶν πρεσβύτεροι γενόμενοι ἔγνωσαν ὅτι νέοις οὓσιν αὐτοῖς ἐγὼ κακὸν πώποτε τι συνεβούλευσα, νυνὶ αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ἐμοῦ κατηγορεῖν καὶ τιμωρεῖσθαι· εἰ δὲ μὴ αὐτοὶ ἤθελον, τῶν οἰκείων τινὰς τῶν ἐκείνων, πατέρας καὶ ἀδελφούς καὶ ἄλλους τοὺς προσήκοντας, εἴπερ ὑπ' ἐμοῦ τι κακὸν ἐπεπόνθεσαν αὐτῶν οἱ οἰκεῖοι, νῦν μεμνήσθαι καὶ τιμωρεῖσθαι. πάντως δὲ πάρευσιν αὐτῶν πολλοὶ ἐνταυθοὶ οὓς ἐγὼ ὀρώ, πρῶτον μὲν Κρίτων οὐτοσί, ἐμὸς ἡλικιώτης καὶ δημότης,¹¹ Κριτοβούλου τοῦδε πατὴρ, ἔπειτα Λυσανίας ὁ Σφήττιος, Αἰσχίνου τοῦδε πατήρ, ἔτι δ' Ἀντιφῶν ὁ Κηφισιεὺς οὐτοσί, Ἐπιγένους πατήρ, ἄλλοι τοίνυν οὗτοι ὧν οἱ ἀδελφοὶ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ διατριβῇ γεγόνασιν, Νικόστρατος Θεοζοτίδου, ἀδελφὸς Θεοδότου— καὶ ὁ μὲν Θεόδotos τετελεύτηκεν, ὥστε οὐκ ἂν ἐκείνός γε αὐτοῦ καταδειθῇ— καὶ Παράλιος ὅδε, ὁ Δημοδόκου, οὗ ἦν Θεάγης ἀδελφός· ὅδε δὲ Ἀδείμαντος, ὁ Ἀρίστωνος, οὗ ἀδελφὸς οὐτοσί Πλάτων, καὶ Αἰαντόδωρος, οὗ Ἀπολλόδωρος ὅδε ἀδελφός.

Καὶ ἄλλους πολλοὺς ἐγὼ ἔχω ὑμῖν εἰπεῖν, ὧν τινα ἐχρῆν μάλιστα μὲν ἐν τῷ ἑαυτοῦ λόγῳ παρασχέσθαι Μέλητον μάρτυρα· εἰ δὲ τότε

¹⁰ lesson, knowledge ¹¹ commoner

or not as Anytus bids, and either acquit me or not; but whichever you do, understand that I shall never alter my ways, not even if I have to die many times.

Men of Athens, do not interrupt, but hear me; there was an understanding between us that you should hear me to the end: I have something more to say, at which you may be inclined to cry out; but I believe that to hear me will be good for you, and therefore I beg that you will not cry out. I would have you know, that if you kill such an one as I am, you will injure yourselves more than you will injure me. Nothing will injure me, not Meletus nor yet Anytus— they cannot, for a bad man is not permitted to injure a better than himself. I do not deny that Anytus may, perhaps, kill him, or drive him into exile, or deprive him of civil rights; and he may imagine, and others may imagine, that he is inflicting a great injury upon him: but there I do not agree. For the evil of doing as he is doing— the evil of unjustly taking away the life of another— is greater far.

And now, Athenians, I am not going to argue for my own sake, as you may think, but for yours, that you may not sin against the God by condemning me, who am his gift to you. For if you kill me you will not easily find a successor to me, who, if I may use such a ludicrous figure of speech, am a sort of gadfly, given to the state by God; and the state is a great and noble steed who is tardy in his motions owing to his very size, and requires to be stirred into life. I am that gadfly which God has attached to the state, and all day long and in all places am always fastening upon you, arousing and persuading and reproaching you. You will not easily find another like me, and therefore I would advise you to spare me. I dare say that you may feel out of temper (like a person who is suddenly awakened from sleep), and you think that you might easily strike me dead as Anytus advises, and then you would sleep on for the remainder of your lives, unless God in his care of you sent you another gadfly. When I say that I am given to you by God, the proof of my mission is this:— if I had been like other men, I should not have neglected all my own concerns or patiently seen the neglect of them during all these years, and have been doing yours, coming to you individually like a father or elder brother, exhorting you to regard virtue; such conduct, I say, would be unlike human nature. If I had gained anything, or if my exhortations had been paid, there would have been some sense in my doing so; but now, as you will perceive, not even the impudence of my accusers dares to say that I have ever exacted or sought pay of any one; of that they have no witness. And I have a sufficient witness to the truth of what I say— my poverty.

Some one may wonder why I go about in private giving advice and busying myself with the concerns of others, but do not venture to come forward in public and advise the state. I will tell you why. You have heard me speak

at sundry times and in divers places of an oracle or sign which comes to me, and is the divinity which Meletus ridicules in the indictment. This sign, which is a kind of voice, first began to come to me when I was a child; it always forbids but never commands me to do anything which I am going to do. This is what deters me from being a politician. And rightly, as I think. For I am certain, O men of Athens, that if I had engaged in politics, I should have perished long ago, and done no good either to you or to myself. And do not be offended at my telling you the truth: for the truth is, that no man who goes to war with you or any other multitude, honestly striving against the many lawless and unrighteous deeds which are done in a state, will save his life; he who will fight for the right, if he would live even for a brief space, must have a private station and not a public one.

I can give you convincing evidence of what I say, not words only, but what you value far more— actions. Let me relate to you a passage of my own life which will prove to you that I should never have yielded to injustice from any fear of death, and that «as I should have refused to yield” I must have died at once. I will tell you a tale of the courts, not very interesting perhaps, but nevertheless true. The only office of state which I ever held, O men of Athens, was that of senator: the tribe Antiochis, which is my tribe, had the presidency at the trial of the generals who had not taken up the bodies of the slain after the battle of Arginusae; and you proposed to try them in a body, contrary to law, as you all thought afterwards; but at the time I was the only one of the Prytanes who was opposed to the illegality, and I gave my vote against you; and when the orators threatened to impeach and arrest me, and you called and shouted, I made up my mind that I would run the risk, having law and justice with me, rather than take part in your injustice because I feared imprisonment and death. This happened in the days of the democracy. But when the oligarchy of the Thirty was in power, they sent for me and four others into the rotunda, and bade us bring Leon the Salaminian from Salamis, as they wanted to put him to death. This was a specimen of the sort of commands which they were always giving with the view of implicating as many as possible in their crimes; and then I showed, not in word only but in deed, that, if I may be allowed to use such an expression, I cared not a straw for death, and that my great and only care was lest I should do an unrighteous or unholy thing. For the strong arm of that oppressive power did not frighten me into doing wrong; and when we came out of the rotunda the other four went to Salamis and fetched Leon, but I went quietly home. For which I might have lost my life, had not the power of the Thirty shortly afterwards come to an end. And many will witness to my words.

Now do you really imagine that I could have survived all these years, if I had led a public life, supposing that like a good man I had always maintained

the right and had made justice, as I ought, the first thing? No indeed, men of Athens, neither I nor any other man. But I have been always the same in all my actions, public as well as private, and never have I yielded any base compliance to those who are slanderously termed my disciples, or to any other. Not that I have any regular disciples. But if any one likes to come and hear me while I am pursuing my mission, whether he be young or old, he is not excluded. Nor do I converse only with those who pay; but any one, whether he be rich or poor, may ask and answer me and listen to my words; and whether he turns out to be a bad man or a good one, neither result can be justly imputed to me; for I never taught or professed to teach him anything. And if any one says that he has ever learned or heard anything from me in private which all the world has not heard, let me tell you that he is lying.

But I shall be asked, Why do people delight in continually conversing with you? I have told you already, Athenians, the whole truth about this matter: they like to hear the cross-examination of the pretenders to wisdom; there is amusement in it. Now this duty of cross-examining other men has been imposed upon me by God; and has been signified to me by oracles, visions, and in every way in which the will of divine power was ever intimated to any one. This is true, O Athenians, or, if not true, would be soon refuted. If I am or have been corrupting the youth, those of them who are now grown up and have become sensible that I gave them bad advice in the days of their youth should come forward as accusers, and take their revenge; or if they do not like to come themselves, some of their relatives, fathers, brothers, or other kinsmen, should say what evil their families have suffered at my hands. Now is their time. Many of them I see in the court. There is Crito, who is of the same age and of the same deme with myself, and there is Critobulus his son, whom I also see. Then again there is Lysanias of Sphettus, who is the father of Aeschines— he is present; and also there is Antiphon of Cephissus, who is the father of Epigenes; and there are the brothers of several who have associated with me. There is Nicostratus the son of Theosdotides, and the brother of Theodotus (now Theodotus himself is dead, and therefore he, at any rate, will not seek to stop him); and there is Paralus the son of Demodocus, who had a brother Theages; and Adeimantus the son of Ariston, whose brother Plato is present; and Aeantodorus, who is the brother of Apollodorus, whom I also see. I might mention a great many others, some of whom Meletus should have produced as witnesses in the course of his

vocabulary

ἀγανακτέω be vexed, in a ferment
 ἀγωνίζομαι contend, exert oneself
 αἰσχύρος shameful
 αἰσχύνη (ῥ) shame, dishonor
 ἀκροάομαι pay attention
 ἀληθεύω speak truth; be true
 ἀλόγιστος inconsiderate, irrational
 ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course
 ἀναβιβάζω make to mount, promote
 ἀναμνηστικῶς (+2 acc) remind someone ~mnemonic
 ἀνδρεία courage
 ἀνδρεῖος of a man, manly
 ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
 ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
 ἀπελαύνω expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans) ride away
 ἀπολογέομαι defend one's conduct
 ἀπολύω loose, free from ~loose
 ἀποτίνω (ι) pay back
 ἀποφεύγω avoid, escape, go free
 ἀποψηφίζομαι vote against, acquit
 ἀριθμός number
 ἀσέβεια impiety
 ἀτιμάζω (ι) insult, dishonor
 βαρύς heavy ~baritone
 βέλτιστος best, noblest
 βιάζω use force on, violate
 βιόω live; (mp) make a living ~biology
 δάκρυον tear
 δακρύω weep
 δεσμός bond, latch, strap; also (pl) headdress
 δεσμωτήριον prison
 δεῦρο here, come here!
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous
 διαβολή slander
 διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion

διατριβή activity, waste of time
 δικάζω judge
 δικάστης -οῦ (m, 1) judge, juror
 δουλεύω serve, be a slave
 δρᾶμα deed, business, drama
 δραχμή drachma
 δρῦς -ός (f) tree, oak, lumber ~druid
 ἐθίζω accustom
 εἰσάγω lead in ~demagogue
 ἐκάτερος each of two
 ἐκτίνω pay off; (mp) exact full payment
 ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily
 ἐλεέω pity, have mercy on ~alms
 ἐνδείκνυμι (ῥ) address, consider
 ἔνδεκα eleven ~decimal
 ἐννοέω consider
 ἐνταῦθα there, here
 ἐξελαύνω drive out, exile ~elastic
 ἐπεικής fitting ~icon
 ἐπιλανθάνω mp: forget ~Lethe
 ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee
 ἐπιορκέω swear falsely ~oath
 ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow ~trophy
 ἐπίφθονος jealous
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
 ἔσχατος farthest, last
 ἐτοῖμος ready; fulfilled
 εὐδαίμων blessed with a good genius
 εὐεργεσία good deed, public service ~ergonomics
 εὐεργετέω be a benefactor
 εὐεργέτης -ου (m, 1) benefactor
 ζεύγος -ους (n, 3) team of animals ~zygote
 ἡσυχία peace and quiet
 θαρσαλέος bold, over-bold
 θαυμάσιος wonderful

ἵκετεύω approach to beg
 καταψηφίζομαι vote against
 κατήγορος accuser
 λογίζομαι reckon, consider
 μειράκιον youngster
 μέλω concern, interest, be one's
 responsibility
 μεταλαμβάνω share in; swap
 ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
 οἰκειόω adopt, adapt
 οἰκέω inhabit ~economics
 οἶκτος compassion
 ὅμνυμι (ὅ) swear
 ὅπη wherever, however
 ὁπόθεν whence
 ὅποι to which place
 ὀργή urge, impulse; anger
 ὀργίζω anger, provoke, annoy
 οὐδέτερος neither
 οὐκουν certainly not
 ὄφελος -εος (n, 3) a use, a help
 ὀφλισκάνω lose; incur debt
 παιδίον young child; slave
 πάντως by all means
 παρακαλεύομαι recommend,
 encourage
 παρακέλευσις -εως (f) cheering on
 παραπλήσιος similar to
 παραχωρέω yield, concede
 πέμπτος fifth ~pentagon
 πένης -τος (m) poor
 πότερος which, whichever of two
 πρέπω be conspicuous, preeminent
 ~refurbish
 προκρίνω (ι) choose first
 προσήκω belong to, it seems
 πρυτανεῖον town hall, law court

σαφής clear, understandable
 σιγά silence
 σιγάω (ι) be silent
 σιτέομαι (ι) eat ~parasite
 σίτησις (ι) feeding
 σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
 στάσις -εως (f) placing; faction
 στρατηγία office of command,
 strategy ~strategy
 συμβάλλω pit against; compare;
 mp: meet, fall in with ~ballistic
 σύννοια know about someone;
 think proper
 σχεδόν near, approximately at
 ~ischemia
 σχολή rest, leisure
 τάχα quickly, soon; perhaps
 ~tachometer
 τηλίκος of such an age
 τοιόσδε such
 τροφή food, upkeep ~atrophy
 ὑμέτερος (ὅ) yours
 ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's
 support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy
 φρόνιμος sensible, prudent
 φυγή flight, means of escape
 ~fugitive
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
 χίλιοι (ι) thousand ~kilo-
 χωρίς separately; except, other than
 ~heir
 ψεῦδος -ους (n, 3) a lie ~pseudo-
 ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie
 ~pseudo-
 ψῆφος (f) pebble, vote, decree,
 sentence

ἐπελάθετο, νῦν παρασχέσθω— ἐγὼ παραχωρῶ— καὶ λεγέτω εἴ τι ἔχει τοιοῦτον. ἀλλὰ τούτου πᾶν τὸνναντίον εὐρήσετε, ὦ ἄνδρες, πάντας ἐμοὶ βοηθεῖν ἐτοίμους τῷ διαφθείροντι, τῷ κακὰ ἐργαζομένῳ τοὺς οἰκείους αὐτῶν, ὥς φασι Μέλητος καὶ Ἄνυτος. αὐτοὶ μὲν γὰρ οἱ διεφθαρμένοι τάχ' ἂν λόγον ἔχοιεν βοηθοῦντες· οἱ δὲ ἀδιάφθαρτοι, πρεσβύτεροι ἤδη ἄνδρες, οἱ τούτων προσήκοντες, τίνα ἄλλον ἔχουσι λόγον βοηθοῦντες ἐμοὶ ἄλλ' ἢ τὸν ὀρθόν τε καὶ δίκαιον, ὅτι συνίσασσι Μελίτῳ μὲν ψευδομένῳ, ἐμοὶ δὲ ἀληθεύοντι;¹

Εἶεν δὴ, ὦ ἄνδρες· ἃ μὲν ἐγὼ ἔχοιμ' ἂν ἀπολογεῖσθαι, σχεδὸν ἐστὶ ταῦτα καὶ ἄλλα ἴσως τοιαῦτα. τάχα δ' ἂν τις ὑμῶν ἀγανακτήσειεν ἀναμνησθεὶς ἑαυτοῦ, εἰ ὁ μὲν καὶ ἐλάττω τουτουῖ τοῦ ἀγῶνος ἀγῶνα ἀγωνιζόμενος ἐδείχθη τε καὶ ἰκέτευσε τοὺς δικαστὰς μετὰ πολλῶν δακρύων, παιδία τε αὐτοῦ ἀναβιβασάμενος ἵνα ὅτι μάλιστα ἐλεηθῇ, καὶ ἄλλους τῶν οἰκείων καὶ φίλων πολλούς, ἐγὼ δὲ οὐδὲν ἄρα τούτων ποιήσω, καὶ ταῦτα κινδυνεύων, ὥς ἂν δόξαιμι, τὸν ἔσχατον κίνδυνον. τάχ' ἂν οὖν τις ταῦτα ἐννοήσας αὐθαδέστερον ἂν πρὸς με σχοίη καὶ ὀργισθεὶς αὐτοῖς τούτοις θεῖτο ἂν μετ' ὀργῆς τὴν ψήφον. εἰ δὴ τις ὑμῶν οὕτως ἔχει— οὐκ ἀξιῶ μὲν γὰρ ἔγωγε, εἰ δ' οὖν— ἐπιεικῆ ἂν μοι δοκῶ πρὸς τοῦτον λέγειν λέγων ὅτι ἐμοί, ὦ ἄριστε, εἰσὶν μὲν ποὺ τινες καὶ οἰκείοι· καὶ γὰρ τοῦτο αὐτὸ τὸ τοῦ Ὀμήρου, οὐδ' ἐγὼ ἀπὸ δρυὸς οὐδ' ἀπὸ πέτρης πέφυκα ἀλλ' ἐξ ἀνθρώπων, ὥστε καὶ οἰκεῖοί μοι εἰσι καὶ ὑεῖς γε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, τρεῖς, εἰς μὲν μειράκιον² ἤδη, δύο δὲ παιδία· ἀλλ' ὅμως οὐδένα αὐτῶν δεῦρο ἀναβιβασάμενος δεῖσσομαι ὑμῶν ἀποψηφίσασθαι. τί δὴ οὖν οὐδὲν τούτων ποιήσω; οὐκ αὐθαδιζόμενος, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, οὐδ' ὑμᾶς ἀτιμάζων, ἀλλ' εἰ μὲν θαρραλέως³ ἐγὼ ἔχω πρὸς θάνατον ἢ μὴ, ἄλλος λόγος, πρὸς δ' οὖν δόξαν καὶ ἐμοὶ καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ὅλῃ τῇ πόλει οὐ μοι δοκεῖ καλὸν εἶναι ἐμέ τούτων οὐδὲν ποιεῖν καὶ τηλικόνδε ὄντα καὶ τοῦτο τοῦνομα ἔχοντα, εἴτ' οὖν ἀληθὲς εἴτ' οὖν ψεῦδος, ἀλλ' οὖν δεδογμένον γέ ἐστί τῳ Σωκράτῃ διαφέρειν τῶν πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων.

Εἰ οὖν ὑμῶν οἱ δοκοῦντες διαφέρειν εἴτε σοφία εἴτε ἀνδρεία εἴτε

¹ speak truth; be true ² youngster ³ bold, over-bold

ἄλλη ἤτινιοῦν ἀρετῇ τοιοῦτοι ἔσονται, αἰσχρὸν ἂν εἴη· οἷουσπερ ἐγὼ πολλάκις ἐώρακά τινας ὅταν κρίνωνται, δοκοῦντας μὲν τι εἶναι, θανμάσια δὲ ἐργαζομένους, ὡς δεινόν τι οἰομένους πείσεσθαι εἰ ἀποθανοῦνται, ὥσπερ ἀθανάτων ἐσομένων ἂν ὑμεῖς αὐτοὺς μὴ ἀποκτείνητε· οἱ ἐμοὶ δοκοῦσιν αἰσχύνῃ⁴ τῇ πόλει περιάπτειν, ὥστ' ἂν τινα καὶ τῶν ξένων ὑπολαβεῖν ὅτι οἱ διαφέροντες Ἀθηναίων εἰς ἀρετὴν, οὓς αὐτοὶ ἑαυτῶν ἐν τε ταῖς ἀρχαῖς καὶ ταῖς ἄλλαις τιμαῖς προκρίνουσιν, οὗτοι γυναικῶν οὐδὲν διαφέρουσιν. ταῦτα γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, οὔτε ὑμᾶς χρὴ ποιεῖν τοὺς δοκοῦντας καὶ ὀπιοῦν τι εἶναι, οὔτ' , ἂν ἡμεῖς ποιῶμεν, ὑμᾶς ἐπιτρέπειν, ἀλλὰ τοῦτο αὐτὸ ἐνδείκνυσθαι, ὅτι πολὺ μᾶλλον καταψηφιεῖσθε τοῦ τὰ ἐλεῖνὰ ταῦτα δράματα⁵ εἰσαγοντος καὶ καταγέλαστον τὴν πόλιν ποιοῦντος ἢ τοῦ ἡσυχίαν ἄγοντος.

Χωρὶς δὲ τῆς δόξης, ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδὲ δίκαιόν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι δεῖσθαι τοῦ δικαστοῦ οὐδὲ δεόμενον ἀποφεύγειν, ἀλλὰ διδάσκειν καὶ πείθειν. οὐ γὰρ ἐπὶ τούτῳ κáθηται ὁ δικαστής, ἐπὶ τῷ καταχαριζεσθαι τὰ δίκαια, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ τῷ κρίναι ταῦτα· καὶ ὁμῶμοκεν οὐ χαριεῖσθαι οἷς ἂν δοκῇ αὐτῷ, ἀλλὰ δικάσειν κατὰ τοὺς νόμους. οὐκοῦν⁶ χρὴ οὔτε ἡμᾶς ἐθίζειν ὑμᾶς ἐπιορκεῖν οὔθ' ὑμᾶς ἐθίζεσθαι· οὐδέτεροι⁷ γὰρ ἂν ἡμῶν εὐσεβοῖεν. μὴ οὖν ἀξιοῦτέ με, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, τοιαῦτα δεῖν πρὸς ὑμᾶς πράττειν ἢ μήτε ἡγοῦμαι καλὰ εἶναι μήτε δίκαια μήτε ὅσια, ἄλλως τε μέντοι νῆ Δία πάντως καὶ ἀσεβείας⁸ φεύγοντα ὑπὸ Μελήτου τουτουῖ. σαφῶς γὰρ ἂν, εἰ πείθοιμι ὑμᾶς καὶ τῷ δεῖσθαι βιαζοίμην ὁμωμοκότας, θεοὺς ἂν διδάσκοιμι μὴ ἡγείσθαι ὑμᾶς εἶναι, καὶ ἀτεχνῶς ἀπολογούμενος κατηγοροῖν ἂν ἑμαυτοῦ ὡς θεοὺς οὐ νομίζω. ἀλλὰ πολλοῦ δεῖ οὕτως ἔχειν· νομίζω τε γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ὡς οὐδεὶς τῶν ἐμῶν κατηγορῶν, καὶ ὑμῖν ἐπιτρέπω καὶ τῷ θεῷ κρίναι περὶ ἐμοῦ ὅπῃ μέλλει ἐμοί τε ἄριστα εἶναι καὶ ὑμῖν.

Τὸ μὲν μὴ ἀγανακτεῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ἐπὶ τούτῳ τῷ γεγονότι, ὅτι μου κατεψηφίσασθε, ἀλλὰ τέ μοι πολλὰ συμβάλλεται, καὶ

⁴ shame, dishonor ⁵ deed, business, drama ⁶ certainly not
⁷ neither ⁸ impiety

οὐκ ἀνέλπιστόν μοι γέγονεν τὸ γεγονὸς τοῦτο, ἀλλὰ πολὺ μᾶλλον θαυμάζω ἐκατέρων τῶν ψήφων τὸν γεγονότα ἀριθμὸν. οὐ γὰρ ὠρόμην ἔγωγε οὕτω παρ' ὀλίγον ἔσεσθαι ἀλλὰ παρὰ πολὺ· νῦν δέ, ὥς ἔοικεν, εἰ τριάκοντα μόναι μετέπεσον τῶν ψήφων, ἀπεπεφεύγη ἄν. Μέλητον μὲν οὖν, ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκῶ, καὶ νῦν ἀποπέφευγα, καὶ οὐ μόνον ἀποπέφευγα, ἀλλὰ παντὶ δῆλον τοῦτό γε, ὅτι εἰ μὴ ἀνέβη Ἄνυτος καὶ Λύκων κατηγορήσοντες ἐμοῦ, κἂν ὠφλε χιλίας δραχμάς, οὐ μεταλαβὼν τὸ πέμπτον μέρος τῶν ψήφων.

Τιμᾶται δ' οὖν μοι ὁ ἀνὴρ θανάτου. εἶεν· ἐγὼ δὲ δὴ τίνος ὑμῖν ἀντιτιμῆσομαι, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι; ἢ δῆλον ὅτι τῆς ἀξίας; τί οὖν; τί ἀξίός ἐμι παθεῖν ἢ ἀποτεῖσαι, ὅτι μαθὼν ἐν τῷ βίῳ οὐχ ἡσυχίαν ἦγον, ἀλλ' ἀμελήσας ὧν περ οἱ πολλοί, χρηματισμοῦ τε καὶ οἰκονομίας καὶ στρατηγιῶν καὶ δημηγοριῶν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀρχῶν καὶ συνωμοσιῶν καὶ στάσεων τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει γιγνομένων, ἡγήσάμενος ἐμαυτὸν ὧ ὄντι ἐπιεικέστερον εἶναι ἢ ὥστε εἰς ταῦτ' ἰόντα σφῶζεσθαι, ἐνταῦθα μὲν οὐκ ἦα οἱ ἐλθὼν μήτε ὑμῖν μήτε ἐμαυτῷ ἔμελλον μηδὲν ὄφελος εἶναι, ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ ἰδίᾳ ἕκαστον ἰὼν εὐεργετῆν τὴν μεγίστην εὐεργεσίαν, ὥς ἐγὼ φημι, ἐνταῦθα ἦα, ἐπιχειρῶν ἕκαστον ὑμῶν πείθειν μὴ πρότερον μήτε τῶν ἑαυτοῦ μηδεὸς ἐπιμελεῖσθαι πρὶν ἑαυτοῦ ἐπιμεληθεῖν ὅπως ὥς βέλτιστος καὶ φρονιμώτατος ἔσοιτο, μήτε τῶν τῆς πόλεως, πρὶν αὐτῆς τῆς πόλεως, τῶν τε ἄλλων οὕτω κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον ἐπιμελεῖσθαι— τί οὖν ἐμι ἄξιος παθεῖν τοιοῦτος ὢν; ἀγαθόν τι, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, εἰ δεῖ γε κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν τῇ ἀληθείᾳ τιμᾶσθαι· καὶ ταῦτά γε ἀγαθὸν τοιοῦτον ὅτι ἂν πρέποι ἐμοί. τί οὖν πρέπει ἀνδρὶ πένητι εὐεργέτη δεομένῳ ἄγειν σχολὴν⁹ ἐπὶ τῇ ὑμετέρᾳ παρακελεύσει; οὐκ ἔσθ' ὅτι μᾶλλον, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, πρέπει οὕτως ὥς τὸν τοιοῦτον ἄνδρα ἐν πρυτανείᾳ σιτεῖσθαι, πολὺ γε μᾶλλον ἢ εἴ τις ὑμῶν ἵππῳ ἢ συνωρίδι ἢ ζευγεί¹⁰ νενίκηκεν Ὀλυμπίασιν· ὁ μὲν γὰρ ὑμᾶς ποιεῖ εὐδαίμονας δοκεῖν εἶναι, ἐγὼ δὲ εἶναι, καὶ ὁ μὲν τροφῆς οὐδὲν δεῖται, ἐγὼ δὲ δέομαι.

Εἰ οὖν δεῖ με κατὰ τὸ δίκαιον τῆς ἀξίας τιμᾶσθαι, τούτου τιμῶμαι, ἐν

⁹ rest, leisure ¹⁰ team of animals

πρυτανείῳ σιτήσεως.¹¹

Ἴσως οὖν ὑμῖν καὶ ταυτὶ λέγων παραπλησίως δοκῶ λέγειν ὥσπερ περὶ τοῦ οἴκτου¹² καὶ τῆς ἀντιβολήσεως, ἀπαυθαδιζόμενος· τὸ δὲ οὐκ ἔστιν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, τοιοῦτον ἀλλὰ τοιόνδε μᾶλλον. πέπεισμαι ἐγὼ ἐκὼν εἶναι μηδένα ἀδικεῖν ἀνθρώπων, ἀλλὰ ὑμᾶς τοῦτο οὐ πείθω· ὀλίγον γὰρ χρόνον ἀλλήλοις διειλέγμεθα. ἐπεὶ, ὡς ἐγῶμαι, εἰ ἦν ὑμῖν νόμος, ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποις, περὶ θανάτου μὴ μίαν ἡμέραν μόνον κρίνειν ἀλλὰ πολλὰς, ἐπέισθητε ἄν· νῦν δ' οὐ ῥάδιον ἐν χρόνῳ ὀλίγῳ μεγάλας διαβολὰς ἀπολύεσθαι. πεπεισμένος δὴ ἐγὼ μηδένα ἀδικεῖν πολλοῦ δέω ἐμαυτόν γε ἀδικήσῃν καὶ κατ' ἐμαυτοῦ ἐρεῖν αὐτὸς ὡς ἄξιός εἰμί του κακοῦ καὶ τιμῆσεσθαι τοιούτου τινὸς ἐμαντῶ. τί δέισας; ἢ μὴ πάθω τοῦτο οὗ Μέλητός μοι τιμᾶται, ὃ φημι οὐκ εἶδέναι οὔτ' εἰ ἀγαθὸν οὔτ' εἰ κακόν ἐστιν; ἀντὶ τούτου δὴ ἔλωμαι ὦν εὖ οἶδά τι κακῶν ὄντων τούτου τιμησάμενος; πότερον δεσμοῦ; καὶ τί με δεῖ ζῆν ἐν δεσμοτηρίῳ,¹³ δουλεύοντα τῇ αἰεὶ καθισταμένῃ ἀρχῇ, τοῖς ἔνδεκα;¹⁴ ἀλλὰ χρημάτων καὶ δεδέσθαι ἕως ἂν ἐκτείσω; ἀλλὰ ταυτόν μοι ἐστίν ὅπερ νυνδὴ ἔλεγον· οὐ γὰρ ἔστι μοι χρήματα ὁπόθεν¹⁵ ἐκτείσω. ἀλλὰ δὴ φυγῆς τιμήσωμαι; ἴσως γὰρ ἂν μοι τούτου τιμήσαιτε. πολλὴ μεντὰν με φιλοψυχία ἔχει, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, εἰ οὕτως ἀλόγιστός¹⁶ εἰμι ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι λογίζεσθαι ὅτι ὑμεῖς μὲν ὄντες πολῖταί μου οὐχ οἰοί τε ἐγένεσθε ἐνεγκεῖν τὰς ἐμὰς διατριβὰς καὶ τοὺς λόγους, ἀλλ' ὑμῖν βαρύτεραι γεγόνασιν καὶ ἐπιφθονώτεραι, ὥστε ζητεῖτε αὐτῶν νυνὶ ἀπαλλαγῆναι· ἄλλοι δὲ ἄρα αὐτὰς οἴσουσι ῥαδίως; πολλοῦ γε δεῖ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι. καλὸς οὖν ἂν μοι ὁ βίος εἴη ἐξελθόντι τηλικῶδε ἀνθρώπῳ ἄλλην ἐξ ἄλλης πόλεως ἀμειβομένῳ καὶ ἐξελαυνομένῳ ζῆν. εὖ γὰρ οἶδ' ὅτι ὅποι ἂν ἔλθω, λέγοντος ἐμοῦ ἀκροάσονται οἱ νέοι ὥσπερ ἐνθάδε· καὶ μὲν τούτους ἀπελαύνω, οὗτοί με αὐτοὶ ἐξελῶσι πείθοντες τοὺς πρεσβυτέρους· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἀπελαύνω, οἱ τούτων πατέρες δὲ καὶ οἰκεῖοι δι' αὐτοὺς τούτους.

Ἴσως οὖν ἂν τις εἴποι· σιγῶν δὲ καὶ ἡσυχίαν ἄγων, ὦ Σώκρατες, οὐχ

¹¹ feeding ¹² compassion

¹³ prison

¹⁴ eleven

¹⁵ whence

¹⁶ inconsiderate, irrational

speech; and let him still produce them, if he has forgotten— I will make way for him. And let him say, if he has any testimony of the sort which he can produce. Nay, Athenians, the very opposite is the truth. For all these are ready to witness on behalf of the corrupter, of the injurer of their kindred, as Meletus and Anytus call me; not the corrupted youth only— there might have been a motive for that— but their uncorrupted elder relatives. Why should they too support me with their testimony? Why, indeed, except for the sake of truth and justice, and because they know that I am speaking the truth, and that Meletus is a liar.

Well, Athenians, this and the like of this is all the defence which I have to offer. Yet a word more. Perhaps there may be some one who is offended at me, when he calls to mind how he himself on a similar, or even a less serious occasion, prayed and entreated the judges with many tears, and how he produced his children in court, which was a moving spectacle, together with a host of relations and friends; whereas I, who am probably in danger of my life, will do none of these things. The contrast may occur to his mind, and he may be set against me, and vote in anger because he is displeased at me on this account. Now if there be such a person among you,— mind, I do not say that there is,— to him I may fairly reply: My friend, I am a man, and like other men, a creature of flesh and blood, and not «of wood or stone,” as Homer says; and I have a family, yes, and sons, O Athenians, three in number, one almost a man, and two others who are still young; and yet I will not bring any of them hither in order to petition you for an acquittal. And why not? Not from any self-assertion or want of respect for you. Whether I am or am not afraid of death is another question, of which I will not now speak. But, having regard to public opinion, I feel that such conduct would be discreditable to myself, and to you, and to the whole state. One who has reached my years, and who has a name for wisdom, ought not to demean himself. Whether this opinion of me be deserved or not, at any rate the world has decided that Socrates is in some way superior to other men. And if those among you who are said to be superior in wisdom and courage, and any other virtue, demean themselves in this way, how shameful is their conduct! I have seen men of reputation, when they have been condemned, behaving in the strangest manner: they seemed to fancy that they were going to suffer something dreadful if they died, and that they could be immortal if you only allowed them to live; and I think that such are a dishonour to the state, and that any stranger coming in would have said of them that the most eminent men of Athens, to whom the Athenians themselves give honour and command, are no better than women. And I say that these things ought not to be done by those of us who have a reputation; and if they are done, you ought not to permit them; you ought rather to show that you are far more disposed to condemn the man who gets up a doleful scene and makes the

city ridiculous, than him who holds his peace.

But, setting aside the question of public opinion, there seems to be something wrong in asking a favour of a judge, and thus procuring an acquittal, instead of informing and convincing him. For his duty is, not to make a present of justice, but to give judgment; and he has sworn that he will judge according to the laws, and not according to his own good pleasure; and we ought not to encourage you, nor should you allow yourselves to be encouraged, in this habit of perjury— there can be no piety in that. Do not then require me to do what I consider dishonourable and impious and wrong, especially now, when I am being tried for impiety on the indictment of Meletus. For if, O men of Athens, by force of persuasion and entreaty I could overpower your oaths, then I should be teaching you to believe that there are no gods, and in defending should simply convict myself of the charge of not believing in them. But that is not so— far otherwise. For I do believe that there are gods, and in a sense higher than that in which any of my accusers believe in them. And to you and to God I commit my cause, to be determined by you as is best for you and me.

There are many reasons why I am not grieved, O men of Athens, at the vote of condemnation. I expected it, and am only surprised that the votes are so nearly equal; for I had thought that the majority against me would have been far larger; but now, had thirty votes gone over to the other side, I should have been acquitted. And I may say, I think, that I have escaped Meletus. I may say more; for without the assistance of Anytus and Lycon, any one may see that he would not have had a fifth part of the votes, as the law requires, in which case he would have incurred a fine of a thousand drachmae.

And so he proposes death as the penalty. And what shall I propose on my part, O men of Athens? Clearly that which is my due. And what is my due? What return shall be made to the man who has never had the wit to be idle during his whole life; but has been careless of what the many care for— wealth, and family interests, and military offices, and speaking in the assembly, and magistracies, and plots, and parties. Reflecting that I was really too honest a man to be a politician and live, I did not go where I could do no good to you or to myself; but where I could do the greatest good privately to every one of you, thither I went, and sought to persuade every man among you that he must look to himself, and seek virtue and wisdom before he looks to his private interests, and look to the state before he looks to the interests of the state; and that this should be the order which he observes in all his actions. What shall be done to such an one? Doubtless some good thing, O men of Athens, if he has his reward; and the good should be of a kind suitable to him. What would be a reward suitable to a poor man who is your benefactor, and who desires leisure that he may instruct you? There can be

no reward so fitting as maintenance in the Prytaneum, O men of Athens, a reward which he deserves far more than the citizen who has won the prize at Olympia in the horse or chariot race, whether the chariots were drawn by two horses or by many. For I am in want, and he has enough; and he only gives you the appearance of happiness, and I give you the reality. And if I am to estimate the penalty fairly, I should say that maintenance in the Prytaneum is the just return.

Perhaps you think that I am braving you in what I am saying now, as in what I said before about the tears and prayers. But this is not so. I speak rather because I am convinced that I never intentionally wronged any one, although I cannot convince you— the time has been too short; if there were a law at Athens, as there is in other cities, that a capital cause should not be decided in one day, then I believe that I should have convinced you. But I cannot in a moment refute great slanders; and, as I am convinced that I never wronged another, I will assuredly not wrong myself. I will not say of myself that I deserve any evil, or propose any penalty. Why should I? because I am afraid of the penalty of death which Meletus proposes? When I do not know whether death is a good or an evil, why should I propose a penalty which would certainly be an evil? Shall I say imprisonment? And why should I live in prison, and be the slave of the magistrates of the year— of the Eleven? Or shall the penalty be a fine, and imprisonment until the fine is paid? There is the same objection. I should have to lie in prison, for money I have none, and cannot pay. And if I say exile (and this may possibly be the penalty which you will affix), I must indeed be blinded by the love of life, if I am so irrational as to expect that when you, who are my own citizens, cannot endure my discourses and words, and have found them so grievous and odious that you will have no more of them, others are likely to endure me. No indeed, men of Athens, that is not very likely. And what a life should I lead, at my age, wandering from city to city, ever changing my place of exile, and always being driven out! For I am quite sure that wherever I go, there, as here, the young men will flock to me; and if I drive them away, their elders will drive me out at their request; and if I let them come, their fathers and friends will drive me out for their sakes.

Some one will say:

vocabulary

ἀγανακτέω be vexed, in a ferment
ἀδικία injustice, offence
ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad
ἄδύνατος unable; impossible
ἀηδής unpleasant
αἴσθησις -εως (f) sense perception
αἷτιος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
αἰτίος blameworthy; the cause
 ~etiology
ἄλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble
ἀμήχανος helpless, impossible
 ~mechanism
ἄναισχυντία shamelessness, impudence
ἀνάξιος unworthy, undeserved
ἀπαλλαγή relief, escape
ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἀπειθέω disobey
ἀποδημέω be absent, abroad
ἀποδημία foreign travel
ἀπολογέομαι defend one's conduct
ἀπορία difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce
ἀποφεύγω avoid, escape, go free
ἀποψηφίζομαι vote against, acquit
ἄρα interrogative pcl
ἀργύριον small coin
ἀσχολία business, being busy
ἄτε as if; since
αὐτόθι on the spot
αὐτόματος self-willed, accidental
 ~after
βέλτιστος best, noblest
βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
βλάπτω break, make fail
βραδύς slow, dull, late ~Sp.~gordo

γοῦν at least then
δαίμόνιος voc: you crazy guy
δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
διάγω lead through; pass a time
 ~demagogue
διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
διαμυθολογέω (ῶ) communicate
διανοέω have in mind
διατριβή activity, waste of time
διαφεύγω escape, survive
δικάζω judge
δικαστήριον court
δικαστής -οῦ (m, 1) judge, juror
ἐγγυάω undertake
ἐγγυητής -οῦ (m, 1) guarantor
ἐθίζω accustom
εἴωθα be accustomed, in the habit
ἐκλέγω pick, single out
ἐκτίθημι place outside at a spot
 ~thesis
ἐκτίνω pay off; (mp) exact full payment
ἐκφεύγω flee from, escape ~fugitive
ἔλεγχος (n) shame, disgrace; (m) refutation
ἐλέγχω shame; try, examine
ἐμμένω stay put, be faithful, fixed
ἐναντιόομαι oppose, contradict
ἐνθένδε hence
ἐννοέω consider
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐνταυθοῖ there
ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐξετάζω inspect, interrogate, estimate
ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail
ἐπιδείκνυμι (ῶ) display, exhibit
ἐπιθυμέω (ῶ) wish, covet
ἐρευνάω hunt for
ἔσχατος farthest, last
εὐδαιμονία prosperity
ἔωθεν at first light

ἡδέως pleasantly ~hedonism
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
 ἡλικία time of life, contemporaries
 ἡμίθεος -οῦ half-divine
 ~hemisphere
 ἡνίκα when
 ἡσυχία peace and quiet
 θαυμάσιος wonderful
 θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable
 θρηνέω sing a dirge ~threnody
 ἰδιώτης -ου (m, 1) private; a layman
 καθεύδω lie down
 καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
 καταδαρθάνω sleep, lie down to sleep
 καταψηφίζομαι vote against
 κατήγορος accuser
 κέρδος -ους (n, 3) advantage, cunning
 κολούω skimp, fail
 κρίσις -εως (f) decision, issue
 λοιδορέω abuse, revile
 μαντεύομαι to divine ~mantis
 μαντικός prophetic
 μεταβολή change, exchange
 μεταμέλομαι (impers.+dat.) cause regret to; (mp) regret
 μεταξύ between
 μέτριος medium, moderate
 μηχανάομαι build, contrive
 ~mechanism
 μηχανή machine; mechanism, way
 μνᾶ mina
 μυρίος (ῶ) 10,000 ~myriad
 ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
 ὀδύρομαι (ὀ) lament ~anodyne
 οἴχοθεν from home, from one's own

resources ~economics
 ὄναρ -τος (n) dream
 ὀνειδίζω upbraid, reproach
 ὀρθόω stand up
 οὐδαμοῦ nowhere
 οὐπω no longer
 ὀφλισκάνω lose; incur debt
 πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition
 παλαιός old ~paleo
 πάντως by all means
 παραμένω stay with ~remain
 περιμένω wait for
 πίμπλημι fill (+gen.) ~plenum
 πολλαχού in many places
 πόσος how many, much, far?
 πότε when?
 πρεσβύτης -ου (ῶ, m, 1) old person
 πρόσω forward, in the future; far
 σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptical
 σοφός skilled, clever, wise
 συγγίγνομαι associate with, meet, have sex ~genus
 σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion
 συνίημι send together; hear, notice, understand ~jet
 τεκμήριον sign; proof
 τιμωρία (τι) vengeance, punishment
 τόλμη courage
 ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy
 φάσκω declare, promise, think
 ~fame
 φαῦλος trifling

οἷός τ' ἔσῃ ἡμῖν ἐξεληθὼν ζῆν· τουτὶ δὴ ἐστὶ πάντων χαλεπώτατον πείσαι τινας ὑμῶν.

Ἐάντε γὰρ λέγω ὅτι τῷ θεῷ ἀπειθεῖν τοῦτ' ἐστὶν καὶ διὰ τοῦτ' ἀδύνατον ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν, οὐ πείσεσθέ μοι ὡς εἰρωνευομένῳ· ἐάντ' αὖ λέγω ὅτι καὶ τυγχάνει μέγιστον ἀγαθὸν ὃν ἀνθρώπῳ τοῦτο, ἐκάστης ἡμέρας περὶ ἀρετῆς τοὺς λόγους ποιείσθαι καὶ τῶν ἄλλων περὶ ὧν ὑμεῖς ἐμοῦ ἀκούετε διαλεγομένου καὶ ἐμαυτὸν καὶ ἄλλους ἐξετάζοντος, ὁ δὲ ἀνεξέταστος βίος οὐ βιωτὸς ἀνθρώπῳ, ταῦτα δ' ἔτι ἦττον πείσεσθέ μοι λέγοντι. τὰ δὲ ἔχει μὲν οὕτως, ὡς ἐγὼ φημι, ὦ ἄνδρες, πείθειν δὲ οὐ ῥάδιον. καὶ ἐγὼ ἅμα οὐκ εἴθισμαι ἐμαυτὸν ἀξιοῦν κακοῦ οὐδενός. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ἦν μοι χρήματα, ἐτιμησάμην ἂν χρημάτων ὅσα ἔμελλον ἐκτεῖσαι, οὐδὲν γὰρ ἂν ἐβλάβην· νῦν δὲ οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν, εἰ μὴ ἄρα ὅσον ἂν ἐγὼ δυναίμην ἐκτεῖσαι, τοσούτου βούλεσθέ μοι τιμῆσαι. ἴσως δ' ἂν δυναίμην ἐκτεῖσαι ὑμῖν που μνᾶν¹ ἀργυρίου· τοσούτου οὖν τιμῶμαι.

Πλάτων δὲ ὅδε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, καὶ Κρίτων καὶ Κριτόβουλος καὶ Ἀπολλόδωρος κελεύουσί με τριάκοντα μνῶν τιμήσασθαι, αὐτοὶ δ' ἐγγυᾶσθαι· τιμῶμαι οὖν τοσούτου, ἐγγυηταὶ δὲ ὑμῖν ἔσονται τοῦ ἀργυρίου οὗτοι ἀξιόχρεοι.

Οὐ πολλοῦ γ' ἔνεκα χρόνου, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ὄνομα ἔχετε καὶ αἰτίαν ὑπὸ τῶν βουλομένων τὴν πόλιν λαιδορεῖν ὡς Σωκράτῃ ἀπεκτόνατε, ἄνδρα σοφόν— φήσουσι γὰρ δὴ σοφὸν εἶναι, εἰ καὶ μὴ εἰμι, οἱ βουλόμενοι ὑμῖν ὀνειδίζειν— εἰ γοῦν περιεμείνατε ὀλίγον χρόνον, ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου ἂν ὑμῖν τοῦτο ἐγένετο· ὁρᾶτε γὰρ δὴ τὴν ἡλικίαν ὅτι πόρρω ἤδη ἐστὶ τοῦ βίου θανάτου δὲ ἐγγύς. λέγω δὲ τοῦτο οὐ πρὸς πάντας ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ πρὸς τοὺς ἐμοῦ καταψηφισαμένους θάνατον. λέγω δὲ καὶ τὸδε πρὸς τοὺς αὐτοὺς τούτους. ἴσως με οἴεσθε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἀθηναῖοι, ἀπορία λόγων ἐαλωκέναι τοιούτων οἷς ἂν ὑμᾶς ἔπεισα, εἰ ὥμην δεῖν ἅπαντα ποιεῖν καὶ λέγειν ὥστε ἀποφυγεῖν τὴν δίκην. πολλοῦ γε δεῖ. ἀλλ' ἀπορία μὲν ἐάλωκα, οὐ μέντοι λόγων, ἀλλὰ τόλμης καὶ ἀναισχυντίας καὶ τοῦ μὴ ἐθέλειν λέγειν πρὸς ὑμᾶς

¹ mina

τοιαῦτα οἱ ἂν ὑμῖν μὲν ἥδιστα ἦν ἀκούειν— θρηνηοῦντός² τέ μου καὶ ὀδυρομένου καὶ ἄλλα ποιούντος καὶ λέγοντος πολλὰ καὶ ἀνάξια ἐμοῦ, ὡς ἐγὼ φημι, οἷα δὴ καὶ εἴθισθε ὑμεῖς τῶν ἄλλων ἀκούειν. ἀλλ οὔτε τότε ὥγήτην δεῖν ἔνεκα τοῦ κινδύνου πρᾶξαι οὐδὲν ἀνελεύθερον, οὔτε νῦν μοι μεταμέλει οὕτως ἀπολογησαμένῳ, ἀλλὰ πολὺ μᾶλλον αἰροῦμαι ὧδε ἀπολογησάμενος τεθνάναι ἢ ἐκείνως ζῆν.

Οὔτε γὰρ ἐν δίκῃ οὔτ' ἐν πολέμῳ οὔτ' ἐμὲ οὔτ' ἄλλον οὐδένα δεῖ τοῦτο μηχανᾶσθαι, ὅπως ἀποφεύξεται πᾶν ποιῶν θάνατον. καὶ γὰρ ἐν ταῖς μάχαις πολλάκις δῆλον γίνεται ὅτι τό γε ἀποθανεῖν ἂν τις ἐκφύγοι καὶ ὅπλα ἀφείς καὶ ἐφ' ἱκετείαν τραπόμενος τῶν διωκόντων· καὶ ἄλλαι μηχαναὶ πολλάι εἰσιν ἐν ἐκάστοις τοῖς κινδύνοις ὥστε διαφεύγειν θάνατον, ἐάν τις τολμᾷ πᾶν ποιεῖν καὶ λέγειν. ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐ τοῦτ' ἦ χαλεπὸν, ὧ ἄνδρες, θάνατον ἐκφυγεῖν, ἀλλὰ πολὺ χαλεπώτερον πονηρίαν· θᾶττον γὰρ θανάτου θεῖ. καὶ νῦν ἐγὼ μὲν ἄτε βραδὺς³ ὢν καὶ πρεσβύτης ὑπὸ τοῦ βραδυτέρου ἐάλων, οἱ δ' ἐμοὶ κατήγοροι ἄτε δεινοὶ καὶ ὀξεῖς ὄντες ὑπὸ τοῦ θάττονος, τῆς κακίας. καὶ νῦν ἐγὼ μὲν ἅπειμι ὑφ' ὑμῶν θανάτου δίκην ὀφλῶν, οὗτοι δ' ὑπὸ τῆς ἀληθείας ὠφληκότες μοχθηρίαν καὶ ἀδικίαν. καὶ ἐγὼ τε τῷ τιμῆματι ἐμμένω καὶ οὗτοι. ταῦτα μὲν που ἴσως οὕτως καὶ ἔδει σχεῖν, καὶ οἶμαι αὐτὰ μετρίως ἔχειν.

Τὸ δὲ δὴ μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπιθυμῶ ὑμῖν χρησμοδεῖσαι, ὧ καταψηφισάμενοί μου· καὶ γὰρ εἰμι ἤδη ἐνταῦθα ἐν ᾧ μάλιστα ἄνθρωποι χρησμοδοοῦσιν, ὅταν μέλλωσιν ἀποθανεῖσθαι. φημι γάρ, ὧ ἄνδρες οἱ ἐμὲ ἀπεκτόνατε, τιμωρίαν ὑμῖν ἦξειν εὐθὺς μετὰ τὸν ἐμὸν θάνατον πολὺ χαλεπωτέρα νῆ Δία ἢ οἷαν ἐμὲ ἀπεκτόνατε· νῦν γὰρ τοῦτο εἵργασθε οἰόμενοι μὲν ἀπαλλάξεσθαι τοῦ διδόναι ἔλεγχον⁴ τοῦ βίου, τὸ δὲ ὑμῖν πολὺ ἐναντίον ἀποβήσεται, ὡς ἐγὼ φημι. πλείους ἔσονται ὑμᾶς οἱ ἐλέγχοντες, οὓς νῦν ἐγὼ κατεῖχον, ὑμεῖς δὲ οὐκ ἠσθάνεσθε· καὶ χαλεπώτεροι ἔσονται ὅσῳ νεώτεροί εἰσιν, καὶ ὑμεῖς μᾶλλον ἀγανακτήσετε. εἰ γὰρ οἴεσθε ἀποκτείνοντες ἀνθρώπους ἐπισχῆσειν τοῦ ὀνειδίζειν τινὰ ὑμῖν ὅτι οὐκ ὀρθῶς ζῆτε, οὐ καλῶς διανοεῖσθε· οὐ γὰρ ἐσθ' αὕτη ἡ

² sing a dirge ³ slow, dull, late ⁴ (n) shame, disgrace; (m) refutation

ἀπαλλαγὴ οὔτε πάνυ δυνατὴ οὔτε καλή, ἀλλ' ἐκείνη καὶ καλλίστη καὶ ῥάστη, μὴ τοὺς ἄλλους κολούειν⁵ ἀλλ' ἐαυτὸν παρασκευάζειν ὅπως ἔσται ὡς βέλτιστος. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ὑμῖν τοῖς καταψηφισαμένοις μαντευσάμενος⁶ ἀπαλλάττομαι.

Τοῖς δὲ ἀποψηφισαμένοις ἡδέως ἂν διαλεχθεῖν ὑπὲρ τοῦ γεγονότος τουτοῦ πράγματος, ἐν ᾧ οἱ ἄρχοντες ἀσχολίαν⁷ ἄγουσι καὶ οὕτω ἔρχομαι οἱ ἐλθόντα με δεῖ τεθνάναι. ἀλλὰ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες, παραμείνατε τοσοῦτον χρόνον· οὐδὲν γὰρ κωλύει διαμυθολογῆσαι πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἕως ἔξεστιν.

Ὑμῖν γὰρ ὡς φίλοις οὔσιν ἐπιδείξει ἐθέλω τὸ νυνὶ μοι συμβεβηκὸς τί ποτε νοεῖ. ἐμοὶ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες δικασταί— ὑμᾶς γὰρ δικαστὰς καλῶν ὀρθῶς ἂν καλοῖην— θαυμάσιόν τι γέγονεν. ἡ γὰρ εἰωθυῖά μοι μαντικὴ⁸ ἢ τοῦ δαϊμονίου ἐν μὲν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ παντὶ πάνυ πυκνὴ αἰὲ ἦν καὶ πάνυ ἐπὶ σμικροῖς ἐναντιουμένη, εἴ τι μέλλοιμι μὴ ὀρθῶς πράξειν. νυνὶ δὲ συμβεβηκὲ μοι ἅπερ ὀράτε καὶ αὐτοί, ταυτὶ ἅ γε δὴ οἰηθείη ἂν τις καὶ νομίζεται ἔσχατα κακῶν εἶναι· ἐμοὶ δὲ οὔτε ἐξιώντι ἔωθεν οἴκοθεν⁹ ἠναντιώθη τὸ τοῦ θεοῦ σημεῖον, οὔτε ἡνίκα ἀνέβαινον ἐνταυθοῖ ἐπὶ τὸ δικαστήριον, οὔτε ἐν τῷ λόγῳ οὐδαμοῦ μέλλοντί τι ἔρευν. καίτοι ἐν ἄλλοις λόγοις πολλαχοῦ δὴ με ἐπέσχε λέγοντα μεταξὺ· νῦν δὲ οὐδαμοῦ περὶ ταύτην τὴν πράξιν οὐτ' ἐν ἔργῳ οὐδενὶ οὕτ' ἐν λόγῳ ἠναντιώταί μοι. τί οὖν αἴτιον εἶναι ὑπολαμβάνω; ἐγὼ ὑμῖν ἐρῶ· κινδυνεύει γάρ μοι τὸ συμβεβηκὸς τοῦτο ἀγαθὸν γεγονέναι, καὶ οὐκ ἔσθ' ὅπως ἡμεῖς ὀρθῶς ὑπολαμβάνομεν, ὅσοι οἰόμεθα κακὸν εἶναι τὸ τεθνάναι. μέγα μοι τεκμήριον τούτου γέγονεν· οὐ γὰρ ἔσθ' ὅπως οὐκ ἠναντιώθη ἂν μοι τὸ εἰωθὸς σημεῖον, εἰ μὴ τι ἔμελλον ἐγὼ ἀγαθὸν πράξειν.

Ἐννοήσωμεν δὲ καὶ τῇδε ὡς πολλὴ ἐλπίς ἐστίν ἀγαθὸν αὐτὸ εἶναι. δυοῖν γὰρ θάτερόν ἐστιν τὸ τεθνάναι· ἢ γὰρ οἶον μηδὲν εἶναι μηδὲ αἰσθησι¹⁰ μηδεμίαν μηδενὸς ἔχειν τὸν τεθνεῶτα, ἢ κατὰ τὰ λεγόμενα

⁵ skimp, fail ⁶ to divine ⁷ business, being busy ⁸ prophetic

⁹ from home, from one's own resources ¹⁰ sense perception

μεταβολή τις τυγχάνει οὐσα καὶ μετοίκησις τῇ ψυχῇ τοῦ τόπου τοῦ ἐνθένδε εἰς ἄλλον τόπον. καὶ εἴτε δὴ μηδεμία αἰσθησίς ἐστιν ἄλλοιον ὕπνος ἐπειδάν τις καθεύδων μὴδ ὄναρ¹¹ μὴδὲν ὄρα, θαυμάσιον κέρδος ἂν εἴη ὁ θάνατος— ἐγὼ γὰρ ἂν οἶμαι, εἴ τινα ἐκλεξάμενον δέοι ταύτην τὴν νύκτα ἐν ἣ οὕτω κατέδαρθεν ὥστε μὴδὲ ὄναρ ἰδεῖν, καὶ τὰς ἄλλας νύκτας τε καὶ ἡμέρας τὰς τοῦ βίου τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ ἀντιπαραθέντα ταύτῃ τῇ νυκτὶ δέοι σκεψάμενον εἰπεῖν πόσας ἄμεινον καὶ ἥδιον ἡμέρας καὶ νύκτας ταύτης τῆς νυκτὸς βεβίωκεν ἐν τῷ ἑαυτοῦ βίῳ, οἶμαι ἂν μὴ ὅτι ἰδιώτην τινά, ἀλλὰ τὸν μέγαν βασιλέα εὐαριθμητούς ἂν εὐρεῖν αὐτὸν ταύτας πρὸς τὰς ἄλλας ἡμέρας καὶ νύκτας— εἰ οὖν τοιοῦτον ὁ θάνατός ἐστιν, κέρδος ἔγωγε λέγω· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲν πλείων ὁ πᾶς χρόνος φαίνεται οὕτω δὴ εἶναι ἢ μία νύξ. εἰ δ' αὖ οἶον ἀποδημησαί ἐστιν ὁ θάνατος ἐνθένδε εἰς ἄλλον τόπον, καὶ ἀληθὴ ἐστιν τὰ λεγόμενα, ὥς ἄρα ἐκεῖ εἰσι πάντες οἱ τεθνεώτες, τί μείζον ἀγαθὸν τούτου εἴη ἂν, ὧ ἄνδρες δικασταί;

Εἰ γάρ τις ἀφικόμενος εἰς Ἄιδου, ἀπαλλαγείς τουτωνὶ τῶν φασκόντων δικαστῶν εἶναι, εὐρήσει τοὺς ὡς ἀληθῶς δικαστάς, οἵπερ καὶ λέγονται ἐκεῖ δικάζειν, Μίνως τε καὶ Ῥαδάμανθυς καὶ Αἰακὸς καὶ Τριπτόλεμος καὶ ἄλλοι ὅσοι τῶν ἡμιθέων δίκαιοι ἐγένοντο ἐν τῷ ἑαυτῶν βίῳ, ἄρα φαύλη ἂν εἴη ἡ ἀποδημία; ἢ αὖ Ὀρφεὶ συγγενέσθαι καὶ Μουσαίῳ καὶ Ἡσιόδῳ καὶ Ὀμήρῳ ἐπὶ πόσῳ ἂν τις δέξαιτ' ἂν ὑμῶν; ἐγὼ μὲν γὰρ πολλάκις ἐθέλω τεθνάναι εἰ ταῦτ' ἔστιν ἀληθὴ. ἐπεὶ ἔμοιγε καὶ αὐτῷ θαυμαστὴ ἂν εἴη ἡ διατριβὴ αὐτόθι, ὅποτε ἐντύχοιμι Παλαμῆδαι καὶ Αἴαντι τῷ Τελαμῶνος καὶ εἴ τις ἄλλος τῶν παλαιῶν διὰ κρίσιν ἄδικον τέθνηκεν, ἀντιπαραβάλλοντι τὰ ἑμαυτοῦ πάθη πρὸς τὰ ἐκείνων— ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, οὐκ ἂν ἀηδὲς εἴη— καὶ δὴ τὸ μέγιστον, τοὺς ἐκεῖ ἐξετάζοντα καὶ ἐρευνῶντα¹² ὥσπερ τοὺς ἐνταῦθα διάγειν, τίς αὐτῶν σοφός ἐστιν καὶ τίς οἶεται μὲν, ἔστιν δ' οὐ. ἐπὶ πόσῳ δ' ἂν τις, ὧ ἄνδρες δικασταί, δέξαιτο ἐξετάσαι τὸν ἐπὶ Τροίαν ἀγαγόντα τὴν πολλὴν στρατιὰν ἢ Ὀδυσσέα ἢ Σίσυφον ἢ ἄλλους μυρίους ἂν τις εἴποι καὶ ἄνδρας καὶ γυναῖκας, οἷς ἐκεῖ διαλέγεσθαι καὶ συνεῖναι καὶ ἐξετάζειν ἀμήχανον ἂν εἴη εὐδαιμονίας; πάντως οὐ δήπου

¹¹ dream ¹² hunt for

Yes, Socrates, but cannot you hold your tongue, and then you may go into a foreign city, and no one will interfere with you? Now I have great difficulty in making you understand my answer to this. For if I tell you that to do as you say would be a disobedience to the God, and therefore that I cannot hold my tongue, you will not believe that I am serious; and if I say again that daily to discourse about virtue, and of those other things about which you hear me examining myself and others, is the greatest good of man, and that the unexamined life is not worth living, you are still less likely to believe me. Yet I say what is true, although a thing of which it is hard for me to persuade you. Also, I have never been accustomed to think that I deserve to suffer any harm. Had I money I might have estimated the offence at what I was able to pay, and not have been much the worse. But I have none, and therefore I must ask you to proportion the fine to my means. Well, perhaps I could afford a mina, and therefore I propose that penalty: Plato, Crito, Critobulus, and Apollodorus, my friends here, bid me say thirty minae, and they will be the sureties. Let thirty minae be the penalty; for which sum they will be ample security to you.

Not much time will be gained, O Athenians, in return for the evil name which you will get from the detractors of the city, who will say that you killed Socrates, a wise man; for they will call me wise, even although I am not wise, when they want to reproach you. If you had waited a little while, your desire would have been fulfilled in the course of nature. For I am far advanced in years, as you may perceive, and not far from death. I am speaking now not to all of you, but only to those who have condemned me to death. And I have another thing to say to them: you think that I was convicted because I had no words of the sort which would have procured my acquittal—I mean, if I had thought fit to leave nothing undone or unsaid. Not so; the deficiency which led to my conviction was not of words—certainly not. But I had not the boldness or impudence or inclination to address you as you would have liked me to do, weeping and wailing and lamenting, and saying and doing many things which you have been accustomed to hear from others, and which, as I maintain, are unworthy of me. I thought at the time that I ought not to do anything common or mean when in danger: nor do I now repent of the style of my defence; I would rather die having spoken after my manner, than speak in your manner and live. For neither in war nor yet at law ought I or any man to use every way of escaping death. Often in battle there can be no doubt that if a man will throw away his arms, and fall on his knees before his pursuers, he may escape death; and in other dangers there are other ways of escaping death, if a man is willing to say and do anything. The difficulty, my friends, is not to avoid death, but to avoid unrighteousness; for that runs faster than death. I am old and move slowly, and the slower runner has overtaken me, and my accusers are keen and quick, and the faster

runner, who is unrighteousness, has overtaken them. And now I depart hence condemned by you to suffer the penalty of death,— they too go their ways condemned by the truth to suffer the penalty of villainy and wrong; and I must abide by my award— let them abide by theirs. I suppose that these things may be regarded as fated,— and I think that they are well.

And now, O men who have condemned me, I would fain prophesy to you; for I am about to die, and in the hour of death men are gifted with prophetic power. And I prophesy to you who are my murderers, that immediately after my departure punishment far heavier than you have inflicted on me will surely await you. Me you have killed because you wanted to escape the accuser, and not to give an account of your lives. But that will not be as you suppose: far otherwise. For I say that there will be more accusers of you than there are now; accusers whom hitherto I have restrained: and as they are younger they will be more inconsiderate with you, and you will be more offended at them. If you think that by killing men you can prevent some one from censuring your evil lives, you are mistaken; that is not a way of escape which is either possible or honourable; the easiest and the noblest way is not to be disabling others, but to be improving yourselves. This is the prophecy which I utter before my departure to the judges who have condemned me.

Friends, who would have acquitted me, I would like also to talk with you about the thing which has come to pass, while the magistrates are busy, and before I go to the place at which I must die. Stay then a little, for we may as well talk with one another while there is time. You are my friends, and I should like to show you the meaning of this event which has happened to me. O my judges— for you I may truly call judges— I should like to tell you of a wonderful circumstance. Hitherto the divine faculty of which the internal oracle is the source has constantly been in the habit of opposing me even about trifles, if I was going to make a slip or error in any matter; and now as you see there has come upon me that which may be thought, and is generally believed to be, the last and worst evil. But the oracle made no sign of opposition, either when I was leaving my house in the morning, or when I was on my way to the court, or while I was speaking, at anything which I was going to say; and yet I have often been stopped in the middle of a speech, but now in nothing I either said or did touching the matter in hand has the oracle opposed me. What do I take to be the explanation of this silence? I will tell you. It is an intimation that what has happened to me is a good, and that those of us who think that death is an evil are in error. For the customary sign would surely have opposed me had I been going to evil and not to good.

Let us reflect in another way, and we shall see that there is great reason to hope that death is a good; for one of two things— either death is a state of

nothingness and utter unconsciousness, or, as men say, there is a change and migration of the soul from this world to another. Now if you suppose that there is no consciousness, but a sleep like the sleep of him who is undisturbed even by dreams, death will be an unspeakable gain. For if a person were to select the night in which his sleep was undisturbed even by dreams, and were to compare with this the other days and nights of his life, and then were to tell us how many days and nights he had passed in the course of his life better and more pleasantly than this one, I think that any man, I will not say a private man, but even the great king will not find many such days or nights, when compared with the others. Now if death be of such a nature, I say that to die is gain; for eternity is then only a single night. But if death is the journey to another place, and there, as men say, all the dead abide, what good, O my friends and judges, can be greater than this? If indeed when the pilgrim arrives in the world below, he is delivered from the professors of justice in this world, and finds the true judges who are said to give judgment there, Minos and Rhadamanthus and Aeacus and Triptolemus, and other sons of God who were righteous in their own life, that pilgrimage will be worth making. What would not a man give if he might converse with Orpheus and Musaeus and Hesiod and Homer? Nay, if this be true, let me die again and again. I myself, too, shall have a wonderful interest in there meeting and conversing with Palamedes, and Ajax the son of Telamon, and any other ancient hero who has suffered death through an unjust judgment; and there will be no small pleasure, as I think, in comparing my own sufferings with theirs. Above all, I shall then be able to continue my search into true and false knowledge; as in this world, so also in the next; and I shall find out who is wise, and who pretends to be wise, and is not. What would not a man give, O judges, to be able to examine the leader of the great Trojan expedition; or Odysseus or Sisyphus, or numberless others, men and women too! What infinite delight

vocabulary

ἄδηλος invisible, unknown
ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble
ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course
ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἀποτρέπω divert from ~trophy
ἀρετή goodness, excellence
αὐτόματος self-willed, accidental
 ~after
βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
βλάπτω break, make fail
δῆλος visible, conspicuous
διανοέω have in mind
διάνοια a thought; intelligence
δικαστής -οῦ (m, 1) judge, juror
εἴπερ if indeed
ἐνθάδε here, hither
ἐπειδάν when, after

ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee
εὐδαίμων blessed with a good genius
εὐελπὺς -δος (m) hopeful
ἡβάω be young ~Hebe
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
καταψηφίζομαι vote against
κατηγορέω accuse; indicate
κατήγορος accuser
λυπέω (ῥ) annoy, distress
μέμφομαι blame; reject
ὀνειδίζω upbraid, reproach
ὁπότερος which of two, either of two
οὐδαμοῦ nowhere
σημεῖον sign
τελευτάω bring about, finish
 ~apostle
τιμωρέω (ῖ) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked
τοσόσδε this much
χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage

τούτου γε ἔνεκα οἱ ἐκεῖ ἀποκτείνουσι· τά τε γὰρ ἄλλα εὐδαιμονέστεροί εἰσιν οἱ ἐκεῖ τῶν ἐνθάδε, καὶ ἤδη τὸν λοιπὸν χρόνον ἀθάνατοί εἰσιν, εἴπερ γε τὰ λεγόμενα ἀληθῆ.

Ἀλλὰ καὶ ὑμᾶς χρή, ὦ ἄνδρες δικασταί, εὐέλπιδας¹ εἶναι πρὸς τὸν θάνατον, καὶ ἔν τι τοῦτο διανοεῖσθαι ἀληθές, ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν ἀνδρὶ ἀγαθῷ κακὸν οὐδὲν οὔτε ζῶντι οὔτε τελευτήσαντι, οὐδὲ ἀμελείται ὑπὸ θεῶν τὰ τούτου πράγματα· οὐδὲ τὰ ἐμὰ νῦν ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου γέγονεν, ἀλλὰ μοι δηλόν ἐστι τοῦτο, ὅτι ἤδη τεθνάναι καὶ ἀπῆλλάχθαι πραγμάτων βέλτιον ἦν μοι. διὰ τοῦτο καὶ ἐμὲ οὐδαμοῦ ἀπέτρεψεν τὸ σημεῖον, καὶ ἔγωγε τοῖς καταψηφισαμένοις μου καὶ τοῖς κατηγοροῖς οὐ πάνυ χαλεπαίνω. καίτοι οὐ ταύτῃ τῇ διανοίᾳ κατεψηφίζοντό μου καὶ κατηγοροῦν, ἀλλ οἴομενοι βλάπτειν· τοῦτο αὐτοῖς ἄξιον μέμφεσθαι. τοσόνδε μέντοι αὐτῶν δέομαι· τοὺς υἱεῖς μου, ἐπειδὰν ἡβήσωσι,² τιμωρήσασθε, ὦ ἄνδρες, ταῦτά ταῦτα λυποῦντες ἅπερ ἐγὼ ὑμᾶς ἐλύπων, ἐὰν ὑμῖν δοκῶσιν ἢ χρημάτων ἢ ἄλλου του πρότερον ἐπιμελείσθαι ἢ ἀρετῆς, καὶ ἐὰν δοκῶσί τι εἶναι μηδὲν ὄντες, ὀνειδίζετε αὐτοῖς ὥσπερ ἐγὼ ὑμῖν, ὅτι οὐκ ἐπιμελοῦνται ὧν δεῖ, καὶ οἶονταί τι εἶναι ὄντες οὐδενὸς ἄξιοι.

Καὶ ἐὰν ταῦτα ποιήτε, δίκαια πεπονθὼς ἐγὼ ἔσομαι ὑφ ὑμῶν αὐτός τε καὶ οἱ υἱεῖς. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἤδη ὥρα ἀπιέναι, ἐμοὶ μὲν ἀποθανουμένῳ, ὑμῖν δὲ βιωσομένοις· ὁπότεροι δὲ ἡμῶν ἔρχονται ἐπὶ ἄμεινον πρᾶγμα, ἄδηλον παντὶ πλὴν ἢ τῷ θεῷ.

¹ hopeful ² be young

would there be in conversing with them and asking them questions! In another world they do not put a man to death for asking questions: assuredly not. For besides being happier than we are, they will be immortal, if what is said is true.

Wherefore, O judges, be of good cheer about death, and know of a certainty, that no evil can happen to a good man, either in life or after death. He and his are not neglected by the gods; nor has my own approaching end happened by mere chance. But I see clearly that the time had arrived when it was better for me to die and be released from trouble; wherefore the oracle gave no sign. For which reason, also, I am not angry with my condemners, or with my accusers; they have done me no harm, although they did not mean to do me any good; and for this I may gently blame them.

Still I have a favour to ask of them. When my sons are grown up, I would ask you, O my friends, to punish them; and I would have you trouble them, as I have troubled you, if they seem to care about riches, or anything, more than about virtue; or if they pretend to be something when they are really nothing,— then reprove them, as I have reproved you, for not caring about that for which they ought to care, and thinking that they are something when they are really nothing. And if you do this, both I and my sons will have received justice at your hands.

The hour of departure has arrived, and we go our ways— I to die, and you to live. Which is better God only knows.

vocabulary

ἀγανακτέω be vexed, in a ferment
 ἀγγελία message, news ~angel
 ἀγρυπνία sleeplessness
 ἀγών -ος (m, 3) gathering place
 ~agony
 ἀδύνατος unable; impossible
 αἰσχρός shameful
 αἰσχύνω (ō) spoil, disgrace,
 disfigure, mar
 ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix
 ἄλλοσε elsewhere ~alien
 ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of
 course
 ἀναγκάζω force, compel
 ἀναλίσκω (αἶ) consume, spend on
 ἀνδρεῖος of a man, manly
 ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order,
 promise ~angel
 ἀποβάλλω throw away, lose
 ἀποκάμνω tire out
 ἄρα interrogative pcl
 ἀργύριον small coin
 ἀρετή goodness, excellence
 ἄρτι at the same time
 ἀσφάλεια safeguard
 ἄτοπος strange, unnatural,
 disgusting
 αὔριον tomorrow
 ἄφρων senseless, unthinking
 ~frenzy
 βαθύς high, deep ~bathysphere
 βαρύς heavy ~baritone
 βίος life ~biology
 βιώω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
 δαιμόνιος voc: you crazy guy
 δεσμωτήριον prison
 δεῦρο here, come here!
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous
 διαβάλλω throw across; slander
 ~ballistic

διάγω lead through; pass a time
 ~demagogue
 διαφεύγω escape, survive
 δικαστήριον court
 εἰκός likely
 εἴσοδος (f) entrance ~odometer
 εἶτα then, therefore, next
 εἴωθα be accustomed, in the habit
 ἐκκλέπτω steal, rescue from
 ἐκτρέφω raise, rear
 ἐναργής visible, clear ~Argentina
 ἐνθάδε here, hither
 ἐνθένδε hence
 ἐνύπνιος seen in dreams
 ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue
 ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
 ἐξεργάζομαι accomplish; undo
 ἐπεγείρω wake up
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion
 ἐπιεικής fitting ~icon
 ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
 ἐπιτηδές enough; purposely
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
 ἐριβῶλαξ fertile
 ἐτοῖμος ready; fulfilled
 εὐδαιμονίζω consider happy
 εὐειδής good-looking ~wit
 εὐτελής of little worth
 ἡδέως pleasantly ~hedonism
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
 ἡλικία time of life, contemporaries
 ἱμάτιον toga, cloth
 καθεύδω lie down
 καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
 καταγελάω laugh at, deride
 καταλιμπάνω leave behind,
 abandon
 κήδω distress, hurt; mp: care about
 (+gen) ~heinous
 κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf)
 there is a danger that

λευκός white ~light
 λίαν very
 λυπέω (ἴ) annoy, distress
 λύπη distress
 μακάριος blessed
 μέλος -ους (n, 3) limb; melody
 μέλω concern, interest, be one's
 responsibility
 οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
 ὅποι to which place
 ὄρθρος dawn
 ὀρφανός orphan
 οὐδέτερος neither
 οὐσία property; essence
 οὐτάω pierce, wound
 ὀφείλω owe, should, if only
 ὄφελος -εος (n, 3) a use, a help
 παιδεύω raise; train
 πάλαι long ago ~paleo
 πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
 πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
 παρακάθημαι sit near
 περιμένω wait for
 πόθεν from where?
 πολλαχού in many places
 πότε when?
 πράξις -εως (f) result, business
 ~practice
 πρᾶος soft, gentle
 προδίδωμι betray
 προθυμέομαι (ἴ) be eager
 προμηθέομαι be careful; show
 respect
 προσέρχομαι come forward,
 surrender, come in

σαυτοῦ yourself
 σαφής clear, understandable
 σιγά silence
 σιγάω (ἴ) be silent
 σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry
 ~repudiate
 στερέω steal, take
 συκοφάντης -ου (ἴ, m, 1) informer,
 blackmailer
 συμφορά collecting; accident,
 misfortune
 συνήθης habitual, intimate
 συχνός long; many; extensive
 σχεδόν near, approximately at
 ~ischemia
 τεκμαίρομαι conclude, declare from
 evidence
 τελευταῖος last, final
 τελευτάω bring about, finish
 ~apostle
 τήμερον today
 τοίνυν well, then
 τρίτατος third, 1/3 ~three
 ὑπακούω listen, reply ~acoustic
 ὑστεραίος the next; later
 φάσκω declare, promise, think
 ~fame
 φοιτάω go back and forth
 φρόνιμος sensible, prudent
 φροντίζω consider, ponder
 φύλαξ -κος (m) guard; sentry
 ~phylactery
 χωρίς separately; except, other than
 ~heir

ΣΩΚΡΑΤΗΣ. τί τηνικάδε ἀφίξαι, ὦ Κρίτων; ἢ οὐ πρῶ ἔτι ἐστίν;

ΚΡΙΤΩΝ. πάννυ μὲν οὖν.

ΣΩ. πηνίκα μάλιστα;

ΚΡ. ὄρθρος¹ βαθύς.

ΣΩ. θαυμάζω ὅπως ἡθέλῃσέ σοι ὁ τοῦ δεσμωτηρίου φύλαξ ὑπακοῦσαι.

ΚΡ. συνήθης ἦδη μοί ἐστιν, ὦ Σώκρατες, διὰ τὸ πολλάκις δεῦρο φοιτᾶν, καί τι καὶ εὐεργέτηται ὑπ' ἐμοῦ.

ΣΩ. ἄρτι δὲ ἦκεις ἢ πάλαι;

ΚΡ. ἐπιεικῶς πάλαι.

ΣΩ. εἴτα πῶς οὐκ εὐθὺς ἐπήγειράς με, ἀλλὰ σιγῇ παρακάθησαι;

ΚΡ. οὐ μὰ τὸν Δία, ὦ Σώκρατες, οὐδ' ἂν αὐτὸς ἤθελον ἐν τοσαύτῃ τε ἀγρυπνίᾳ² καὶ λύπῃ εἶναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ σοῦ πάλαι θαυμάζω αἰσθανόμενος ὥς ἡδέως καθεύδεις· καὶ ἐπίτηδές σε οὐκ ἤγειρον ἵνα ὥς ἡδιστα διάγῃς. καὶ πολλάκις μὲν δὴ σε καὶ πρότερον ἐν παντὶ τῷ βίῳ ἡῤδαιμόνισα τοῦ τρόπου, πολὺ δὲ μάλιστα ἐν τῇ νῦν παρεστῶσιν συμφορᾷ, ὥς ῥαδίως αὐτὴν καὶ πρῶτος φέρεις.

ΣΩ. καὶ γὰρ ἄν, ὦ Κρίτων, πλημμελὲς εἴη ἀγανακτεῖν τηλικούτον ὄντα εἰ δεῖ ἤδη τελευτᾶν.

ΚΡ. καὶ ἄλλοι, ὦ Σώκρατες, τηλικούτοι ἐν τοιαύταις συμφοραῖς ἀλίσκονται, ἀλλ' οὐδὲν αὐτοὺς ἐπιλύεται ἢ ἡλικία τὸ μὴ οὐχὶ ἀγανακτεῖν τῇ παρούσῃ τύχῃ.

ΣΩ. ἔστι ταῦτα. ἀλλὰ τί δὴ οὕτω πρῶ ἀφίξαι;

ΚΡ. ἀγγελίαν, ὦ Σώκρατες, φέρων χαλεπήν, οὐ σοί, ὥς ἐμοὶ φαίνεται, ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ καὶ τοῖς σοῖς ἐπιτηδεύουσιν πᾶσιν καὶ χαλεπήν καὶ βαρεῖαν, ἣν ἐγώ, ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκῶ, ἐν τοῖς βαρύντατ' ἂν ἐνέγκαιμι.

¹ dawn ² sleeplessness

ΣΩ. τίνα ταύτην; ἢ τὸ πλοῖον ἀφίκεται ἐκ Δήλου, οὗ δεῖ ἀφικομένου τεθνάναι με;

ΚΡ. οὔτοι δὴ ἀφίκεται, ἀλλὰ δοκεῖν μὲν μοι ἦξει τήμερον ἐξ ὧν ἀπαγγέλλουσιν ἦκοντές τινες ἀπὸ Σουνίου καὶ καταλιπόντες ἐκεῖ αὐτό. δῆλον οὖν ἐκ τούτων τῶν ἀγγέλων ὅτι ἦξει τήμερον, καὶ ἀνάγκη δὴ εἰς αὔριον ἔσται, ὦ Σώκρατες, τὸν βίον σε τελευτᾶν.

ΣΩ. ἀλλ', ὦ Κρίτων, τύχη ἀγαθῇ, εἰ ταύτη τοῖς θεοῖς φίλον, ταύτη ἔστω· οὐ μέντοι οἶμαι ἦξεν αὐτὸ τήμερον.

ΚΡ. πόθεν τοῦτο τεκμαίρη;

ΣΩ. ἐγὼ σοι ἐρώ. τῇ γάρ που ὑστεραία δεῖ με ἀποθνήσκειν ἢ ἢ ἂν ἔλθῃ τὸ πλοῖον.

ΚΡ. φασὶ γέ τοι δὴ οἱ τούτων κύριοι.

ΣΩ. οὐ τοῖνυν τῆς ἐπιούσης ἡμέρας οἶμαι αὐτὸ ἦξεν ἀλλὰ τῆς ἐτέρας. τεκμαίρομαι δὲ ἔκ τινος ἐνυπνίου ὃ ἐώρακα ὀλίγον πρότερον ταύτης τῆς νυκτός· καὶ κινδυνεύεις ἐν καιρῷ τινι οὐκ ἐγείραί με.

ΚΡ. ἦν δὲ δὴ τί τὸ ἐνύπνιον;

ΣΩ. ἐδόκει τίς μοι γυνὴ προσελθοῦσα καλὴ καὶ εὐειδής,³ λευκὰ ἱμάτια ἔχουσα, καλέσαι με καὶ εἰπεῖν· ὦ Σώκρατες, ἡματί κεν τριτάτῳ⁴ Φθίην ἐρίβωλον⁵ ἵκοιο. ηομ. ιλ.9.363

ΚΡ. ἄτοπον⁶ τὸ ἐνύπνιον, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ΣΩ. ἐναργὲς μὲν οὖν, ὥς γέ μοι δοκεῖ, ὦ Κρίτων.

ΚΡ. λίαν γε, ὥς ἔοικεν. ἀλλ', ὦ δαιμόνιε Σώκρατες, ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἐμοὶ πιθοῦ καὶ σώθητι· ὥς ἐμοί, ἐὰν σὺ ἀποθάνῃς, οὐ μία συμφορὰ ἐστίν, ἀλλὰ χωρὶς μὲν τοῦ ἐστερηῆσθαι τοιούτου ἐπιτηδείου οἶον ἐγὼ οὐδένα μὴ ποτε εὐρήσω, ἔτι δὲ καὶ πολλοῖς δόξω, οἱ ἐμὲ καὶ σὲ μὴ σαφῶς ἴσασιν, ὥς οἷός τ' ὦν σε σφάζειν εἰ ἤθελον ἀναλίσκειν χρήματα,

³ good-looking ⁴ third, 1/3 ⁵ fertile ⁶ strange, unnatural, disgusting

ἀμελῆσαι. καίτοι τίς ἂν αἰσχύων εἴη ταύτης δόξα ἢ δοκεῖν χρήματα περὶ πλείονος ποιεῖσθαι ἢ φίλους; οὐ γὰρ πείσονται οἱ πολλοὶ ὡς σὺ αὐτὸς οὐκ ἠθέλησας ἀπιέναι ἐνθένδε ἡμῶν προθυμουμένων.

ΣΩ. ἀλλὰ τί ἡμῖν, ὦ μακάριε Κρίτων, οὕτω τῆς τῶν πολλῶν δόξης μέλει; οἱ γὰρ ἐπικεκέστατοι, ὦν μᾶλλον ἄξιον φροντίζειν, ἡγήσονται αὐτὰ οὕτω πεπραῆχθαι ὥσπερ ἂν πραχθῇ.

ΚΡ. ἀλλ' ὁρᾷς δὴ ὅτι ἀνάγκη, ὦ Σώκρατες, καὶ τῆς τῶν πολλῶν δόξης μέλιν. αὐτὰ δὲ δῆλα τὰ παρόντα νυνὶ ὅτι οἰοί τ' εἶσιν οἱ πολλοὶ οὐ τὰ σμικρότατα τῶν κακῶν ἐξεργάζεσθαι ἀλλὰ τὰ μέγιστα σχεδόν, ἕαν τις ἐν αὐτοῖς διαβεβλημένος ᾖ.

ΣΩ. εἰ γὰρ ὥφελον, ὦ Κρίτων, οἰοί τ' εἶναι οἱ πολλοὶ τὰ μέγιστα κακὰ ἐργάζεσθαι, ἵνα οἰοί τ' ᾗσαν καὶ ἀγαθὰ τὰ μέγιστα, καὶ καλῶς ἂν εἶχεν. νῦν δὲ οὐδέτερα οἰοί τε· οὔτε γὰρ φρόνιμον οὔτε ἄφρονα δυνατοὶ ποιῆσαι, ποιούσι δὲ τοῦτο ὅτι ἂν τύχῃ.

ΚΡ. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐχέτω· τάδε δέ, ὦ Σώκρατες, εἰπέ μοι. ἄρα γε μὴ ἐμοῦ προμηθῇ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐπιτηδεῖων μὴ, ἕαν σὺ ἐνθένδε ἐξέλθῃς, οἱ συκοφάνται ἡμῖν πράγματα παρέχῃσιν ὡς σὲ ἐνθένδε ἐκκλέψασι, καὶ ἀναγκασθῶμεν ἢ καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν οὐσίαν ἀποβαλεῖν ἢ συχνὰ χρήματα, ἢ καὶ ἄλλο τι πρὸς τούτοις παθεῖν;

ΚΡ. εἰ γάρ τι τοιοῦτον φοβῇ, ἕασον αὐτὸ χαίρειν· ἡμεῖς γάρ που δίκαιοι ἐσμεν σώσαντές σε κινδυνεύειν τοῦτον τὸν κίνδυνον καὶ ἕαν δέῃ ἔτι τούτου μείζω. ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ πείθου καὶ μὴ ἄλλως ποίει.

ΣΩ. καὶ ταῦτα προμηθοῦμαι, ὦ Κρίτων, καὶ ἄλλα πολλά.

ΚΡ. μήτε τοῖνυν ταῦτα φοβοῦ— καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πολὺ τὰργυρίον ἐστὶν ὃ θέλουσι λαβόντες τινὲς σώσαί σε καὶ ἐξαγαγεῖν ἐνθένδε. ἔπειτα οὐχ ὁρᾷς τούτους τοὺς συκοφάντας ὡς εὐτελεῖς,⁷ καὶ οὐδὲν ἂν δέοι ἐπ' αὐτοὺς πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου; σοὶ δὲ ὑπάρχει μὲν τὰ ἐμὰ χρήματα, ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, ἱκανά· ἔπειτα καὶ εἴ τι ἐμοῦ κηδόμενος οὐκ οἶε δεῖν ἀναλίσκειν τὰμά, ξένοι οὗτοι ἐνθάδε ἔτοίμοι ἀναλίσκειν· εἰς δὲ καὶ κεκόμικεν ἐπ'

⁷ of little worth

αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἀργύριον ἱκανόν, Συμμίᾱς ὁ Θηβαῖος, ἔτοιμος δὲ καὶ Κέβης καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ πάννυ. ὥστε, ὅπερ λέγω, μήτε ταῦτα φοβούμενος ἀποκάμης σαυτὸν σώσαι, μήτε, ὃ ἔλεγες ἐν τῷ δικαστηρίῳ, δυσχερές σοι γενέσθω ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ἔχοις ἐξελθὼν ὅτι χρῶο σαυτῷ· πολλαχοῦ⁸ μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοσε ὅποι ἂν ἀφίκη ἀγαπήσουσί σε· ἐὰν δὲ βούλῃ εἰς Θετταλίαν ἵναι, εἰσὶν ἐμοὶ ἐκεῖ ξένοι οἱ σε περὶ πολλοῦ ποιήσονται καὶ ἀσφάλειάν σοι παρέξονται, ὥστε σε μηδένα λυπεῖν τῶν κατὰ Θετταλίαν. ἔτι δέ, ὦ Σώκρατες, οὐδὲ δίκαιόν μοι δοκεῖς ἐπιχειρεῖν πρᾶγμα, σαυτὸν προδοῦναι, ἐξὸν σωθῆναι, καὶ τοιαῦτα σπεύδεις περὶ σαυτὸν γενέσθαι ἅπερ ἂν καὶ οἱ ἐχθροὶ σου σπεύσαιέν τε καὶ ἔσπευσαν σὲ διαφθεῖραι βουλόμενοι. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις καὶ τοὺς ὑεῖς τοὺς σαυτοῦ ἔμοιγε δοκεῖς προδιδόναι, οὓς σοι ἐξὸν καὶ ἐκθρέψαι καὶ ἐκπαιδεῦσαι οἰχίῃσιν καταλιπὼν, καὶ τὸ σὸν μέρος ὅτι ἂν τύχωσι τοῦτο πράξουσιν· τεύξονται δέ, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, τοιούτων οἷάπερ εἴωθεν γίνεσθαι ἐν ταῖς ὀρφανίαις περὶ τοὺς ὀρφανούς.⁹ ἢ γὰρ οὐ χρή ποιέσθαι παῖδας ἢ συνδιαταλαιπωρεῖν καὶ τρέφοντα καὶ παιδεύοντα, σὺ δέ μοι δοκεῖς τὰ ῥαθυμότατα αἰρεῖσθαι. χρή δέ, ἅπερ ἂν ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς καὶ ἀνδρεῖος¹⁰ ἔλοιτο, ταῦτα αἰρεῖσθαι, φάσκοντά γε δὴ ἀρετῆς διὰ παντὸς τοῦ βίου ἐπιμελεῖσθαι· ὡς ἔγωγε καὶ ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν τῶν σὼν ἐπιτηδεῖων αἰσχύνομαι μὴ δόξῃ ἅπαν τὸ πρᾶγμα τὸ περὶ σὲ ἀνανδρία τινὲς τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ πεπρᾶχθαι, καὶ ἡ εἴσοδος τῆς δίκης εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον ὡς εἰσηλθεν ἐξὸν μὴ εἰσελθεῖν, καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ ἀγὼν τῆς δίκης ὡς ἐγένετο, καὶ τὸ τελευταῖον δὴ τουτί, ὥσπερ κατάγελως τῆς πράξεως, κακία τινὲς καὶ ἀνανδρία τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ διαπεφευγῆναι ἡμᾶς δοκεῖν, οἷτινες σε οὐχὶ ἐσώσαμεν οὐδὲ σὺ σαυτόν, οἷόν τε ὃν καὶ δυνατὸν εἴ τι καὶ μικρὸν ἡμῶν ὄφελος ἦν.

Ταῦτα οὖν, ὦ Σώκρατες, ὅρα μὴ ἅμα τῷ κακῷ καὶ αἰσχυρῷ ἢ σοὶ τε καὶ ἡμῖν. ἀλλὰ βουλευού— μᾶλλον δὲ οὐδὲ βουλευέσθαι ἔτι ὥρα ἀλλὰ βεβουλευέσθαι— μία δὲ βουλή· τῆς γὰρ ἐπιούσης νυκτὸς πάντα ταῦτα δεῖ πεπρᾶχθαι, εἰ δ' ἔτι περιμενουμέν, ἀδύνατον καὶ οὐκέτι οἷόν τε.

⁸ in many places ⁹ orphan ¹⁰ of a man, manly

SOCRATES: Why have you come at this hour, Crito? it must be quite early.

CRITO: Yes, certainly.

SOCRATES: What is the exact time?

CRITO: The dawn is breaking.

SOCRATES: I wonder that the keeper of the prison would let you in.

CRITO: He knows me because I often come, Socrates; moreover. I have done him a kindness.

SOCRATES: And are you only just arrived?

CRITO: No, I came some time ago.

SOCRATES: Then why did you sit and say nothing, instead of at once awakening me?

CRITO: I should not have liked myself, Socrates, to be in such great trouble and unrest as you are—indeed I should not: I have been watching with amazement your peaceful slumbers; and for that reason I did not awake you, because I wished to minimize the pain. I have always thought you to be of a happy disposition; but never did I see anything like the easy, tranquil manner in which you bear this calamity.

SOCRATES: Why, Crito, when a man has reached my age he ought not to be repining at the approach of death.

CRITO: And yet other old men find themselves in similar misfortunes, and age does not prevent them from repining.

SOCRATES: That is true. But you have not told me why you come at this early hour.

CRITO: I come to bring you a message which is sad and painful; not, as I believe, to yourself, but to all of us who are your friends, and saddest of all to me.

SOCRATES: What? Has the ship come from Delos, on the arrival of which I am to die?

CRITO: No, the ship has not actually arrived, but she will probably be here to-day, as persons who have come from Sunium tell me that they have left her there; and therefore to-morrow, Socrates, will be the last day of your life.

SOCRATES: Very well, Crito; if such is the will of God, I am willing; but my belief is that there will be a delay of a day.

CRITO: Why do you think so?

SOCRATES: I will tell you. I am to die on the day after the arrival of the ship?

CRITO: Yes; that is what the authorities say.

SOCRATES: But I do not think that the ship will be here until to-morrow; this I infer from a vision which I had last night, or rather only just now, when you fortunately allowed me to sleep.

CRITO: And what was the nature of the vision?

SOCRATES: There appeared to me the likeness of a woman, fair and comely, clothed in bright raiment, who called to me and said: O Socrates, 'The third day hence to fertile Phthia shalt thou go.' (Homer, II.)

CRITO: What a singular dream, Socrates!

SOCRATES: There can be no doubt about the meaning, Crito, I think.

CRITO: Yes; the meaning is only too clear. But, oh! my beloved Socrates, let me entreat you once more to take my advice and escape. For if you die I shall not only lose a friend who can never be replaced, but there is another evil: people who do not know you and me will believe that I might have saved you if I had been willing to give money, but that I did not care. Now, can there be a worse disgrace than this—that I should be thought to value money more than the life of a friend? For the many will not be persuaded that I wanted you to escape, and that you refused.

SOCRATES: But why, my dear Crito, should we care about the opinion of the many? Good men, and they are the only persons who are worth considering, will think of these things truly as they occurred.

CRITO: But you see, Socrates, that the opinion of the many must be regarded, for what is now happening shows that they can do the greatest evil to any one who has lost their good opinion.

SOCRATES: I only wish it were so, Crito; and that the many could do the greatest evil; for then they would also be able to do the greatest good—and what a fine thing this would be! But in reality they can do neither; for they cannot make a man either wise or foolish; and whatever they do is the result of chance.

CRITO: Well, I will not dispute with you; but please to tell me, Socrates, whether you are not acting out of regard to me and your other friends: are you not afraid that if you escape from prison we may get into trouble with

the informers for having stolen you away, and lose either the whole or a great part of our property; or that even a worse evil may happen to us? Now, if you fear on our account, be at ease; for in order to save you, we ought surely to run this, or even a greater risk; be persuaded, then, and do as I say.

SOCRATES: Yes, Crito, that is one fear which you mention, but by no means the only one.

CRITO: Fear not — there are persons who are willing to get you out of prison at no great cost; and as for the informers they are far from being exorbitant in their demands—a little money will satisfy them. My means, which are certainly ample, are at your service, and if you have a scruple about spending all mine, here are strangers who will give you the use of theirs; and one of them, Simmias the Theban, has brought a large sum of money for this very purpose; and Cebes and many others are prepared to spend their money in helping you to escape. I say, therefore, do not hesitate on our account, and do not say, as you did in the court (compare Apol.), that you will have a difficulty in knowing what to do with yourself anywhere else. For men will love you in other places to which you may go, and not in Athens only; there are friends of mine in Thessaly, if you like to go to them, who will value and protect you, and no Thessalian will give you any trouble. Nor can I think that you are at all justified, Socrates, in betraying your own life when you might be saved; in acting thus you are playing into the hands of your enemies, who are hurrying on your destruction. And further I should say that you are deserting your own children; for you might bring them up and educate them; instead of which you go away and leave them, and they will have to take their chance; and if they do not meet with the usual fate of orphans, there will be small thanks to you. No man should bring children into the world who is unwilling to persevere to the end in their nurture and education. But you appear to be choosing the easier part, not the better and manlier, which would have been more becoming in one who professes to care for virtue in all his actions, like yourself. And indeed, I am ashamed not only of you, but of us who are your friends, when I reflect that the whole business will be attributed entirely to our want of courage. The trial need never have come on, or might have been managed differently; and this last act, or crowning folly, will seem to have occurred through our negligence and cowardice, who might have saved you, if we had been good for anything; and you might have saved yourself, for there was no difficulty at all.

See now, Socrates, how sad and discreditable are the consequences, both to us and you. Make up your mind then, or rather have your mind already made up, for the time of deliberation is over, and there is only one thing to be done, which must be done this very night, and if we delay at all will be no longer

vocabulary

ἀδικία injustice, offence
ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad
αἰσχρός shameful
αἰσχύνω (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar
ἀκολουθέω follow
ἄλλοῖος of another kind ~alien
ἀναλαμβάνω take up, recover, resume
ἀνθρώπειος human
ἀντιλέγω contradict, oppose
ἀπειθέω disobey
ἄρα interrogative pcl
ἀσπάζομαι greet, salute
ἀτιμάζω (ι) insult, dishonor
ἀτιμάω (ι) dishonor
αὔριον tomorrow
ἄφρων senseless, unthinking
 ~frenzy
βέλτιστος best, noblest
γυμνάζω exercise, do training
δεσμός bond, latch, strap; also (pl) headdress
δῆλος visible, conspicuous
διέρχομαι pierce, traverse
δικαιοσύνη justice
διόλλυμι (ῶ) be ruined
δράω do, accomplish
εἰσηγέομαι lead in, introduce
εἴτε if, whenever; either/or
ἐκάστοτε each time
ἐκβάλλω throw out, fell, let fall
 ~ballistic
ἐκτός outside
ἐνθένδε hence
ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue
ἔξεμι go forth; is possible ~ion
ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet
ἔπαινος (noun) praise
ἐπαῖω (ᾶ) listen to, perceive
ἐπιθυμέω (ῶ) wish, covet

ἐπιπέμπω send after, again, to, besides
ἐπισκέπτομαι look upon, inspect
ἐπισκοπέω look upon, inspect
ἐπιστάτης -ου (m, 1) suppliant, dependant ~station
ἡσυχία peace and quiet
θαυμάσιος wonderful
ιατρός (ᾱ) physician
κατάδηλος manifest, visible
κοινός communal, ordinary
λογίζομαι reckon, consider
λωβάομαι maltreat
μέτριος medium, moderate
μηδαμός no one
ναί yea
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὀνίνημι help, please, be available
ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just
 ~orthogonal
ὀρθόω stand up
οὐδαμός not anyone
οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
παιδιά childish play
παραμένω stay with ~remain
πη somewhere, somehow
ποῖ whither? how long?
πότερος which, whichever of two
πρεσβεύω be the elder, be an ambassador
προθυμία (ῶ) zeal, alacrity ~fume
προσέχω direct to; think about
σκεπτέος thing to consider, one who must consider
σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptical
σκοπᾶω watch, observe
σκοπέω behold, consider
συγχωρέω accede, concede
σύμπας (ᾱ) all together
συμφορά collecting; accident, misfortune

σχεδόν near, approximately at
 ~ischemia
τείνω stretch, tend ~tense
τιμάω (ἰ) honor, exalt
τίμιος honored, precious
τιμόω honor, exalt
τροφή food, upkeep ~atrophy

τύχη fortune, act of a god
φαῦλος trifling
φλυαρία nonsense
φρόνιμος sensible, prudent
φροντίζω consider, ponder
χρηστός useful; brave, worthy

ἀλλὰ παντὶ τρόπῳ, ὦ Σώκρατες, πείθου μοι καὶ μηδαμῶς¹ ἄλλως ποίει.

ΣΩΚΡΑΤΗΣ. ὦ φίλε Κρίτων, ἡ προθυμία σου πολλοῦ ἀξία εἰ μετὰ τινος ὀρθότητος εἴη· εἰ δὲ μή, ὅσω μείζων τοσοῦτ' αὖ χαλεπωτέρα. σκοπεῖσθαι οὖν χρή ἡμᾶς εἴτε ταῦτα πρακτέον εἴτε μή· ὡς ἐγὼ οὐ νῦν πρῶτον ἀλλὰ καὶ αἰετοιοῦτος οἶος τῶν ἐμῶν μηδενὶ ἄλλῳ πείθεσθαι ἢ τῷ λόγῳ ὃς ἂν μοι λογιζομένῳ βέλτιστος φαίνεται. τοὺς δὲ λόγους οὓς ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν ἔλεγον οὐ δύναμαι νῦν ἐκβαλεῖν, ἐπεὶ μοι ἤδε ἡ τύχη γέγονεν, ἀλλὰ σχεδόν τι ὅμοιοι φαίνονται μοι, καὶ τοὺς αὐτοὺς πρεσβεύω καὶ τιμῶ οὕσπερ καὶ πρότερον· ὧν ἐὰν μὴ βελτίῳ ἔχωμεν λέγειν ἐν τῷ παρόντι, εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι οὐ μὴ σοι συγχωρήσω, οὐδ' ἂν πλείω τῶν νῦν παρόντων ἢ τῶν πολλῶν δύναμις ὥσπερ παῖδας ἡμᾶς μορμολύττηται, δεσμοὺς καὶ θανάτους ἐπιπέμπουσα καὶ χρημάτων ἀφαιρέσεις. πῶς οὖν ἂν μετριώτατα σκοποίμεθα αὐτά; εἰ πρῶτον μὲν τοῦτον τὸν λόγον ἀναλάβοιμεν, ὃν σὺ λέγεις περὶ τῶν δοξῶν. πρότερον καλῶς ἐλέγετο ἐκάστοτε ἢ οὐ, ὅτι ταῖς μὲν δεῖ τῶν δοξῶν προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, ταῖς δὲ οὐ; ἢ πρὶν μὲν ἐμὲ δεῖν ἀποθνήσκειν καλῶς ἐλέγετο, νῦν δὲ κατὰδηλος ἄρα ἐγένετο ὅτι ἄλλως ἔνεκα λόγου ἐλέγετο, ἢν δὲ παιδιὰ² καὶ φλυαρία³ ὡς ἀληθῶς; ἐπιθυμῶ δ' ἔγωγ' ἐπισκέψασθαι, ὦ Κρίτων, κοινῇ μετὰ σοῦ εἴ τί μοι ἀλλοιότερος⁴ φανείται, ἐπεὶ ὧδε ἔχω, ἢ ὁ αὐτός, καὶ ἐάσομεν χαίρειν ἢ πεισόμεθα αὐτῷ. ἐλέγετο δὲ πως, ὡς ἐγὼμαι, ἐκάστοτε ὧδε ὑπὸ τῶν οἰομένων τὶ λέγειν, ὥσπερ νυνδὴ ἐγὼ ἔλεγον, ὅτι τῶν δοξῶν ἅς οἱ ἄνθρωποι δοξάζουσιν δεοὶ τὰς μὲν περὶ πολλοῦ ποιεῖσθαι, τὰς δὲ μή. τοῦτο πρὸς θεῶν, ὦ Κρίτων, οὐ δοκεῖ καλῶς σοι λέγεσθαι;

Σὺ γάρ, ὅσα γε τὰνθρώπεια,⁵ ἐκτὸς εἰ τοῦ μέλλειν ἀποθνήσκειν αὔριον, καὶ οὐκ ἂν σὲ παρακρούοι ἢ παροῦσα συμφορά· σκόπει δὴ—οὐχ ἰκανῶς δοκεῖ σοι λέγεσθαι ὅτι οὐ πάσας χρή τὰς δόξας τῶν ἀνθρώπων τιμᾶν ἀλλὰ τὰς μὲν, τὰς δ' οὐ, οὐδὲ πάντων ἀλλὰ τῶν μὲν, τῶν δ' οὐ; τί φῆς; ταῦτα οὐχὶ καλῶς λέγεται;

¹ no one ² childish play ³ nonsense ⁴ of another kind ⁵ human

ΚΡΙΤΩΝ. καλῶς.

ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν τὰς μὲν χρηστὰς τιμᾶν, τὰς δὲ πονηρὰς μῆ;

ΚΡ. ναί.

ΣΩ. χρησταὶ δὲ οὐχ αἱ τῶν φρονίμων, πονηραὶ δὲ αἱ τῶν ἀφρόνων;

ΚΡ. πῶς δ' οὐ;

ΣΩ. φέρε δῆ, πῶς αὖ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐλέγετο; γυμναζόμενος ἀνὴρ καὶ τοῦτο πράττων πότερον παντὸς ἀνδρὸς ἐπαίνῳ καὶ ψόγῳ καὶ δόξῃ τὸν νοῦν προσέχει, ἢ ἐνὸς μόνου ἐκείνου ὃς ἂν τυγχάνῃ ἰατρὸς ἢ παιδοτρίβης ὢν;

ΚΡ. ἐνὸς μόνου.

ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν φοβεῖσθαι χρή τοὺς ψόγους καὶ ἀσπάζεσθαι τοὺς ἐπαίνους τοὺς τοῦ ἐνὸς ἐκείνου ἀλλὰ μὴ τοὺς τῶν πολλῶν.

ΚΡ. δῆλα δῆ.

ΣΩ. ταύτῃ ἄρα αὐτῷ πρακτέον καὶ γυμναστέον καὶ ἐδεστέον γε καὶ ποτέον, ἢ ἂν τῷ ἐνὶ δοκῇ, τῷ ἐπιστάτῃ καὶ ἐπαῖοντι, μᾶλλον ἢ ἢ σύμπασι τοῖς ἄλλοις.

ΚΡ. ἔστι ταῦτα.

ΣΩ. εἰεν. ἀπειθήσας δὲ τῷ ἐνὶ καὶ ἀτιμάσας αὐτοῦ τὴν δόξαν καὶ τοὺς ἐπαίνους, τιμήσας δὲ τοὺς τῶν πολλῶν λόγους καὶ μηδὲν ἐπαῖόντων, ἄρα οὐδὲν κακὸν πείσεται;

ΚΡ. πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

ΣΩ. τί δ' ἔστι τὸ κακὸν τοῦτο, καὶ ποῦ⁶ τείνει, καὶ εἰς τί τῶν τοῦ ἀπειθοῦντος;

ΚΡ. δῆλον ὅτι εἰς τὸ σῶμα· τοῦτο γὰρ διόλλυσι.

⁶ whither? how long?

ΣΩ. καλῶς λέγεις. οὐκοῦν καὶ τᾶλλα, ὦ Κρίτων, οὕτως, ἵνα μὴ πάντα διώωμεν, καὶ δὴ καὶ περὶ τῶν δικαίων καὶ ἀδίκων καὶ αἰσχυρῶν καὶ καλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν καὶ κακῶν, περὶ ὧν νῦν ἡ βουλὴ ἡμῖν ἐστίν, πότερον τῇ τῶν πολλῶν δόξῃ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἔπεσθαι καὶ φοβεῖσθαι αὐτὴν ἢ τῇ τοῦ ενός, εἴ τίς ἐστὶν ἐπαῖων, ὃν δεῖ καὶ αἰσχύνεσθαι καὶ φοβεῖσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ σύμπαντας τοὺς ἄλλους; ᾧ εἰ μὴ ἀκολουθήσομεν, διαφθεροῦμεν ἐκεῖνο καὶ λωβησόμεθα,⁷ ὃ τῷ μὲν δικαίῳ βέλτιον ἐγγίγνεται τῷ δὲ ἀδίκῳ ἀπώλλυτο. ἢ οὐδέν ἐστι τοῦτο;

ΚΡ. οἶμαι ἔγωγε, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ΣΩ. φέρε δὴ, ἐὰν τὸ ὑπὸ τοῦ ὑγιεινοῦ μὲν βέλτιον γιγνόμενον, ὑπὸ τοῦ νοσώδους δὲ διαφθειρόμενον διολέσωμεν πειθόμενοι μὴ τῇ τῶν ἐπαιόντων δόξῃ, ἄρα βιωτὸν ἡμῖν ἐστὶν διεφθαρμένου αὐτοῦ; ἔστι δέ που τοῦτο σώμα· ἢ οὐχί;

ΚΡ. ναί.

ΣΩ. ἄρ' οὖν βιωτὸν ἡμῖν ἐστὶν μετὰ μοχθηροῦ καὶ διεφθαρμένου σώματος;

ΚΡ. οὐδαμῶς.

ΣΩ. ἀλλὰ μετ' ἐκείνου ἄρ' ἡμῖν βιωτὸν διεφθαρμένου, ᾧ τὸ ἄδικον μὲν λωβᾶται, τὸ δὲ δίκαιον ὀνίνησιν; ἢ φαυλότερον ἡγούμεθα εἶναι τοῦ σώματος ἐκεῖνο, ὅτι ποτ' ἐστὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων, περὶ ὃ ἡ τε ἀδικία καὶ ἡ δικαιοσύνη ἐστίν;

ΚΡ. οὐδαμῶς.

ΣΩ. ἀλλὰ τιμωρότερον;

ΚΡ. πολὺ γε.

ΣΩ. οὐκ ἄρα, ὦ βέλτιστε, πάνυ ἡμῖν οὕτω φροντιστέον τί ἐροῦσιν οἱ πολλοὶ ἡμᾶς, ἀλλ' ὅτι ὁ ἐπαῖων περὶ τῶν δικαίων καὶ ἀδίκων, ὁ εἷς καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ ἀλήθεια. ὥστε πρῶτον μὲν ταύτῃ οὐκ ὀρθῶς εἰσηγῇ,

⁷ maltreat

εἰσηγούμενος τῆς τῶν πολλῶν δόξης δεῖν ἡμᾶς φροντίζειν περὶ τῶν δικαίων καὶ καλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν καὶ τῶν ἐναντίων. ἀλλὰ μὲν δὴ, φαίη γ' ἂν τις, οἷοί τέ εἰσιν ἡμᾶς οἱ πολλοὶ ἀποκτείνονται.

ΚΡ. δῆλα δὴ καὶ ταῦτα· φαίη γὰρ ἄν, ὦ Σώκρατες. ἀληθὴ λέγεις.

ΣΩ. ἀλλ', ὦ θαυμάσιε, οὗτός τε ὁ λόγος ὃν διεληλύθαμεν ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ ἔτι ὅμοιος εἶναι καὶ πρότερον· καὶ τόνδε δὲ αὖ σκόπει εἰ ἔτι μένει ἡμῖν ἢ οὐ, ὅτι οὐ τὸ ζῆν περὶ πλείστου ποιητέον ἀλλὰ τὸ εὖ ζῆν.

ΚΡ. ἀλλὰ μένει.

ΣΩ. τὸ δὲ εὖ καὶ καλῶς καὶ δικαίως ὅτι ταυτόν ἐστιν, μένει ἢ οὐ μένει;

ΚΡ. μένει.

ΣΩ. οὐκοῦν ἐκ τῶν ὁμολογουμένων τοῦτο σκεπτέον, πότερον δίκαιον ἐμὲ ἐνθένδε πειρᾶσθαι ἐξιέναι μὴ ἀφιέντων Ἀθηναίων ἢ οὐ δίκαιον· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν φαίνηται δίκαιον, πειρώμεθα, εἰ δὲ μὴ, ἐώμεν. ἄς δὲ σὺ λέγεις τὰς σκέψεις περὶ τε ἀναλώσεως χρημάτων καὶ δόξης καὶ παίδων τροφῆς, μὴ ὥς ἀληθῶς ταῦτα, ὦ Κρίτων, σκέμματα ἢ τῶν ῥαδίως ἀποκτευνόντων καὶ ἀναβιωσκομένων γ' ἂν, εἰ οἷοί τ' ἦσαν, οὐδενὶ ξὺν νῶ, τούτων τῶν πολλῶν. ἡμῖν δ', ἐπειδὴ ὁ λόγος οὕτως αἰρεῖ, μὴ οὐδὲν ἄλλο σκεπτέον ἢ ἢ ὅπερ νυνδὴ ἐλέγομεν, πότερον δίκαια πράξομεν καὶ χρήματα τελοῦντες τούτοις τοῖς ἐμὲ ἐνθένδε ἐξάξουσιν καὶ χάριτας, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐξάγοντές τε καὶ ἐξαγόμενοι, ἢ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ἀδικήσομεν πάντα ταῦτα ποιοῦντες· κὰν φαινώμεθα ἄδικα αὐτὰ ἐργαζόμενοι, μὴ οὐ δέη ὑπολογίζεσθαι οὐτ' εἰ ἀποθνήσκειν δεῖ παραμένοντας καὶ ἡσυχίαν ἄγοντας, οὔτε ἄλλο ὅτιοῦν πάσχειν πρὸ τοῦ ἀδικεῖν.

ΚΡ. καλῶς μὲν μοι δοκεῖς λέγειν, ὦ Σώκρατες, ὅρα δὲ τί δρῶμεν.

ΣΩ. σκοπῶμεν, ὦ ἀγαθέ, κοινῇ, καὶ εἴ πῃ ἔχεις ἀντιλέγειν

practicable or possible; I beseech you therefore, Socrates, be persuaded by me, and do as I say.

SOCRATES: Dear Crito, your zeal is invaluable, if a right one; but if wrong, the greater the zeal the greater the danger; and therefore we ought to consider whether I shall or shall not do as you say. For I am and always have been one of those natures who must be guided by reason, whatever the reason may be which upon reflection appears to me to be the best; and now that this chance has befallen me, I cannot repudiate my own words: the principles which I have hitherto honoured and revered I still honour, and unless we can at once find other and better principles, I am certain not to agree with you; no, not even if the power of the multitude could inflict many more imprisonments, confiscations, deaths, frightening us like children with hobgoblin terrors (compare Apol.). What will be the fairest way of considering the question? Shall I return to your old argument about the opinions of men?—we were saying that some of them are to be regarded, and others not. Now were we right in maintaining this before I was condemned? And has the argument which was once good now proved to be talk for the sake of talking—mere childish nonsense? That is what I want to consider with your help, Crito:—whether, under my present circumstances, the argument appears to be in any way different or not; and is to be allowed by me or disallowed. That argument, which, as I believe, is maintained by many persons of authority, was to the effect, as I was saying, that the opinions of some men are to be regarded, and of other men not to be regarded.

Now you, Crito, are not going to die to-morrow—at least, there is no human probability of this, and therefore you are disinterested and not liable to be deceived by the circumstances in which you are placed. Tell me then, whether I am right in saying that some opinions, and the opinions of some men only, are to be valued, and that other opinions, and the opinions of other men, are not to be valued. I ask you whether I was right in maintaining this?

CRITO: Certainly.

SOCRATES: The good are to be regarded, and not the bad?

CRITO: Yes.

SOCRATES: And the opinions of the wise are good, and the opinions of the unwise are evil?

CRITO: Certainly.

SOCRATES: And what was said about another matter? Is the pupil who devotes himself to the practice of gymnastics supposed to attend to the praise

and blame and opinion of every man, or of one man only—his physician or trainer, whoever he may be?

CRITO: Of one man only.

SOCRATES: And he ought to fear the censure and welcome the praise of that one only, and not of the many?

CRITO: Clearly so.

SOCRATES: And he ought to act and train, and eat and drink in the way which seems good to his single master who has understanding, rather than according to the opinion of all other men put together?

CRITO: True.

SOCRATES: And if he disobeys and disregards the opinion and approval of the one, and regards the opinion of the many who have no understanding, will he not suffer evil?

CRITO: Certainly he will.

SOCRATES: And what will the evil be, whither tending and what affecting, in the disobedient person?

CRITO: Clearly, affecting the body; that is what is destroyed by the evil.

SOCRATES: Very good; and is not this true, Crito, of other things which we need not separately enumerate? In questions of just and unjust, fair and foul, good and evil, which are the subjects of our present consultation, ought we to follow the opinion of the many and to fear them; or the opinion of the one man who has understanding? ought we not to fear and reverence him more than all the rest of the world: and if we desert him shall we not destroy and injure that principle in us which may be assumed to be improved by justice and deteriorated by injustice;—there is such a principle?

CRITO: Certainly there is, Socrates.

SOCRATES: Take a parallel instance:—if, acting under the advice of those who have no understanding, we destroy that which is improved by health and is deteriorated by disease, would life be worth having? And that which has been destroyed is—the body?

CRITO: Yes.

SOCRATES: Could we live, having an evil and corrupted body?

CRITO: Certainly not.

SOCRATES: And will life be worth having, if that higher part of man be destroyed, which is improved by justice and depraved by injustice? Do we suppose that principle, whatever it may be in man, which has to do with justice and injustice, to be inferior to the body?

CRITO: Certainly not.

SOCRATES: More honourable than the body?

CRITO: Far more.

SOCRATES: Then, my friend, we must not regard what the many say of us: but what he, the one man who has understanding of just and unjust, will say, and what the truth will say. And therefore you begin in error when you advise that we should regard the opinion of the many about just and unjust, good and evil, honorable and dishonorable.— ‘Well,’ some one will say, ‘but the many can kill us.’

CRITO: Yes, Socrates; that will clearly be the answer.

SOCRATES: And it is true; but still I find with surprise that the old argument is unshaken as ever. And I should like to know whether I may say the same of another proposition—that not life, but a good life, is to be chiefly valued?

CRITO: Yes, that also remains unshaken.

SOCRATES: And a good life is equivalent to a just and honorable one—that holds also?

CRITO: Yes, it does.

SOCRATES: From these premisses I proceed to argue the question whether I ought or ought not to try and escape without the consent of the Athenians: and if I am clearly right in escaping, then I will make the attempt; but if not, I will abstain. The other considerations which you mention, of money and loss of character and the duty of educating one’s children, are, I fear, only the doctrines of the multitude, who would be as ready to restore people to life, if they were able, as they are to put them to death—and with as little reason. But now, since the argument has thus far prevailed, the only question which remains to be considered is, whether we shall do rightly either in escaping or in suffering others to aid in our escape and paying them in money and thanks, or whether in reality we shall not do rightly; and if the latter, then death or any other calamity which may ensue on my remaining here must not be allowed to enter into the calculation.

CRITO: I think that you are right, Socrates; how then shall we proceed?

SOCRATES: Let us consider the matter together, and

vocabulary

ἀέκων unwilling
 ἄθρέω observe, gaze
 αἰσχρός shameful
 ἄκυρος (ῶ) without authority
 ἄκων javelin; unwilling ~acme
 ἀνατρέπω defeat, thwart ~trophy
 ἀναχωρέω return, retreat ~heir
 ἀνταπόλλυμι (ῶ) destroy in return
 ἀντιλέγω contradict, oppose
 ἀντιποιέω do in return; (mid) seek, claim
 ἀποδιδράσκω escape
 ἀρέσκω please, satisfy; make amends
 ἀρετή goodness, excellence
 ἄρτι at the same time
 βιάζω use force on, violate
 βούλευμα -τος (n, 3) resolution, purpose
 γάμος wedding, sex ~bigamy
 δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
 δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
 δῆτα emphatic δῆ
 διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
 διανοέω have in mind
 δικάζω judge
 δικαστήριον court
 δοκιμάζω test, approve
 δράω do, accomplish
 ἐγκαλέω demand payment; accuse
 εἴτε if, whenever; either/or
 εἴωθα be accustomed, in the habit
 ἔχγονος offspring, descendant
 ~genus
 ἐκτρέφω raise, rear
 ἐκχέω pour out
 ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily
 ἐμμένω stay put, be faithful, fixed
 ἐνθένδε hence
 ἐννοέω consider

ἐντεῦθεν thence
 ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus
 ἔξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion
 ἔξεστι it is allowed/possible
 ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet
 ἐξίστημι displace, transform; (+gen) give up ~station
 ἐξουσία authority, office
 ἐπειδὴν when, after
 ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand ~station
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
 ἐπιχειρήσις -τος (f) attack
 ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go searching through
 ἐρωτάω ask about something
 ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station
 ἥκιστος least; above all
 ἡσυχία peace and quiet
 θωπεύω flatter, coax
 ἰδιώτης -ου (m, 1) private; a layman
 ἰσχύω be strong; win
 κακουργέω do evil
 καταφρονέω scorn; think of
 κοινός communal, ordinary
 κοινωνιῶν associate with
 μακάριος blessed
 μέμφομαι blame; reject
 μεταδίδωμι give part of ~donate
 μοῖρα portion, fate; (κατά+) rightly ~Moirai
 μουσική art, music
 ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
 νή yea
 ὁμολογέω agree with/to
 ὁμολογία agreement, consent
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
 ὀνομάζω to address, name ~name
 ὅποι to which place
 ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just ~orthogonal

ὀρθόω stand up
οὐδαμὸς not anyone
οὐδέποτε never
παιδεία child-rearing, education
παιδεύω raise; train
πάλαι long ago ~paleo
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
πανταχοῦ everywhere; completely
παραγγέλλω transmit; order,
summon, recommend, encourage
πη somewhere, somehow
πότερος which, whichever of two
προαγορεύω declare, predict, order
πρόγονος elder, ancestor ~genus
προστάσσω post at, attach to,
command
ρήτωρ public speaker
σέβομαι feel shame, awe
σεμνός revered, holy
σκοπᾶω watch, observe

σκοπέω behold, consider
σοφός skilled, clever, wise
σπουδῇ zeal; (dat) with difficulty,
hastily ~repudiate
σύμπας (ᾱ) all together
συνδοκέω seem good also
τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military
unit
τηλίκος of such an age
τίμιος honored, precious
τιτρώσκω wound, bring to grief
~trauma
τοίνυν well, then
τροφή food, upkeep ~atrophy
τύπτω beat, smite ~stupid
ὑπείκω yield, withdraw ~victor
φυτεύω plant, grow, cause, prepare
~physics
φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage

ἐμοῦ λέγοντος, ἀντίλεγε καί σοι πείσομαι· εἰ δὲ μή, παῦσαι ἤδη, ὦ μακάριε, πολλάκις μοι λέγων τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον, ὡς χρὴ ἐνθένδε ἀκόντων Ἀθηναίων ἐμὲ ἀπιέναι· ὡς ἐγὼ περὶ πολλοῦ ποιοῦμαι πείσας σε ταῦτα πράττειν, ἀλλὰ μὴ ἄκοντος. ὅρα δὲ δὴ τῆς σκέψεως τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐάν σοι ἱκανῶς λέγεται, καὶ πειρῶ ἀποκρίνεσθαι τὸ ἐρωτώμενον ἢ ἂν μάλιστα οἷη.

ΚΡΙΤΩΝ. ἀλλὰ πειράσομαι.

ΣΩΚΡΑΤΗΣ. οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ φαμέν ἐκόντας ἀδικητέον εἶναι, ἢ τινὲς μὲν ἀδικητέον τρόπῳ τινὶ δὲ οὐ; ἢ οὐδαμῶς τό γε ἀδικεῖν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν οὔτε καλόν, ὡς πολλάκις ἡμῖν καὶ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ ὠμολογήθη; ὅπερ καὶ ἄρτι ἐλέγετο ἢ πᾶσαι ἡμῖν ἐκείναι αἱ πρόσθεν ὁμολογίαι ἐν ταῖς οὖν οὐδὲ ταῖς ὀλίγαις ἡμέραις ἐκκεχυμέναι εἰσίν, καὶ πάλοι, ὦ Κρίτων, ἄρα τηλικοῖδε γέροντες ἄνδρες πρὸς ἀλλήλους σπουδῇ διαλεγόμενοι ἐλάθομεν ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς παίδων οὐδὲν διαφέροντες; ἢ παντὸς μᾶλλον οὕτως ἔχει ὥσπερ τότε ἐλέγετο ἡμῖν· εἴτε φασὶν οἱ πολλοὶ εἴτε μή, καὶ εἴτε δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἔτι τῶνδε χαλεπώτερα πάσχειν εἴτε καὶ πραότερα, ὅμως τό γε ἀδικεῖν τῷ ἀδικοῦντι καὶ κακὸν καὶ αἰσχρὸν τυγχάνει ὃν παντὶ τρόπῳ; φαμέν ἢ οὐ;

ΚΡ. φαμέν.

ΣΩ. οὐδαμῶς ἄρα δεῖ ἀδικεῖν.

ΚΡ. οὐ δῆτα.¹

ΣΩ. οὐδὲ ἀδικούμενον ἄρα ἀνταδικεῖν, ὡς οἱ πολλοὶ οἴονται, ἐπειδὴ γε οὐδαμῶς δεῖ ἀδικεῖν.

ΚΡ. οὐ φαίνεται.

ΣΩ. τί δὲ δῆ; κακουργεῖν² δεῖ, ὦ Κρίτων, ἢ οὐ;

ΚΡ. οὐ δεῖ δῆπου, ὦ Σώκρατες.

¹ emphatic δῆ ² do evil

ΣΩ. τί δέ; ἀντικακουργεῖν κακῶς πάσχοντα, ὡς οἱ πολλοί φασιν, δίκαιον ἢ οὐ δίκαιον;

ΚΡ. οὐδαμῶς.

ΣΩ. τὸ γάρ που κακῶς ποιεῖν ἀνθρώπους τοῦ ἀδικεῖν οὐδὲν διαφέρει.

ΚΡ. ἀληθῆ λέγεις.

ΣΩ. οὔτε ἄρα ἀνταδικεῖν δεῖ οὔτε κακῶς ποιεῖν οὐδένα ἀνθρώπων, οὐδ' ἂν ὅτιοι ἄσχη ὑπ' αὐτῶν. καὶ ὅρα, ὦ Κρίτων, ταῦτα καθομολογῶν, ὅπως μὴ παρὰ δόξαν ὁμολογήῃς· οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι ὀλίγοις τισὶ ταῦτα καὶ δοκεῖ καὶ δόξει. οἷς οὖν οὕτω δέδοκται καὶ οἷς μὴ, τούτοις οὐκ ἔστι κοινὴ βουλή, ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκη τούτους ἀλλήλων καταφρονεῖν ὀρώντας ἀλλήλων τὰ βουλευόμενα.³ σκόπει δὴ οὖν καὶ σὺ εὖ μάλα πότερον κοινωνεῖς καὶ συνδοκεῖ σοι καὶ ἀρχώμεθα ἐντεῦθεν βουλευόμενοι, ὡς οὐδέποτε ὀρθῶς ἔχοντος οὔτε τοῦ ἀδικεῖν οὔτε τοῦ ἀνταδικεῖν οὔτε κακῶς πάσχοντα ἀμύνεσθαι ἀντιδρώντα κακῶς, ἢ ἀφίστασαι καὶ οὐ κοινωνεῖς τῆς ἀρχῆς; ἐμοὶ μὲν γὰρ καὶ πάλαι οὕτω καὶ νῦν ἔτι δοκεῖ, σοὶ δὲ εἴ πῃ ἄλλη δέδοκται, λέγε καὶ δίδασκε. εἰ δ' ἐμμένεις τοῖς πρόσθε, τὸ μετὰ τοῦτο ἄκουε.

ΚΡ. ἀλλ' ἐμμένω τε καὶ συνδοκεῖ μοι· ἀλλὰ λέγε.

ΣΩ. λέγω δὴ αὖ τὸ μετὰ τοῦτο, μάλλον δ' ἐρωτῶ· πότερον ἂ ἄν τις ὁμολογήσῃ τὰ δίκαια ὄντα ποιητέον ἢ ἐξαπατητέον;

ΚΡ. ποιητέον.

ΣΩ. ἐκ τούτων δὴ ἄθρει.⁴ ἀπιόντες ἐνθένδε ἡμεῖς μὴ πείσαντες τὴν πόλιν πότερον κακῶς τινας ποιούμεν, καὶ ταῦτα οὖς ἥκιστα δεῖ, ἢ οὐ; καὶ ἐμμένομεν οἷς ὁμολογήσαμεν δίκαιοις οὖσιν ἢ οὐ;

ΚΡ. οὐκ ἔχω, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἀποκρίνασθαι πρὸς ὃ ἐρωτᾷς· οὐ γὰρ ἐννοῶ.

ΣΩ. ἀλλ' ὥδε σκόπει. εἰ μέλλουσιν ἡμῖν ἐνθένδε εἶτε ἀποδιδράσκειν,

³ resolution, purpose ⁴ observe, gaze

εἴθ' ὅπως δεῖ ὀνομάσαι τοῦτο, ἐλθόντες οἱ νόμοι καὶ τὸ κοινὸν τῆς πόλεως ἐπιστάντες ἔρουντο· εἰπέ μοι, ὦ Σώκρατες, τί ἐν νῷ ἔχεις ποιεῖν; ἄλλο τι ἢ τοῦτ' ἂν τῷ ἔργῳ ὧ ἐπιχειρεῖς διανοῇ τοὺς τε νόμους ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσαι καὶ σύμπασαν τὴν πόλιν τὸ σὸν μέρος; ἢ δοκεῖ σοι οἷόν τε ἔτι ἐκείνην τὴν πόλιν εἶναι καὶ μὴ ἀνατετράφθαι, ἐν ᾗ ἂν αἱ γενόμεναι δίκαι μηδὲν ἰσχύωσιν ἀλλὰ ὑπὸ ἰδιωτῶν ἄκυροί⁵ τε γίνωνται καὶ διαφθείρωνται; τί ἐροῦμεν, ὦ Κρίτων, πρὸς ταῦτα καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα; πολλὰ γὰρ ἂν τις ἔχοι, ἄλλως τε καὶ ῥήτωρ,⁶ εἰπεῖν ὑπὲρ τούτου τοῦ νόμου ἀπολλυμένου ὅς τὰς δίκας τὰς δικασθείσας προστάττει κυρίας εἶναι. ἢ ἐροῦμεν πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὅτι ἡδίκηκε γὰρ ἡμᾶς ἢ πόλις καὶ οὐκ ὀρθῶς τὴν δίκην ἔκρινεν; ταῦτα ἢ τί ἐροῦμεν;

ΚΡ. ταῦτα νῆ Δία, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ΣΩ. τί οὖν ἂν εἴπωσιν οἱ νόμοι· ὦ Σώκρατες, ἢ καὶ ταῦτα ὡμολόγητο ἡμῖν τε καὶ σοί, ἢ ἐμμενεῖν ταῖς δίκαις αἷς ἂν ἡ πόλις δικάζῃ; εἰ οὖν αὐτῶν θαυμάζομεν λεγόντων, ἴσως ἂν εἴποιεν ὅτι ὦ Σώκρατες, μὴ θαύμαζε τὰ λεγόμενα ἀλλ' ἀποκρίνου, ἐπειδὴ καὶ εἴωθας χρῆσθαι τῷ ἐρωτᾷν τε καὶ ἀποκρίνεσθαι. φέρε γάρ, τί ἐγκαλῶν ἡμῖν καὶ τῇ πόλει ἐπιχειρεῖς ἡμᾶς ἀπολλύναι; οὐ πρῶτον μὲν σε ἐγεννήσαμεν ἡμεῖς, καὶ δι' ἡμῶν ἔλαβε τὴν μητέρα σου ὁ πατήρ καὶ ἐφύτευσέν σε; φράσον οὖν, τούτοις ἡμῶν, τοῖς νόμοις τοῖς περὶ τοὺς γάμους, μέμφῃ τι ὥς οὐ καλῶς ἔχουσιν; οὐ μέμφομαι, φαίην ἄν. ἀλλὰ τοῖς περὶ τὴν τοῦ γενομένου τροφήν τε καὶ παιδείαν ἐν ᾗ καὶ σὺ ἐπαιδεύθης; ἢ οὐ καλῶς προσέταττον ἡμῶν οἱ ἐπὶ τούτῳ τεταγμένοι νόμοι, παραγγέλλοντες τῷ πατρὶ τῷ σῷ σε ἐν μουσικῇ⁷ καὶ γυμναστικῇ παιδεύειν; καλῶς, φαίην ἄν. εἶεν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐγένου τε καὶ ἐξετράφης καὶ ἐπαιδεύθης, ἔχοις ἂν εἰπεῖν πρῶτον μὲν ὥς οὐχὶ ἡμέτερος ἦσθα καὶ ἔκγονος καὶ δοῦλος, αὐτός τε καὶ οἱ σοὶ πρόγονοι; καὶ εἰ τοῦθ' οὕτως ἔχει, ἄρ' ἐξ ἴσου οἶε εἶναι σοὶ τὸ δίκαιον καὶ ἡμῖν, καὶ ἅττ' ἂν ἡμεῖς σε ἐπιχειρῶμεν ποιεῖν, καὶ σοὶ ταῦτα ἀντιποιεῖν οἶε δίκαιον εἶναι;

ΣΩ. ἢ πρὸς μὲν ἄρα σοὶ τὸν πατέρα οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου ἦν τὸ δίκαιον καὶ

⁵ without authority ⁶ public speaker ⁷ art, music

πρὸς δεσπότην, εἴ σοι ὦν ἐτύγχανεν, ὥστε ἅπερ πάσχοις ταῦτα καὶ ἀντιποιεῖν, οὔτε κακῶς ἀκούοντα ἀντιλέγειν οὔτε τυπτόμενον ἀντιτύπτειν οὔτε ἄλλα τοιαῦτα πολλά· πρὸς δὲ τὴν πατρίδα ἄρα καὶ τοὺς νόμους ἐξέσται σοι, ὥστε, ἐάν σε ἐπιχειρῶμεν ἡμεῖς ἀπολλύναι δίκαιον ἡγούμενοι εἶναι, καὶ σὺ δὲ ἡμᾶς τοὺς νόμους καὶ τὴν πατρίδα καθ' ὅσον δύνασαι ἐπιχειρήσεις ἀνταπολλύναι, καὶ φήσεις ταῦτα ποιῶν δίκαια πράττειν, ὁ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ τῆς ἀρετῆς ἐπιμελόμενος; ἢ οὕτως εἰ σοφὸς ὥστε λέληθέν σε ὅτι μητρός τε καὶ πατρὸς καὶ τῶν ἄλλων προγόνων ἀπάντων τιμιώτερόν ἐστιν πατρίς καὶ σεμνότερον⁸ καὶ ἀγιώτερον καὶ ἐν μείζονι μοίρᾳ καὶ παρὰ θεοῖς καὶ παρ' ἀνθρώποις τοῖς νοῦν ἔχουσι, καὶ σέβεσθαι⁹ δεῖ καὶ μᾶλλον ὑπέικειν καὶ θωπεύειν¹⁰ πατρίδα χαλεπαίνουσιν ἢ πατέρα, καὶ ἢ πείθειν ἢ ποιεῖν ἃ ἂν κελεύῃ, καὶ πάσχειν ἐάν τι προστάτῃ παθεῖν ἡσυχίαν ἄγοντα, ἐάντε τύπτεσθαι ἐάντε δεῖσθαι, ἐάντε εἰς πόλεμον ἄγῃ τρωθησόμενον¹¹ ἢ ἀποθανούμενον, ποιητέον ταῦτα, καὶ τὸ δίκαιον οὕτως ἔχει, καὶ οὐχὶ ὑπεικτέον οὐδὲ ἀναχωρητέον οὐδὲ λειπτέον τὴν τάξιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν πολέμῳ καὶ ἐν δικαστηρίῳ καὶ πανταχοῦ ποιητέον ἃ ἂν κελεύῃ ἡ πόλις καὶ ἡ πατρίς, ἢ πείθειν αὐτὴν ἢ τὸ δίκαιον πέφυκε· βιάζεσθαι δὲ οὐχ ὅσιον οὔτε μητέρα οὔτε πατέρα, πολὺ δὲ τούτων ἔτι ἥττον τὴν πατρίδα; τί φήσομεν πρὸς ταῦτα, ὦ Κρίτων; ἀληθῆ λέγειν τοὺς νόμους ἢ οὐ;

ΚΡ. ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ.

ΣΩ. σκόπει τοῖνυν, ὦ Σώκρατες, φαῖεν ἂν ἴσως οἱ νόμοι, εἰ ἡμεῖς ταῦτα ἀληθῆ λέγομεν, ὅτι οὐ δίκαια ἡμᾶς ἐπιχειρεῖς δρᾶν ἃ νῦν ἐπιχειρεῖς. ἡμεῖς γάρ σε γεννήσαντες, ἐκθρέψαντες, παιδεύσαντες, μεταδόντες ἀπάντων ὧν οἰοί τ' ἡμεῖν καλῶν σοὶ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσιν πολίταις, ὅμως προαγορεύομεν τῷ ἐξουσίαν πεποιηκέναι Ἀθηναίων τῷ βουλομένῳ, ἐπειδὰν δοκιμασθῇ καὶ ἴδῃ τὰ ἐν τῇ πόλει πράγματα καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς νόμους, ᾧ ἂν μὴ ἀρέσκωμεν ἡμεῖς, ἐξεῖναι λαβόντα τὰ αὐτοῦ ἀπιέναι ὅποι ἂν βούληται. καὶ οὐδεὶς ἡμῶν τῶν νόμων

⁸ revered, holy ⁹ feel shame, awe ¹⁰ flatter, coax ¹¹ wound, bring to grief

do you either refute me if you can, and I will be convinced; or else cease, my dear friend, from repeating to me that I ought to escape against the wishes of the Athenians: for I highly value your attempts to persuade me to do so, but I may not be persuaded against my own better judgment. And now please to consider my first position, and try how you can best answer me.

CRITO: I will.

SOCRATES: Are we to say that we are never intentionally to do wrong, or that in one way we ought and in another way we ought not to do wrong, or is doing wrong always evil and dishonorable, as I was just now saying, and as has been already acknowledged by us? Are all our former admissions which were made within a few days to be thrown away? And have we, at our age, been earnestly discoursing with one another all our life long only to discover that we are no better than children? Or, in spite of the opinion of the many, and in spite of consequences whether better or worse, shall we insist on the truth of what was then said, that injustice is always an evil and dishonour to him who acts unjustly? Shall we say so or not?

CRITO: Yes.

SOCRATES: Then we must do no wrong?

CRITO: Certainly not.

SOCRATES: Nor when injured injure in return, as the many imagine; for we must injure no one at all? (E. g. compare Rep.)

CRITO: Clearly not.

SOCRATES: Again, Crito, may we do evil?

CRITO: Surely not, Socrates.

SOCRATES: And what of doing evil in return for evil, which is the morality of the many—is that just or not?

CRITO: Not just.

SOCRATES: For doing evil to another is the same as injuring him?

CRITO: Very true.

SOCRATES: Then we ought not to retaliate or render evil for evil to any one, whatever evil we may have suffered from him. But I would have you consider, Crito, whether you really mean what you are saying. For this opinion has never been held, and never will be held, by any considerable number of persons; and those who are agreed and those who are not agreed upon this

point have no common ground, and can only despise one another when they see how widely they differ. Tell me, then, whether you agree with and assent to my first principle, that neither injury nor retaliation nor warding off evil by evil is ever right. And shall that be the premiss of our argument? Or do you decline and dissent from this? For so I have ever thought, and continue to think; but, if you are of another opinion, let me hear what you have to say. If, however, you remain of the same mind as formerly, I will proceed to the next step.

CRITO: You may proceed, for I have not changed my mind.

SOCRATES: Then I will go on to the next point, which may be put in the form of a question: — Ought a man to do what he admits to be right, or ought he to betray the right?

CRITO: He ought to do what he thinks right.

SOCRATES: But if this is true, what is the application? In leaving the prison against the will of the Athenians, do I wrong any? or rather do I not wrong those whom I ought least to wrong? Do I not desert the principles which were acknowledged by us to be just—what do you say?

CRITO: I cannot tell, Socrates, for I do not know.

SOCRATES: Then consider the matter in this way: — Imagine that I am about to play truant (you may call the proceeding by any name which you like), and the laws and the government come and interrogate me: ‘Tell us, Socrates,’ they say; ‘what are you about? are you not going by an act of yours to overturn us—the laws, and the whole state, as far as in you lies? Do you imagine that a state can subsist and not be overthrown, in which the decisions of law have no power, but are set aside and trampled upon by individuals?’ What will be our answer, Crito, to these and the like words? Any one, and especially a rhetorician, will have a good deal to say on behalf of the law which requires a sentence to be carried out. He will argue that this law should not be set aside; and shall we reply, ‘Yes; but the state has injured us and given an unjust sentence.’ Suppose I say that?

CRITO: Very good, Socrates.

SOCRATES: ‘And was that our agreement with you?’ the law would answer; ‘or were you to abide by the sentence of the state?’ And if I were to express my astonishment at their words, the law would probably add: ‘Answer, Socrates, instead of opening your eyes—you are in the habit of asking and answering questions. Tell us,—What complaint have you to make against us which justifies you in attempting to destroy us and the state? In the first place did we not bring you into existence? Your father married your mother by our aid

and begat you. Say whether you have any objection to urge against those of us who regulate marriage?' None, I should reply. 'Or against those of us who after birth regulate the nurture and education of children, in which you also were trained? Were not the laws, which have the charge of education, right in commanding your father to train you in music and gymnastic?' Right, I should reply. 'Well then, since you were brought into the world and nurtured and educated by us, can you deny in the first place that you are our child and slave, as your fathers were before you? And if this is true you are not on equal terms with us; nor can you think that you have a right to do to us what we are doing to you. Would you have any right to strike or revile or do any other evil to your father or your master, if you had one, because you have been struck or reviled by him, or received some other evil at his hands?—you would not say this? And because we think right to destroy you, do you think that you have any right to destroy us in return, and your country as far as in you lies? Will you, O professor of true virtue, pretend that you are justified in this? Has a philosopher like you failed to discover that our country is more to be valued and higher and holier far than mother or father or any ancestor, and more to be regarded in the eyes of the gods and of men of understanding? also to be soothed, and gently and reverently entreated when angry, even more than a father, and either to be persuaded, or if not persuaded, to be obeyed? And when we are punished by her, whether with imprisonment or stripes, the punishment is to be endured in silence; and if she lead us to wounds or death in battle, thither we follow as is right; neither may any one yield or retreat or leave his rank, but whether in battle or in a court of law, or in any other place, he must do what his city and his country order him; or he must change their view of what is just: and if he may do no violence to his father or mother, much less may he do violence to his country.' What answer shall we make to this, Crito? Do the laws speak truly, or do they not?

CRITO: I think that they do.

SOCRATES: Then the laws will say: 'Consider, Socrates, if we are speaking truly that in your present attempt you are going to do us an injury. For, having brought you into the world, and nurtured and educated you, and given you and every other citizen a share in every good which we had to give, we further proclaim to any Athenian by the liberty which we allow him, that if he does not like us when he has become of age and has seen the ways of the city, and made our acquaintance, he may go where

vocabulary

ἀγανακτέω be vexed, in a ferment
 ἄγριος wild, savage ~agriculture
 αἰσχρός shameful
 αἰσχύνη (ῥ) shame, dishonor
 αἰσχύνω (ῥ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar
 ἀκέομαι heal, fix
 ἀκολασία debauchery
 ἄλλοσε elsewhere ~alien
 ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble
 ἀναγκάζω force, compel
 ἀνάξιος unworthy, undeserved
 ἄνευ away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin
 ἀνόητος foolish
 ἀπαγορεύω forbid; fail, be worn out
 ἅπαξ once
 ἀπαρέσχω appease
 ἀπατάω to lie, trick ~apatosaurus
 ἀποδημέω be absent, abroad
 ἀποδημία foreign travel
 ἀποδιδράσκω escape
 ἀποικία colony
 ἀπολαύω have use, have a benefit
 ἀπολογέομαι defend one's conduct
 ἄρα interrogative pcl
 ἀρέσχω please, satisfy; make amends
 ἀσχήμων ugly, shameful
 ἀταξία disorder
 αὐλέω play (blow, toot)
 αὐλή courtyard
 αὐλῖς -τος (f) roost, bivouac
 αὐλός flute, tube, hollow
 αὐλῶν canyon, strait, canal
 βαρβαρικός non-Greek
 βεβαιόω secure, confirm
 βεβαίωσις -εως (f) confirmation, warranty
 βιάω use force against, overcome

βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
 βομβέω clash, clatter
 δεῖπνον meal, food
 δεῖπνος meal, food
 δεσμωτήριον prison
 διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
 διαφερόντως differently
 δικάζω judge
 δικαστής -οῦ (m, 1) judge, juror
 διοικέω manage, keep house
 διφθέρα leather
 δουλεύω serve, be a slave
 ἑβδομήκοντα 70
 εἰκός likely
 εἴπερ if indeed
 εἴωθα be accustomed, in the habit
 ἐκάστοτε each time
 ἐκεῖσε thither
 ἐκτρέφω raise, rear
 ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily
 ἐμμενής continuously
 ἐμμένω stay put, be faithful, fixed
 ἐμποδῶν getting in the way
 ἐνσκευάζω get ready, dress in
 ἐντρέπω heed ~trophy
 ἐξαμαρτάνω miss; err, do wrong
 ἔξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion
 ἐπιθυμέω (ῥ) wish, covet
 ἐπιθυμία (ῥ) desire, thing desired
 ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee
 ἐπινοέω intend
 ἐπιτάσσω enjoin; place near
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
 εὐμενής kind
 εὐνομέομαι be well ordered
 εὐωχέω fete, feed well
 ἐφίημι (ι) send at, let fly; mp: rush at, spring upon ~jet
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

ἥκιστος least; above all
 ἡχή noise
 ἦχος noise
 θεωρία spectator, contemplation
 καθάπτω attach; (mp) upbraid
 καλλωπίζω embellish, make up
 κήδω distress, hurt; mp: care about
 (+gen) ~heinous
 κόσμιος well-behaved
 λυπέω (ἴ) annoy, distress
 μάτην in vain, randomly
 μεταλλάσσω change; exchange
 νόμιμος customary, legal, natural
 ὁμολογία agreement, consent
 ὁμολογίη agreement, consent
 ὅποι to which place
 ὀρθόω stand up
 οὐδέτερος neither
 οὐσία property; essence
 ὄφελος -εος (n, 3) a use, a help
 παιδεύω raise; train
 παραβαίνω go with; transgress
 ~basis
 παραμένω stay with ~remain
 περιτίθημι put around, endow with
 ~thesis
 πλησιάζω bring/be near; have sex
 ποῖ whither? how long?
 πολιτεύω (ἴ) be a free citizen
 πότε when?
 πότερος which, whichever of two

ποῦ where?
 προαιρέω produce; (m) prefer
 προτίθημι set before ~thesis
 πῶποτε never
 σκευή equipment
 σκοπᾶω watch, observe
 σκοπέω behold, consider
 στερέω steal, take
 στρατεύω make an expedition, war,
 campaign ~strategy
 σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion
 συνθήκη combination; agreement
 συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis
 σχῆμα -τος (n, 3) form, figure
 τεκμήριον sign; proof
 τοίνυν well, then
 τριχῇ in thirds; triply
 τυφλός blind
 ὑπέρχομαι go under
 ὑποβλέπω look angrily
 ὑποδείκνυμι (υῶ) show, trace out
 ὑποδέχομαι welcome, accept, suffer
 ~doctrine
 ὑφηγέομαι lead the way
 φάσκω declare, promise, think
 ~fame
 φαῦλος trifling
 φυγή flight, means of escape
 ~fugitive
 χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage
 χωλός lame

ἐμποδῶν ἐστὶν οὐδ' ἀπαγορεύει, ἐάντε τις βούληται ὑμῶν εἰς ἀποικίαν ἵεναι, εἰ μὴ ἀρέσκοιμεν ἡμεῖς τε καὶ ἡ πόλις, ἐάντε μετοικεῖν ἄλλοσέ ποι ἐλθῶν, ἵεναι ἐκεῖσε ὅποι ἂν βούληται, ἔχοντα τὰ αὐτοῦ. ὃς δ' ἂν ὑμῶν παραμείνῃ, ὁρῶν ὃν τρόπον ἡμεῖς τὰς τε δίκας δικάζομεν καὶ τὰλλα τὴν πόλιν διοικοῦμεν, ἤδη φαμέν τοῦτον ὁμολογηκέναι ἔργῳ ἡμῖν ἃ ἂν ἡμεῖς κελεύωμεν ποιήσῃν ταῦτα, καὶ τὸν μὴ πειθόμενον τριχῇ¹ φαμεν ἀδικεῖν, ὅτι τε γεννηταῖς οὖσιν ἡμῖν οὐ πείθεται, καὶ ὅτι τροφεῦσι, καὶ ὅτι ὁμολογήσας ἡμῖν πείσεσθαι οὔτε πείθεται οὔτε πείθει ἡμᾶς, εἰ μὴ καλῶς τι ποιοῦμεν, προτιθέντων ἡμῶν καὶ οὐκ ἀγρίως ἐπιταττόντων ποιεῖν ἃ ἂν κελεύωμεν, ἀλλὰ ἐφίεντων δυοῖν θάτερα, ἣ πείθῃν ἡμᾶς ἢ ποιεῖν, τούτων οὐδέτερα ποιεῖ.

ΣΩΚΡΑΤΗΣ. ταύταις δὴ φαμεν καὶ σέ, ὦ Σώκρατες, ταῖς αἰτίαις ἐνέξεσθαι, εἴπερ ποιήσεις ἃ ἐπινοεῖς, καὶ οὐχ ἥκιστα Ἀθηναίων σέ, ἀλλ' ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα. εἰ οὖν ἐγὼ εἶπομι· διὰ τί δή; ἴσως ἂν μου δικαίως καθάπτοιτο λέγοντες ὅτι ἐν τοῖς μάλιστα Ἀθηναίων ἐγὼ αὐτοῖς ὁμολογηκῶς τυγχάνω ταύτην τὴν ὁμολογίαν. φαῖεν γὰρ ἂν ὅτι ὦ Σώκρατες, μεγάλη ἡμῖν τούτων τεκμήριά ἐστιν, ὅτι σοι καὶ ἡμεῖς ἡρέσκομεν καὶ ἡ πόλις· οὐ γὰρ ἂν ποτε τῶν ἄλλων Ἀθηναίων ἀπάντων διαφερόντως ἐν αὐτῇ ἐπεδήμεις εἰ μὴ σοι διαφερόντως ἤρεσκεν, καὶ οὗτ' ἐπὶ θεωρίαν² πώποτ' ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἐξῆλθες, ὅτι μὴ ἅπαξ εἰς Ἴσθμόν, οὔτε ἄλλοσε οὐδαμῶσε, εἰ μὴ ποι στρατευσόμενος, οὔτε ἄλλην ἀποδημίαν ἐποιήσω πώποτε ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι ἄνθρωποι, οὐδ' ἐπιθυμία σε ἄλλης πόλεως οὐδὲ ἄλλων νόμων ἔλαβεν εἰδέναι, ἀλλὰ ἡμεῖς σοι ἱκανοὶ ἦμεν καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα πόλις· οὕτω σφόδρα ἡμᾶς ἥρου καὶ ὁμολόγεις καθ' ἡμᾶς πολιτεύσεσθαι,³ τὰ τε ἄλλα καὶ παῖδας ἐν αὐτῇ ἐποιήσω, ὡς ἀρεσκούσης σοι τῆς πόλεως. ἔτι τοῖνυν ἐν αὐτῇ τῇ δίκῃ ἐξῆν σοι φυγῆς τιμήσασθαι εἰ ἐβούλου, καὶ ὅπερ νῦν ἀκούσης τῆς πόλεως ἐπιχειρεῖς, τότε ἐκούσης ποιῆσαι. σὺ δὲ τότε μὲν ἐκαλλωπίζου⁴ ὡς οὐκ ἀγανακτῶν εἰ δέοι τεθνάναι σε, ἀλλὰ ἥρου, ὡς ἔφησθα, πρὸ τῆς φυγῆς θάνατον· νῦν δὲ οὗτ' ἐκείνους τοὺς λόγους αἰσχύνῃ, οὔτε ἡμῶν τῶν νόμων ἐντρέπῃ, ἐπιχειρῶν διαφθεῖραι,

¹ in thirds; triply ² spectator, contemplation ³ be a free citizen

⁴ embellish, make up

πράττεις τε ἄπερ ἂν δοῦλος ὁ φαυλότατος πράξειεν, ἀποδιδράσκειν ἐπιχειρῶν παρὰ τὰς συνθήκας τε καὶ τὰς ὁμολογίας καθ' ἃς ἡμῖν συνέθου πολιτεύεσθαι. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν ἡμῖν τοῦτ' αὐτὸ ἀπόκριναι, εἰ ἀληθὴ λέγομεν φάσκοντές σε ὁμολογηκέναι πολιτεύσεσθαι καθ' ἡμᾶς ἔργῳ ἀλλ' οὐ λόγῳ, ἢ οὐκ ἀληθῆ. τί φῶμεν πρὸς ταῦτα, ὦ Κρίτων; ἄλλο τι ἢ ὁμολογῶμεν;

ΚΡΙΤΩΝ. ἀνάγκη, ὦ Σώκρατες.

ΣΩ. ἄλλο τι οὖν, ἂν φαῖεν, ἢ συνθήκας τὰς πρὸς ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς καὶ ὁμολογίας παραβαίνεις, οὐχ ὑπὸ ἀνάγκης ὁμολογήσας οὐδὲ ἀπατηθεὶς οὐδὲ ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ ἀναγκασθεὶς βουλευσασθαι, ἀλλ' ἐν ἔτεσιν ἑβδομήκοντα, ἐν οἷς ἐξῆν σοι ἀπιέναι, εἰ μὴ ἡρέσκομεν ἡμεῖς μὴδὲ δίκαιαι ἐφαίνοντό σοι αἱ ὁμολογίαι εἶναι.

Σὺ δὲ οὔτε Λακεδαίμονα προηροῦ οὔτε Κρήτην, ἃς δὴ ἐκάστοτε φῆς εὐνομεῖσθαι, οὔτε ἄλλην οὐδεμίαν τῶν Ἑλληνίδων πόλεων οὐδὲ τῶν βαρβαρικῶν,⁵ ἀλλὰ ἐλάττω ἐξ αὐτῆς ἀπεδήμησας ἢ οἱ χωλοὶ τε καὶ τυφλοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀνάπηροι· οὕτω σοι διαφερόντως τῶν ἄλλων Ἀθηναίων ἡρεσκεν ἡ πόλις τε καὶ ἡμεῖς οἱ νόμοι δῆλον ὅτι· τίτι γὰρ ἂν πόλις ἀρέσκει ἄνευ νόμων; νῦν δὲ δὴ οὐκ ἐμμενεῖς τοῖς ὁμολογημένοις; ἐὰν ἡμῖν γε πείθῃ, ὦ Σώκρατες· καὶ οὐ καταγέλαστός γε ἔσῃ ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἐξελθών.

Σκόπει γὰρ δὴ, ταῦτα παραβὰς καὶ ἑξαμαρτάνων τι τούτων τί ἀγαθὸν ἐργάσῃσαν τὸν ἢ τοὺς ἐπιτηδείους τοὺς σαυτοῦ. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ κινδυνεύουσιν γέ σου οἱ ἐπιτήδαιοι καὶ αὐτοὶ φεύγειν καὶ στερηθῆναι τῆς πόλεως ἢ τὴν οὐσίαν ἀπολέσαι, σχεδόν τι δῆλον· αὐτοὺς δὲ πρῶτον μὲν ἐὰν εἰς τῶν ἐγγύτατά τινα πόλεων ἔλθῃς, ἢ Θήβαζε ἢ Μέγαράδε— εὐνομοῦνται γὰρ ἀμφοτέραι— πολέμιος ἦξεις, ὦ Σώκρατες, τῇ τούτων πολιτείᾳ, καὶ ὅσοι περ κήδονται τῶν αὐτῶν πόλεων ὑποβλέψονται σε διαφθορέα ἡγούμενοι τῶν νόμων, καὶ βεβαιώσεις τοῖς δικασταῖς τὴν δόξαν, ὥστε δοκεῖν ὀρθῶς τὴν δίκην δικάσαι· ὅστις γὰρ νόμων διαφθορεὺς ἐστὶν σφόδρα που δόξειεν ἂν

⁵ non-Greek

νέων γε καὶ ἀνοήτων ἀνθρώπων διαφθορεὺς εἶναι. πότερον οὖν φεύξῃ τὰς τε εὐνομουμένας πόλεις καὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν τοὺς κοσμιωτάτους;⁶ καὶ τοῦτο ποιοῦντι ἄρα ἄξιόν σοι ζῆν ἔσται; ἢ πλησιάσεις τούτοις καὶ ἀναισχυντήσεις διαλεγόμενος— τίνας λόγους, ὦ Σώκρατες; ἢ οὐσπερ ἐνθάδε, ὡς ἡ ἀρετὴ καὶ ἡ δικαιοσύνη πλείστου ἄξιον τοῖς ἀνθρώποις καὶ τὰ νόμιμα καὶ οἱ νόμοι; καὶ οὐκ οἶε ἄσχημον ἂν φανείσθαι τὸ τοῦ Σωκράτους πρᾶγμα; οἶεσθαί γε χρή. ἀλλ' ἐκ μὲν τούτων τῶν τόπων ἀπαρεῖς, ἥξεις δὲ εἰς Θετταλίαν παρὰ τοὺς ξένους τοὺς Κρίτωνος; ἐκεῖ γὰρ δὴ πλείστη ἀταξία⁷ καὶ ἀκολασία,⁸ καὶ ἴσως ἂν ἡδέως σου ἀκούοιεν ὡς γελοίως ἐκ τοῦ δεσμοκτηρίου ἀπεδίδρασκες σκευὴν⁹ τέ τινα περιθέμενος, ἢ διφθέραν¹⁰ λαβὼν ἢ ἄλλα οἷα δὴ εἰώθασιν ἐνσκευάζεσθαι οἱ ἀποδιδράσκοντες, καὶ τὸ σχῆμα τὸ σαντοῦ μεταλλάξας· ὅτι δὲ γέρων ἀνὴρ, σμικροῦ χρόνου τῷ βίῳ λοιποῦ ὄντος ὡς τὸ εἰκός, ἐτόλμησας οὕτω γλίσχρως ἐπιθυμεῖν ζῆν, νόμους τοὺς μεγίστους παραβάς, οὐδείς ὃς ἐρεῖ; ἴσως, ἂν μὴ τινα λυπῇς· εἰ δὲ μὴ, ἀκούσῃ, ὦ Σώκρατες, πολλὰ καὶ ἀνάξια σαντοῦ. ὑπερχόμενος δὴ βιώσῃ πάντας ἀνθρώπους καὶ δουλεύων— τί ποιῶν ἢ εὐωχούμενος¹¹ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ, ὥσπερ ἐπὶ δειπνον ἀποδεδημηκῶς εἰς Θετταλίαν;

ΣΩ. λόγοι δὲ ἐκεῖνοι οἱ περὶ δικαιοσύνης τε καὶ τῆς ἄλλης ἀρετῆς ποῦ ἡμῖν ἔσσονται; ἀλλὰ δὴ τῶν παιδῶν ἔνεκα βούλει ζῆν, ἵνα αὐτοὺς ἐκθρέψῃς καὶ παιδεύσῃς; τί δέ; εἰς Θετταλίαν αὐτοὺς ἀγαγὼν θρέψῃς τε καὶ παιδεύσῃς, ξένους ποιήσας, ἵνα καὶ τοῦτο ἀπολαύσωσιν; ἢ τοῦτο μὲν οὐ, αὐτοῦ δὲ τρεφόμενοι σοῦ ζῶντος βέλτιον θρέψονται καὶ παιδεύονται μὴ συνόντος σοῦ αὐτοῖς; οἱ γὰρ ἐπιτήδειοι οἱ σοὶ ἐπιμελήσονται αὐτῶν. πότερον εἰ μὲν εἰς Θετταλίαν ἀποδημήσῃς, ἐπιμελήσονται, εἰ δὲ εἰς Αἰδου ἀποδημήσῃς, οὐχὶ ἐπιμελήσονται; εἴπερ γέ τι ὄφελος αὐτῶν ἐστὶν τῶν σοι φασκόντων ἐπιτηδείων εἶναι, οἶεσθαί γε χρή. ἀλλ', ὦ Σώκρατες, πειθόμενος ἡμῖν τοῖς σοῖς τροφεῦσι μήτε παῖδας περὶ πλείονος ποιοῦ μήτε τὸ ζῆν μήτε ἄλλο μηδὲν πρὸ τοῦ δικαίου, ἵνα εἰς Αἰδου ἐλθὼν ἔχῃς πάντα ταῦτα ἀπολογήσασθαι τοῖς ἐκεῖ ἄρχουσιν· οὔτε γὰρ ἐνθάδε σοι φαίνεται ταῦτα πράττοντι ἄμεινον

⁶ well-behaved ⁷ disorder ⁸ debauchery ⁹ equipment ¹⁰ leather

¹¹ fete, feed well

εἶναι οὐδὲ δικαιότερον οὐδὲ ὀσιώτερον, οὐδὲ ἄλλω τῶν σῶν οὐδενί, οὔτε ἐκεῖσε ἀφικομένῳ ἄμεινον ἔσται. ἀλλὰ νῦν μὲν ἡδικοημένος ἄπει, ἐὰν ἀπίης, οὐχ ὑφ' ἡμῶν τῶν νόμων ἀλλὰ ὑπ' ἀνθρώπων· ἐὰν δὲ ἐξέλθῃς οὕτως αἰσchrῶς ἀνταδικήσας τε καὶ ἀντικακουργήσας, τὰς σαυτοῦ ὁμολογίας τε καὶ συνθήκας τὰς πρὸς ἡμᾶς παραβὰς καὶ κακὰ ἐργασάμενος τούτους οὓς ἤκιστα ἔδει, σαυτὸν τε καὶ φίλους καὶ πατρίδα καὶ ἡμᾶς, ἡμεῖς τέ σοι χαλεπανοῦμεν ζῶντι, καὶ ἐκεῖ οἱ ἡμέτεροι ἀδελφοὶ οἱ ἐν Ἄιδου νόμοι οὐκ εὐμενῶς¹² σε ὑποδέχονται, εἰδότες ὅτι καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐπεχείρησας ἀπολέσαι τὸ σὸν μέρος. ἀλλὰ μή σε πείσῃ Κρίτων ποιεῖν ἃ λέγει μᾶλλον ἢ ἡμεῖς. ταῦτα, ὦ φίλε ἐταῖρε Κρίτων, εἰ ἴσθι ὅτι ἐγὼ δοκῶ ἀκούειν, ὥσπερ οἱ κορυβαντιῶντες τῶν αὐλῶν δοκοῦσιν ἀκούειν, καὶ ἐν ἐμοὶ αὕτη ἡ ἡχὴ τούτων τῶν λόγων βομβεῖ¹³ καὶ ποιεῖ μὴ δύνασθαι τῶν ἄλλων ἀκούειν· ἀλλὰ ἴσθι, ὅσα γε τὰ νῦν ἐμοὶ δοκοῦντα, ἐὰν λέγῃς παρὰ ταῦτα, μάτην ἐρεῖς. ὅμως μέντοι εἴ τι οἶε πλεόν ποιήσῃν, λέγε.

ΚΡ. ἀλλ', ὦ Σώκρατες, οὐκ ἔχω λέγειν.

ΣΩ. ἔα τοίνυν, ὦ Κρίτων, καὶ πράττωμεν ταύτη, ἐπειδὴ ταύτη ὁ θεὸς ὑφηγείται.

¹² kind ¹³ clash, clatter

he pleases and take his goods with him. None of us laws will forbid him or interfere with him. Any one who does not like us and the city, and who wants to emigrate to a colony or to any other city, may go where he likes, retaining his property. But he who has experience of the manner in which we order justice and administer the state, and still remains, has entered into an implied contract that he will do as we command him. And he who disobeys us is, as we maintain, thrice wrong: first, because in disobeying us he is disobeying his parents; secondly, because we are the authors of his education; thirdly, because he has made an agreement with us that he will duly obey our commands; and he neither obeys them nor convinces us that our commands are unjust; and we do not rudely impose them, but give him the alternative of obeying or convincing us; — that is what we offer, and he does neither.

‘These are the sort of accusations to which, as we were saying, you, Socrates, will be exposed if you accomplish your intentions; you, above all other Athenians.’ Suppose now I ask, why I rather than anybody else? they will justly retort upon me that I above all other men have acknowledged the agreement. ‘There is clear proof,’ they will say, ‘Socrates, that we and the city were not displeasing to you. Of all Athenians you have been the most constant resident in the city, which, as you never leave, you may be supposed to love (compare *Phaedr.*). For you never went out of the city either to see the games, except once when you went to the Isthmus, or to any other place unless when you were on military service; nor did you travel as other men do. Nor had you any curiosity to know other states or their laws: your affections did not go beyond us and our state; we were your especial favourites, and you acquiesced in our government of you; and here in this city you begat your children, which is a proof of your satisfaction. Moreover, you might in the course of the trial, if you had liked, have fixed the penalty at banishment; the state which refuses to let you go now would have let you go then. But you pretended that you preferred death to exile (compare *Apol.*), and that you were not unwilling to die. And now you have forgotten these fine sentiments, and pay no respect to us the laws, of whom you are the destroyer; and are doing what only a miserable slave would do, running away and turning your back upon the compacts and agreements which you made as a citizen. And first of all answer this very question: Are we right in saying that you agreed to be governed according to us in deed, and not in word only? Is that true or not?’ How shall we answer, Crito? Must we not assent?

CRITO: We cannot help it, Socrates.

SOCRATES: Then will they not say: ‘You, Socrates, are breaking the covenants and agreements which you made with us at your leisure, not in any haste or under any compulsion or deception, but after you have had seventy years to think of them, during which time you were at liberty to leave the city, if we

were not to your mind, or if our covenants appeared to you to be unfair.

‘You had your choice, and might have gone either to Lacedaemon or Crete, both which states are often praised by you for their good government, or to some other Hellenic or foreign state. Whereas you, above all other Athenians, seemed to be so fond of the state, or, in other words, of us her laws (and who would care about a state which has no laws?), that you never stirred out of her; the halt, the blind, the maimed, were not more stationary in her than you were. And now you run away and forsake your agreements. Not so, Socrates, if you will take our advice; do not make yourself ridiculous by escaping out of the city.

‘For just consider, if you transgress and err in this sort of way, what good will you do either to yourself or to your friends? That your friends will be driven into exile and deprived of citizenship, or will lose their property, is tolerably certain; and you yourself, if you fly to one of the neighbouring cities, as, for example, Thebes or Megara, both of which are well governed, will come to them as an enemy, Socrates, and their government will be against you, and all patriotic citizens will cast an evil eye upon you as a subverter of the laws, and you will confirm in the minds of the judges the justice of their own condemnation of you. For he who is a corrupter of the laws is more than likely to be a corrupter of the young and foolish portion of mankind. Will you then flee from well-ordered cities and virtuous men? and is existence worth having on these terms? Or will you go to them without shame, and talk to them, Socrates? And what will you say to them? What you say here about virtue and justice and institutions and laws being the best things among men? Would that be decent of you? Surely not. But if you go away from well-governed states to Crito’s friends in Thessaly, where there is great disorder and licence, they will be charmed to hear the tale of your escape from prison, set off with ludicrous particulars of the manner in which you were wrapped in a goatskin or some other disguise, and metamorphosed as the manner is of runaways; but will there be no one to remind you that in your old age you were not ashamed to violate the most sacred laws from a miserable desire of a little more life? Perhaps not, if you keep them in a good temper; but if they are out of temper you will hear many degrading things; you will live, but how?—as the flatterer of all men, and the servant of all men; and doing what?—eating and drinking in Thessaly, having gone abroad in order that you may get a dinner. And where will be your fine sentiments about justice and virtue? Say that you wish to live for the sake of your children—you want to bring them up and educate them—will you take them into Thessaly and deprive them of Athenian citizenship? Is this the benefit which you will confer upon them? Or are you under the impression that they will be better cared for and educated here if you are still alive,

although absent from them; for your friends will take care of them? Do you fancy that if you are an inhabitant of Thessaly they will take care of them, and if you are an inhabitant of the other world that they will not take care of them? Nay; but if they who call themselves friends are good for anything, they will—to be sure they will.

‘Listen, then, Socrates, to us who have brought you up. Think not of life and children first, and of justice afterwards, but of justice first, that you may be justified before the princes of the world below. For neither will you nor any that belong to you be happier or holier or juster in this life, or happier in another, if you do as Crito bids. Now you depart in innocence, a sufferer and not a doer of evil; a victim, not of the laws, but of men. But if you go forth, returning evil for evil, and injury for injury, breaking the covenants and agreements which you have made with us, and wronging those whom you ought least of all to wrong, that is to say, yourself, your friends, your country, and us, we shall be angry with you while you live, and our brethren, the laws in the world below, will receive you as an enemy; for they will know that you have done your best to destroy us. Listen, then, to us and not to Crito.’

This, dear Crito, is the voice which I seem to hear murmuring in my ears, like the sound of the flute in the ears of the mystic; that voice, I say, is humming in my ears, and prevents me from hearing any other. And I know that anything more which you may say will be vain. Yet speak, if you have anything to say.

CRITO: I have nothing to say, Socrates.

SOCRATES: Leave me then, Crito, to fulfil the will of God, and to follow whither he leads.

vocabulary

ἀγγέλλω carry a message, announce

~angel

ἄδεής (ἄ) fearless ~Deimos

ἀκριβής (ι) exact

ἀλγεινός painful

ἀναγκάζω force, compel

ἀναμνηστικῶς (+2 acc) remind

someone ~mnemonic

ἄνευ away from; not having; not

needing ~Sp. sin

ἀνευφημέω shout; be honored

ἀνοίγνυμι (ι) open

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order,

promise ~angel

ἀπάγω lead away, back

~demagogue

ἀπολαμβάνω receive, recover, take

aside, cut off ~epilepsy

ἄπτω set on fire; attach; mid: touch,

seize ~haptic

ἄρτι at the same time

ἀσθενέω be weak, sick

ἀσχολία business, being busy

ἄτοπος strange, unnatural,

disgusting

βοάω shout

γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at

γενναῖος noble, sincere ~genesis

δακρύω weep

δεσμός bond, latch, strap; also (pl)

headdress

δεσμωτήριον prison

δεῦρο here, come here!

δημόσιος public, the state

δῆτα emphatic δῆ

διάκειμαι be in a condition

διαλλάσσω exchange; differ;

reconcile

διατρίβω (ι) wear down, delay

~tribology

διαφερόντως differently

διεξέρχομαι go through

διηγέομαι detail, describe

δικαστήριον court

δίς twice

εἰκός likely

εἴπερ if indeed

εἴσειμι go in; come in range; come

to mind ~ion

εἰσίημι (mid) speed to ~jet

εἴωθα be accustomed, in the habit

ἐκάστοτε each time

ἐκεῖσε thither

ἐκτρίβω (ι) rub out

ἔλεος ἐλοῦ pity, mercy ~alms

ἐνδεκα eleven ~decimal

ἐνθυμέομαι (ι) take to heart

ἐνιαυτός cycle of a year

ἐνίστε sometimes

ἐννοέω consider

ἐντείνω tauten ~tend

ἐπακολουθέω chase; accrue

ἐπειδάν when, after

ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail

ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable

ἐπιχωριάζω be locally habitual

ἐπιχώριος native

ἔπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act,

uncommon) handle, take care of

ἐρήμιος empty

ἐσπέρα evening, west

εὐδαίμων blessed with a good

genius

ἔωθεν at first light

ἡδέως pleasantly ~hedonism

ἡδονή pleasure

ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

ἡώς ἡῶθη (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene

θαυμάσιος wonderful

θεωρία spectator, contemplation

θυρωρός doorman, porter

ιερεὺς -ως (m) priest ~hieroglyph

καταλαμβάνω seize, understand,

catch, overtake; (mp) happen
 ~epilepsy
 κλίνη (ī) bed, couch ~clinic
 κόπτω beat, cut, strike
 κορυφή peak, crown
 λύπη distress
 λυπηρός (ō) painful, causing pain,
 sad
 μεταξύ between
 μοῖρα portion, fate; (κατά+) rightly
 ~Moirā
 ναί yea
 ναός (ā) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
 νή yea
 οἶκαδε homeward ~economics
 οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
 ὁμός same ~homoerotic
 ὁμοῦ together
 ὁμῶ unite ~homoerotic
 οὐδαμὸς not anyone
 πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience,
 passion, condition
 παιδίον young child; slave
 πάλαι long ago ~paleo
 πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
 πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
 παντάπασιν altogether; yes,
 certainly
 παραγγέλλω transmit; order,
 summon, recommend, encourage
 παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend
 ~genus
 παρακάθηναι sit near
 παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow
 ~jet
 πενθέω grieve ~Nepenthe
 πένθος -εος (n, 3) grief, misfortune
 ~Nepenthe

περιμένω wait for
 πίμπλημι fill (+gen.) ~plenum
 πλησίος near, neighboring
 ποίημα -τος (n, 3) work, deed
 πότε when?
 προθυμέομαι (ō) be eager
 προσαγορεύω address, call by name
 προσφωνέω speak to
 προτεραῖος previous to
 πρύμνα stern
 πῶποτε never
 σαφής clear, understandable
 σκέλος -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis
 στέφω crown, put around
 συγκάμπω bend
 συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
 συνάπτω join, partake; adjoin;
 consult; fight ~haptic
 συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis
 συχνός long; many; extensive
 σχεδόν near, approximately at
 ~ischemia
 σχολάζω have leisure
 ταρασσω mess things up ~trachea
 τελευτάω bring about, finish
 ~apostle
 τοίνυν well, then
 τότε then ... now ...
 τρίβω (ī) rub; (mid) be worn out
 ~tribulation
 τύχη fortune, act of a god
 ὑπακούω listen, reply ~acoustic
 ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's
 support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy
 φάρμακον drug, potion ~pharmacy
 φοιτάω go back and forth
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

ΕΧΕΚΡΑΤΗΣ. αὐτός, ὦ Φαῖδων, παρεγένου Σωκράτει ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἢ τὸ φάρμακον ἔπιεν ἐν τῷ δεσμωτηρίῳ, ἢ ἄλλου του ἤκουσας;

ΦΑΙΔΩΝ. αὐτός, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες.

ΕΧ. τί οὖν δὴ ἐστὶν ἅττα εἶπεν ὁ ἀνὴρ πρὸ τοῦ θανάτου; καὶ πῶς ἐτελεύτα; ἡδέως γὰρ ἂν ἐγὼ ἀκούσαιμι. καὶ γὰρ οὔτε τῶν πολιτῶν Φλειασίων οὐδείς πάννυ τι ἐπιχωριάζει τὰ νῦν Ἀθήναζε, οὔτε τις ξένος ἀφίκεται χρόνου συχνοῦ ἐκεῖθεν ὅστις ἂν ἡμῖν σαφές τι ἀγγεῖλαι οἶός τ' ἦν περὶ τούτων, πλην γε δὴ ὅτι φάρμακον πιὼν ἀποθάνοι· τῶν δὲ ἄλλων οὐδὲν εἶχεν φράζειν.

ΦΑΙ. οὐδὲ τὰ περὶ τῆς δίκης ἄρα ἐπύθεσθε ὃν τρόπον ἐγένετο;

ΕΧ. ναί, ταῦτα μὲν ἡμῖν ἡγγειλέ τις, καὶ ἐθαυμάζομέν γε ὅτι πάλαι γενομένης αὐτῆς πολλῶ ὕστερον φαίνεται ἀποθανών. τί οὖν ἦν τοῦτο, ὦ Φαῖδων;

ΦΑΙ. τύχη τις αὐτῷ, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες, συνέβη· ἔτυχεν γὰρ τῇ προτεραίᾳ τῆς δίκης ἢ πρύμνα ἐστεμμένη¹ τοῦ πλοίου ὃ εἰς Δῆλον Ἀθηναῖοι πέμπουσιν.

ΕΧ. τοῦτο δὲ δὴ τί ἐστίν;

ΦΑΙ. τοῦτ' ἔστι τὸ πλοῖον, ὥς φασιν Ἀθηναῖοι, ἐν ᾧ Θησεύς ποτε εἰς Κρήτην τοὺς δις ἑπτὰ ἐκείνους ὥχετο ἄγων καὶ ἔσωσέ τε καὶ αὐτὸς ἐσώθη. τῷ οὖν Ἀπόλλωνι ηὔξαντο ὡς λέγεται τότε, εἰ σωθεῖεν, ἐκάστου ἔτους θεωρίαν² ἀπάξειν εἰς Δῆλον· ἦν δὴ αἰὲ καὶ νῦν ἔτι ἐξ ἐκείνου κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν τῷ θεῷ πέμπουσιν. ἐπειδὰν οὖν ἄρξωνται τῆς θεωρίας, νόμος ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ τούτῳ καθαρεύειν τὴν πόλιν καὶ δημοσίᾳ μηδένα ἀποκτείνουσι, πρὶν ἂν εἰς Δῆλόν τε ἀφίκεται τὸ πλοῖον καὶ πάλιν δεῦρο· τοῦτο δ' ἐνίοτε ἐν πολλῷ χρόνῳ γίνεται, ὅταν τύχῃσιν ἄνεμοι ἀπολαβόντες αὐτούς. ἀρχὴ δ' ἐστὶ τῆς θεωρίας ἐπειδὰν ὁ ἱερεὺς τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος στείῃ τὴν πρύμναν τοῦ πλοίου· τοῦτο δ' ἔτυχεν, ὥσπερ λέγω, τῇ προτεραίᾳ τῆς δίκης γεγονός. διὰ

¹ crown, put around ² spectator, contemplation

ταῦτα καὶ πολὺς χρόνος ἐγένετο τῷ Σωκράτει ἐν τῷ δεσμοτηρίῳ ὁ μεταξὺ τῆς δίκης τε καὶ τοῦ θανάτου.

ΕΧ. τί δὲ δὴ τὰ περὶ αὐτὸν τὸν θάνατον, ὦ Φαῖδων; τί ἦν τὰ λεχθέντα καὶ πραχθέντα, καὶ τίνες οἱ παραγενόμενοι τῶν ἐπιτηδείων τῷ ἀνδρὶ; ἢ οὐκ εἶων οἱ ἄρχοντες παρῆναι, ἀλλ' ἔρημος ἐτελεύτα φίλων;

ΦΑΙ. οὐδαμῶς, ἀλλὰ παρῆσάν τινες, καὶ πολλοί γε.

ΕΧ. ταῦτα δὴ πάντα προθυμήθητι ὡς σαφέστατα ἡμῖν ἀπαγγεῖλαι, εἰ μὴ τίς σοι ἀσχολία τυγχάνει οὐσα.

ΦΑΙ. ἀλλὰ σχολάζω³ γε καὶ πειράσομαι ὑμῖν διηγήσασθαι· καὶ γὰρ τὸ μεμνήσθαι Σωκράτους καὶ αὐτὸν λέγοντα καὶ ἄλλου ἀκούοντα ἔμοιγε αἰεὶ πάντων ἥδιστον.

ΕΧ. ἀλλὰ μὴν, ὦ Φαῖδων, καὶ τοὺς ἀκουσομένους γε τοιούτους ἐτέρους ἔχεις· ἀλλὰ πειρῶ ὡς ἂν δύνῃ ἀκριβέστατα διεξελθεῖν πάντα.

ΦΑΙ. καὶ μὴν ἔγωγε θαυμάσια ἔπαθον παραγενόμενος. οὔτε γὰρ ὡς θανάτῳ παρόντα με ἀνδρὸς ἐπιτηδείου ἔλεος εἰσῆι· εὐδαίμων⁴ γὰρ μοι ἀνὴρ ἐφαίνετο, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες, καὶ τοῦ τρόπου καὶ τῶν λόγων, ὡς ἀδεῶς καὶ γενναίως ἐτελεύτα, ὥστε μοι ἐκείνον παρίστασθαι μὴδ' εἰς Ἄιδου ἰόντα ἄνευ θείας μοίρας ἰέναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκεῖσε ἀφικόμενον εὖ πράξειν εἶπερ τις πώποτε καὶ ἄλλος.

ΦΑΙ. διὰ δὴ ταῦτα οὐδὲν πάνυ μοι ἔλεινόν εἰσῆι, ὡς εἰκὸς ἂν δόξειεν εἶναι παρόντι πένθει, οὔτε αὖ ἡδονὴ ὡς ἐν φιλοσοφίᾳ ἡμῶν ὄντων ὥσπερ εἰώθεμεν— καὶ γὰρ οἱ λόγοι τοιοῦτοί τινες ἦσαν— ἀλλ' ἀτεχνῶς ἄτοπόν τί μοι πάθος παρῆν καὶ τις ἀήθης κρᾶσις ἀπὸ τῆς ἡδονῆς συγκεκραμένη ὁμοῦ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς λύπης, ἐνθυμουμένῳ ὅτι αὐτίκα ἐκείνος ἔμελλε τελευτᾶν. καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες σχεδόν τι οὕτω διεκείμεθα, τοτὲ⁵ μὲν γελῶντες, ἐνίοτε δὲ δακρύνοντες, εἰς δὲ ἡμῶν καὶ διαφερόντως, Ἀπολλόδωρος— οἶσθα γὰρ πού τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ τὸν τρόπον αὐτοῦ.

³ have leisure ⁴ blessed with a good genius ⁵ then ... now ...

ΕΧ. πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

ΦΑΙ. ἐκεῖνός τε τοῖνυν παντάπασιν οὕτως εἶχεν, καὶ αὐτὸς ἔγωγε ἐτεταράγμην καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι.

ΕΧ. ἔτυχον δέ, ὦ Φαίδων, τίνες παραγενόμενοι;

ΦΑΙ. οὗτός τε δὴ ὁ Ἀπολλόδωρος τῶν ἐπιχωρίων παρῆν καὶ Κριτόβουλος καὶ ὁ πατήρ αὐτοῦ καὶ ἔτι Ἑρμογένης καὶ Ἐπιγένης καὶ Αἰσχίνης καὶ Ἀντισθένης· ἦν δὲ καὶ Κτήσιππος ὁ Παιανιεὺς καὶ Μενέξενος καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς τῶν ἐπιχωρίων. Πλάτων δὲ οἶμαι ἡσθένει.

ΕΧ. ξένοι δέ τινες παρῆσαν;

ΦΑΙ. ναί, Συμμίας τέ γε ὁ Θηβαῖος καὶ Κέβης καὶ Φαιδῶνδης καὶ Μεγαρόθεν Εὐκλείδης τε καὶ Τερψίων.

ΕΧ. τί δέ; Ἀρίστιππος καὶ Κλεόμβροτος παρεγένοντο;

ΦΑΙ. οὐ δῆτα·⁶ ἐν Αἰγίνῃ γὰρ ἐλέγοντο εἶναι.

ΕΧ. ἄλλος δέ τις παρῆν;

ΦΑΙ. σχεδόν τι οἶμαι τούτους παραγενέσθαι.

ΕΧ. τί οὖν δῆ; τίνες φῆς ἦσαν οἱ λόγοι;

ΦΑΙ. ἐγὼ σοι ἐξ ἀρχῆς πάντα πειράσομαι διηγῆσασθαι. αἰὲ γὰρ δὴ καὶ τὰς πρόσθεν ἡμέρας εἰώθεμεν φοιτᾶν καὶ ἐγὼ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι παρὰ τὸν Σωκράτη, συλλεγόμενοι ἔωθεν εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον ἐν ᾧ καὶ ἡ δίκη ἐγένετο· πλησίον γὰρ ἦν τοῦ δεσμοτηρίου. περιεμένομεν οὖν ἐκάστοτε⁷ ἕως ἀνοιχθείη τὸ δεσμοτήριον, διατρίβοντες μετ' ἀλλήλων, ἀνεώγετο γὰρ οὐ πρῶ· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀνοιχθείη, εἰσῆμεν παρὰ τὸν Σωκράτη καὶ τὰ πολλὰ διημερεύομεν μετ' αὐτοῦ. καὶ δὴ καὶ τότε πρωαίτερον συνελέγημεν· τῇ γὰρ προτεραίᾳ ἡμέρᾳ ἐπειδὴ ἐξήλθομεν ἐκ τοῦ δεσμοτηρίου ἐσπέρας, ἐπυθόμεθα ὅτι τὸ πλοῖον ἐκ Δήλου ἀφιγμένον εἴη. παρηγγέλαμεν οὖν ἀλλήλοις ἦκειν ὡς πρωαίτατα

⁶ emphatic δῆ ⁷ each time

εἰς τὸ εἰώθος· καὶ ἤκομεν καὶ ἡμῖν ἐξελθὼν ὁ θυρωρός,⁸ ὅσπερ εἰώθει ὑπακούειν, εἶπεν περιμένειν καὶ μὴ πρότερον παρίεναι ἕως ἂν αὐτὸς κελεύσῃ· λύουσι γάρ, ἔφη, οἱ ἔνδεκα⁹ Σωκράτη καὶ παραγγέλλουσιν ὅπως ἂν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τελευτᾷ.

Οὐ πολὺν δ' οὖν χρόνον ἐπισχὼν ἦκεν καὶ ἐκέλευεν ἡμᾶς εἰσιέναι. εἰσιόντες οὖν κατελαμβάνομεν τὸν μὲν Σωκράτη ἄρτι λελυμένον, τὴν δὲ Ξανθίππην— γιγνώσκεις γάρ— ἔχουσάν τε τὸ παιδίον αὐτοῦ καὶ παρακαθημένην. ὥς οὖν εἶδεν ἡμᾶς ἡ Ξανθίππη, ἀνηψήμησέ τε καὶ τοιαυτ' ἄττα εἶπεν, οἷα δὴ εἰώθασιν αἱ γυναῖκες, ὅτι ὦ Σώκρατες, ὕστατον δὴ σε προσερούσι νῦν οἱ ἐπιτήδαιοι καὶ σὺ τούτους. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης βλέψας εἰς τὸν Κρίτωνα, ὦ Κρίτων, ἔφη, ἀπαγέτω τις αὐτὴν οἴκαδε.

Καὶ ἐκείνην μὲν ἀπῆγόν τινες τῶν τοῦ Κρίτωνος βοῶσάν τε καὶ κοπτομένην· ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης ἀνακαθιζόμενος εἰς τὴν κλίνην συνέκαμψέ τε τὸ σκέλος καὶ ἐξέτρυψε τῇ χειρί, καὶ τρίβαν ἅμα, ὥς ἄτοπον, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔοικέ τι εἶναι τοῦτο ὃ καλοῦσιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἡδύ· ὥς θαυμασίως πέφυκε πρὸς τὸ δοκοῦν ἐναντίον εἶναι, τὸ λυπηρόν,¹⁰ τὸ ἅμα μὲν αὐτῷ μὴ θέλειν παραγίγνεσθαι τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ, ἐὰν δέ τις διώκῃ τὸ ἕτερον καὶ λαμβάνῃ, σχεδόν τι ἀναγκάζεσθαι ἀεὶ λαμβάνειν καὶ τὸ ἕτερον, ὥσπερ ἐκ μιᾶς κορυφῆς ἡμμένω δὺ ὄντε. καί μοι δοκεῖ, ἔφη, εἰ ἐνενόησεν αὐτὰ Αἴσωπος, μῦθον ἂν συνθεῖναι ὥς ὁ θεὸς βουλόμενος αὐτὰ διαλλάξαι πολεμοῦντα, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο, συνῆψεν εἰς ταὐτὸν αὐτοῖς τὰς κορυφάς, καὶ διὰ ταῦτα ᾧ ἂν τὸ ἕτερον παραγένηται ἐπακολουθεῖ ὕστερον καὶ τὸ ἕτερον. ὥσπερ οὖν καὶ αὐτῷ μοι ἔοικεν· ἐπεὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ δεσμοῦ ἦν ἐν τῷ σκέλει τὸ ἀλγεινόν,¹¹ ἦκεν δὴ φαίνεται ἐπακολουθοῦν τὸ ἡδύ.

Ὁ οὖν Κέβης ὑπολαβὼν, νῆ τὸν Δία, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη, εὖ γ' ἐποίησας ἀναμνήσας με. περὶ γάρ τοι τῶν ποιημάτων ὧν πεποίηκας ἐντείνας

⁸ doorman, porter

⁹ eleven

¹⁰ painful, causing pain, sad

¹¹ painful

ECHECRATES: Were you yourself, Phaedo, in the prison with Socrates on the day when he drank the poison?

PHAEDO: Yes, Echecrates, I was.

ECHECRATES: I should so like to hear about his death. What did he say in his last hours? We were informed that he died by taking poison, but no one knew anything more; for no Phliasian ever goes to Athens now, and it is a long time since any stranger from Athens has found his way hither; so that we had no clear account.

PHAEDO: Did you not hear of the proceedings at the trial?

ECHECRATES: Yes; some one told us about the trial, and we could not understand why, having been condemned, he should have been put to death, not at the time, but long afterwards. What was the reason of this?

PHAEDO: An accident, Echecrates: the stern of the ship which the Athenians send to Delos happened to have been crowned on the day before he was tried.

ECHECRATES: What is this ship?

PHAEDO: It is the ship in which, according to Athenian tradition, Theseus went to Crete when he took with him the fourteen youths, and was the saviour of them and of himself. And they were said to have vowed to Apollo at the time, that if they were saved they would send a yearly mission to Delos. Now this custom still continues, and the whole period of the voyage to and from Delos, beginning when the priest of Apollo crowns the stern of the ship, is a holy season, during which the city is not allowed to be polluted by public executions; and when the vessel is detained by contrary winds, the time spent in going and returning is very considerable. As I was saying, the ship was crowned on the day before the trial, and this was the reason why Socrates lay in prison and was not put to death until long after he was condemned.

ECHECRATES: What was the manner of his death, Phaedo? What was said or done? And which of his friends were with him? Or did the authorities forbid them to be present—so that he had no friends near him when he died?

PHAEDO: No; there were several of them with him.

ECHECRATES: If you have nothing to do, I wish that you would tell me what passed, as exactly as you can.

PHAEDO: I have nothing at all to do, and will try to gratify your wish. To be reminded of Socrates is always the greatest delight to me, whether I speak myself or hear another speak of him.

ECHECRATES: You will have listeners who are of the same mind with you, and I hope that you will be as exact as you can.

PHAEDO: I had a singular feeling at being in his company. For I could hardly believe that I was present at the death of a friend, and therefore I did not pity him, Echecrates; he died so fearlessly, and his words and bearing were so noble and gracious, that to me he appeared blessed. I thought that in going to the other world he could not be without a divine call, and that he would be happy, if any man ever was, when he arrived there, and therefore I did not pity him as might have seemed natural at such an hour. But I had not the pleasure which I usually feel in philosophical discourse (for philosophy was the theme of which we spoke). I was pleased, but in the pleasure there was also a strange admixture of pain; for I reflected that he was soon to die, and this double feeling was shared by us all; we were laughing and weeping by turns, especially the excitable Apollodorus—you know the sort of man?

ECHECRATES: Yes.

PHAEDO: He was quite beside himself; and I and all of us were greatly moved.

ECHECRATES: Who were present?

PHAEDO: Of native Athenians there were, besides Apollodorus, Critobulus and his father Crito, Hermogenes, Epigenes, Aeschines, Antisthenes; likewise Ctesippus of the deme of Paeania, Menexenus, and some others; Plato, if I am not mistaken, was ill.

ECHECRATES: Were there any strangers?

PHAEDO: Yes, there were; Simmias the Theban, and Cebes, and Phaedondes; Euclid and Terpison, who came from Megara.

ECHECRATES: And was Aristippus there, and Cleombrotus?

PHAEDO: No, they were said to be in Aegina.

ECHECRATES: Any one else?

PHAEDO: I think that these were nearly all.

ECHECRATES: Well, and what did you talk about?

PHAEDO: I will begin at the beginning, and endeavour to repeat the entire conversation. On the previous days we had been in the habit of assembling early in the morning at the court in which the trial took place, and which is not far from the prison. There we used to wait talking with one another until the opening of the doors (for they were not opened very early); then

we went in and generally passed the day with Socrates. On the last morning we assembled sooner than usual, having heard on the day before when we quitted the prison in the evening that the sacred ship had come from Delos, and so we arranged to meet very early at the accustomed place. On our arrival the jailer who answered the door, instead of admitting us, came out and told us to stay until he called us. 'For the Eleven,' he said, 'are now with Socrates; they are taking off his chains, and giving orders that he is to die to-day.' He soon returned and said that we might come in. On entering we found Socrates just released from chains, and Xanthippe, whom you know, sitting by him, and holding his child in her arms. When she saw us she uttered a cry and said, as women will: 'O Socrates, this is the last time that either you will converse with your friends, or they with you.' Socrates turned to Crito and said: 'Crito, let some one take her home.' Some of Crito's people accordingly led her away, crying out and beating herself. And when she was gone, Socrates, sitting up on the couch, bent and rubbed his leg, saying, as he was rubbing: How singular is the thing called pleasure, and how curiously related to pain, which might be thought to be the opposite of it; for they are never present to a man at the same instant, and yet he who pursues either is generally compelled to take the other; their bodies are two, but they are joined by a single head. And I cannot help thinking that if Aesop had remembered them, he would have made a fable about God trying to reconcile their strife, and how, when he could not, he fastened their heads together; and this is the reason why when one comes the other follows, as I know by my own experience now, when after the pain in my leg which was caused by the chain pleasure appears to succeed.

Upon this Cebes said: I am glad, Socrates, that you have mentioned the name of Aesop.

vocabulary

ἀγανακτέω be vexed, in a ferment
 ἀκοή hearing ~acoustic
 ἄλλοτε at another time ~alien
 ἀλόγιστος inconsiderate, irrational
 ἄλογος without speech or reckoning
 ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός,
 noble
 ἀνερευνάω research
 ἀνόητος foolish
 ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be
 freed, depart
 ἀπειθέω disobey
 ἀπλός single; simple ~haploid
 ἀπλώ spread, unfold
 ἀποδημέω be absent, abroad
 ἀποδημία foreign travel
 ἀποδιδράσκω escape
 ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse
 ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail
 ἀπολογέομαι defend one's conduct
 ἀπολογία verbal defense
 ἀποπειράομαι try, try out
 ἀπόρρητος forbidden, secret
 ἄρνημαι get, win
 ἄρώ plow ~arable
 ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
 ἄτοπος strange, unnatural,
 disgusting
 ἀφοσιόω purify, atone
 ἄφρων senseless, unthinking
 ~frenzy
 βιάζω use force on, violate
 βίος life ~biology
 βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
 δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
 δεῦρο here, come here!
 διαιτάω treat; live; arbitrate
 διακελεύομαι give orders to,
 encourage
 διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion

διανοέω have in mind
 διάνοια a thought; intelligence
 διασκοπέω consider from all angles
 δικαστήριον court
 δικαστής -ου (m, 1) judge, juror
 διοράω see clearly, distinguish
 δυσμή sunset
 εἰκός likely
 εἴπερ if indeed
 ἐκεῖσε thither
 ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving
 in too easily
 ἐλεύθερος not enslaved
 ἐνθάδε here, hither
 ἐννοέω consider
 ἐνύπνιος seen in dreams
 ἐορτή holiday, feast
 ἐπιθυμέω (ū) wish, covet
 ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee
 ἐπιπέμπω send after, again, to,
 besides
 ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
 ἐπιστάτης -ου (m, 1) suppliant,
 dependant ~station
 ἐπιτάσσω enjoin; place near
 ἔραμαι love, aor. fall in love; long
 for, covet ~erotic
 ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go
 searching through
 εὐελπίς -δος (m) hopeful
 εὐεργέτης -ου (m, 1) benefactor
 ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy
 ~hedonism
 ἡρέμα quietly, gently, slowly
 θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable
 θεμιτός legal, righteous
 θεραπεία -ας service, tending
 θέω run, run for
 θυσία sacrifice
 καθέζομαι act: set, seat; pass: sit
 down, sit up

καθήκω come down, (a day) to fall, arrive; be proper
καθίημι (ι) speed down upon; take down ~jet
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
κοινός communal, ordinary
κτῆμα -τος (n, 3) possession
λογίζομαι reckon, consider
μέλος -ους (n, 3) limb; melody
μέλω concern, interest, be one's responsibility
μεταδίδωμι give part of ~donate
μέτειμι be among, go, follow ~ion
μουσική art, music
μυθολογέω (ὁ) tell stories
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
οὐδέποτε never
οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
πάλαι long ago ~paleo
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
παρακελεύομαι recommend, encourage
παραμένω stay with ~remain
παρέρχομαι pass, escape
περιμένω wait for
πιθανός persuasive
ποίημα -τος (n, 3) work, deed
ποιητής -οῦ (m, 1) maker, author
ποιητός made, well-made ~poet
ποιῶς what kind
πότε when?
πρέπω be conspicuous, preeminent ~refurbish
προθυμέομαι (ὁ) be eager
προοίμιον prelude, introduction
προστάσσω post at, attach to, command
πρώην recently

πώποτε never
ῥώννυμι (ὁ) strengthen; (pf pass) be strong, eager, healthy
ῥώομαι move nimbly, rush, stream
σαυτοῦ yourself
σαφής clear, understandable
σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark ~semaphore
σκέλος -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis
σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch ~skeptical
σοφός skilled, clever, wise
συγγίγνομαι associate with, meet, have sex ~genus
σχεδόν near, approximately at ~ischemia
σωφρονέω be sane, moderate
τάχα quickly, soon; perhaps ~tachometer
τάχος -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer
τείνω stretch, tend ~tense
τελευτάω bring about, finish ~apostle
τήμερον today
τιμωρέω (ι) (+dat) take vengeance, punish; aid one who has been attacked
τιμωρία (ι) vengeance, punishment
τοίνυν well, then
τοιόσδε such
ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's support, seize; speak up; imagine ~epilepsy
φθόνος malice, envy
φιλόσοφος wisdom-loving
φοιτάω go back and forth
φρόνιμος sensible, prudent
φρουρά guard duty, a watch
χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage

τοὺς τοῦ Αἰσώπου λόγους καὶ τὸ εἰς τὸν Ἀπόλλω προοίμιον καὶ ἄλλοι
τινὲς με ἤδη ἤρουντο, ἀτὰρ καὶ Εὐήνος πρῶην,¹ ὅτι ποτὲ διανοηθεὶς,
ἐπειδὴ δεῦρο ἦλθες, ἐποίησας αὐτά, πρότερον οὐδὲν πώποτε ποιήσας.
εἰ οὖν τί σοι μέλει τοῦ ἔχειν ἐμὲ Εὐήνω ἀποκρίνασθαι ὅταν με αὖθις
ἐρωτᾷ— εὖ οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι ἐρήσεται— εἰπὲ τί χρὴ λέγειν.

Λέγε τοίνυν, ἔφη, αὐτῷ, ὦ Κέβης, τάληθῇ, ὅτι οὐκ ἐκείνω βουλόμενος
οὐδὲ τοῖς ποιήμασιν αὐτοῦ ἀντίτεχνος εἶναι ἐποίησα ταῦτα— ἤδη γὰρ
ὥς οὐ ράδιον εἶη— ἀλλ' ἐνυπνίων τινῶν ἀποπειρώμενος τί λέγοι, καὶ
ἀφοσιούμενος εἰ ἄρα πολλάκις ταύτην τὴν μουσικὴν² μοι ἐπιτάττοι
ποιεῖν. ἦν γὰρ δὴ ἅττα τοιάδε· πολλάκις μοι φοιτῶν τὸ αὐτὸ ἐνύπνιον
ἐν τῷ παρελθόντι βίῳ, ἄλλοτ' ἐν ἄλλῃ ὅψει φαινόμενον, τὰ αὐτὰ δὲ
λέγον, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη, μουσικὴν ποιεῖ καὶ ἐργάζου.

Καὶ ἐγὼ ἔν γε τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ ὅπερ ἔπραττον τοῦτο ὑπελάμβανον
αὐτό μοι παρακελεύεσθαι τε καὶ ἐπικελεύειν, ὥσπερ οἱ τοῖς θεόουσι
διακελευόμενοι, καὶ ἐμοὶ οὕτω τὸ ἐνύπνιον ὅπερ ἔπραττον τοῦτο
ἐπικελεύειν, μουσικὴν ποιεῖν, ὥς φιλοσοφίας μὲν οὔσης μεγίστης
μουσικῆς, ἐμοῦ δὲ τοῦτο πράττοντος. νῦν δ' ἐπειδὴ ἡ τε δίκη ἐγένετο
καὶ ἡ τοῦ θεοῦ ἑορτὴ διεκώλυέ με ἀποθνήσκειν, ἔδοξε χρῆναι, εἰ ἄρα
πολλάκις μοι προστάττοι τὸ ἐνύπνιον ταύτην τὴν δημῶδη μουσικὴν
ποιεῖν, μὴ ἀπειθῆσαι αὐτῷ ἀλλὰ ποιεῖν· ἀσφαλέστερον γὰρ εἶναι
μὴ ἀπιέναι πρὶν ἀφοσιώσασθαι ποιήσαντα ποιήματα καὶ πιθόμενον
τῷ ἐνυπνίῳ. οὕτω δὴ πρῶτον μὲν εἰς τὸν θεὸν ἐποίησα οὐδ' ἦν ἡ
παροῦσα θυσία· μετὰ δὲ τὸν θεόν, ἐννοήσας ὅτι τὸν ποιητὴν δέοι,
εἵπερ μέλλοι ποιητὴς εἶναι, ποιεῖν μύθους ἀλλ' οὐ λόγους, καὶ αὐτὸς
οὐκ ἦ μυθολογικός, διὰ ταῦτα δὴ οὖς προχείρους εἶχον μύθους καὶ
ἡπιστάμην τοὺς Αἰσώπου, τούτων ἐποίησα οἷς πρῶτοις ἐνέτυχον.
ταῦτα οὖν, ὦ Κέβης, Εὐήνω φράζε, καὶ ἐρρῶσθαι καί, ἂν σωφρονῇ,
ἐμὲ διώκειν ὥς τάχιστα. ἅπειμι δέ, ὥς ἔοικε, τήμερον· κελεύουσι γὰρ
Ἀθηναῖοι.

Καὶ ὁ Συμμίας, οἷον παρακελεύη, ἔφη, τοῦτο, ὦ Σώκρατες, Εὐήνω.
πολλὰ γὰρ ἤδη ἐντετύχηκα τῷ ἀνδρί· σχεδὸν οὖν ἐξ ὧν ἐγὼ ἤσθημαι

¹ recently ² art, music

οὐδ' ὁπωστιοῦν σοι ἐκὼν εἶναι πείσεται.

Τί δέ; ἦ δ' ὅς, οὐ φιλόσοφος Εὐήνος;

Ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.

Ἐθελήσει τοίνυν καὶ Εὐήνος καὶ πᾶς ὅτῳ ἀξίως τούτου τοῦ πράγματος μέτεστιν. οὐ μέντοι ἴσως βιάσεται αὐτόν· οὐ γάρ φασι θεμιτὸν εἶναι. καὶ ἅμα λέγων ταῦτα καθήκε τὰ σκέλη ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν, καὶ καθεζόμενος οὕτως ἦδη τὰ λοιπὰ διελέγετο.

Ἦρето οὖν αὐτὸν ὁ Κέβης· πῶς τοῦτο λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες, τὸ μὴ θεμιτὸν εἶναι ἑαυτὸν βιάζεσθαι, ἐθέλειν δ' ἂν τῷ ἀποθνήσκοντι τὸν φιλόσοφον ἔπεσθαι;

Τί δέ, ὦ Κέβης; οὐκ ἀκηκόατε σύ τε καὶ Σιμμίας περὶ τῶν τοιούτων Φιλολάῳ συγγεγονότες;

Οὐδέν γε σαφές, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ ἐγὼ ἐξ ἀκοῆς περὶ αὐτῶν λέγω· ἃ μὲν οὖν τυγχάνω ἀκηκοὺς φθόνος οὐδεὶς λέγειν. καὶ γὰρ ἴσως καὶ μάλιστα πρέπει μέλλοντα ἐκεῖσε ἀποδημεῖν διασκοπεῖν τε καὶ μυθολογεῖν³ περὶ τῆς ἀποδημίας τῆς ἐκεῖ, ποῖαν τινὰ αὐτὴν οἰόμεθα εἶναι· τί γὰρ ἂν τις καὶ ποιοῖ ἄλλο ἐν τῷ μέχρι ἡλίου δυσμῶν⁴ χρόνῳ;

Κατὰ τί δὴ οὖν ποτε οὐ φασι θεμιτὸν εἶναι αὐτὸν ἑαυτὸν ἀποκτεινύναι, ὦ Σώκρατες; ἦδη γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὅπερ νυνδὴ σὺ ἤρου, καὶ Φιλολάου ἤκουσα, ὅτε παρ' ἡμῖν διητᾶτο, ἦδη δὲ καὶ ἄλλων τινῶν, ὡς οὐ δέοι τοῦτο ποιεῖν· σαφές δὲ περὶ αὐτῶν οὐδενὸς πώποτε οὐδὲν ἀκήκοα.

Ἀλλὰ προθυμεισθαι χρή, ἔφη· τάχα γὰρ ἂν καὶ ἀκούσαις. ἴσως μέντοι θαυμαστόν σοι φανέεται εἰ τοῦτο μόνον τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάντων ἀπλοῦν ἐστιν, καὶ οὐδέποτε τυγχάνει τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ, ὥσπερ καὶ τᾶλλα, ἔστιν ὅτε καὶ οἷς βέλτιον ὄν τεθνάναι ἢ ζῆν, οἷς δὲ βέλτιον τεθνάναι, θαυμαστὸν ἴσως σοι φαίνεται εἰ τούτοις τοῖς ἀνθρώποις μὴ ὅσιον αὐτοὺς ἑαυτοὺς εὖ ποιεῖν, ἀλλὰ ἄλλον δεῖ περιμένειν εὐεργέτην.

³ tell stories ⁴ sunset

Καὶ ὁ Κέβης ἡρέμα⁵ ἐπιγέλασας, Ἰττω Ζεὺς, ἔφη, τῇ αὐτοῦ φωνῇ εἰπών.

Καὶ γὰρ ἂν δόξειεν, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, οὕτω γ' εἶναι ἄλογον· οὐ μέντοι ἀλλ' ἴσως γ' ἔχει τινὰ λόγον. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἐν ἀπορρήτοις λεγόμενος περὶ αὐτῶν λόγος, ὥς ἔν τι φρουρᾷ⁶ ἔσμεν οἱ ἄνθρωποι καὶ οὐ δεῖ δὴ ἑαυτὸν ἐκ ταύτης λύειν οὐδ' ἀποδιδράσκειν, μέγας τέ τίς μοι φαίνεται καὶ οὐ ῥάδιος διδεῖν· οὐ μέντοι ἀλλὰ τόδε γέ μοι δοκεῖ, ὦ Κέβης, εὖ λέγεσθαι, τὸ θεοὺς εἶναι ἡμῶν τοὺς ἐπιμελουμένους καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐν τῶν κτημάτων τοῖς θεοῖς εἶναι. ἢ σοὶ οὐ δοκεῖ οὕτως;

Ἐμοιγε, φησὶν ὁ Κέβης.

Οὐκοῦν, ἦ δ' ὅς, καὶ σὺ ἂν τῶν σαυτοῦ κτημάτων εἴ τι αὐτὸ ἑαυτὸ ἀποκτεινῇ, μὴ σιγήναι σου ὅτι βούλει αὐτὸ τεθνάναι, χαλεπαίνεις ἂν αὐτῷ καί, εἴ τινα ἔχοις τιμωρίαν, τιμωροῖο ἄν;

Πάνυ γ', ἔφη.

Ἴσως τοῖνυν ταύτῃ οὐκ ἄλογον μὴ πρότερον αὐτὸν ἀποκτείνουσαι δεῖν, πρὶν ἀνάγκην τινὰ θεὸς ἐπιπέμψῃ, ὥσπερ καὶ τὴν νῦν ἡμῖν παροῦσαν.

Ἄλλ' εἰκός, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, τοῦτό γε φαίνεται. ὁ μέντοι νυνδὴ ἔλεγες, τὸ τοὺς φιλοσόφους ῥαδίως ἂν ἐθέλειν ἀποθνήσκειν, ἔοικεν τοῦτο, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἀτόπῳ, εἶπερ ὁ νυνδὴ ἐλέγομεν εὐλόγως ἔχει, τὸ θεόν τε εἶναι τὸν ἐπιμελούμενον ἡμῶν καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐκείνου κτήματα εἶναι. τὸ γὰρ μὴ ἀγανακτεῖν τοὺς φρονιμωτάτους ἐκ ταύτης τῆς θεραπείας ἀπιόντας, ἐν ᾗ ἐπιστατοῦσιν αὐτῶν οἵπερ ἄριστοί εἰσιν τῶν ὄντων ἐπιστάται, θεοί, οὐκ ἔχει λόγον· οὐ γάρ που αὐτός γε αὐτοῦ οἶται ἄμεινον ἐπιμελήσεσθαι ἐλεύθερος γενόμενος. ἀλλ' ἀνόητος μὲν ἄνθρωπος τάχ' ἂν οἰηθείη ταῦτα, φευκτέον εἶναι ἀπὸ τοῦ δεσπότη, καὶ οὐκ ἂν λογίζοιτο ὅτι οὐ δεῖ ἀπὸ γε τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ φεύγειν ἀλλ' ὅτι μάλιστα παραμένειν, διὸ ἀλογίστως⁷ ἂν φεῖγοι· ὁ δὲ νοῦν ἔχων ἐπιθυμοὶ που ἂν αἰεὶ εἶναι παρὰ τῷ αὐτοῦ βελτίονι. καίτοι οὕτως, ὦ Σώκρατες, τὸνναντίον εἶναι εἰκὸς ἢ ὁ νυνδὴ ἐλέγετο· τοὺς μὲν

⁵ quietly, gently, slowly ⁶ guard duty, a watch ⁷ inconsiderate, irrational

γὰρ φρονίμους ἀγανακτεῖν ἀποθνήσκοντας πρέπει, τοὺς δὲ ἄφρονas χαίρειν.

Ἀκούσας οὖν ὁ Σωκράτης ἡσθῆναί τέ μοι ἔδοξε τῇ τοῦ Κέβητος πραγματείᾳ, καὶ ἐπιβλέψας εἰς ἡμᾶs, αἰεί τοι, ἔφη, ὁ Κέβης λόγους τινὰς ἀνερευνᾶ, καὶ οὐ πάνυ εὐθέως ἐθέλει πείθεσθαι ὅτι ἂν τις εἴπῃ.

Καὶ ὁ Σιμμίας, ἀλλὰ μὴν, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, νῦν γέ μοι δοκεῖ τι καὶ αὐτῷ λέγειν Κέβης· τί γὰρ ἂν βουλόμενοι ἄνδρες σοφοὶ ὡς ἀληθῶs δεσπότηs ἀμείνους αὐτῶν φεύγοιεν καὶ ῥαδίως ἀπαλλάττοντο αὐτῶν; καί μοι δοκεῖ Κέβης εἰs σὲ τείνειν τὸν λόγον, ὅτι οὕτω ῥαδίως φέρεις καὶ ἡμᾶs ἀπολείπων καὶ ἄρχοντας ἀγαθούς, ὡs αὐτὸs ὁμολογεῖs, θεούς.

Δίκαια, ἔφη, λέγετε· οἶμαι γὰρ ὑμᾶs λέγειν ὅτι χρή με πρὸs ταῦτα ἀπολογήσασθαι ὥσπερ ἐν δικαστηρίῳ.

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.

Φέρε δὴ, ἦ δ' ὅs, πειραθῷ πιθανώτερον πρὸs ὑμᾶs ἀπολογήσασθαι ἢ πρὸs τοὺs δικαστάs. ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, εἰ μὲν μὴ ᾧμην ἥξειν πρῶτον μὲν παρὰ θεοὺs ἄλλους σοφούς τε καὶ ἀγαθούς, ἔπειτα καὶ παρ' ἀνθρώπους τετελευτηκόταs ἀμείνους τῶν ἐνθάδε, ἡδίκουν ἂν οὐκ ἀγανακτῶν τῷ θανάτῳ· νῦν δὲ εἶ ὅστε ὅτι παρ' ἄνδραs τε ἐλπίζω ἀφίξεσθαι ἀγαθούς— καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἂν πάνυ δισχυρισαίμην— ὅτι μέντοι παρὰ θεοὺs δεσπότηs πάνυ ἀγαθούς ἥξειν, εἶ ὅστε ὅτι εἴπερ τι ἄλλο τῶν τοιούτων δισχυρισαίμην ἂν καὶ τοῦτο. ὥστε διὰ ταῦτα οὐχ ὁμοίως ἀγανακτῶ, ἀλλ' εὐελπίς εἰμι εἶναί τι τοῖs τετελευτηκόσι καί, ὥσπερ γε καὶ πάλαι λέγεται, πολὺ ἄμεινον τοῖs ἀγαθοῖs ἢ τοῖs κακοῖs.

Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, ὦ Σώκρατες; αὐτὸs ἔχων τὴν διάνοιαν ταύτην ἐν νῷ ἔχειs ἀπίεναί, ἢ καὶ ἡμῖν μεταδοίης; κοινὸν γὰρ δὴ ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ καὶ ἡμῖν εἶναι ἀγαθὸν τοῦτο, καὶ ἅμα σοι ἡ ἀπολογία ἔσται, ἐὰν ἅπερ λέγεις ἡμᾶs πείσης.

Ἀλλὰ πειράσομαι, ἔφη. πρῶτον δὲ Κρίτωνα τόνδε σκεψώμεθα τί

For it reminds me of a question which has been asked by many, and was asked of me only the day before yesterday by Evenus the poet—he will be sure to ask it again, and therefore if you would like me to have an answer ready for him, you may as well tell me what I should say to him:—he wanted to know why you, who never before wrote a line of poetry, now that you are in prison are turning Aesop's fables into verse, and also composing that hymn in honour of Apollo.

Tell him, Cebes, he replied, what is the truth—that I had no idea of rivalling him or his poems; to do so, as I knew, would be no easy task. But I wanted to see whether I could purge away a scruple which I felt about the meaning of certain dreams. In the course of my life I have often had intimations in dreams 'that I should compose music.' The same dream came to me sometimes in one form, and sometimes in another, but always saying the same or nearly the same words: 'Cultivate and make music,' said the dream. And hitherto I had imagined that this was only intended to exhort and encourage me in the study of philosophy, which has been the pursuit of my life, and is the noblest and best of music. The dream was bidding me do what I was already doing, in the same way that the competitor in a race is bidden by the spectators to run when he is already running. But I was not certain of this, for the dream might have meant music in the popular sense of the word, and being under sentence of death, and the festival giving me a respite, I thought that it would be safer for me to satisfy the scruple, and, in obedience to the dream, to compose a few verses before I departed. And first I made a hymn in honour of the god of the festival, and then considering that a poet, if he is really to be a poet, should not only put together words, but should invent stories, and that I have no invention, I took some fables of Aesop, which I had ready at hand and which I knew—they were the first I came upon—and turned them into verse. Tell this to Evenus, Cebes, and bid him be of good cheer; say that I would have him come after me if he be a wise man, and not tarry; and that to-day I am likely to be going, for the Athenians say that I must.

Simmias said: What a message for such a man! having been a frequent companion of his I should say that, as far as I know him, he will never take your advice unless he is obliged.

Why, said Socrates,—is not Evenus a philosopher?

I think that he is, said Simmias.

Then he, or any man who has the spirit of philosophy, will be willing to die, but he will not take his own life, for that is held to be unlawful.

Here he changed his position, and put his legs off the couch on to the ground, and during the rest of the conversation he remained sitting.

Why do you say, enquired Cebes, that a man ought not to take his own life, but that the philosopher will be ready to follow the dying?

Socrates replied: And have you, Cebes and Simmias, who are the disciples of Philolaus, never heard him speak of this?

Yes, but his language was obscure, Socrates.

My words, too, are only an echo; but there is no reason why I should not repeat what I have heard: and indeed, as I am going to another place, it is very meet for me to be thinking and talking of the nature of the pilgrimage which I am about to make. What can I do better in the interval between this and the setting of the sun?

Then tell me, Socrates, why is suicide held to be unlawful? as I have certainly heard Philolaus, about whom you were just now asking, affirm when he was staying with us at Thebes: and there are others who say the same, although I have never understood what was meant by any of them.

Do not lose heart, replied Socrates, and the day may come when you will understand. I suppose that you wonder why, when other things which are evil may be good at certain times and to certain persons, death is to be the only exception, and why, when a man is better dead, he is not permitted to be his own benefactor, but must wait for the hand of another.

Very true, said Cebes, laughing gently and speaking in his native Boeotian.

I admit the appearance of inconsistency in what I am saying; but there may not be any real inconsistency after all. There is a doctrine whispered in secret that man is a prisoner who has no right to open the door and run away; this is a great mystery which I do not quite understand. Yet I too believe that the gods are our guardians, and that we are a possession of theirs. Do you not agree?

Yes, I quite agree, said Cebes.

And if one of your own possessions, an ox or an ass, for example, took the liberty of putting himself out of the way when you had given no intimation of your wish that he should die, would you not be angry with him, and would you not punish him if you could?

Certainly, replied Cebes.

Then, if we look at the matter thus, there may be reason in saying that a man should wait, and not take his own life until God summons him, as he is now summoning me.

Yes, Socrates, said Cebes, there seems to be truth in what you say. And yet how can you reconcile this seemingly true belief that God is our guardian and we his possessions, with the willingness to die which we were just now attributing to the philosopher? That the wisest of men should be willing to leave a service in which they are ruled by the gods who are the best of rulers, is not reasonable; for surely no wise man thinks that when set at liberty he can take better care of himself than the gods take of him. A fool may perhaps think so—he may argue that he had better run away from his master, not considering that his duty is to remain to the end, and not to run away from the good, and that there would be no sense in his running away. The wise man will want to be ever with him who is better than himself. Now this, Socrates, is the reverse of what was just now said; for upon this view the wise man should sorrow and the fool rejoice at passing out of life.

The earnestness of Cebes seemed to please Socrates. Here, said he, turning to us, is a man who is always inquiring, and is not so easily convinced by the first thing which he hears.

And certainly, added Simmias, the objection which he is now making does appear to me to have some force. For what can be the meaning of a truly wise man wanting to fly away and lightly leave a master who is better than himself? And I rather imagine that Cebes is referring to you; he thinks that you are too ready to leave us, and too ready to leave the gods whom you acknowledge to be our good masters.

Yes, replied Socrates; there is reason in what you say. And so you think that I ought to answer your indictment as if I were in a court?

We should like you to do so, said Simmias.

Then I must try to make a more successful defence before you than I did when before the judges. For I am quite ready to admit, Simmias and Cebes, that I ought to be grieved at death, if I were not persuaded in the first place that I am going to other gods who are wise and good (of which I am as certain as I can be of any such matters), and secondly (though I am not so sure of this last) to men departed, better than those whom I leave behind; and therefore I do not grieve as I might have done, for I have good hope that there is yet something remaining for the dead, and as has been said of old, some far better thing for the good than for the evil.

But do you mean to take away your thoughts with you, Socrates? said Simmias. Will you not impart them to us?—for they are a benefit in which we too are entitled to share. Moreover, if you succeed in convincing us, that will be an answer to the charge against yourself.

I will do my best, replied Socrates.

vocabulary

ἀγανακτέω be vexed, in a ferment
 αἴσθησις -εως (f) sense perception
 ἀκοή hearing ~acoustic
 ἀκριβής (i) exact
 ἄλλοθι elsewhere, abroad
 ἀναγκάζω force, compel
 ἀπαλλαγή relief, escape
 ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
 ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
 ἀπολύω loose, free from ~loose
 ἄπτω set on fire; attach; mid: touch, seize ~haptic
 ἄρα interrogative pcl
 ἀτιμάζω (i) insult, dishonor
 ἄτοπος strange, unnatural, disgusting
 ἀφροδίσιος sexual
 βίος life ~biology
 βιώω live; (mp) make a living ~biology
 γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous
 δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
 διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
 διανοέω have in mind
 διάνοια a thought; intelligence
 διατρίβω (u) wear down, delay ~tribology
 διαφερόντως differently
 δικαστής -οῦ (m, 1) judge, juror
 δίς twice
 ἐγγύς near
 εἴπερ if indeed
 ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest
 ἐμπόδιος getting in the way
 ἐνίστε sometimes
 ἐνταῦθα there, here
 ἔντιμος (i) honored
 ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus
 οἰκότης like; fairly

ἐπειδὴν when, after
 ἐπιτηδεύω practice, pursue
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
 εὐελπίς -δος (m) hopeful
 ἐράπτω fasten upon ~haptic
 ἐφέλκω drag; (mid) influence
 ἡδονή pleasure
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
 ἥκιστος least; above all
 θανατόω kill ~euthanasia
 θαρρέω be of good heart
 θαρσέω be of good heart
 θεραπεΐη -ας service, tending
 θερμαίνω heat ~thermos
 θεωρέω be sent to consult an oracle; observe, contemplate
 θηρεύω hunt, fish ~fierce
 ἱμάτιον toga, cloth
 ἰσχύς -ος (f) strength; body of troops
 καθαρός clean, pure
 καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
 καλλωπισμός showing off; ornamentation
 κατάδηλος manifest, visible
 κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf) there is a danger that
 κοινωνέω associate with
 κοινωνία association
 κοινωνικός partner
 κτήσις -ος (f) chattels
 λογίζομαι reckon, consider
 λογισμός calculation
 μέγεθος -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person) ~megaton
 μετέχω partake of
 ναί yea
 ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
 νή yea
 ὀρέγω hold out, offer, thrust ~reach
 ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just ~orthogonal
 ὀρθόω stand up

οὐδαμός not anyone
 οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
 οὖς οὔατος (n) ear
 οὐσία property; essence
 ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view
 ~thanatopsis
 πάλαι long ago ~paleo
 πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
 πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
 παραλυπέω (ἰ) trouble as well
 παρατίθηναι put near, put at risk
 ~thesis
 ποιητής -οῦ (m, 1) maker, author
 ποιητός made, well-made ~poet
 πότερος which, whichever of two
 ποτή flight? ~petal
 ποτός potable
 προθυμέομαι (ἰ) be eager
 προσφέρω present; resemble; add
 πώποτε never
 σαφής clear, understandable
 σιτίον (ἰ) grain, bread, food
 ~parasite
 σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptical
 σκοπᾶω watch, observe
 σκοπέω behold, consider

σπουδάζω be busy, earnest
 ~repudiate
 σύμπας (ᾱ) all together
 σύμφημι assent, concede
 συνδοκέω seem good also
 σχεδόν near, approximately at
 ~ischemia
 σχολή rest, leisure
 ταρασσω mess things up ~trachea
 τείνω stretch, tend ~tense
 τελευτάω bring about, finish
 ~apostle
 τιμάω (ἰ) honor, exalt
 τοιόσδε such
 τρίς 3 times
 ὑγίεια health
 ὑπόδημα -τος (n, 3) sandals
 ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's
 support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy
 φάρμακον drug, potion ~pharmacy
 φαῦλος trifling
 φιλοσοφῶ philosophize, study
 φιλόσοφος wisdom-loving
 φροντίζω consider, ponder
 χωρίς separately; except, other than
 ~heir

ἐστιν ὁ βούλεσθαί μοι δοκεῖ πάλαι εἰπεῖν.

Τί δέ, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη ὁ Κρίτων, ἄλλο γε ἢ πάλαι μοι λέγει ὁ μέλλων σοι δώσειν τὸ φάρμακον ὅτι χρή σοι φράζειν ὡς ἐλάχιστα διαλέγεσθαι; φησὶ γὰρ θερμαίνεσθαι μᾶλλον διαλεγομένους, δεῖν δὲ οὐδὲν τοιοῦτον προσφέρειν τῷ φαρμάκῳ· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐνίστε ἀναγκάζεσθαι καὶ δις καὶ τρίς πίνειν τοὺς τι τοιοῦτον ποιοῦντας.

Καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης, ἔα, ἔφη, χαίρειν αὐτόν· ἀλλὰ μόνον τὸ ἑαυτοῦ παρασκευαζέτω ὡς καὶ δις δώσων, ἐὰν δὲ δέῃ, καὶ τρίς.

Ἀλλὰ σχεδὸν μὲν τι ἤδη, ἔφη ὁ Κρίτων· ἀλλὰ μοι πάλαι πράγματα παρέχει.

Ἦεα αὐτόν, ἔφη.

Ἄλλ' ὑμῖν δὴ τοῖς δικασταῖς βούλομαι ἤδη τὸν λόγον ἀποδοῦναι, ὥς μοι φαίνεται εἰκότως ἀνὴρ τῷ ὄντι ἐν φιλοσοφίᾳ διατρίψας τὸν βίον θαρρεῖν μέλλων ἀποθανεῖσθαι καὶ εὐελπὶς εἶναι ἐκεῖ μέγιστα οἴσεσθαι ἀγαθὰ ἐπειδὰν τελευτήσῃ. πῶς ἂν οὖν δὴ τοῦθ' οὕτως ἔχοι, ὦ Συμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ἐγὼ πειράσομαι φράσαι.

Κινδυνεύουσι γὰρ ὅσοι τυγχάνουσιν ὀρθῶς ἀπτόμενοι φιλοσοφίας λεληθέναι τοὺς ἄλλους ὅτι οὐδὲν ἄλλο αὐτοῖς ἐπιτηδεύουσιν ἢ ἀποθνήσκεν τε καὶ τεθνάναι. εἰ οὖν τοῦτο ἀληθές, ἄτοπον δῆπου ἂν εἶη προθυμεῖσθαι μὲν ἐν παντὶ τῷ βίῳ μηδὲν ἄλλο ἢ τοῦτο, ἥκοντος δὲ δὴ αὐτοῦ ἀγανακτεῖν ὁ πάλαι προθυμοῦντό τε καὶ ἐπετήδευον.

Καὶ ὁ Συμμίας γελάσας, νῆ τὸν Δία, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, οὐ πάνυ γέ με νυνδὴ γελασεῖοντα ἐποίησας γελάσαι. οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν τοὺς πολλοὺς αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἀκούσαντας δοκεῖν εὖ πάνυ εἰρηῆσθαι εἰς τοὺς φιλοσοφοῦντας— καὶ συμφάναι ἂν τοὺς μὲν παρ' ἡμῖν ἀνθρώπους καὶ πάνυ— ὅτι τῷ ὄντι οἱ φιλοσοφοῦντες θανατῶσι, καὶ σφᾶς γε οὐ λελήθασιν ὅτι ἄξιοί εἰσιν τοῦτο πάσχειν.

Καὶ ἀληθῇ γ' ἂν λέγοιεν, ὦ Συμμία, πλὴν γε τοῦ σφᾶς μὴ λεληθέναι. λέληθεν γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἢ τε θανατῶσι καὶ ἢ ἄξιοί εἰσιν θανάτου καὶ οἷου

θανάτου οί ὡς ἀληθῶς φιλόσοφοι. εἵπωμεν γάρ, ἔφη, πρὸς ἡμᾶς αὐτούς, χαίρειν εἰπόντες ἐκείνοις· ἡγούμεθά τι τὸν θάνατον εἶναι;

Πάνυ γε, ἔφη ὑπολαβὼν ὁ Σιμμίας.

Ἄρα μὴ ἄλλο τι ἢ τὴν τῆς ψυχῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ σώματος ἀπαλλαγὴν; καὶ εἶναι τοῦτο τὸ τεθνάναι, χωρὶς μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς ψυχῆς ἀπαλλαγὴν αὐτὸ καθ' αὐτὸ τὸ σῶμα γεγονέναι, χωρὶς δὲ τὴν ψυχὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ σώματος ἀπαλλαγεῖσαν αὐτὴν καθ' αὐτὴν εἶναι; ἄρα μὴ ἄλλο τι ἢ ὁ θάνατος ἢ τοῦτο;

Οὐκ, ἀλλὰ τοῦτο, ἔφη.

Σκέψαι δὴ, ὠγαθέ, ἐὰν ἄρα καὶ σοὶ συνδοκῇ ἅπερ ἐμοί· ἐκ γὰρ τούτων μᾶλλον οἶμαι ἡμᾶς εἴσεσθαι περὶ ὧν σκοποῦμεν. φαίνεται σοι φιλοσόφου ἀνδρὸς εἶναι ἐσπουδακέναι περὶ τὰς ἡδονὰς καλουμένας τὰς τοιάσδε, οἷον σιτίων τε καὶ ποτῶν;

Ἦκιστα, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.

Τί δὲ τὰς τῶν ἀφροδισίων;¹

Οὐδαμῶς.

Τί δὲ τὰς ἄλλας τὰς περὶ τὸ σῶμα θεραπείας; δοκεῖ σοι ἐντίμους ἡγεῖσθαι ὁ τοιοῦτος; οἷον ἱματίων διαφερόντων κτήσεις καὶ ὑποδημάτων καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους καλλωπισμοὺς² τοὺς περὶ τὸ σῶμα πότερον τιμᾶν δοκεῖ σοι ἢ ἀτιμάζειν, καθ' ὅσον μὴ πολλὴ ἀνάγκη μετέχειν αὐτῶν;

Ἀτιμάζειν ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ὅ γε ὡς ἀληθῶς φιλόσοφος.

Οὐκοῦν ὅλως δοκεῖ σοι, ἔφη, ἢ τοῦ τοιούτου πραγματεία οὐ περὶ τὸ σῶμα εἶναι, ἀλλὰ καθ' ὅσον δύναται ἀφεστάναι αὐτοῦ, πρὸς δὲ τὴν ψυχὴν τετράφθαι;

Ἐμοιγε.

¹ sexual ² showing off; ornamentation

Ἄρ' οὖν πρῶτον μὲν ἐν τοῖς τοιούτοις δηλὸς ἐστὶν ὁ φιλόσοφος ἀπολύων ὅτι μάλιστα τὴν ψυχὴν ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ σώματος κοινωνίας διαφερόντως τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων;

Φαίνεται.

Καὶ δοκεῖ γέ που, ὦ Συμμία, τοῖς πολλοῖς ἀνθρώποις ᾧ μὴδὲν ἡδὺ τῶν τοιούτων μὴδὲ μετέχει αὐτῶν οὐκ ἄξιον εἶναι ζῆν, ἀλλ' ἐγγύς τι τείνειν τοῦ τεθνάναι ὁ μὴδὲν φροντίζων τῶν ἡδονῶν αἱ διὰ τοῦ σώματός εἰσιν.

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν ἀληθὴ λέγεις.

Τί δὲ δὴ περὶ αὐτὴν τὴν τῆς φρονήσεως κτῆσιν; πότερον ἐμπόδιον τὸ σῶμα ἢ οὐ, ἐάν τις αὐτὸ ἐν τῇ ζητήσει κοινωνὸν³ συμπαραλαμβάνῃ; οἷον τὸ τοιόνδε λέγω· ἄρα ἔχει ἀλήθειάν τινα ὅψις τε καὶ ἀκοὴ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις, ἢ τά γε τοιαῦτα καὶ οἱ ποιηταὶ ἡμῶν ἀεὶ θρυλοῦσιν, ὅτι οὐτ' ἀκούομεν ἀκριβὲς οὐδὲν οὔτε ὁρώμεν; καίτοι εἰ αὐταὶ τῶν περὶ τὸ σῶμα αἰσθήσεων μὴ ἀκριβεῖς εἰσιν μὴδὲ σαφεῖς, σχολῇ αἱ γε ἄλλαι· πᾶσαι γάρ που τούτων φαυλότεραί εἰσιν. ἢ σοὶ οὐ δοκοῦσιν;

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.

Πότε οὖν, ἢ δ' ὅς, ἡ ψυχὴ τῆς ἀληθείας ἄπτεται; ὅταν μὲν γὰρ μετὰ τοῦ σώματος ἐπιχειρῇ τι σκοπεῖν, δῆλον ὅτι τότε ἐξαπατᾶται ὑπ' αὐτοῦ.

Ἀληθὴ λέγεις.

Ἄρ' οὖν οὐκ ἐν τῷ λογίζεσθαι εἴπερ που ἄλλοθι κατάδηλον αὐτῇ γίγνεται τι τῶν ὄντων;

Ναί.

Λογίζεται δέ γέ που τότε κάλλιστα, ὅταν αὐτὴν τούτων μὴδὲν παραλυπῇ, μήτε ἀκοὴ μήτε ὅψις μήτε ἀλγηδὼν μὴδὲ τις ἡδονή, ἀλλ' ὅτι μάλιστα αὐτὴ καθ' αὐτὴν γίγνηται ἐῷσα χαίρειν τὸ σῶμα, καὶ

³ partner

καθ' ὅσον δύναται μὴ κοινωνοῦσα αὐτῷ μὴδ' ἀπτομένη ὀρέγεται τοῦ ὄντος.

Ἔστι ταῦτα.

Οὐκοῦν καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἡ τοῦ φιλοσόφου ψυχὴ μάλιστα ἀτμάζει τὸ σῶμα καὶ φεύγει ἀπ' αὐτοῦ, ζητεῖ δὲ αὐτὴ καθ' αὐτὴν γίγνεσθαι;

Φαίνεται.

Τί δὲ δὴ τὰ τοιαῦτα, ὦ Συμμία; φαμέν τι εἶναι δίκαιον αὐτὸ ἢ οὐδέν;

Φαμέν μέντοι νῆ Δία.

Καὶ αὖ καλόν γέ τι καὶ ἀγαθόν;

Πῶς δ' οὐ;

Ἦδη οὖν πρόποτέ τι τῶν τοιούτων τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς εἶδες;

Οὐδαμῶς, ἦ δ' ὅς.

Ἄλλ' ἄλλη τι νὴ αἰσθήσει τῶν διὰ τοῦ σώματος ἐφήψω αὐτῶν; λέγω δὲ περὶ πάντων, οἷον μεγέθους πέρι, ὑγείας,⁴ ἰσχύος, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐνὶ λόγῳ ἀπάντων τῆς οὐσίας ὃ τυγχάνει ἕκαστον ὄν· ἄρα διὰ τοῦ σώματος αὐτῶν τὸ ἀληθέστατον θεωρεῖται, ἢ ὥδε ἔχει· ὅς ἂν μάλιστα ἡμῶν καὶ ἀκριβέστατα παρασκευάσῃται αὐτὸ ἕκαστον διανοηθῆναι περὶ οὗ σκοπεῖ, οὗτος ἂν ἐγγύτατα ἴοι τοῦ γινῶναι ἕκαστον;

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

Ἄρ' οὖν ἐκείνος ἂν τοῦτο ποιήσειεν καθαρώτατα ὅστις ὅτι μάλιστα αὐτῇ τῇ διανοίᾳ ἴοι ἐφ' ἕκαστον, μήτε τι ν' ὅψιν παρατιθέμενος ἐν τῷ διανοεῖσθαι μήτε τινα ἄλλην αἴσθησιν ἐφέλκων μηδεμίαν μετὰ τοῦ λογισμοῦ, ἀλλ' αὐτῇ καθ' αὐτὴν εἰλικρινεῖ τῇ διανοίᾳ χρώμενος αὐτὸ καθ' αὐτὸ εἰλικρινές ἕκαστον ἐπιχειροῖ θηρεῦεν τῶν ὄντων, ἀπαλλαγείς ὅτι μάλιστα ὀφθαλμῶν τε καὶ ὥτων καὶ ὥς ἔπος εἰπείν σύμπαντος τοῦ σώματος, ὥς ταράττοντος καὶ οὐκ ἐῶντος τὴν ψυχὴν

⁴ health

But you must first let me hear what Crito wants; he has long been wishing to say something to me.

Only this, Socrates, replied Crito: — the attendant who is to give you the poison has been telling me, and he wants me to tell you, that you are not to talk much, talking, he says, increases heat, and this is apt to interfere with the action of the poison; persons who excite themselves are sometimes obliged to take a second or even a third dose.

Then, said Socrates, let him mind his business and be prepared to give the poison twice or even thrice if necessary; that is all.

I knew quite well what you would say, replied Crito; but I was obliged to satisfy him.

Never mind him, he said.

And now, O my judges, I desire to prove to you that the real philosopher has reason to be of good cheer when he is about to die, and that after death he may hope to obtain the greatest good in the other world. And how this may be, Simmias and Cebes, I will endeavour to explain. For I deem that the true votary of philosophy is likely to be misunderstood by other men; they do not perceive that he is always pursuing death and dying; and if this be so, and he has had the desire of death all his life long, why when his time comes should he repine at that which he has been always pursuing and desiring?

Simmias said laughingly: Though not in a laughing humour, you have made me laugh, Socrates; for I cannot help thinking that the many when they hear your words will say how truly you have described philosophers, and our people at home will likewise say that the life which philosophers desire is in reality death, and that they have found them out to be deserving of the death which they desire.

And they are right, Simmias, in thinking so, with the exception of the words ‘they have found them out’; for they have not found out either what is the nature of that death which the true philosopher deserves, or how he deserves or desires death. But enough of them: — let us discuss the matter among ourselves: Do we believe that there is such a thing as death?

To be sure, replied Simmias.

Is it not the separation of soul and body? And to be dead is the completion of this; when the soul exists in herself, and is released from the body and the body is released from the soul, what is this but death?

Just so, he replied.

There is another question, which will probably throw light on our present inquiry if you and I can agree about it: — Ought the philosopher to care about the pleasures—if they are to be called pleasures—of eating and drinking?

Certainly not, answered Simmias.

And what about the pleasures of love—should he care for them?

By no means.

And will he think much of the other ways of indulging the body, for example, the acquisition of costly raiment, or sandals, or other adornments of the body? Instead of caring about them, does he not rather despise anything more than nature needs? What do you say?

I should say that the true philosopher would despise them.

Would you not say that he is entirely concerned with the soul and not with the body? He would like, as far as he can, to get away from the body and to turn to the soul.

Quite true.

In matters of this sort philosophers, above all other men, may be observed in every sort of way to dis sever the soul from the communion of the body.

Very true.

Whereas, Simmias, the rest of the world are of opinion that to him who has no sense of pleasure and no part in bodily pleasure, life is not worth having; and that he who is indifferent about them is as good as dead.

That is also true.

What again shall we say of the actual acquirement of knowledge?—is the body, if invited to share in the enquiry, a hinderer or a helper? I mean to say, have sight and hearing any truth in them? Are they not, as the poets are always telling us, inaccurate witnesses? and yet, if even they are inaccurate and indistinct, what is to be said of the other senses?—for you will allow that they are the best of them?

Certainly, he replied.

Then when does the soul attain truth?—for in attempting to consider anything in company with the body she is obviously deceived.

True.

Then must not true existence be revealed to her in thought, if at all?

Yes.

And thought is best when the mind is gathered into herself and none of these things trouble her — neither sounds nor sights nor pain nor any pleasure, — when she takes leave of the body, and has as little as possible to do with it, when she has no bodily sense or desire, but is aspiring after true being?

Certainly.

And in this the philosopher dishonours the body; his soul runs away from his body and desires to be alone and by herself?

That is true.

Well, but there is another thing, Simmias: Is there or is there not an absolute justice?

Assuredly there is.

And an absolute beauty and absolute good?

Of course.

But did you ever behold any of them with your eyes?

Certainly not.

Or did you ever reach them with any other bodily sense? — and I speak not of these alone, but of absolute greatness, and health, and strength, and of the essence or true nature of everything. Has the reality of them ever been perceived by you through the bodily organs? or rather, is not the nearest approach to the knowledge of their several natures made by him who so orders his intellectual vision as to have the most exact conception of the essence of each thing which he considers?

Certainly.

And he attains to the purest knowledge of them who goes to each with the mind alone, not introducing or intruding in the act of thought sight or any other sense together with reason, but with the very light of the mind in her own clearness searches into the very truth of each; he who has got rid, as far as he can, of eyes and ears and, so to speak, of the whole body, these being in his opinion distracting

vocabulary

ἀγανακτέω be vexed, in a ferment
 ἀθροίζω press close together; (mid)
 muster
 ἄλλοθι elsewhere, abroad
 ἀλογίη disrespect, disregard;
 unreason
 ἄλογος without speech or reckoning
 ἀναγκαίη of necessity, by force
 ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
 ἀναπίμπλημι fulfill, endure
 ~plethora
 ἀνδρεία courage
 ἀνδρεῖος of a man, manly
 ἀνθρώπινος human
 ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
 ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be
 freed, depart
 ἀποδημία foreign travel
 ἄρα interrogative pcl
 ἄράω wear something out
 ἄρτι at the same time
 ἀσχολία business, being busy
 ἄτοπος strange, unnatural,
 disgusting
 ἀτραπός ἀταρπιτοῦ (f) trail
 αὐτόσε to the very place
 ἀφροσύνη folly ~frenzy
 βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
 γέλοιος laughable; joking
 γνήσιος born legitimate ~genus
 δειλία cowardice
 δεσμέω to chain
 δεσμός bond, latch, strap; also (pl)
 headdress
 δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
 διαβάλλω throw across; slander
 ~ballistic
 διάκειμαι be in a condition
 διάνοια a thought; intelligence
 δουλεύω serve, be a slave

ἐγγίγνομαι live in ~genus
 ἐθίζω accustom
 εἶδωλον phantom, unreal image
 ~wit
 εἰκός likely
 εἴπερ if indeed
 ἐκεῖσε thither
 ἐκλύω rescue from ~loose
 ἐκπλήσσω panic, be knocked out
 ~plectrum
 ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear
 ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving
 in too easily
 ἐμπίμπλημι fill with
 ἐμποδίζω fetter, hinder
 ἐννοέω consider
 ἐπιθυμέω (ῶ) wish, covet
 ἐπιθυμία (ῶ) desire, thing desired
 ἐραστής -οῦ (m, 1) lover, fan
 ἐράω desire sexually
 ἔρω -τος (m) love, desire ~erotic
 ἔσχατος farthest, last
 ἐφάπτω fasten upon ~haptic
 ζητήσις -εως (f) search, inquiry
 ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy
 ~hedonism
 ἥκιστος least; above all
 ἥτοι truly; either, or
 θεμιτός legal, righteous
 θεραπείη -ας service, tending
 θήρα hunt ~fierce
 θόρυβος noise, clamor
 καθαίρω clean
 καθαρός clean, pure
 κάθαρσις purification
 καθοράω look down ~panorama
 καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
 καταίρω swoop; land
 καταράομαι (αἶα) curse
 κοινωνέω associate with
 κόσμιος well-behaved
 κτάομαι acquire, possess

κτῆσις -ος (f) chattels
 λύσις -ος (f) a release ~loose
 μελετάω pursue, attend to, exercise
 μετέρχομαι seek, visit
 μηδαμοῦ nowhere
 μυρίος (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad
 ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
 νόσος (f) plague, pestilence
 ~noisome
 οἰκέω inhabit ~economics
 ὀλιγωρέω consider unimportant
 ὀλίγωρος careless of, disregarding
 ὀμιλέω (ι) associate with ~homily
 ὀρθόω stand up
 οὐδαμοῦ nowhere
 οὐδέποτε never
 οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
 παιδικός childlike; a darling
 ~pediatrician
 πάλαι long ago ~paleo
 πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
 πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
 παντάπασιν altogether; yes, certainly
 πανταχῇ everywhere
 πανταχοῦ everywhere; completely
 παντοδαπής of every kind, manifold
 παντοδαπός of every kind, manifold
 πάντως by all means
 παρέρχομαι pass, escape
 πότε when?
 προθυμέομαι (ῥ) be eager
 προσήκω belong to, it seems
 προσπίπτω attack; befall; kow-tow
 προστάσσω post at, attach to, command

πτοέω scare
 σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark
 ~semaphore
 σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptical
 σκοπᾶω watch, observe
 σκοπέω behold, consider
 στάσις -εως (f) placing; faction
 συναγείρω gather together ~agora
 σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion
 συνίημι send together; hear, notice, understand ~jet
 σχολή rest, leisure
 σωφροσύνη discretion, moderation
 ταράσσω mess things up ~trachea
 ταραχή upsetness, confusion
 τεκμήριον sign; proof
 τελευτάω bring about, finish
 ~apostle
 τοιόσδε such
 τροφή food, upkeep ~atrophy
 ὑπερφυής overgrown; gigantic
 ὑπομένω stay behind, await
 ~remain
 φιλομαθής knowledge-loving
 φιλοσοφέω philosophize, study
 φιλόσοφος wisdom-loving
 φλυαρία nonsense
 φοβερός frightful, afraid
 φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)
 ~physics
 χωρίζω divide; distinguish, pull down
 χωρίς separately; except, other than
 ~heir

κτῆσασθαι ἀλήθειάν τε καὶ φρόνησιν ὅταν κοινωνῇ; ἄρ' οὐχ οὗτός ἐστιν, ὦ Συμμία, εἴπερ τις καὶ ἄλλος ὁ τευξόμενος τοῦ ὄντος;

Ὑπερφυῶς, ἔφη ὁ Συμμίας, ὡς ἀληθῆ λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Οὐκοῦν ἀνάγκη, ἔφη, ἐκ πάντων τούτων παρίστασθαι δόξαν τοιάνδε τινὰ τοῖς γνησίως¹ φιλοσόφοις, ὥστε καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους τοιαῦτα ἅττα λέγειν, ὅτι κινδυνεύει τοι ὥσπερ ἀτραπός² τις ἐκφέρειν ἡμᾶς μετὰ τοῦ λόγου ἐν τῇ σκέψει, ὅτι, ἕως ἂν τὸ σῶμα ἔχωμεν καὶ συμπεφυρμένη ἢ ἡμῶν ἢ ψυχῇ μετὰ τοιούτου κακοῦ, οὐ μὴ ποτε κτησώμεθα ἱκανῶς οὐ ἐπιθυμοῦμεν· φαμέν δὲ τοῦτο εἶναι τὸ ἀληθές. μυρίας μὲν γὰρ ἡμῖν ἀσχολίας παρέχει τὸ σῶμα διὰ τὴν ἀναγκαίαν τροφήν· ἔτι δέ, ἂν τινες νόσοι προσπέσωσιν, ἐμποδίζουσιν ἡμῶν τὴν τοῦ ὄντος θήραν. ἐρώτων δὲ καὶ ἐπιθυμιῶν καὶ φόβων καὶ εἰδώλων παντοδαπῶν καὶ φλυαρίας³ ἐμπύμπλησιν ἡμᾶς πολλῆς, ὥστε τὸ λεγόμενον ὡς ἀληθῶς τῷ ὄντι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ οὐδὲ φρονῆσαι ἡμῖν ἐγγίγνεται οὐδέποτε οὐδέν. καὶ γὰρ πολέμους καὶ στάσεις καὶ μάχας οὐδὲν ἄλλο παρέχει ἢ τὸ σῶμα καὶ αἱ τούτου ἐπιθυμίαι. διὰ γὰρ τὴν τῶν χρημάτων κτήσιν πάντες οἱ πόλεμοι γίνονται, τὰ δὲ χρήματα ἀναγκαζόμεθα κτᾶσθαι διὰ τὸ σῶμα, δουλεύοντες τῇ τούτου θεραπείᾳ· καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἀσχολίαν ἄγομεν φιλοσοφίας πέρι διὰ πάντα ταῦτα. τὸ δ' ἔσχατον πάντων ὅτι, ἐάν τις ἡμῖν καὶ σχολὴ γένηται ἀπ' αὐτοῦ καὶ τραπώμεθα πρὸς τὸ σκοπεῖν τι, ἐν ταῖς ζητήσεσιν⁴ αὐτὸ πανταχοῦ παραπίπτει θόρυβον παρέχει καὶ ταραχὴν καὶ ἐκπλήττει, ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ καθορᾶν τὰληθές. ἀλλὰ τῷ ὄντι ἡμῖν δέδεται ὅτι, εἰ μέλλομέν ποτε καθαρῶς τι εἶσεσθαι, ἀπαλλακτέον αὐτοῦ καὶ αὐτῇ τῇ ψυχῇ θεατέον αὐτὰ τὰ πράγματα· καὶ τότε, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἡμῖν ἔσται οὐ ἐπιθυμοῦμέν τε καὶ φαμεν ἐρασταὶ εἶναι, φρονήσεως, ἐπειδὰν τελευτήσωμεν, ὡς ὁ λόγος σημαίνει, ζώσιν δὲ οὐ.

Εἰ γὰρ μὴ οἷόν τε μετὰ τοῦ σώματος μηδὲν καθαρῶς γινῶναι, δυοῖν θάτερον, ἢ οὐδαμοῦ ἔστιν κτῆσασθαι τὸ εἰδέναι ἢ τελευτήσασιν· τότε

¹ born legitimate ² trail ³ nonsense ⁴ search, inquiry

γὰρ αὐτὴ καθ' αὐτὴν ἡ ψυχὴ ἔσται χωρὶς τοῦ σώματος, πρότερον δ' οὐ.
καὶ ἐν ᾧ ἂν ζῶμεν, οὕτως, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἐγγυτάτῳ ἐσόμεθα τοῦ εἰδέναι,
ἐὰν ὅτι μάλιστα μὴδὲν ὁμιλῶμεν τῷ σώματι μὴδὲ κοινωνῶμεν, ὅτι
μὴ πᾶσα ἀνάγκη, μὴδὲ ἀναμιμνῶμεθα τῆς τούτου φύσεως, ἀλλὰ
καθαρεύομεν ἀπ' αὐτοῦ, ἕως ἂν ὁ θεὸς αὐτὸς ἀπολύσῃ ἡμᾶς· καὶ
οὕτω μὲν καθαροὶ ἀπαλλαττόμενοι τῆς τοῦ σώματος ἀφροσύνης,⁵ ὡς
τὸ εἰκὸς μετὰ τοιούτων τε ἐσόμεθα καὶ γνωσόμεθα δι' ἡμῶν αὐτῶν
πᾶν τὸ εἰλικρινές, τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶν ἴσως τὸ ἀληθές· μὴ καθαρῷ γὰρ
καθαροῦ ἐφάπτεσθαι μὴ οὐ θεμιτὸν ἦ. τοιαῦτα οἶμαι, ὦ Σιμμία,
ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι πρὸς ἀλλήλους λέγειν τε καὶ δοξάζειν πάντας τοὺς
ὀρθῶς φιλομαθεῖς. ἦ οὐ δοκεῖ σοι οὕτως;

Παντός γε μᾶλλον, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, εἰ ταῦτα ἀληθῆ, ὦ ἐταῖρε, πολλὴ
ἐλπίς ἀφικομένῳ οἷ ἐγὼ πορεύομαι, ἐκεῖ ἱκανῶς, εἴπερ που
ἄλλοθι, κτήσασθαι τοῦτο οὐ ἔνεκα ἢ πολλὴ πραγματεία ἡμῖν
ἐν τῷ παρελθόντι βίῳ γέγονεν, ὥστε ἦ γε ἀποδημία ἢ νῦν μοι
προστεταγμένη μετὰ ἀγαθῆς ἐλπίδος γίνεται καὶ ἄλλῳ ἀνδρὶ ὅς
ἡγεῖται οἱ παρεσκευάσθαι τὴν διάνοιαν ὥσπερ κεκαθαρμένην.

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.

Κάθαρσις δὲ εἶναι ἄρα οὐ τοῦτο συμβαίνει, ὅπερ πάλαι ἐν τῷ λόγῳ
λέγεται, τὸ χωρίζειν ὅτι μάλιστα ἀπὸ τοῦ σώματος τὴν ψυχὴν καὶ
ἐθίσαι αὐτὴν καθ' αὐτὴν πανταχόθεν ἐκ τοῦ σώματος συναγείρεσθαι
τε καὶ ἀθροίζεσθαι, καὶ οἰκεῖν κατὰ τὸ δυνατόν καὶ ἐν τῷ νῦν παρόντι
καὶ ἐν τῷ ἔπειτα μόνῃν καθ' αὐτήν, ἐκλυομένην ὥσπερ ἐκ δεσμῶν ἐκ
τοῦ σώματος;

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.

Οὐκοῦν τοῦτό γε θάνατος ὀνομάζεται, λύσις⁶ καὶ χωρισμὸς ψυχῆς
ἀπὸ σώματος;

Παντάπασι γε, ἦ δ' ὅς.

⁵ folly ⁶ a release

Λύειν δέ γε αὐτήν, ὥς φαμεν, προθυμούνται ἀεὶ μάλιστα καὶ μόνοι οἱ φιλοσοφούντες ὀρθῶς, καὶ τὸ μελέτημα αὐτὸ τοῦτό ἐστιν τῶν φιλοσόφων, λύσις καὶ χωρισμὸς ψυχῆς ἀπὸ σώματος· ἢ οὐ;

Φαίνεται.

Οὐκοῦν, ὅπερ ἐν ἀρχῇ ἔλεγον, γελοῖον ἂν εἴη ἄνδρα παρασκευάζονθ' ἑαυτὸν ἐν τῷ βίῳ ὅτι ἐγγυτάτῳ ὄντα τοῦ τεθνάναι οὕτω ζῆν, κἄπειθ' ἦκοντος αὐτῷ τούτου ἀγανακτεῖν;

Γελοῖον· πῶς δ' οὐ;

Τῷ ὄντι ἄρα, ἔφη, ὦ Συμμία, οἱ ὀρθῶς φιλοσοφούντες ἀποθνήσκουν μελετῶσι, καὶ τὸ τεθνάναι ἥκιστα αὐτοῖς ἀνθρώπων φοβερόν. ἐκ τῶνδε δὲ σκόπει.

Εἰ γὰρ διαβέβληνται μὲν πανταχῇ⁷ τῷ σώματι, αὐτὴν δὲ καθ' αὐτήν ἐπιθυμοῦσι τὴν ψυχὴν ἔχειν, τούτου δὲ γιγνομένου εἰ φοβοῖντο καὶ ἀγανακτοῖεν, οὐ πολλὴ ἂν ἀλογία⁸ εἴη, εἰ μὴ ἄσμενοι ἐκέισε ἴοιεν, οἱ ἀφικομένοις ἐλπίς ἐστίν οὐ διὰ βίου ἥρων τυχεῖν— ἥρων δὲ φρονήσεως— ὧς τε διεβέβληντο, τούτου ἀπηλλάχθαι συνόντος αὐτοῖς; ἢ ἀνθρωπίνων μὲν παιδικῶν καὶ γυναικῶν καὶ ὑέων ἀποθανόντων πολλοὶ δὴ ἐκόντες ἠθέλησαν εἰς Ἄιδου μετελθεῖν, ὑπὸ ταύτης ἀγόμενοι τῆς ἐλπίδος, τῆς τοῦ ὄψεσθαι τε ἐκεῖ ὧν ἐπεθύμουν καὶ συνέσεσθαι· φρονήσεως δὲ ἄρα τις τῷ ὄντι ἐρών, καὶ λαβὼν σφόδρα τὴν αὐτὴν ταύτην ἐλπίδα, μηδαμοῦ⁹ ἄλλοθι ἐντεύξεσθαι αὐτῇ ἀξίως λόγου ἢ ἐν Ἄιδου, ἀγανακτήσει τε ἀποθνήσκων καὶ οὐχ ἄσμενος εἶσιν αὐτόσε;¹⁰ οἶεσθαι γε χρή, ἐὰν τῷ ὄντι γε ἦ, ὦ ἐταῖρε, φιλόσοφος· σφόδρα γὰρ αὐτῷ ταῦτα δόξει, μηδαμοῦ ἄλλοθι καθαρώς ἐντεύξεσθαι φρονήσει ἀλλ' ἢ ἐκεῖ. εἰ δὲ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει, ὅπερ ἄρτι ἔλεγον, οὐ πολλὴ ἂν ἀλογία εἴη εἰ φοβοῖτο τὸν θάνατον ὁ τοιοῦτος;

Πολλὴ μέντοι νῆ Δία, ἦ δ' ὅς.

Οὐκοῦν ἰκανόν σοι τεκμήριον, ἔφη, τοῦτο ἀνδρός, ὃν ἂν ἴδης

⁷ everywhere ⁸ disrespect, disregard; unreason ⁹ nowhere ¹⁰ to the very place

ἀγανακτοῦντα μέλλοντα ἀποθανεῖσθαι, ὅτι οὐκ ἄρ' ἦν φιλόσοφος ἀλλά τις φιλοσώματος; ὁ αὐτὸς δέ που οὗτος τυγχάνει ὦν καὶ φιλοχρήματος καὶ φιλότιμος, ἦτοι τὰ ἕτερα τούτων ἢ ἀμφοτέρω.

Πάνυ, ἔφη, ἔχει οὕτως ὡς λέγεις.

Ἄρ' οὖν, ἔφη, ὦ Συμμία, οὐ καὶ ἡ ὀνομαζομένη ἀνδρεία τοῖς οὕτω διακειμένοις μάλιστα προσήκει;

Πάντως δήπου, ἔφη.

Οὐκοῦν καὶ ἡ σωφροσύνη, ἦν καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ ὀνομάζουσι σωφροσύνην, τὸ περὶ τὰς ἐπιθυμίας μὴ ἐπτοῇσθαι¹¹ ἀλλ' ὀλιγώρως¹² ἔχειν καὶ κοσμίως,¹³ ἄρ' οὐ τούτοις μόνοις προσήκει, τοῖς μάλιστα τοῦ σώματος ὀλιγωροῦσιν¹⁴ τε καὶ ἐν φιλοσοφίᾳ ζῶσιν;

Ἀνάγκη, ἔφη.

Εἰ γὰρ ἐθέλεις, ἡ δ' ὅς, ἐννοῇσαι τήν γε τῶν ἄλλων ἀνδρείαν τε καὶ σωφροσύνην, δόξει σοι εἶναι ἄτοπος.

Πῶς δή, ὦ Σώκρατες;

Οἶσθα, ἡ δ' ὅς, ὅτι τὸν θάνατον ἡγοῦνται πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι τῶν μεγάλων κακῶν;

Καὶ μάλ', ἔφη.

Οὐκοῦν φόβῳ μειζόνων κακῶν ὑπομένουσιν αὐτῶν οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι¹⁵ τὸν θάνατον, ὅταν ὑπομένωσιν;

Ἔστι ταῦτα.

Τῷ δεδιέναι ἄρα καὶ δέει ἀνδρεῖοί εἶσι πάντες πλὴν οἱ φιλόσοφοι· καίτοι ἄλογόν γε δέει τινὰ καὶ δειλίᾳ ἀνδρεῖον εἶναι.

Πάνυ

μὲν

οὖν.

¹¹ scare ¹² careless of, disregarding ¹³ well-behaved ¹⁴ consider unimportant ¹⁵ of a man, manly

elements which when they infect the soul hinder her from acquiring truth and knowledge—who, if not he, is likely to attain the knowledge of true being?

What you say has a wonderful truth in it, Socrates, replied Simmias.

And when real philosophers consider all these things, will they not be led to make a reflection which they will express in words something like the following? 'Have we not found,' they will say, 'a path of thought which seems to bring us and our argument to the conclusion, that while we are in the body, and while the soul is infected with the evils of the body, our desire will not be satisfied? and our desire is of the truth. For the body is a source of endless trouble to us by reason of the mere requirement of food; and is liable also to diseases which overtake and impede us in the search after true being: it fills us full of loves, and lusts, and fears, and fancies of all kinds, and endless foolery, and in fact, as men say, takes away from us the power of thinking at all. Whence come wars, and fightings, and factions? whence but from the body and the lusts of the body? wars are occasioned by the love of money, and money has to be acquired for the sake and in the service of the body; and by reason of all these impediments we have no time to give to philosophy; and, last and worst of all, even if we are at leisure and betake ourselves to some speculation, the body is always breaking in upon us, causing turmoil and confusion in our enquiries, and so amazing us that we are prevented from seeing the truth. It has been proved to us by experience that if we would have pure knowledge of anything we must be quit of the body—the soul in herself must behold things in themselves: and then we shall attain the wisdom which we desire, and of which we say that we are lovers, not while we live, but after death; for if while in company with the body, the soul cannot have pure knowledge, one of two things follows—either knowledge is not to be attained at all, or, if at all, after death. For then, and not till then, the soul will be parted from the body and exist in herself alone. In this present life, I reckon that we make the nearest approach to knowledge when we have the least possible intercourse or communion with the body, and are not surfeited with the bodily nature, but keep ourselves pure until the hour when God himself is pleased to release us. And thus having got rid of the foolishness of the body we shall be pure and hold converse with the pure, and know of ourselves the clear light everywhere, which is no other than the light of truth.' For the impure are not permitted to approach the pure. These are the sort of words, Simmias, which the true lovers of knowledge cannot help saying to one another, and thinking. You would agree; would you not?

Undoubtedly, Socrates.

But, O my friend, if this is true, there is great reason to hope that, going

whither I go, when I have come to the end of my journey, I shall attain that which has been the pursuit of my life. And therefore I go on my way rejoicing, and not I only, but every other man who believes that his mind has been made ready and that he is in a manner purified.

Certainly, replied Simmias.

And what is purification but the separation of the soul from the body, as I was saying before; the habit of the soul gathering and collecting herself into herself from all sides out of the body; the dwelling in her own place alone, as in another life, so also in this, as far as she can;—the release of the soul from the chains of the body?

Very true, he said.

And this separation and release of the soul from the body is termed death?

To be sure, he said.

And the true philosophers, and they only, are ever seeking to release the soul. Is not the separation and release of the soul from the body their especial study?

That is true.

And, as I was saying at first, there would be a ridiculous contradiction in men studying to live as nearly as they can in a state of death, and yet repining when it comes upon them.

Clearly.

And the true philosophers, Simmias, are always occupied in the practice of dying, wherefore also to them least of all men is death terrible. Look at the matter thus:—if they have been in every way the enemies of the body, and are wanting to be alone with the soul, when this desire of theirs is granted, how inconsistent would they be if they trembled and repined, instead of rejoicing at their departure to that place where, when they arrive, they hope to gain that which in life they desired—and this was wisdom—and at the same time to be rid of the company of their enemy. Many a man has been willing to go to the world below animated by the hope of seeing there an earthly love, or wife, or son, and conversing with them. And will he who is a true lover of wisdom, and is strongly persuaded in like manner that only in the world below he can worthily enjoy her, still repine at death? Will he not depart with joy? Surely he will, O my friend, if he be a true philosopher. For he will have a firm conviction that there and there only, he can find wisdom in

her purity. And if this be true, he would be very absurd, as I was saying, if he were afraid of death.

He would, indeed, replied Simmias.

And when you see a man who is repining at the approach of death, is not his reluctance a sufficient proof that he is not a lover of wisdom, but a lover of the body, and probably at the same time a lover of either money or power, or both?

Quite so, he replied.

And is not courage, Simmias, a quality which is specially characteristic of the philosopher?

Certainly.

There is temperance again, which even by the vulgar is supposed to consist in the control and regulation of the passions, and in the sense of superiority to them — is not temperance a virtue belonging to those only who despise the body, and who pass their lives in philosophy?

Most assuredly.

For the courage and temperance of other men, if you will consider them, are really a contradiction.

How so?

Well, he said, you are aware that death is regarded by men in general as a great evil.

Very true, he said.

And do not courageous men face death because they are afraid of yet greater evils?

That is quite true.

Then all but the philosophers are courageous only from fear, and because they are afraid; and yet that a man should be courageous from fear, and because he is a coward, is surely a strange thing.

vocabulary

ἀγανακτέω be vexed, in a ferment
 ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad
 ἀδολεσχέω (ᾱ) prattle
 ἀδύνατος unable; impossible
 αἰνίσσομαι hint, speak in riddles
 αἰσχρός shameful
 ἀκολασία debauchery
 ἀλλάσσω trade, transform
 ἄλλοθεν from elsewhere ~alien
 ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός,
 noble
 ἀμύητος uninitiated
 ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
 ἀνδρεία courage
 ἀνδρεῖος of a man, manly
 ἀνύω accomplish, pass over,
 complete
 ἀπαλλαγή relief, escape
 ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
 ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be
 freed, depart
 ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be
 at some distance
 ἀπιστία disbelief, distrust
 ἀπογίγνομαι be taken away
 ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse
 ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail
 ἀπολογέομαι defend one's conduct
 ἀπολογία verbal defense
 ἄρα interrogative pcl
 ἀρετή goodness, excellence
 ἀσθενής weak
 ἀτέλεστος not accomplished,
 fruitless ~apostle
 αὐξάνω strengthen
 αὐξησις -τος (f) growth
 βίος life ~biology
 βιώω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
 βόρβορος mud, filth
 βραδύς slow, dull, late ~Sp.~gordo

γένεσις -εως (f) source, origin
 ~genus
 γοῦν at least then
 δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
 δεῦρο here, come here!
 διακρίνω (ιι) separate, sort ~critic
 διαμυθολογέω (υ) communicate
 διαπέταμαι fly across, through
 ~petal
 διασχεδάννυμι (υ) scatter, disperse
 διασκοπέω consider from all angles
 διέρχομαι pierce, traverse
 δικαιοσύνη justice
 δικαστής -ου (m, 1) judge, juror
 εἰκός likely
 εἴπερ if indeed
 εἴτε if, whenever; either/or
 ἐκάτερος each of two
 ἐκβαίνω come forth, disembark
 ~basis
 ἐκεῖσε thither
 ἐλαχύς small; comp.: less ~light
 ἐνθάδε here, hither
 ἐνθένδε hence
 ἐνιαχοῦ in some places
 εἰκοτώς like; fairly
 ἐπειδάν when, after
 ἐπιθυμέω (υ) wish, covet
 εὐήθης good-hearted; simple
 ζῶον being, animal; picture
 ἡδονή pleasure
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
 θερμαίνω heat ~thermos
 ἰσχυρός (υ) strong, forceful, violent
 καθαίρω clean
 καθαριμός cleansing, purification
 κάθαρσις purification
 καθεύδω lie down
 καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
 καπνός smoke
 καταλλάσσω exchange; make up
 with

κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf)
 there is a danger that
κόσμιος well-behaved
λύπη distress
μακάριος blessed
μεταξύ between
μυρίος (ὁ) 10,000 ~myriad
ναί yea
νόμισμα -τος (n, 3) institution;
 current coin
οἰκέω inhabit ~economics
οἷκησις -εως (f) habitation
οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just
 ~orthogonal
ὀρθώω stand up
οὐδαμόθεν from no place
οὐδαμοῦ nowhere
οὐκουν certainly not
οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience,
 passion, condition
πάλαι long ago ~paleo
παλαιός old ~paleo
πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
πανταχοῦ everywhere; completely
παραμυθία (ὁ) encouragement,
 consolation
παῦρος few ~paucity
πη somewhere, somehow
πιθανός persuasive
πιπράσκω export, sell as a slave
 ~porno
προσγίγνομαι become ally to

προσήκω belong to, it beseems
σαφής clear, understandable
σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptical
σκοπάω watch, observe
σκοπέω behold, consider
στερέω steal, take
συγκρίνω (ι) combine; decree
συναθροίζω assemble, gather
σωφρονίζω calm, chasten
σωφροσύνη discretion, moderation
σώφρων sensible, prudent ~frenzy
τεκμήριον sign; proof
τελετή rite, festival
τελευτάω bring about, finish
 ~apostle
τοίνυν well, then
τοιόσδε such
ὕγιής sound, profitable ~hygiene
ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's
 support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy
φανερός visible, conspicuous
 ~photon
φαῦλος trifling
φθίω cause to perish, wane; (of
 time) pass
φιλοσοφέω philosophize, study
φυτός natural
χείρων worse, more base, inferior,
 weaker
χωρίζω divide; distinguish, pull
 down
ψύχω (ὁ) breathe, blow ~psychology
ὠνέομαι buy

Τί δὲ οἱ κόσμοι αὐτῶν; οὐ ταῦτὸν τοῦτο πεπόνθασιν· ἀκολασία¹ τιὺ σώφρονές εἰσιν; καίτοι φαμέν γε ἀδύνατον εἶναι, ἀλλ' ὅμως αὐτοῖς συμβαίνει τούτῳ ὅμοιον τὸ πάθος τὸ περὶ ταύτην τὴν εὐήθη² σωφροσύνην· φοβούμενοι γὰρ ἐτέρων ἡδονῶν στερηθῆναι³ καὶ ἐπιθυμοῦντες ἐκείνων, ἄλλων ἀπέχονται ὑπ' ἄλλων κρατούμενοι.

Καίτοι καλοῦσί γε ἀκολασίαν τὸ ὑπὸ τῶν ἡδονῶν ἄρχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὅμως συμβαίνει αὐτοῖς κρατούμένοις ὑφ' ἡδονῶν κρατεῖν ἄλλων ἡδονῶν. τοῦτο δ' ὅμοιόν ἐστιν ᾧ νυνδὴ ἐλέγετο, τῷ τρόπον τινὰ δι' ἀκολασίαν αὐτοὺς σεσωφρονίσθαι.⁴

Ἔουκε γάρ.

Ὡ μακάριε Σιμμία, μὴ γὰρ οὐχ αὕτη ἡ ὀρθὴ πρὸς ἀρετὴν ἀλλαγὴ, ἡδονὰς πρὸς ἡδονὰς καὶ λύπας πρὸς λύπας καὶ φόβον πρὸς φόβον καταλλάττεσθαι, καὶ μείζω πρὸς ἐλάττω ὥσπερ νομίσματα, ἀλλ' ἡ ἐκεῖνο μόνον τὸ νόμισμα ὀρθόν, ἀντὶ οὗ δεῖ πάντα ταῦτα καταλλάττεσθαι, φρόνησις, καὶ τούτου μὲν πάντα καὶ μετὰ τούτου ὠνούμενά⁵ τε καὶ πιπρασκόμενα⁶ τῷ ὄντι ἡ καὶ ἀνδρεία καὶ σωφροσύνη καὶ δικαιοσύνη καὶ συλλήβδην ἀληθὴς ἀρετὴ, μετὰ φρονήσεως, καὶ προσγιγνομένων καὶ ἀπογιγνομένων καὶ ἡδονῶν καὶ φόβων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων πάντων τῶν τοιούτων· χωριζόμενα δὲ φρονήσεως καὶ ἀλλαττόμενα ἀντὶ ἀλλήλων μὴ σκιαγραφία τις ἡ ἢ τοιαύτη ἀρετὴ καὶ τῷ ὄντι ἀνδραποδώδης τε καὶ οὐδὲν ὑγιὲς⁷ οὐδ' ἀληθὲς ἔχῃ, τὸ δ' ἀληθὲς τῷ ὄντι ἡ κάθαρσις τις τῶν τοιούτων πάντων καὶ ἡ σωφροσύνη καὶ ἡ δικαιοσύνη καὶ ἀνδρεία, καὶ αὕτη ἡ φρόνησις μὴ καθαρμός τις ἡ. καὶ κινδυνεύουσι καὶ οἱ τὰς τελετὰς ἡμῶν οὗτοι καταστήσαντες οὐ φαῦλοί τινες εἶναι, ἀλλὰ τῷ ὄντι πάλαι αἰνίττεσθαι⁸ ὅτι ὅς ἂν ἀμύητος⁹ καὶ ἀτέλεστος¹⁰ εἰς Ἄιδου ἀφίκηται ἐν βορβόρῳ¹¹ κείσεται, ὁ δὲ κεκαθαρμένος τε καὶ τετελεσμένος ἐκείσε ἀφικόμενος μετὰ θεῶν οἰκήσει. εἰσὶν γὰρ δὴ, ὥς φασιν οἱ περὶ τὰς

¹ debauchery ² good-hearted; simple ³ steal, take ⁴ calm, chasten
⁵ buy ⁶ export, sell as a slave ⁷ sound, profitable ⁸ hint, speak
in riddles ⁹ uninitiated ¹⁰ not accomplished, fruitless ¹¹ mud, filth

τελετάς, ναρθηκοφόροι μὲν πολλοί, βάκχοι δέ τε παῦροι· οὗτοι δ' εἰσὶν κατὰ τὴν ἐμὴν δόξαν οὐκ ἄλλοι ἢ οἱ πεφιλοσοφηκότες ὀρθῶς. ὦν δὴ καὶ ἐγὼ κατὰ γε τὸ δυνατὸν οὐδὲν ἀπέλιπον ἐν τῷ βίῳ ἀλλὰ παντὶ τρόπῳ προθυμήθην γενέσθαι· εἰ δ' ὀρθῶς προθυμήθην καὶ τι ἡνύσαμεν, ἐκεῖσε ἐλθόντες τὸ σαφὲς εἰσόμεθα, ἂν θεὸς ἐθέλῃ, ὀλίγον ὕστερον, ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ. ταῦτ' οὖν ἐγώ, ἔφη, ὦ Συμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ἀπολογοῦμαι, ὡς εἰκότως ὑμᾶς τε ἀπολείπων καὶ τοὺς ἐνθάδε δεσπότης οὐ χαλεπῶς φέρω οὐδ' ἀγανακτῶ, ἡγούμενος κακεῖ οὐδὲν ἥττον ἢ ἐνθάδε δεσπότης τε ἀγαθοῖς ἐντεύξεσθαι καὶ ἐταίροις· τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς ἀπιστίαν παρέχει· εἴ τι οὖν ὑμῖν πιθανώτερός εἰμι ἐν τῇ ἀπολογίᾳ ἢ τοῖς Ἀθηναίων δικασταῖς, εὖ ἂν ἔχοι.

Εἰπόντος δὴ τοῦ Σωκράτους ταῦτα, ὑπολαβὼν ὁ Κέβης ἔφη· ὦ Σώκρατες, τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ καλῶς λέγεσθαι, τὰ δὲ περὶ τῆς ψυχῆς πολλὴν ἀπιστίαν παρέχει τοῖς ἀνθρώποις μή, ἐπειδὴν ἀπαλλαγῇ τοῦ σώματος, οὐδαμοῦ ἔτι ἦ, ἀλλ' ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ διαφθείρηται τε καὶ ἀπολλύηται ἢ ἂν ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀποθνήσκῃ, εὐθὺς ἀπαλλαττομένη τοῦ σώματος, καὶ ἐκβαίνουσα ὥσπερ πνεῦμα ἢ καπνὸς διασκεδασθεῖσα οἴχηται διαπτομένη καὶ οὐδὲν ἔτι οὐδαμοῦ ἦ. ἐπεὶ, εἴπερ εἴη που αὕτη καθ' αὐτὴν συνηθροισμένη καὶ ἀπηλλαγμένη τούτων τῶν κακῶν ὧν σὺ νυνδὴ διῆλθες, πολλὴ ἂν εἴη ἐλπίς καὶ καλή, ὦ Σώκρατες, ὡς ἀληθὴ ἔστιν ἃ σὺ λέγεις· ἀλλὰ τοῦτο δὴ ἴσως οὐκ ὀλίγης παραμυθίας δέεται καὶ πίστεως, ὡς ἔστι τε ψυχὴ ἀποθανόντος τοῦ ἀνθρώπου καὶ τινα δύναμιν ἔχει καὶ φρόνησιν.

Ἀληθῇ, ἔφη, λέγεις, ὁ Σωκράτης, ὦ Κέβης· ἀλλὰ τί δὴ ποιῶμεν; ἢ περὶ αὐτῶν τούτων βούλει διαμυθολογῶμεν, εἴτε εἰκὸς οὕτως ἔχειν εἴτε μή;

Ἐγὼ γοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, ἡδέως ἂν ἀκούσαιμι ἥντινα δόξαν ἔχεις περὶ αὐτῶν.

Οὐκουν¹² γ' ἂν οἶμαι, ἢ δ' ὅς ὁ Σωκράτης, εἰπεῖν τινα νῦν ἀκούσαντα, οὐδ' εἰ κωμωδοποιὸς εἴη, ὡς ἀδολεσχῶ¹³ καὶ οὐ περὶ προσηκόντων

¹² certainly not ¹³ prattle

τοὺς λόγους ποιοῦμαι. εἰ οὖν δοκεῖ, χρηὴ διασκοπεῖσθαι.

Σκεψώμεθα δὲ αὐτὸ τῇδὲ πη, εἴτ' ἄρα ἐν Ἄιδου εἰσὶν αἱ ψυχαὶ τελευτησάντων τῶν ἀνθρώπων εἴτε καὶ οὐ. παλαιὸς μὲν οὖν ἔστι τις λόγος οὗ μεμνήμεθα, ὥς εἰσὶν ἐνθένδε ἀφικόμεναι ἐκεῖ, καὶ πάλιν γε δεῦρο ἀφικνουῦνται καὶ γίνονται ἐκ τῶν τεθνεώτων· καὶ εἰ τοῦθ' οὕτως ἔχει, πάλιν γίνεσθαι ἐκ τῶν ἀποθανόντων τοὺς ζῶντας, ἄλλο τι ἢ εἶναι ἂν αἱ ψυχαὶ ἡμῶν ἐκεῖ; οὐ γὰρ ἂν πού πάλιν ἐγίγνοντο μὴ οὔσαι, καὶ τοῦτο ἱκανὸν τεκμήριον τοῦ ταῦτ' εἶναι, εἰ τῷ ὄντι φανερόν γίγνοιτο ὅτι σὺδαμόθεν¹⁴ ἄλλοθεν γίνονται οἱ ζῶντες ἢ ἐκ τῶν τεθνεώτων· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἔστι τοῦτο, ἄλλου ἂν του δέοι λόγου.

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

Μὴ τοῖνυν κατ' ἀνθρώπων, ἡ δ' ὅς, σκόπει μόνον τοῦτο, εἰ βούλει ῥᾶον μαθεῖν, ἀλλὰ καὶ κατὰ ζώων πάντων καὶ φυτῶν, καὶ συλλήβδην ὅσα περ ἔχει γένεσιν περὶ πάντων ἴδωμεν ἅρ' οὕτως γίγνεται πάντα, οὐκ ἄλλοθεν ἢ ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων τὰ ἐναντία, ὅσοις τυγχάνει ὃν τοιοῦτόν τι, οἷον τὸ καλὸν τῷ αἰσχυρῷ ἐναντίον που καὶ δίκαιον ἀδίκῳ, καὶ ἄλλα δὴ μυρία οὕτως ἔχει. τοῦτο οὖν σκεψώμεθα, ἅρα ἀναγκαῖον ὅσοις ἔστι τι ἐναντίον, μηδαμόθεν ἄλλοθεν αὐτὸ γίνεσθαι ἢ ἐκ τοῦ αὐτῷ ἐναντίου. οἷον ὅταν μείζον τι γίγνηται, ἀνάγκη που ἐξ ἐλάττονος ὄντος πρότερον ἔπειτα μείζον γίνεσθαι;

Ναί.

Οὐκοῦν καὶ ἐλάττον γίγνηται, ἐκ μείζονος ὄντος πρότερον ὕστερον ἔλάττον γενήσεται;

Ἦστιν οὕτω, ἔφη.

Καὶ μὴν ἐξ ἰσχυροτέρου γε τὸ ἀσθενέστερον καὶ ἐκ βραδυτέρου¹⁵ τὸ θάπτον;

Πάνυ γε.

¹⁴ from no place ¹⁵ slow, dull, late

Τί δέ; ἂν τι χεῖρον γίγνηται, οὐκ ἐξ ἀμείνωνος, καὶ ἂν δικαιότερον, ἐξ ἀδικωτέρου;

Πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

Ἰκανῶς οὖν, ἔφη, ἔχομεν τοῦτο, ὅτι πάντα οὕτω γίγνεται, ἐξ ἐναντίων τὰ ἐναντία πράγματα;

Πάνυ γε.

Τί δ' αὖ; ἔστι τι καὶ τοιόνδε ἐν αὐτοῖς, οἷον μεταξὺ ἀμφοτέρων πάντων τῶν ἐναντίων δυοῖν ὄντων δύο γενέσεις, ἀπὸ μὲν τοῦ ἐτέρου ἐπὶ τὸ ἕτερον, ἀπὸ δ' αὖ τοῦ ἐτέρου πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ ἕτερον· μείζονος μὲν πράγματος καὶ ἐλάττονος μεταξὺ αὗξησις¹⁶ καὶ φθίσις, καὶ καλοῦμεν οὕτω τὸ μὲν αὐξάνεσθαι, τὸ δὲ φθίνειν;

Ναί, ἔφη.

Οὐκοῦν καὶ διακρίνεσθαι καὶ συγκρίνεσθαι, καὶ ψύχεσθαι¹⁷ καὶ θερμαίνεσθαι, καὶ πάντα οὕτω, κἂν εἰ μὴ χρώμεθα τοῖς ὀνόμασιν ἐνιαχοῦ, ἀλλ' ἔργῳ γοῦν πανταχοῦ οὕτως ἔχει ἀναγκαῖον, γίγνεσθαι τε αὐτὰ ἐξ ἀλλήλων γένεσίν τε εἶναι ἐκατέρου εἰς ἄλληλα;

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἦ δ' ὅς.

Τί οὖν; ἔφη, τῷ ζῆν ἐστὶ τι ἐναντίον, ὥσπερ τῷ ἐγρηγορέναι τὸ καθεύδειν;

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.

Τί;

Τὸ τεθνάναι, ἔφη.

Οὐκοῦν ἐξ ἀλλήλων τε γίγνεται ταῦτα, εἴπερ ἐναντία ἐστίν, καὶ αἱ γενέσεις εἰσὶν αὐτοῖν μεταξὺ δύο δυοῖν ὄντων;

Πῶς

γὰρ

οὐ;

¹⁶ growth ¹⁷ breathe, blow

Very true.

And are not the temperate exactly in the same case? They are temperate because they are intemperate—which might seem to be a contradiction, but is nevertheless the sort of thing which happens with this foolish temperance. For there are pleasures which they are afraid of losing; and in their desire to keep them, they abstain from some pleasures, because they are overcome by others; and although to be conquered by pleasure is called by men intemperance, to them the conquest of pleasure consists in being conquered by pleasure. And that is what I mean by saying that, in a sense, they are made temperate through intemperance.

Such appears to be the case.

Yet the exchange of one fear or pleasure or pain for another fear or pleasure or pain, and of the greater for the less, as if they were coins, is not the exchange of virtue. O my blessed Simmias, is there not one true coin for which all things ought to be exchanged?—and that is wisdom; and only in exchange for this, and in company with this, is anything truly bought or sold, whether courage or temperance or justice. And is not all true virtue the companion of wisdom, no matter what fears or pleasures or other similar goods or evils may or may not attend her? But the virtue which is made up of these goods, when they are severed from wisdom and exchanged with one another, is a shadow of virtue only, nor is there any freedom or health or truth in her; but in the true exchange there is a purging away of all these things, and temperance, and justice, and courage, and wisdom herself are the purgation of them. The founders of the mysteries would appear to have had a real meaning, and were not talking nonsense when they intimated in a figure long ago that he who passes unsanctified and uninitiated into the world below will lie in a slough, but that he who arrives there after initiation and purification will dwell with the gods. For ‘many,’ as they say in the mysteries, ‘are the thyrsus-bearers, but few are the mystics,’—meaning, as I interpret the words, ‘the true philosophers.’ In the number of whom, during my whole life, I have been seeking, according to my ability, to find a place;—whether I have sought in a right way or not, and whether I have succeeded or not, I shall truly know in a little while, if God will, when I myself arrive in the other world—such is my belief. And therefore I maintain that I am right, Simmias and Cebes, in not grieving or repining at parting from you and my masters in this world, for I believe that I shall equally find good masters and friends in another world. But most men do not believe this saying; if then I succeed in convincing you by my defence better than I did the Athenian judges, it will be well.

Cebes answered: I agree, Socrates, in the greater part of what you say. But in what concerns the soul, men are apt to be incredulous; they fear that when

she has left the body her place may be nowhere, and that on the very day of death she may perish and come to an end—immediately on her release from the body, issuing forth dispersed like smoke or air and in her flight vanishing away into nothingness. If she could only be collected into herself after she has obtained release from the evils of which you are speaking, there would be good reason to hope, Socrates, that what you say is true. But surely it requires a great deal of argument and many proofs to show that when the man is dead his soul yet exists, and has any force or intelligence.

True, Cebes, said Socrates; and shall I suggest that we converse a little of the probabilities of these things?

I am sure, said Cebes, that I should greatly like to know your opinion about them.

I reckon, said Socrates, that no one who heard me now, not even if he were one of my old enemies, the Comic poets, could accuse me of idle talking about matters in which I have no concern:—If you please, then, we will proceed with the inquiry.

Suppose we consider the question whether the souls of men after death are or are not in the world below. There comes into my mind an ancient doctrine which affirms that they go from hence into the other world, and returning hither, are born again from the dead. Now if it be true that the living come from the dead, then our souls must exist in the other world, for if not, how could they have been born again? And this would be conclusive, if there were any real evidence that the living are only born from the dead; but if this is not so, then other arguments will have to be adduced.

Very true, replied Cebes.

Then let us consider the whole question, not in relation to man only, but in relation to animals generally, and to plants, and to everything of which there is generation, and the proof will be easier. Are not all things which have opposites generated out of their opposites? I mean such things as good and evil, just and unjust—and there are innumerable other opposites which are generated out of opposites. And I want to show that in all opposites there is of necessity a similar alternation; I mean to say, for example, that anything which becomes greater must become greater after being less.

True.

And that which becomes less must have been once greater and then have become less.

Yes.

And the weaker is generated from the stronger, and the swifter from the slower.

Very true.

And the worse is from the better, and the more just is from the more unjust.

Of course.

And is this true of all opposites? and are we convinced that all of them are generated out of opposites?

Yes.

And in this universal opposition of all things, are there not also two intermediate processes which are ever going on, from one to the other opposite, and back again; where there is a greater and a less there is also an intermediate process of increase and diminution, and that which grows is said to wax, and that which decays to wane?

Yes, he said.

And there are many other processes, such as division and composition, cooling and heating, which equally involve a passage into and out of one another. And this necessarily holds of all opposites, even though not always expressed in words—they are really generated out of one another, and there is a passing or process from one to the other of them?

Very true, he replied.

Well, and is there not an opposite of life, as sleep is the opposite of waking?

True, he said.

And what is it?

Death, he answered.

And these, if they are opposites, are generated the one from the other, and have there their two intermediate processes also?

vocabulary

ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad
ἄδύνατος unable; impossible
αἴσθησις -εως (f) sense perception
ἁμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble
ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἀνακάμπτω bend; return
ἀναμνησκω (+2 acc) remind someone ~mnemonic
ἀνεγείρω awaken
ἀνθρώπινος human
ἀνταποδίδωμι give in exchange
ἀπιστέω disbelieve ~stand
ἀποδείκνυμι (ō) show, point out; appoint; (mid) declare
ἀπόδειξις -εως (f) acceptance; (Ion) showing
ἄρα interrogative pcl
γένεσις -εως (f) source, origin ~genus
δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
διακρίνω (ι) separate, sort ~critic
διάνοια a thought; intelligence
εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form ~-oid
εἴπερ if indeed
εἴωθα be accustomed, in the habit
ἔνειμι be in ~ion
ἐννοέω consider
ἐννοια thought
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus
ἐπιλανθάνω mp: forget ~Lethe
ἐπισκοπέω look upon, inspect
ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand ~station
ἐπιστήμη skill, knowledge
ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
ἔραστής -οῦ (m, 1) lover, fan
ἔρωτάω ask about something
ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station
θαμά thickly
ἱμάτιον toga, cloth
καθεύδω lie down
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
καμπή a bend, turn
καταδαρθάνω sleep, lie down to sleep
καταντικρύ (tō) right down from
κατηγορέω accuse; indicate
κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle
λήρος idle talk
λύρα lyre
μεταλαμβάνω share in; swap
μηχανή machine; mechanism, way
μυρίος (ō) 10,000 ~myriad
ναί yea
ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
νή yea
ὅθεν whence
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὁμός same ~homoerotic
ὁμοῦ together
ὁμόω unite ~homoerotic
ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just ~orthogonal
οὐδαμοῦ nowhere
οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition
παιδικός childlike; a darling ~pediatrician
παντάπασιν altogether; yes, certainly
πάντως by all means
παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend ~genus
περίειμι be superior to; be left over; still exist
πη somewhere, somehow
πῇ where? how?
ποίη grass

ποῖος what kind
 πότε when?
 σαφής clear, understandable
 σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptic
 σκοπέω behold, consider
 συγκρίνω (ι) combine; decree
 συνδοκέω seem good also
 σφόδρα very much
 σχεδόν near, approximately at
 ~ischemia
 σχῆμα -τος (n, 3) form, figure
 τεκμήριον sign; proof

τελευτάω bring about, finish
 ~apostle
 τοῖνον well, then
 τοιόσδε such
 ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's
 support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy
 ὑπομνήσκω remind of
 ~mnemonic
 φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)
 ~physics
 χωλός lame
 ὡσαύτως in the same way

Τὴν μὲν τοίνυν ἑτέραν συζυγίαν ὦν νυνδὴ ἔλεγον ἐγὼ σοι, ἔφη, ἐρῶ, ὁ Σωκράτης, καὶ αὐτὴν καὶ τὰς γενέσεις· σὺ δέ μοι τὴν ἑτέραν. λέγω δὲ τὸ μὲν καθεύδειν, τὸ δὲ ἐγρηγορέναι, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ καθεύδειν τὸ ἐγρηγορέναι γίγνεσθαι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ἐγρηγορέναι τὸ καθεύδειν, καὶ τὰς γενέσεις αὐτοῖν τὴν μὲν καταδαρθάνειν εἶναι, τὴν δ' ἀνεγείρεσθαι. ἱκανῶς σοι, ἔφη, ἦ οὐ;

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

Λέγε δὴ μοι καὶ σύ, ἔφη, οὕτω περὶ ζωῆς καὶ θανάτου. οὐκ ἐναντίον μὲν φῆς τῷ ζῆν τὸ τεθνάναι εἶναι;

Ἐγωγε.

Γίγνεσθαι δὲ ἐξ ἀλλήλων;

Ναί.

Ἐξ οὖν τοῦ ζῶντος τί τὸ γιγνόμενον;

Τὸ τεθνηκός, ἔφη.

Τί δέ, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἐκ τοῦ τεθνεώτος;

Ἀναγκαῖον, ἔφη, ὁμολογεῖν ὅτι τὸ ζῶν.

Ἐκ τῶν τεθνεώτων ἄρα, ὦ Κέβης, τὰ ζῶντά τε καὶ οἱ ζῶντες γίγνονται;

Φαίνεται, ἔφη.

Εἰσὶν ἄρα, ἔφη, αἱ ψυχαὶ ἡμῶν ἐν Ἄιδου.

Ἦτοι.

Οὐκοῦν καὶ τοῖν γενεσέοις τοῖν περὶ ταῦτα ἢ γ' ἑτέρα σαφὴς οὖσα τυγχάνει; τὸ γὰρ ἀποθνήσκειν σαφὲς δῆπου, ἦ οὐ;

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.

Πῶς οὖν, ἦ δ' ὅς, ποιήσομεν; οὐκ ἀνταποδώσομεν τὴν ἐναντίαν γένεσιν, ἀλλὰ ταύτῃ χωλὴ ἔσται ἡ φύσις; ἢ ἀνάγκη ἀποδοῦναι τῷ ἀποθνήσκει ἐναντίαν τινὰ γένεσιν;

Πάντως που, ἔφη.

Τίνα ταύτην;

Τὸ ἀναβιώσκεσθαι.

Οὐκοῦν, ἦ δ' ὅς, εἴπερ ἔστι τὸ ἀναβιώσκεσθαι, ἐκ τῶν τεθνεώτων ἂν εἴη γένεσις εἰς τοὺς ζῶντας αὕτη, τὸ ἀναβιώσκεσθαι;

Πάνυ γε.

Ὅμοлогεῖται ἄρα ἡμῖν καὶ ταύτῃ τοὺς ζῶντας ἐκ τῶν τεθνεώτων γεγονέναι οὐδὲν ἥττον ἢ τοὺς τεθνεώτας ἐκ τῶν ζώντων, τούτου δὲ ὄντος ἰκανόν που ἐδόκει τεκμήριον εἶναι ὅτι ἀναγκαῖον τὰς τῶν τεθνεώτων ψυχὰς εἶναι που, ὅθεν δὴ πάλιν γίνεσθαι.

Δοκεῖ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐκ τῶν ὁμολογημένων ἀναγκαῖον οὕτως ἔχειν.

Ἴδὲ τοῖνυν οὕτως, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, ὅτι οὐδ' ἀδίκως ὁμολογήκαμεν, ὥς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ. εἰ γὰρ μὴ αἰὲ ἀνταποδιδοίη τὰ ἕτερα τοῖς ἑτέροις γιγνόμενα, ὥσπερὶ κύκλῳ περιμόντα, ἀλλ' εὐθείᾳ τις εἴη ἡ γένεσις ἐκ τοῦ ἑτέρου μόνον εἰς τὸ καταντικρὺ καὶ μὴ ἀνακάμπτει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ ἕτερον μηδὲ καμπὴν¹ ποιοῖτο, οἷσθ' ὅτι πάντα τελευτώντα τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα ἂν σχοίη καὶ τὸ αὐτὸ πάθος ἂν πάθῃ καὶ παύσαιτο γιγνόμενα;

Πῶς λέγεις; ἔφη.

Οὐδὲν χαλεπόν, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἐννοῆσαι ὁ λέγω· ἀλλ' οἷον εἰ τὸ καταδαρθάνειν μὲν εἴη, τὸ δ' ἀνεγείρεσθαι μὴ ἀνταποδιδοίη γιγνόμενον ἐκ τοῦ καθευδοντος, οἷσθ' ὅτι τελευτώντα πάντ' ἂν λήρῃ² τὸν Ἐνδυμῖωνα ἀποδείξειεν καὶ οὐδαμοῦ ἂν φαίνοιτο διὰ τὸ καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα ταῦτὸν ἐκείνῳ πεπονθέναι, καθεύδειν. καὶ εἰ συγκρίνοιτο μὲν

¹ a bend, turn ² idle talk

πάντα, διακρίνοιτο δὲ μή, ταχὺ ἂν τὸ τοῦ Ἀναξαγόρου γεγονὸς εἴη, ὁμοῦ πάντα χρήματα. ὡσαύτως δέ, ὦ φίλε Κέβης, καὶ εἰ ἀποθνήσκοι μὲν πάντα ὅσα τοῦ ζῆν μεταλάβοι, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀποθάνοι, μένοι ἐν τούτῳ τῷ σχήματι τὰ τεθνεῶτα καὶ μὴ πάλιν ἀναβιώσκειτο, ἄρ' οὐ πολλὴ ἀνάγκη τελευτῶντα πάντα τεθνάναι καὶ μηδὲν ζῆν; εἰ γὰρ ἐκ μὲν τῶν ἄλλων τὰ ζῶντα γίγνοιτο, τὰ δὲ ζῶντα θνήσκοι, τίς μηχανὴ μὴ οὐχὶ πάντα καταναλωθῆναι εἰς τὸ τεθνάναι;

Οὐδὲ μία μοι δοκεῖ, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖς παντάπασιν ἀληθῆ λέγειν.

Ἦσθιν γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, παντὸς μᾶλλον οὕτω, καὶ ἡμεῖς αὐτὰ ταῦτα οὐκ ἐξαπατῶμενοι ὁμολογοῦμεν, ἀλλ' ἔστι τῷ ὄντι καὶ τὸ ἀναβιώσκεσθαι καὶ ἐκ τῶν τεθνεῶτων τοὺς ζῶντας γίγνεσθαι καὶ τὰς τῶν τεθνεῶτων ψυχὰς εἶναι καὶ ταῖς μὲν γε ἀγαθαῖς ἄμεινον εἶναι, ταῖς δὲ κακαῖς κάκιον.

Καὶ μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης ὑπολαβὼν, καὶ κατ' ἐκείνόν γε τὸν λόγον, ὦ Σώκρατες, εἰ ἀληθὴς ἐστιν, ὃν σὺ εἴωθας θαμὰ³ λέγειν, ὅτι ἡμῖν ἢ μάθησις οὐκ ἄλλο τι ἢ ἀνάμνησις τυγχάνει οὐσα, καὶ κατὰ τοῦτον ἀνάγκη που ἡμᾶς ἐν προτέρῳ τιτὶ χρόνῳ μεμαθηκέναι ἢ νῦν ἀναμνησκόμεθα.

Τοῦτο δὲ ἀδύνατον, εἰ μὴ ἦν που ἡμῖν ἢ ψυχὴ πρὶν ἐν τῷδε τῷ ἀνθρωπίνῳ εἶδει γενέσθαι· ὥστε καὶ ταύτῃ ἀθάνατον ἢ ψυχὴ τι ἔοικεν εἶναι.

Ἀλλὰ, ὦ Κέβης, ἔφη ὁ Συμμίας ὑπολαβὼν, ποῖαι τούτων αἰ ἀποδείξεις; ὑπόμνησόν με· οὐ γὰρ σφόδρα ἐν τῷ παρόντι μέμνημαι.

Ἐνὶ μὲν λόγῳ, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, καλλίστῳ, ὅτι ἐρωτώμενοι οἱ ἄνθρωποι, εἴαν τις καλῶς ἐρωτᾷ, αὐτοὶ λέγουσιν πάντα ἢ ἔχει—καίτοι εἰ μὴ ἐτύγχανεν αὐτοῖς ἐπιστήμη ἐνοῦσα καὶ ὀρθὸς λόγος, οὐκ ἂν οἰοί τ' ἦσαν τοῦτο ποιῆσαι—ἔπειτα εἴαν τις ἐπὶ τὰ διαγράμματα ἄγῃ ἢ ἄλλο τι τῶν τοιούτων, ἐνταῦθα σαφέστατα κατηγορεῖ ὅτι τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει.

³ thickly

Εἰ δὲ μὴ ταύτῃ γε, ἔφη, πείθῃ, ὦ Συμμία, ὁ Σωκράτης, σκέψαι ἂν τῇδὲ πῇ σοι σκοπούμενω συνδόξῃ. ἀπιστεῖς γὰρ δὴ πῶς ἡ καλουμένη μάθησις ἀνάμνησίς ἐστιν;

Ἀπιστῶ μὲν σοι ἔγωγε, ἦ δ' ὅς ὁ Συμμίας, οὐ, αὐτὸ δὲ τοῦτο, ἔφη, δέομαι παθεῖν περὶ οὗ ὁ λόγος, ἀναμνησθῆναι. καὶ σχεδόν γε ἐξ ὧν Κέβης ἐπεχείρησε λέγειν ἤδη μέμνημαι καὶ πείθομαι· οὐδὲν μεντὰν ἦττον ἀκούοιμι νῦν πῇ σὺ ἐπεχείρησας λέγειν.

Τῇδ' ἔγωγε, ἦ δ' ὅς. ὁμολογοῦμεν γὰρ δήπου, εἴ τίς τι ἀναμνησθήσεται, δεῖν αὐτὸν τοῦτο πρότερόν ποτε ἐπίστασθαι.

Πάνν γ', ἔφη.

Ἄρ' οὖν καὶ τόδε ὁμολογοῦμεν, ὅταν ἐπιστήμη παραγίγνηται τρόπῳ τοιούτῳ, ἀνάμνησιν εἶναι; λέγω δὲ τίνα τρόπον; τόνδε. ἐάν τίς τι ἕτερον ἢ ἰδὼν ἢ ἀκούσας ἢ τινα ἄλλην αἴσθησιν λαβὼν μὴ μόνον ἐκεῖνο γνῶ, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἕτερον ἐννοήσῃ οὐ μὴ ἡ αὐτὴ ἐπιστήμη ἀλλ' ἄλλη, ἅρα οὐχὶ τοῦτο δικαίως λέγομεν ὅτι ἀνεμνήσθη, οὐ τὴν ἐννοίαν ἔλαβεν;

Πῶς λέγεις;

Οἷον τὰ τοιάδε· ἄλλη που ἐπιστήμη ἀνθρώπου καὶ λύρας.

Πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

Οὐκοῦν οἶσθα ὅτι οἱ ἐρασταί, ὅταν ἴδωσιν λύραν ἢ ἱμάτιον ἢ ἄλλο τι οἷς τὰ παιδικὰ αὐτῶν εἶωθε χρῆσθαι, πάσχουσι τοῦτο· ἔγνωσάν τε τὴν λύραν καὶ ἐν τῇ διανοίᾳ ἔλαβον τὸ εἶδος τοῦ παιδὸς οὗ ἦν ἡ λύρα; τοῦτο δέ ἐστιν ἀνάμνησις· ὥσπερ γε καὶ Συμμίαν τις ἰδὼν πολλάκις κέβητος ἀνεμνήσθη, καὶ ἄλλα που μυρία τοιαῦτ' ἂν εἴη.

Μυρία μέντοι νῇ Δία, ἔφη ὁ Συμμίας.

Οὐκοῦν, ἦ δ' ὅς, τὸ τοιοῦτον ἀνάμνησις τίς ἐστι; μάλιστα μέντοι ὅταν τις τοῦτο πάθῃ περὶ ἐκεῖνα ἃ ὑπὸ χρόνου καὶ τοῦ μὴ ἐπισκοπεῖν ἤδη ἐπελέληστο;

Of course.

Now, said Socrates, I will analyze one of the two pairs of opposites which I have mentioned to you, and also its intermediate processes, and you shall analyze the other to me. One of them I term sleep, the other waking. The state of sleep is opposed to the state of waking, and out of sleeping waking is generated, and out of waking, sleeping; and the process of generation is in the one case falling asleep, and in the other waking up. Do you agree?

I entirely agree.

Then, suppose that you analyze life and death to me in the same manner. Is not death opposed to life?

Yes.

And they are generated one from the other?

Yes.

What is generated from the living?

The dead.

And what from the dead?

I can only say in answer — the living.

Then the living, whether things or persons, Cebes, are generated from the dead?

That is clear, he replied.

Then the inference is that our souls exist in the world below?

That is true.

And one of the two processes or generations is visible — for surely the act of dying is visible?

Surely, he said.

What then is to be the result? Shall we exclude the opposite process? And shall we suppose nature to walk on one leg only? Must we not rather assign to death some corresponding process of generation?

Certainly, he replied.

And what is that process?

Return to life.

And return to life, if there be such a thing, is the birth of the dead into the world of the living?

Quite true.

Then here is a new way by which we arrive at the conclusion that the living come from the dead, just as the dead come from the living; and this, if true, affords a most certain proof that the souls of the dead exist in some place out of which they come again.

Yes, Socrates, he said; the conclusion seems to flow necessarily out of our previous admissions.

And that these admissions were not unfair, Cebes, he said, may be shown, I think, as follows: If generation were in a straight line only, and there were no compensation or circle in nature, no turn or return of elements into their opposites, then you know that all things would at last have the same form and pass into the same state, and there would be no more generation of them.

What do you mean? he said.

A simple thing enough, which I will illustrate by the case of sleep, he replied. You know that if there were no alternation of sleeping and waking, the tale of the sleeping Endymion would in the end have no meaning, because all other things would be asleep, too, and he would not be distinguishable from the rest. Or if there were composition only, and no division of substances, then the chaos of Anaxagoras would come again. And in like manner, my dear Cebes, if all things which partook of life were to die, and after they were dead remained in the form of death, and did not come to life again, all would at last die, and nothing would be alive—what other result could there be? For if the living spring from any other things, and they too die, must not all things at last be swallowed up in death? (But compare Republic.)

There is no escape, Socrates, said Cebes; and to me your argument seems to be absolutely true.

Yes, he said, Cebes, it is and must be so, in my opinion; and we have not been deluded in making these admissions; but I am confident that there truly is such a thing as living again, and that the living spring from the dead, and that the souls of the dead are in existence, and that the good souls have a better portion than the evil.

Cebes added: Your favorite doctrine, Socrates, that knowledge is simply recollection, if true, also necessarily implies a previous time in which we have

learned that which we now recollect. But this would be impossible unless our soul had been in some place before existing in the form of man; here then is another proof of the soul's immortality.

But tell me, Cebes, said Simmias, interposing, what arguments are urged in favour of this doctrine of recollection. I am not very sure at the moment that I remember them.

One excellent proof, said Cebes, is afforded by questions. If you put a question to a person in a right way, he will give a true answer of himself, but how could he do this unless there were knowledge and right reason already in him? And this is most clearly shown when he is taken to a diagram or to anything of that sort. (Compare Meno.)

But if, said Socrates, you are still incredulous, Simmias, I would ask you whether you may not agree with me when you look at the matter in another way;—I mean, if you are still incredulous as to whether knowledge is recollection.

Incredulous, I am not, said Simmias; but I want to have this doctrine of recollection brought to my own recollection, and, from what Cebes has said, I am beginning to recollect and be convinced; but I should still like to hear what you were going to say.

This is what I would say, he replied:—We should agree, if I am not mistaken, that what a man recollects he must have known at some previous time.

Very true.

And what is the nature of this knowledge or recollection? I mean to ask, Whether a person who, having seen or heard or in any way perceived anything, knows not only that, but has a conception of something else which is the subject, not of the same but of some other kind of knowledge, may not be fairly said to recollect that of which he has the conception?

What do you mean?

I mean what I may illustrate by the following instance:—The knowledge of a lyre is not the same as the knowledge of a man?

True.

And yet what is the feeling of lovers when they recognize a lyre, or a garment, or anything else which the beloved has been in the habit of using? Do not they, from knowing the lyre, form in the mind's eye an image of the youth to whom the lyre belongs? And this is recollection. In like manner any one

who sees Simmias may remember Cebes; and there are endless examples of the same thing.

Endless, indeed, replied Simmias.

And recollection is most commonly a process

vocabulary

αἴσθησις -εως (f) sense perception
ἄλλοθεν from elsewhere ~alien
ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἀναλαμβάνω take up, recover,
 resume
ἀναμνησκω (+2 acc) remind
 someone ~mnemonic
ἀναφέρω bring up ~bear
ἀνόμιος different, dissimilar
ἀποβολή loss, jettisoning
ἄπτω set on fire; attach; mid: touch,
 seize ~haptic
ἄρα interrogative pcl
βίος life ~biology
βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
δηλώω show, disclose
δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
εἴτε if, whenever; either/or
ἐκάστοτε each time
ἐκεῖσε thither
ἐνδεής inadequate
ἐνδέω tie to, entangle; lack
ἐνίστε sometimes
ἐννοέω consider
ἐπιλανθάνω mp: forget ~Lethe
ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand
 ~station
ἐπιστήμη skill, knowledge
ἐρωτάω ask about something
ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,
 direct, stop ~station
ἦτοι truly; either, or
ἠώς ἡῶθι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene
θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable
ισότης -τος (f, 3) equality,

impartiality

λήθη forgetting ~Lethe
λίθεος made of stone ~monolith
λίθος (f) stone ~monolith
λύρα lyre
ναί yea
ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
νή yea
ξύλον piece of wood ~xylophone
οἰκεῖος household, familiar, proper
ὁμοιότης -τος (f, 3) resemblance
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
ὀρέγω hold out, offer, thrust ~reach
ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just
 ~orthogonal
ὀρθόω stand up
οὐδαμὸς not anyone
οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
ὄψις ὄψεως (f) sight, view
 ~thanatopsis
παντάπασιν altogether; yes,
 certainly
πάντως by all means
πλησιάζω bring/be near; have sex
πόθεν from where?
πότε when?
προερέω say beforehand
προθυμέομαι (ὄ) be eager
προλέγω prophecy, proclaim;
 preselect ~legion
πρόοιδα foresee
προσείκα resemble
σκοπάω watch, observe
σκοπέω behold, consider
σύμπας (ᾱ) all together
φαῦλος trifling

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.

Τί δέ; ἦ δ' ὅς· ἔστιν ἵππον γεγραμμένον ἰδόντα καὶ λύραν γεγραμμένην ἀνθρώπου ἀναμνησθῆναι, καὶ Σιμμίαν ἰδόντα γεγραμμένον κέβητος ἀναμνησθῆναι;

Πάνυ γε.

Οὐκοῦν καὶ Σιμμίαν ἰδόντα γεγραμμένον αὐτοῦ Σιμμίον ἀναμνησθῆναι;

Ἦστί μέντοι, ἔφη.

Ἄρ' οὖν οὐ κατὰ πάντα ταῦτα συμβαίνει τὴν ἀνάμνησιν εἶναι μὲν ἀφ' ὁμοίων, εἶναι δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ ἀνομοίων;

Συμβαίνει.

Ἄλλ' ὅταν γε ἀπὸ τῶν ὁμοίων ἀναμνησκηταί τις τι, ἄρ' οὐκ ἀναγκαῖον τόδε προσπιάσχειν, ἐννοεῖν εἴτε τι ἐλλείπει τοῦτο κατὰ τὴν ὁμοιότητα εἴτε μὴ ἐκείνου οὐ ἀνεμνήσθη;

Ἀνάγκη, ἔφη.

Σκόπει δὴ, ἦ δ' ὅς, εἰ ταῦτα οὕτως ἔχει. φαμέν πού τι εἶναι ἴσον, οὐ ξύλον λέγω ξύλῳ οὐδὲ λίθον λίθῳ οὐδ' ἄλλο τῶν τοιούτων οὐδέν, ἀλλὰ παρὰ ταῦτα πάντα ἕτερόν τι, αὐτὸ τὸ ἴσον· φῶμέν τι εἶναι ἢ μὴδέν;

Φῶμεν μέντοι νῆ Δι', ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, θαυμαστῶς γε.

Ἦ καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα αὐτὸ ὃ ἔστιν;

Πάνυ γε, ἦ δ' ὅς.

Πόθεν λαβόντες αὐτοῦ τὴν ἐπιστήμην; ἄρ' οὐκ ἐξ ὧν νυνδὴ ἐλέγομεν, ἢ ξύλα ἢ λίθους ἢ ἄλλα ἅττα ἰδόντες ἴσα, ἐκ τούτων ἐκείνο ἐνενοήσαμεν, ἕτερον ὃν τούτων; ἢ οὐχ ἕτερόν σοι φαίνεται; σκόπει δὲ καὶ τῇδε. ἄρ' οὐ λίθοι μὲν ἴσοι καὶ ξύλα ἐνίοτε ταῦτ' ὄντα τῷ μὲν ἴσα φαίνεται, τῷ δ' οὐ;

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

Τί δέ; αὐτὰ τὰ ἴσα ἔστιν ὅτε ἄνισά σοι ἐφάνη, ἢ ἡ ἰσότης¹ ἀνισότης;

Οὐδεπώποτε γε, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Οὐ ταὐτὸν ἄρα ἐστίν, ἢ δ' ὅς, ταῦτά τε τὰ ἴσα καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἴσον.

Οὐδαμῶς μοι φαίνεται, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐκ τούτων γ', ἔφη, τῶν ἴσων, ἐτέρων ὄντων ἐκείνου τοῦ ἴσου, ὅμως αὐτοῦ τὴν ἐπιστήμην ἐννεονόηκας τε καὶ εἰληφας;

Ἀληθέστατα, ἔφη, λέγεις.

Οὐκοῦν ἢ ὁμοίου ὄντος τούτοις ἢ ἀνομοίου;

Πάνυ γε.

Διαφέρει δέ γε, ἢ δ' ὅς, οὐδέν· ἕως ἂν ἄλλο ἰδὼν ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς ὀψεως ἄλλο ἐννοήσης, εἴτε ὅμοιον εἴτε ἀνόμοιον, ἀναγκαῖον, ἔφη, αὐτὸ ἀνάμνησιν γεγονέναι.

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

Τί δέ; ἢ δ' ὅς· ἢ πάσχομέν τι τοιοῦτον περὶ τὰ ἐν τοῖς ξύλοις τε καὶ οἷς νυνδὴ ἐλέγομεν τοῖς ἴσοις; ἄρα φαίνεται ἡμῖν οὕτως ἴσα εἶναι ὥσπερ αὐτὸ τὸ ὃ ἔστιν, ἢ ἐνδεῖ τι ἐκείνου τῷ τοιοῦτον εἶναι οἷον τὸ ἴσον, ἢ οὐδέν;

Καὶ πολὺ γε, ἔφη, ἐνδεῖ.

Οὐκοῦν ὁμολογοῦμεν, ὅταν τίς τι ἰδὼν ἐννοήσῃ ὅτι βούλεται μὲν τοῦτο ὃ νῦν ἐγὼ ὁρῶ εἶναι οἷον ἄλλο τι τῶν ὄντων, ἐνδεῖ δὲ καὶ οὐ δύναται τοιοῦτον εἶναι ἴσον οἷον ἐκείνο, ἀλλ' ἔστιν φαυλότερον, ἀναγκαῖόν που τὸν τοῦτο ἐννοοῦντα τυχεῖν προειδότα ἐκείνο ᾧ φησιν αὐτὸ προσεοικέναι μέν, ἐνδεεστέως δὲ ἔχειν;

Ἀνάγκη.

¹ equality, impartiality

Τί οὖν; τὸ τοιοῦτον πεπόνθαμεν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἢ οὐ περί τε τὰ ἴσα καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἴσον;

Παντάπασί γε.

Ἀναγκαῖον ἄρα ἡμᾶς προειδέναι τὸ ἴσον πρὸ ἐκείνου τοῦ χρόνου ὅτε τὸ πρῶτον ἰδόντες τὰ ἴσα ἐννεοῖσαμεν ὅτι ὀρέγεται μὲν πάντα ταῦτα εἶναι οἷον τὸ ἴσον, ἔχει δὲ ἐνδεεστέρως.

Ἦστι ταῦτα.

Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τόδε ὁμολογοῦμεν, μὴ ἄλλοθεν αὐτὸ ἐννενοηκέναι μηδὲ δυνατὸν εἶναι ἐννοῆσαι ἄλλ' ἢ ἐκ τοῦ ἰδεῖν ἢ ἄψασθαι ἢ ἐκ τινος ἄλλης τῶν αἰσθήσεων· ταῦτὸν δὲ πάντα ταῦτα λέγω.

Ταῦτὸν γὰρ ἔστιν, ὦ Σώκρατες, πρὸς γε ὃ βούλεται δηλῶσαι ὁ λόγος.

Ἀλλὰ μὲν δὴ ἔκ γε τῶν αἰσθήσεων δεῖ ἐννοῆσαι ὅτι πάντα τὰ ἐν ταῖς αἰσθήσεσιν ἐκείνου τε ὀρέγεται τοῦ ὃ ἔστιν ἴσον, καὶ αὐτοῦ ἐνδεέστερά ἐστιν· ἢ πῶς λέγομεν;

Οὕτως.

Πρὸ τοῦ ἄρα ἄρξασθαι ἡμᾶς ὁρᾶν καὶ ἀκούειν καὶ τᾶλλα αἰσθάνεσθαι τυχεῖν ἔδει που εὐληφότας ἐπιστήμην αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἴσου ὅτι ἔστιν, εἰ ἐμέλλομεν τὰ ἐκ τῶν αἰσθήσεων ἴσα ἐκέισε ἀνοίσειν, ὅτι προθυμεῖται μὲν πάντα τοιαῦτ' εἶναι οἷον ἐκείνο, ἔστιν δὲ αὐτοῦ φαυλότερα.

Ἀνάγκη ἐκ τῶν προειρημένων, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Οὐκοῦν γενόμενοι εὐθὺς ἐωρώμεν τε καὶ ἠκούομεν καὶ τὰς ἄλλας αἰσθήσεις εἴχομεν;

Πάνυ γε.

Ἦδει δέ γε, φαμέν, πρὸ τούτων τὴν τοῦ ἴσου ἐπιστήμην εὐληφέναι;

Ναί.

Πρὶν γενέσθαι ἄρα, ὥς ἔοικεν, ἀνάγκη ἡμῶν αὐτὴν εὐληφέναι.

Ἔοικεν.

Οὐκοῦν εἰ μὲν λαβόντες αὐτὴν πρὸ τοῦ γενέσθαι ἔχοντες ἐγενόμεθα, ἠπιστάμεθα καὶ πρὶν γενέσθαι καὶ εὐθὺς γενόμενοι οὐ μόνον τὸ ἴσον καὶ τὸ μείζον καὶ τὸ ἔλαττον ἀλλὰ καὶ σύμπαντα τὰ τοιαῦτα; οὐ γὰρ περὶ τοῦ ἴσου νῦν ὁ λόγος ἡμῖν μᾶλλον τι ἢ καὶ περὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ καλοῦ καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ καὶ δικαίου καὶ ὀσίου καί, ὅπερ λέγω, περὶ πάντων οἷς ἐπισφραγιζόμεθα τὸ αὐτὸ ὃ ἔστι καὶ ἐν ταῖς ἐρωτήσεσιν ἐρωτῶντες καὶ ἐν ταῖς ἀποκρίσεσιν ἀποκρινόμενοι. ὥστε ἀναγκαῖον ἡμῖν τούτων πάντων τὰς ἐπιστήμας πρὸ τοῦ γενέσθαι εἰληφέναι.

Ἔστι ταῦτα.

Καὶ εἰ μὲν γε λαβόντες ἐκάστοτε² μὴ ἐπιλελήσμεθα, εἰδότας ἀεὶ γίνεσθαι καὶ ἀεὶ διὰ βίου εἰδέναι· τὸ γὰρ εἰδέναι τοῦτ' ἔστιν, λαβόντα του ἐπιστήμην ἔχειν καὶ μὴ ἀπολωλέκεναι· ἢ οὐ τοῦτο λήθην³ λέγομεν, ὦ Σιμμία, ἐπιστήμης ἀποβολήν;

Πάντως δήπου, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Εἰ δέ γε οἶμαι λαβόντες πρὶν γενέσθαι γιγνώμενοι ἀπωλέσαμεν, ὕστερον δὲ ταῖς αἰσθήσεσι χρώμενοι περὶ αὐτὰ ἐκείνας ἀναλαμβάνομεν τὰς ἐπιστήμας ἄς ποτε καὶ πρὶν εἶχομεν, ἄρ' οὐχ ὁ καλοῦμεν μανθάνειν οἰκείαν ἂν ἐπιστήμην ἀναλαμβάνειν εἴη; τοῦτο δέ που ἀναμνησκέσθαι λέγοντες ὀρθῶς ἂν λέγομεν;

Πάνυ γε.

Δυνατὸν γὰρ δὴ τοῦτό γε ἐφάνη, αἰσθόμενόν τι ἢ ιδόντα ἢ ἀκούσαντα ἢ τινα ἄλλην αἴσθησιν λαβόντα ἕτερόν τι ἀπὸ τούτου ἐννοῆσαι ὃ ἐπελέληστο, ᾧ τοῦτο ἐπλησίαζεν⁴ ἀνόμοιον ὃν ἢ ᾧ ὅμοιον· ὥστε, ὅπερ λέγω, δυοῖν θάτερα, ἥτοι ἐπιστάμενοί γε αὐτὰ γεγόναμεν καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα διὰ βίου πάντες, ἢ ὕστερον, οὓς φαμεν μανθάνειν, οὐδὲν ἀλλ' ἢ ἀναμνησκονται οὗτοι, καὶ ἡ μάθησις ἀνάμνησις ἂν εἴη.

Καὶ μάλα δὴ οὕτως ἔχει, ὦ Σώκρατες.

² each time ³ forgetting ⁴ bring/be near; have sex

of recovering that which has been already forgotten through time and inattention.

Very true, he said.

Well; and may you not also from seeing the picture of a horse or a lyre remember a man? and from the picture of Simmias, you may be led to remember Cebes?

True.

Or you may also be led to the recollection of Simmias himself?

Quite so.

And in all these cases, the recollection may be derived from things either like or unlike?

It may be.

And when the recollection is derived from like things, then another consideration is sure to arise, which is—whether the likeness in any degree falls short or not of that which is recollected?

Very true, he said.

And shall we proceed a step further, and affirm that there is such a thing as equality, not of one piece of wood or stone with another, but that, over and above this, there is absolute equality? Shall we say so?

Say so, yes, replied Simmias, and swear to it, with all the confidence in life.

And do we know the nature of this absolute essence?

To be sure, he said.

And whence did we obtain our knowledge? Did we not see equalities of material things, such as pieces of wood and stones, and gather from them the idea of an equality which is different from them? For you will acknowledge that there is a difference. Or look at the matter in another way:—Do not the same pieces of wood or stone appear at one time equal, and at another time unequal?

That is certain.

But are real equals ever unequal? or is the idea of equality the same as of inequality?

Impossible, Socrates.

Then these (so-called) equals are not the same with the idea of equality?

I should say, clearly not, Socrates.

And yet from these equals, although differing from the idea of equality, you conceived and attained that idea?

Very true, he said.

Which might be like, or might be unlike them?

Yes.

But that makes no difference; whenever from seeing one thing you conceived another, whether like or unlike, there must surely have been an act of recollection?

Very true.

But what would you say of equal portions of wood and stone, or other material equals? and what is the impression produced by them? Are they equals in the same sense in which absolute equality is equal? or do they fall short of this perfect equality in a measure?

Yes, he said, in a very great measure too.

And must we not allow, that when I or any one, looking at any object, observes that the thing which he sees aims at being some other thing, but falls short of, and cannot be, that other thing, but is inferior, he who makes this observation must have had a previous knowledge of that to which the other, although similar, was inferior?

Certainly.

And has not this been our own case in the matter of equals and of absolute equality?

Precisely.

Then we must have known equality previously to the time when we first saw the material equals, and reflected that all these apparent equals strive to attain absolute equality, but fall short of it?

Very true.

And we recognize also that this absolute equality has only been known, and can only be known, through the medium of sight or touch, or of some other of the senses, which are all alike in this respect?

Yes, Socrates, as far as the argument is concerned, one of them is the same as the other.

From the senses then is derived the knowledge that all sensible things aim at an absolute equality of which they fall short?

Yes.

Then before we began to see or hear or perceive in any way, we must have had a knowledge of absolute equality, or we could not have referred to that standard the equals which are derived from the senses?—for to that they all aspire, and of that they fall short.

No other inference can be drawn from the previous statements.

And did we not see and hear and have the use of our other senses as soon as we were born?

Certainly.

Then we must have acquired the knowledge of equality at some previous time?

Yes.

That is to say, before we were born, I suppose?

True.

And if we acquired this knowledge before we were born, and were born having the use of it, then we also knew before we were born and at the instant of birth not only the equal or the greater or the less, but all other ideas; for we are not speaking only of equality, but of beauty, goodness, justice, holiness, and of all which we stamp with the name of essence in the dialectical process, both when we ask and when we answer questions. Of all this we may certainly affirm that we acquired the knowledge before birth?

We may.

But if, after having acquired, we have not forgotten what in each case we acquired, then we must always have come into life having knowledge, and shall always continue to know as long as life lasts—for knowing is the acquiring and retaining knowledge and not forgetting. Is not forgetting, Simmias, just the losing of knowledge?

Quite true, Socrates.

But if the knowledge which we acquired before birth was lost by us at birth, and if afterwards by the use of the senses we recovered what we previously knew, will not the process which we call learning be a recovering of the knowledge which is natural to us, and may not this be rightly termed recollection?

Very true.

So much is clear—that when we perceive something, either by the help of sight, or hearing, or some other sense, from that perception we are able to obtain a notion of some other thing like or unlike which is associated with it but has been forgotten. Whence, as I was saying, one of two alternatives follows:—either we had this knowledge at birth, and continued to know through life; or, after birth, those who are said to learn only remember, and learning is simply recollection.

vocabulary

αἴσθησις -εως (f) sense perception
ἄλλοθεν from elsewhere ~alien
ἄλλοτε at another time ~alien
ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἀναλίσκω (αἶ) consume, spend on
ἀναπείθω (aor, plupf) seduce, persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey, be confident in
ἀναφέρω bring up ~bear
ἀνέρομαι ask a question, ask about, go searching through
ἀνευρίσκω discover
ἀνθρώπειος human
ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart
ἀπιστέω disbelieve ~stand
ἀποδείκνυμι (ū) show, point out; appoint; (mid) declare
ἀπόδειξις -εως (f) acceptance; (Ion) showing
ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse
ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail
ἄρτι at the same time
αὔριον tomorrow
βάρβαρος non-Greek
δῆτα emphatic δῆ
διαίρέω divide, distinguish, distribute
διασχεδάννυμι (ū) scatter, disperse
εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form ~-oid
εἰκός likely
εἴπερ if indeed
ἐκβαίνω come forth, disembark ~basis
ἐναργής visible, clear ~Argentina
ἐνδεής inadequate
ἐνδέχομαι accept, admit, be possible
ἐνέμι be in ~ion
ἐνίημι put in; motivate ~jet
ἐνίστημι install; threaten; block

ἐπαεῖδω sing with, to; charm
ἐπανέρχομαι return; ascend
ἐπειδάν when, after
ἐπισκέπτομαι look upon, inspect
ἐπισκοπέω look upon, inspect
ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand ~station
ἐπιστήμη skill, knowledge
ἐπωδός singing to or over
ἐρωτάω ask about something
εὐκαιρος convenient; wealthy
ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
ἡμισυς half ~hemisphere
ἡώς ἡῶθι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene
θαρρέω be of good heart
θαρσέω be of good heart
ἵσκω imitate, liken to, guess ~victor
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
καρτερός strong, staunch
καταφεύγω resort to, flee to, appeal to ~fugitive
κωλύω (ū) hinder, prevent
μεταβολή change, exchange
μεταπείθω change someone's mind
μηδέποτε never
ναί yea
νηνέμιος still, windless ~anemometer
ὅθεν whence
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
οὐδαμῇ nowhere
οὐδαμὸς not anyone
οὐδέποτε never
οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
οὐσία property; essence
πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition

πη somewhere, somehow

πῇ where? how?

πόθεν from where?

ποῖος what kind

πόνος toil, suffering ~osteopenia

πότε when?

πότερος which, whichever of two

προσέχω belong to, it beseems

σύνθετος compound

συνίστημι unite; confront in battle
~station

συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis

τελευτάω bring about, finish

~apostle

τοιόσδε such

ὑπερφυής overgrown; gigantic

φείδομαι spare, not use/harm

~aphid

φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)

~physics

φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

χωρίς separately; except, other than

~heir

ὡσαύτως in the same way

Πότερον οὖν αἰρή, ὦ Σιμμία; ἐπισταμένους ἡμᾶς γεγονέναι, ἢ ἀναμμνήσκεισθαι ὕστερον ὧν πρότερον ἐπιστήμην εἰληφότες ἤμεν;

Οὐκ ἔχω, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐν τῷ παρόντι ἐλέσθαι.

Τί δέ; τόδε ἔχεις ἐλέσθαι, καὶ πῇ σοι δοκεῖ περὶ αὐτοῦ; ἀνὴρ ἐπιστάμενος περὶ ὧν ἐπίσταται ἔχει ἂν δοῦναι λόγον ἢ οὔ;

Πολλὴ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Ἦ καὶ δοκοῦσί σοι πάντες ἔχειν διδόναι λόγον περὶ τούτων ὧν νυνδὴ ἐλέγομεν;

Βουλοίμην μεντᾶν, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας· ἀλλὰ πολὺ μᾶλλον φοβοῦμαι μὴ αὔριον τηνικάδε οὐκέτι ἢ ἀνθρώπων οὐδεὶς ἀξίως οἶός τε τοῦτο ποιῆσαι.

Οὐκ ἄρα δοκοῦσί σοι ἐπίστασθαί γε, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία, πάντες αὐτά;

Οὐδαμῶς.

Ἀναμμνήσκονται ἄρα ἅ ποτε ἔμαθον;

Ἀνάγκη.

Πότε λαβοῦσαι αἱ ψυχαὶ ἡμῶν τὴν ἐπιστήμην αὐτῶν; οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἀφ' οὗ γε ἄνθρωποι γεγόναμεν.

Οὐ δῆτα.

Πρότερον ἄρα.

Ναί.

Ἦσαν ἄρα, ὦ Σιμμία, αἱ ψυχαὶ καὶ πρότερον, πρὶν εἶναι ἐν ἀνθρώπῳ εἶδει, χωρὶς σωμάτων, καὶ φρόνησιν εἶχον.

Εἰ μὴ ἄρα ἅμα γυγνόμενοι λαμβάνομεν, ὦ Σώκρατες, ταύτας τὰς ἐπιστήμας· οὗτος γὰρ λείπεται ἔτι ὁ χρόνος.

Εἶεν, ὦ ἐταῖρε· ἀπόλλυμεν δὲ αὐτὰς ἐν ποίῳ ἄλλῳ χρόνῳ;— οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἔχοντές γε αὐτὰς γιγνόμεθα, ὥς ἄρτι ὁμολογήσαμεν— ἢ ἐν τούτῳ ἀπόλλυμεν ἐν ᾧ περ καὶ λαμβάνομεν; ἢ ἔχεις ἄλλον τινὰ εἰπεῖν χρόνον;

Οὐδαμῶς, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἀλλὰ ἔλαθον ἐμαυτὸν οὐδὲν εἰπῶν.

Ἄρ' οὖν οὕτως ἔχει, ἔφη, ἡμῖν, ὦ Σιμμία; εἰ μὲν ἔστιν ἡ θρυλούμενη αἰεὶ, καλὸν τέ τι καὶ ἀγαθὸν καὶ πᾶσα ἡ τοιαύτη οὐσία, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ τὰ ἐκ τῶν αἰσθήσεων πάντα ἀναφέρομεν, ὑπάρχουσιν πρότερον ἀνευρίσκοντες ἡμετέραν οὖσαν, καὶ ταῦτα ἐκείνῃ ἀπεικάζομεν, ἀναγκαῖον, οὕτως ὥσπερ καὶ ταῦτα ἔστιν, οὕτως καὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν ψυχὴν εἶναι καὶ πρὶν γεγονέναι ἡμᾶς· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἔστι ταῦτα, ἄλλως ἂν ὁ λόγος οὗτος εἰρημένος εἴη; ἄρ' οὕτως ἔχει, καὶ ἴση ἀνάγκη ταυτὰ τε εἶναι καὶ τὰς ἡμετέρας ψυχὰς πρὶν καὶ ἡμᾶς γεγονέναι, καὶ εἰ μὴ ταῦτα, οὐδὲ τάδε;

Ὑπερφυῶς, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, δοκεῖ μοι ἡ αὕτη ἀνάγκη εἶναι, καὶ εἰς καλὸν γε καταφεύγει ὁ λόγος εἰς τὸ ὁμοίως εἶναι τὴν τε ψυχὴν ἡμῶν πρὶν γενέσθαι ἡμᾶς καὶ τὴν οὐσίαν ἣν σὺ νῦν λέγεις. οὐ γὰρ ἔχω ἔγωγε οὐδὲν οὕτω μοι ἐναργὲς ὄν ὥς τοῦτο, τὸ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτ' εἶναι ὥς οἷόν τε μάλιστα, καλὸν τε καὶ ἀγαθὸν καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα ἃ σὺ νυνδὴ ἔλεγες· καὶ ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ ἰκανῶς ἀποδεδείκναι.

Τί δὲ δὴ Κέβητι; ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης· δεῖ γὰρ καὶ Κέβητα πείθειν.

Ἰκανῶς, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας, ὥς ἔγωγε οἶμαι· καίτοι καρτερώτατος ἀνθρώπων ἐστὶν πρὸς τὸ ἀπιστεῖν τοῖς λόγοις. ἀλλ' οἶμαι οὐκ ἐνδεῶς τοῦτο πεπεισθαι αὐτόν, ὅτι πρὶν γενέσθαι ἡμᾶς ἦν ἡμῶν ἡ ψυχὴ· εἰ μὲντοι καὶ ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνωμεν ἔτι ἔσται, οὐδὲ αὐτῷ μοι δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἀποδεδείχθαι, ἀλλ' ἔτι ἐνέστηκεν ὁ νυνδὴ Κέβης ἔλεγε, τὸ τῶν πολλῶν, ὅπως μὴ ἅμα ἀποθνήσκοντος τοῦ ἀνθρώπου διασκεδάννυται ἡ ψυχὴ καὶ αὐτῇ τοῦ εἶναι τοῦτο τέλος ἦ. τί γὰρ κωλύει γίγνεσθαι μὲν αὐτὴν καὶ συνίστασθαι ἄλλοθεν ποθεν καὶ εἶναι πρὶν καὶ εἰς ἀνθρώπειον σῶμα ἀφικέσθαι, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἀφίκεται καὶ ἀπαλλάττεται τούτου, τότε καὶ αὐτὴν τελευτᾶν καὶ διαφθεῖρεσθαι;

Εὐ λέγεις, ἔφη, ὦ Συμμία, ὁ Κέβης. φαίνεται γὰρ ὥσπερ ἡμῶν ἀποδεδεῖχθαι οὐ δεῖ, ὅτι πρὶν γενέσθαι ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμῶν ἢ ψυχῇ, δεῖ δὲ προσαποδείξειν ὅτι καὶ ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνωμεν οὐδὲν ἦττον ἔσται ἢ πρὶν γενέσθαι, εἰ μέλλει τέλος ἢ ἀπόδειξις ἔξειν.

Ἀποδέδεικται μὲν, ἔφη, ὦ Συμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ὁ Σωκράτης, καὶ νῦν, εἰ θέλετε συνθεῖναι τοῦτόν τε τὸν λόγον εἰς ταῦτόν καὶ ὃν πρὸ τούτου ὠμολογήσαμεν, τὸ γίγνεσθαι πᾶν τὸ ζῶν ἐκ τοῦ τεθνεώτος. εἰ γὰρ ἔστιν μὲν ἡ ψυχὴ καὶ πρότερον, ἀνάγκη δὲ αὐτῇ εἰς τὸ ζῆν ἰούσῃ τε καὶ γιγνομένη μηδαμόθεν ἄλλοθεν ἢ ἐκ θανάτου καὶ τοῦ τεθνάναι γίγνεσθαι, πῶς οὐκ ἀνάγκη αὐτὴν καὶ ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνῃ εἶναι, ἐπειδὴ γε δεῖ αὐτῇ γίγνεσθαι; ἀποδέδεικται μὲν οὖν ὅπερ λέγετε καὶ νῦν. ὅμως δέ μοι δοκεῖς σύ τε καὶ Συμμίας ἡδέως ἂν καὶ τοῦτον διαπραγματεύσασθαι τὸν λόγον ἔτι μᾶλλον, καὶ δεδιέναι τὸ τῶν παιδῶν, μὴ ὡς ἀληθῶς ὁ ἄνεμος αὐτὴν ἐκβαίνουσιν ἐκ τοῦ σώματος διαφυσῇ καὶ διασκεδάννυσιν, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὅταν τύχῃ τις μὴ ἐν νηνεμία ἀλλ' ἐν μεγάλῳ τινὶ πνεύματι ἀποθνήσκων.

Καὶ ὁ Κέβης ἐπιγελᾶσας, ὡς δεδιότων, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, πειρῶ ἀναπείθειν· μᾶλλον δὲ μὴ ὡς ἡμῶν δεδιότων, ἀλλ' ἵσως ἐνι τις καὶ ἐν ἡμῖν παῖς ὅστις τὰ τοιαῦτα φοβεῖται. τοῦτον οὖν πειρῶ μεταπείθειν μὴ δεδιέναι τὸν θάνατον ὥσπερ τὰ μορμολύκεια.

Ἀλλὰ χρή, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, ἐπάδειν αὐτῷ ἐκάστης ἡμέρας ἕως ἂν ἐξεπάσητε.

Πόθεν οὖν, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, τῶν τοιούτων ἀγαθὸν ἐπαρδόν ληψόμεθα, ἐπειδὴ σύ, ἔφη, ἡμᾶς ἀπολείπεις;

Πολλὴ μὲν ἡ Ἑλλάς, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, ἐν ἣ ἔννεσί πον ἀγαθοὶ ἄνδρες, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ τὰ τῶν βαρβάρων γένη, οὓς πάντας χρή διερευνᾶσθαι ζητοῦντας τοιοῦτον ἐπαρδόν, μήτε χρημάτων φειδομένους μήτε πόνων, ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν εἰς ὅτι ἂν εὐκαιρότερον¹ ἀναλίσκοιτε χρήματα. ζητεῖν δὲ χρή καὶ αὐτοὺς μετ' ἀλλήλων· ἵσως γὰρ ἂν οὐδὲ ραδίως εὔροιτε μᾶλλον ὑμῶν δυναμένους τοῦτο ποιεῖν.

¹ convenient; wealthy

Ἄλλα ταῦτα μὲν δῆ, ἔφη, ὑπάρξει, ὁ Κέβης· ὅθεν δὲ ἀπελίπομεν ἐπανέλθωμεν, εἴ σοι ἡδομένῳ ἐστίν.

Ἄλλα μὴν ἡδομένῳ γε· πῶς γὰρ οὐ μέλλει;

Καλῶς, ἔφη, λέγεις.

Οὐκοῦν τοιόνδε τι, ἡ δ' ὅς ὁ Σωκράτης, δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἀνερέεσθαι ἑαυτούς, τῷ ποίῳ τινὶ ἄρα προσήκει τοῦτο τὸ πάθος πάσχειν, τὸ διασκεδάννυσθαι, καὶ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποίου τινὸς δεδιέναι μὴ πάθῃ αὐτό, καὶ τῷ ποίῳ τινὶ οὐ· καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο αὖ ἐπισκέψασθαι πότερον ἢ ψυχὴ ἐστίν, καὶ ἐκ τούτων θαρρεῖν ἢ δεδιέναι ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμετέρας ψυχῆς;

Ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, λέγεις.

Ἄρ' οὖν τῷ μὲν συντεθέντι τε καὶ συνθέτῳ ὄντι φύσει προσήκει τοῦτο πάσχειν, διαιρεθῆναι ταύτῃ ἢ περ συνετέθῃ· εἰ δέ τι τυγχάνει ὃν ἀσύνθετον, τούτῳ μόνῳ προσήκει μὴ πάσχειν ταῦτα, εἴπερ τῷ ἄλλῳ;

Δοκεῖ μοι, ἔφη, οὕτως ἔχειν, ὁ Κέβης.

Οὐκοῦν ἅπερ αἰεὶ κατὰ ταῦτά καὶ ὡσαύτως ἔχει, ταῦτα μάλιστα εἰκὸς εἶναι τὰ ἀσύνθετα, τὰ δὲ ἄλλοτ' ἄλλως καὶ μηδέποτε κατὰ ταῦτά, ταῦτα δὲ σύνθετα;

Ἐμοιγε δοκεῖ οὕτως.

Ἴωμεν δῆ, ἔφη, ἐπὶ ταῦτα ἐφ' ἅπερ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν λόγῳ. αὐτὴ ἡ οὐσία ἥς λόγον δίδομεν τοῦ εἶναι καὶ ἐρωτῶντες καὶ ἀποκρινόμενοι, πότερον ὡσαύτως αἰεὶ ἔχει κατὰ ταῦτά ἢ ἄλλοτ' ἄλλως; αὐτὸ τὸ ἴσον, αὐτὸ τὸ καλόν, αὐτὸ ἕκαστον ὃ ἔστιν, τὸ ὄν, μὴ ποτε μεταβολὴν καὶ ἡντινοῦν ἐνδέχεται; ἢ αἰεὶ αὐτῶν ἕκαστον ὃ ἔστι, μονοειδὲς ὃν αὐτὸ καθ' αὐτό, ὡσαύτως κατὰ ταῦτά ἔχει καὶ οὐδέποτε οὐδαμῇ² οὐδαμῶς ἀλλοίωσιν οὐδεμίαν ἐνδέχεται;

Ὡσαύτως, ἔφη, ἀνάγκη, ὁ Κέβης, κατὰ ταῦτά ἔχειν, ὦ Σώκρατες.

² nowhere

Yes, that is quite true, Socrates.

And which alternative, Simmias, do you prefer? Had we the knowledge at our birth, or did we recollect the things which we knew previously to our birth?

I cannot decide at the moment.

At any rate you can decide whether he who has knowledge will or will not be able to render an account of his knowledge? What do you say?

Certainly, he will.

But do you think that every man is able to give an account of these very matters about which we are speaking?

Would that they could, Socrates, but I rather fear that to-morrow, at this time, there will no longer be any one alive who is able to give an account of them such as ought to be given.

Then you are not of opinion, Simmias, that all men know these things?

Certainly not.

They are in process of recollecting that which they learned before?

Certainly.

But when did our souls acquire this knowledge?—not since we were born as men?

Certainly not.

And therefore, previously?

Yes.

Then, Simmias, our souls must also have existed without bodies before they were in the form of man, and must have had intelligence.

Unless indeed you suppose, Socrates, that these notions are given us at the very moment of birth; for this is the only time which remains.

Yes, my friend, but if so, when do we lose them? for they are not in us when we are born—that is admitted. Do we lose them at the moment of receiving them, or if not at what other time?

No, Socrates, I perceive that I was unconsciously talking nonsense.

Then may we not say, Simmias, that if, as we are always repeating, there is an absolute beauty, and goodness, and an absolute essence of all things; and if to this, which is now discovered to have existed in our former state, we refer all our sensations, and with this compare them, finding these ideas to be pre-existent and our inborn possession—then our souls must have had a prior existence, but if not, there would be no force in the argument? There is the same proof that these ideas must have existed before we were born, as that our souls existed before we were born; and if not the ideas, then not the souls.

Yes, Socrates; I am convinced that there is precisely the same necessity for the one as for the other; and the argument retreats successfully to the position that the existence of the soul before birth cannot be separated from the existence of the essence of which you speak. For there is nothing which to my mind is so patent as that beauty, goodness, and the other notions of which you were just now speaking, have a most real and absolute existence; and I am satisfied with the proof.

Well, but is Cebes equally satisfied? for I must convince him too.

I think, said Simmias, that Cebes is satisfied: although he is the most incredulous of mortals, yet I believe that he is sufficiently convinced of the existence of the soul before birth. But that after death the soul will continue to exist is not yet proven even to my own satisfaction. I cannot get rid of the feeling of the many to which Cebes was referring—the feeling that when the man dies the soul will be dispersed, and that this may be the extinction of her. For admitting that she may have been born elsewhere, and framed out of other elements, and was in existence before entering the human body, why after having entered in and gone out again may she not herself be destroyed and come to an end?

Very true, Simmias, said Cebes; about half of what was required has been proven; to wit, that our souls existed before we were born:—that the soul will exist after death as well as before birth is the other half of which the proof is still wanting, and has to be supplied; when that is given the demonstration will be complete.

But that proof, Simmias and Cebes, has been already given, said Socrates, if you put the two arguments together—I mean this and the former one, in which we admitted that everything living is born of the dead. For if the soul exists before birth, and in coming to life and being born can be born only from death and dying, must she not after death continue to exist, since she has to be born again?—Surely the proof which you desire has been already furnished. Still I suspect that you and Simmias would be glad to probe the

argument further. Like children, you are haunted with a fear that when the soul leaves the body, the wind may really blow her away and scatter her; especially if a man should happen to die in a great storm and not when the sky is calm.

Cebes answered with a smile: Then, Socrates, you must argue us out of our fears—and yet, strictly speaking, they are not our fears, but there is a child within us to whom death is a sort of hobgoblin; him too we must persuade not to be afraid when he is alone in the dark.

Socrates said: Let the voice of the charmer be applied daily until you have charmed away the fear.

And where shall we find a good charmer of our fears, Socrates, when you are gone?

Hellas, he replied, is a large place, Cebes, and has many good men, and there are barbarous races not a few: seek for him among them all, far and wide, sparing neither pains nor money; for there is no better way of spending your money. And you must seek among yourselves too; for you will not find others better able to make the search.

The search, replied Cebes, shall certainly be made. And now, if you please, let us return to the point of the argument at which we digressed.

By all means, replied Socrates; what else should I please?

Very good.

Must we not, said Socrates, ask ourselves what that is which, as we imagine, is liable to be scattered, and about which we fear? and what again is that about which we have no fear? And then we may proceed further to enquire whether that which suffers dispersion is or is not of the nature of soul—our hopes and fears as to our own souls will turn upon the answers to these questions.

Very true, he said.

Now the compound or composite may be supposed to be naturally capable, as of being compounded, so also of being dissolved; but that which is uncompounded, and that only, must be, if anything is, indissoluble.

Yes; I should imagine so, said Cebes.

And the uncompounded may be assumed to be the same and unchanging, whereas the compound is always changing and never the same.

I agree, he said.

Then now let us return to the previous discussion. Is that idea or essence, which in the dialectical process we define as essence or true existence—whether essence of equality, beauty, or anything else—are these essences, I say, liable at times to some degree of change? or are they each of them always what they are, having the same simple self-existent and unchanging forms, not admitting

vocabulary

ἄγριος wild, savage ~agriculture

αἴσθησις -εως (f) sense perception

ἀκάθαρτος not pure

ἀμήχανος helpless, impossible

~mechanism

ἀνθρώπειος human

ἀνθρώπινος human

ἀνόητος foolish

ἄνοια folly

ἀόρατος (αἶ) unseen, unseeing

ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of

ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart

ἅπτω set on fire; attach; mid: touch, seize ~haptic

ἄρα interrogative pcl

ἅτε as if; since

βίος life ~biology

βιόω live; (mp) make a living

~biology

γενναῖος noble, sincere ~genesis

δῆλος visible, conspicuous

διάγω lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

διαλύω break up; relax, weaken

διάνοια a thought; intelligence

δουλεύω serve, be a slave

ἐγγύς near

εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form

~oid

ἐχεῖσε thither

ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily

ἔλκω drag, pull, hoist; rape

ἐνιοι some

ἐννοέω consider

ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion

ἔξεστι it is allowed/possible

ἐπειδάν when, after

ἐπιεικής fitting ~icon

ἐπιλαμβάνω take, attack, seize

ἐπιμένω wait, stay ~remain

ἔρως -τος (m) love, desire ~erotic

εὐδαίμων blessed with a good

genius

ἐφάπτω fasten upon ~haptic

ἡγεμονεύω lead ~hegemony

θεραπεύω help, serve ~therapy

θνητός mortal ~euthanasia

ἱμάτιον toga, cloth

καθαρός clean, pure

κατάρα curse

κοινωνέω associate with

λογισμός calculation

μέθοδος investigation

μεθύω be soaked, drunk ~mead

μελετάω pursue, attend to, exercise

μελέτη care; practice

μηδέποτε never

μιαίνω stain ~miasma

μυέω initiate into

ναί yea

ναός (ἄ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia

νεῦρον tendon ~neuro

νή yea

ξέω smooth

οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone

ὁμώνυμος named alike ~name

ὅμως anyway, nevertheless

ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just

~orthogonal

ὀρθόω stand up

ὀστέον bone ~osteoporosis

οὐδαμὸς not anyone

οὐδέποτε never

οὐκοῦν not so?; and so

πάθημα -τος (n, 3) suffering, condition

πάλαι long ago ~paleo

πάλη wrestling ~Pallas

πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas

παντάπασιν altogether; yes, certainly

παράπαν completely
πλανάω lead astray; (mp) wander
 ~plankton
πλάνη wandering
πλάνης -τος (m, 3) wanderer
πότερος which, whichever of two
προσήκω belong to, it seems
προστάσσω post at, attach to,
 command
σήπω rot ~septic
σκοπάω watch, observe
σκοπέω behold, consider
συγγενής inborn, kin to
συγχωρέω accede, concede
συμπίπτω fall together, happen

συναθροίζω assemble, gather
σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion
συνεφέλκω pull after with
συχνός long; many; extensive
ταράσσω mess things up ~trachea
ταριχεύω preserve, embalm
τελευταίω bring about, finish
 ~apostle
φιλοσοφέω philosophize, study
φρόνιμος sensible, prudent
φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)
 ~physics
φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
ὡσαύτως in the same way

Τί δὲ τῶν πολλῶν καλῶν, οἷον ἀνθρώπων ἢ ἵππων ἢ ἱματίων ἢ ἄλλων ὄντων οὐκ οἰοῦνται τοιούτων, ἢ ἴσων ἢ καλῶν ἢ πάντων τῶν ἐκείνοις ὁμωνύμων;¹ ἄρα κατὰ ταῦτα ἔχει, ἢ πᾶν τοῦναντίον ἐκείνοις οὔτε αὐτὰ αὐτοῖς οὔτε ἀλλήλοις οὐδέποτε ὥς ἔπος εἰπεῖν οὐδαμῶς κατὰ ταῦτά;

Οὕτως αὖ, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, ταῦτα· οὐδέποτε ὡσαύτως ἔχει.

Οὐκοῦν τούτων μὲν κἂν ἄψαιο κἂν ἴδοις κἂν ταῖς ἄλλαις αἰσθήσεσιν αἰσθοιο, τῶν δὲ κατὰ ταῦτα ἐχόντων οὐκ ἔστιν ὅτῳ ποτ' ἂν ἄλλῳ ἐπιλάβοιο ἢ τῷ τῆς διανοίας λογισμῷ, ἀλλ' ἔστιν αἰδῆ τὰ τοιαῦτα καὶ οὐχ ὁρατά;

Παντάπασι, ἔφη, ἀληθῆ λέγεις.

Θῶμεν οὖν βούλει, ἔφη, δύο εἶδη τῶν ὄντων, τὸ μὲν ὁρατόν, τὸ δὲ αἰδές;

Θῶμεν, ἔφη.

Καὶ τὸ μὲν αἰδές αἰὲ κατὰ ταῦτα ἔχον, τὸ δὲ ὁρατὸν μηδέποτε κατὰ ταῦτά;

Καὶ τοῦτο, ἔφη, θῶμεν.

Φέρε δὴ, ἢ δ' ὅς, ἄλλο τι ἡμῶν αὐτῶν τὸ μὲν σῶμά ἐστι, τὸ δὲ ψυχή;

Οὐδὲν ἄλλο, ἔφη.

Ποτέρῳ οὖν ὁμοιότερον τῷ εἶδει φαμὲν εἶναι καὶ συγγενέστερον τὸ σῶμα;

Παντί, ἔφη, τοῦτό γε δῆλον, ὅτι τῷ ὁρατῷ.

Τί δὲ ἡ ψυχὴ; ὁρατὸν ἢ αἰδές;

Οὐχ ὑπ' ἀνθρώπων γε, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη.

¹ named alike

Ἄλλὰ μὴν ἡμεῖς γε τὰ ὁρατὰ καὶ τὰ μὴ τῇ τῶν ἀνθρώπων φύσει ἐλέγομεν· ἢ ἄλλη τινὶ οἷε;

Τῇ τῶν ἀνθρώπων.

Τί οὖν περὶ ψυχῆς λέγομεν; ὁρατὸν ἢ ἀόρατον εἶναι;

Οὐχ ὁρατόν.

Αἰδὲς ἄρα;

Ναί.

Ὅμοιότερον ἄρα ψυχὴ σώματός ἐστιν τῷ αἰδεῖ, τὸ δὲ τῷ ὁρατῷ.

Πᾶσα ἀνάγκη, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Οὐκοῦν καὶ τόδε πάλαι ἐλέγομεν, ὅτι ἢ ψυχὴ, ὅταν μὲν τῷ σώματι προσχρῆται εἰς τὸ σκοπεῖν τι ἢ διὰ τοῦ ὁρᾶν ἢ διὰ τοῦ ἀκούειν ἢ δι' ἄλλης τινὸς αἰσθήσεως— τοῦτο γάρ ἐστιν τὸ διὰ τοῦ σώματος, τὸ δι' αἰσθήσεως σκοπεῖν τι— τότε μὲν ἔλκεται ὑπὸ τοῦ σώματος εἰς τὰ οὐδέποτε κατὰ ταῦτ' ἔχοντα, καὶ αὐτὴ πλανᾶται καὶ ταράττεται καὶ εἰλιγγᾷ ὥσπερ μεθύουσα, ἅτε τοιούτων ἐφαπτομένη;

Πάνυ γε.

Ὅταν δέ γε αὐτὴ καθ' αὐτὴν σκοπῇ, ἐκείσε οἴχεται εἰς τὸ καθαρὸν τε καὶ αἰεὶ ὄν καὶ ἀθάνατον καὶ ὡσαύτως ἔχον, καὶ ὡς συγγενὴς οὔσα αὐτοῦ αἰεὶ μετ' ἐκείνου τε γίνεται, ὅταν περ αὐτὴ καθ' αὐτὴν γένηται καὶ ἐξῇ αὐτῇ, καὶ πέπαυταί τε τοῦ πλάνου καὶ περὶ ἐκείνα αἰεὶ κατὰ ταῦτ' ὡσαύτως ἔχει, ἅτε τοιούτων ἐφαπτομένη· καὶ τοῦτο αὐτῆς τὸ πάθημα² φρόνησις κέκληται;

Παντάπασιν, ἔφη, καλῶς καὶ ἀληθῆ λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Ποτέρῳ οὖν αὐ σοὶ δοκεῖ τῷ εἶδει καὶ ἐκ τῶν πρόσθεν καὶ ἐκ τῶν νῦν λεγομένων ψυχὴ ὁμοιότερον εἶναι καὶ συγγενέστερον;

² suffering, condition

Πᾶς ἂν μοι δοκεῖ, ἥ δ' ὅς, συγχωρήσαι, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐκ ταύτης τῆς μεθόδου,³ καὶ ὁ δυσμαθέστατος, ὅτι ὅλῳ καὶ παντὶ ὁμοιότερόν ἐστι ψυχῇ τῷ αἰεὶ ὡσαύτως ἔχοντι μᾶλλον ἢ τῷ μῇ.

Τί δὲ τὸ σῶμα;

Τῷ ἐτέρῳ.

Ὅρα δὴ καὶ τῇδε ὅτι ἐπειδὴν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ ὥσι ψυχῇ καὶ σῶμα, τῷ μὲν δουλεύειν καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἢ φύσις προσιτάττει, τῇ δὲ ἄρχειν καὶ δεσπόζειν· καὶ κατὰ ταῦτα αὐτότερόν σοι δοκεῖ ὅμοιον τῷ θείῳ εἶναι καὶ πότερον τῷ θνητῷ; ἢ οὐ δοκεῖ σοι τὸ μὲν θεῖον οἶον ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἡγεμονεύειν πεφυκέναι, τὸ δὲ θνητὸν ἄρχεσθαί τε καὶ δουλεύειν;

Ἔμοιγε.

Ποτέρῳ οὖν ἡ ψυχῇ ἔοικεν;

Δῆλα δὴ, ὦ Σώκρατες, ὅτι ἡ μὲν ψυχῇ τῷ θείῳ, τὸ δὲ σῶμα τῷ θνητῷ.

Σκόπει δὴ, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, εἰ ἐκ πάντων τῶν εἰρημένων τάδε ἡμῖν συμβαίνει, τῷ μὲν θείῳ καὶ ἀθανάτῳ καὶ νοητῷ καὶ μονοειδεῖ καὶ ἀδιαλύτῳ καὶ αἰεὶ ὡσαύτως κατὰ ταῦτα ἔχοντι ἑαυτῷ ὁμοιότατον εἶναι ψυχῇ, τῷ δὲ ἀνθρωπίνῳ καὶ θνητῷ καὶ πολυειδεῖ καὶ ἀνοήτῳ καὶ διαλυτῷ καὶ μηδέποτε κατὰ ταῦτα ἔχοντι ἑαυτῷ ὁμοιότατον αὐτὸ εἶναι σῶμα. ἔχομέν τι παρὰ ταῦτα ἄλλο λέγειν, ὦ φίλε Κέβης, ἢ οὐχ οὕτως ἔχει;

Οὐκ ἔχομεν.

Τί οὖν; τούτων οὕτως ἐχόντων ἄρ' οὐχὶ σώματι μὲν ταχὺ διαλύεσθαι προσήκει, ψυχῇ δὲ αὐτὸ παράπαν ἀδιαλύτῳ εἶναι ἢ ἐγγύς τι τούτου;

Πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

Ἐννοεῖς οὖν, ἔφη, ἐπειδὴν ἀποθάνῃ ὁ ἄνθρωπος, τὸ μὲν ὄρατόν αὐτοῦ, τὸ σῶμα, καὶ ἐν ὅρατῳ κείμενον, ὃ δὴ νεκρὸν καλοῦμεν, ὃ προσήκει διαλύεσθαι καὶ διαπίπτειν καὶ διαπνεῖσθαι, οὐκ εὐθὺς τούτων οὐδὲν

³ investigation

πέπονθεν, ἀλλ' ἐπιεικῶς συχνὸν ἐπιμένει χρόνον, ἐὰν μὲν τις καὶ χαριέντως ἔχων τὸ σῶμα τελευτήσῃ καὶ ἐν τοιαύτῃ ὥρᾳ, καὶ πάνυ μάλα· συμπεσὸν γὰρ τὸ σῶμα καὶ ταριχευθέν,⁴ ὥσπερ οἱ ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ ταριχευθέντες, ὀλίγου ὅλον μένει ἀμήχανον ὅσον χρόνον, ἓνια δὲ μέρη τοῦ σώματος, καὶ ἂν σαπῇ, ὅσῳ τε καὶ νεῦρα⁵ καὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα πάντα, ὅμως ὥς ἔπος εἰπεῖν ἀθάνατά ἐστιν· ἢ οὐ;

Ναί.

Ἡ δὲ ψυχὴ ἄρα, τὸ αἰδές, τὸ εἰς τοιοῦτον τόπον ἕτερον οἰχόμενον γενναῖον καὶ καθαρὸν καὶ αἰδῆ, εἰς Ἄιδου ὡς ἀληθῶς, παρὰ τὸν ἀγαθὸν καὶ φρόνιμον θεόν, οἷ, ἂν θεὸς θέλῃ, αὐτίκα καὶ τῇ ἐμῇ ψυχῇ ἰτέον, αὕτη δὲ δὴ ἡμῖν ἡ τοιαύτη καὶ οὕτω πεφυκυῖα ἀπαλλαττομένη τοῦ σώματος εὐθὺς διαπεφύσεται καὶ ἀπόλωλεν, ὥς φασιν οἱ πολλοὶ ἄνθρωποι; πολλοῦ γε δεῖ, ὦ φίλε Κέβης τε καὶ Σιμμία, ἀλλὰ πολλῶ μᾶλλον ὧδ' ἔχει· ἐὰν μὲν καθαρὰ ἀπαλλάττηται, μηδὲν τοῦ σώματος συνεφέλκουσα, ἅτε οὐδὲν κοινωνοῦσα αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ βίῳ ἐκοῦσα εἶναι, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσα αὐτὸ καὶ συνηθροισμένη αὐτῇ εἰς ἑαυτήν, ἅτε μελετώσα αἰεὶ τοῦτο— τὸ δὲ οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἐστὶν ἢ ὀρθῶς φιλοσοφοῦσα καὶ τῷ ὄντι τεθνάναι μελετώσα ῥαδίως· ἢ οὐ τοῦτ' ἂν εἴη μελέτη θανάτου;

Παντάπασι γε.

Οὐκοῦν οὕτω μὲν ἔχουσα εἰς τὸ ὅμοιον αὐτῇ τὸ αἰδές ἀπέρχεται, τὸ θεῖόν τε καὶ ἀθάνατον καὶ φρόνιμον, οἷ ἀφικομένη ὑπάρχει αὐτῇ εὐδαίμονι εἶναι, πλάνης καὶ ἀνοίας καὶ φόβων καὶ ἀγρίων ἐρώτων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων κακῶν τῶν ἀνθρωπείων ἀπηλλαγμένη, ὥσπερ δὲ λέγεται κατὰ τῶν μεμνημένων, ὡς ἀληθῶς τὸν λοιπὸν χρόνον μετὰ θεῶν διάγουσα; οὕτω φῶμεν, ὦ Κέβης, ἢ ἄλλως;

Οὕτω νῆ Δία, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

Ἐὰν δέ γε οἶμαι μεμασμένη⁶ καὶ ἀκάθαρτος τοῦ σώματος ἀπαλλάττηται, ἅτε τῷ σώματι αἰεὶ συνοῦσα καὶ τοῦτο θεραπεύουσα

⁴ preserve, embalm ⁵ tendon ⁶ stain

of variation at all, or in any way, or at any time?

They must be always the same, Socrates, replied Cebes.

And what would you say of the many beautiful—whether men or horses or garments or any other things which are named by the same names and may be called equal or beautiful,—are they all unchanging and the same always, or quite the reverse? May they not rather be described as almost always changing and hardly ever the same, either with themselves or with one another?

The latter, replied Cebes; they are always in a state of change.

And these you can touch and see and perceive with the senses, but the unchanging things you can only perceive with the mind—they are invisible and are not seen?

That is very true, he said.

Well, then, added Socrates, let us suppose that there are two sorts of existences—one seen, the other unseen.

Let us suppose them.

The seen is the changing, and the unseen is the unchanging?

That may be also supposed.

And, further, is not one part of us body, another part soul?

To be sure.

And to which class is the body more alike and akin?

Clearly to the seen—no one can doubt that.

And is the soul seen or not seen?

Not by man, Socrates.

And what we mean by ‘seen’ and ‘not seen’ is that which is or is not visible to the eye of man?

Yes, to the eye of man.

And is the soul seen or not seen?

Not seen.

Unseen then?

Yes.

Then the soul is more like to the unseen, and the body to the seen?

That follows necessarily, Socrates.

And were we not saying long ago that the soul when using the body as an instrument of perception, that is to say, when using the sense of sight or hearing or some other sense (for the meaning of perceiving through the body is perceiving through the senses)—were we not saying that the soul too is then dragged by the body into the region of the changeable, and wanders and is confused; the world spins round her, and she is like a drunkard, when she touches change?

Very true.

But when returning into herself she reflects, then she passes into the other world, the region of purity, and eternity, and immortality, and unchangeableness, which are her kindred, and with them she ever lives, when she is by herself and is not let or hindered; then she ceases from her erring ways, and being in communion with the unchanging is unchanging. And this state of the soul is called wisdom?

That is well and truly said, Socrates, he replied.

And to which class is the soul more nearly alike and akin, as far as may be inferred from this argument, as well as from the preceding one?

I think, Socrates, that, in the opinion of every one who follows the argument, the soul will be infinitely more like the unchangeable—even the most stupid person will not deny that.

And the body is more like the changing?

Yes.

Yet once more consider the matter in another light: When the soul and the body are united, then nature orders the soul to rule and govern, and the body to obey and serve. Now which of these two functions is akin to the divine? and which to the mortal? Does not the divine appear to you to be that which naturally orders and rules, and the mortal to be that which is subject and servant?

True.

And which does the soul resemble?

The soul resembles the divine, and the body the mortal—there can be no doubt of that, Socrates.

Then reflect, Cebes: of all which has been said is not this the conclusion?—that the soul is in the very likeness of the divine, and immortal, and intellectual, and uniform, and indissoluble, and unchangeable; and that the body is in the very likeness of the human, and mortal, and unintellectual, and multiform, and dissoluble, and changeable. Can this, my dear Cebes, be denied?

It cannot.

But if it be true, then is not the body liable to speedy dissolution? and is not the soul almost or altogether indissoluble?

Certainly.

And do you further observe, that after a man is dead, the body, or visible part of him, which is lying in the visible world, and is called a corpse, and would naturally be dissolved and decomposed and dissipated, is not dissolved or decomposed at once, but may remain for a for some time, nay even for a long time, if the constitution be sound at the time of death, and the season of the year favourable? For the body when shrunk and embalmed, as the manner is in Egypt, may remain almost entire through infinite ages; and even in decay, there are still some portions, such as the bones and ligaments, which are practically indestructible:—Do you agree?

Yes.

And is it likely that the soul, which is invisible, in passing to the place of the true Hades, which like her is invisible, and pure, and noble, and on her way to the good and wise God, whither, if God will, my soul is also soon to go,—that the soul, I repeat, if this be her nature and origin, will be blown away and destroyed immediately on quitting the body, as the many say? That can never be, my dear Simmias and Cebes. The truth rather is, that the soul which is pure at departing and draws after her no bodily taint, having never voluntarily during life had connection with the body, which she is ever avoiding, herself gathered into herself;—and making such abstraction her perpetual study—which means that she has been a true disciple of philosophy; and therefore has in fact been always engaged in the practice of dying? For is not philosophy the practice of death?—Certainly—That soul, I say, herself invisible, departs to the invisible world—to the divine and immortal and rational: thither arriving, she is secure of bliss and is released from the error and folly of men, their fears and wild passions and all other human ills, and for ever dwells, as they say of the initiated, in company with the gods (compare Apol.). Is not

this true, Cebes?

Yes, said Cebes, beyond a doubt.

But the soul which has been polluted, and is impure at

vocabulary

ἄγχι near, nigh ~angina
 ἀδικία injustice, offence
 ἄδοξία ill repute
 ἀθροίζω press close together; (mid)
 muster
 αἰρετός takeable, desirable ~heresy
 αἴσθησις -εως (f) sense perception
 ἄλλοσε elsewhere ~alien
 ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of
 course
 ἄμοιρος bereft, exempt
 ἀναλίσκω (αἶ) consume, spend on
 ἀναχωρέω return, retreat ~heir
 ἀνδρεῖος of a man, manly
 ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
 ἀνθρώπινος human
 ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be
 freed, depart
 ἀπάτη trick, fraud, deceit
 ~apatosaurus
 ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be
 at some distance
 ἀπολύω loose, free from ~loose
 ἄρπαγή seizure; rape
 ἀτιμία (τι) dishonor
 ἀφροδίσιος sexual
 βαρύνω (ῥ) oppress ~baritone
 βαρύς heavy ~baritone
 βέλτιστος best, noblest
 βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
 γεώδης earthy
 γοητεύω bewitch
 δεινότης -τος (f, 3) harshness,
 cleverness
 δημοτικός common, popular,
 democratic
 διαδέω bandage, bind
 διαλαμβάνω distribute
 ἐθίζω accustom

ἔθος ἔθεος (n, 3) custom, habit
 ~ethology
 εἶδωλον phantom, unreal image
 ~wit
 εἰκός likely
 ἔλκω drag, pull, hoist; rape
 ἐμποιέω make inside of ~poet
 ἐμφύω plant; cling ~physics
 ἐναντιόομαι oppose, contradict
 ἐναργής visible, clear ~Argentina
 ἐνδείκνυμι (ῥ) address, consider
 ἐνδέω tie to, entangle; lack
 ἐνδύω go into, put on
 ἔξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion
 ἐξίημι send forth, allow forth ~jet
 ἐπιθυμέω (ῥ) wish, covet
 ἐπιθυμία (ῥ) desire, thing desired
 ἐπιτηδεύω practice, pursue
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
 ἔσχατος farthest, last
 εὐδαίμων blessed with a good
 genius
 ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy
 ~hedonism
 ἡδονή pleasure
 ἡμερος gentle; (animals)
 domesticated
 ἡρέμα quietly, gently, slowly
 θέμις -τος (f) custom, law
 ἰέραξ ἰρηκος (m) hawk, falcon
 ἰκτινος (τι) kite (bird)
 καθαρός cleansing, purification
 καθαρός clean, pure
 καθοράω look down ~panorama
 καρτερέω be patient
 καταδέω tie up; fall short
 καταίρω swoop; land
 καταράομαι (αἶα) curse
 κόσμιος well-behaved
 κυλινδέω roll ~cylinder
 λογίζομαι reckon, consider
 λύκος wolf ~lycanthropy

λυπέω (ὑ) annoy, distress
 λύπη distress
 μελετάω pursue, attend to, exercise
 μελέτη care; practice
 μέλισσα bee
 μέλος -ους (n, 3) limb; melody
 μεστός full
 μετέχω partake of
 μέτριος medium, moderate
 μηδέποτε never
 μισέω (ἰ) hate, wish to prevent
 ~misogyny
 μνήμα -τος (n, 3) reminder,
 memorial ~mnemonic
 μύρμηξ ant
 νοσέω be sick, be mad, suffer
 ὁμιλία (τι) intercourse, company
 ὄμμα -τος (n, 3) eye
 ὁμοιότης -τος (f, 3) resemblance
 ὁμότροπος of the same way,
 customs
 ὁμότροφος reared or bred together
 ὀνομαί blame ~name
 ὄνος (f) donkey ~onager
 ὅπη wherever, however
 ὅποιος whatever kind
 ὀρθόω stand up
 οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
 οὖς οὖατος (n) ear
 πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience,
 passion, condition
 παντελής complete, absolute
 παρακελεύομαι recommend,
 encourage
 παραμυθέομαι (ὑ) urge, advise
 πενία poverty ~osteopenia

πῇ where? how?
 πλανάω lead astray; (mp) wander
 ~plankton
 πλάσσω form ~plaster
 ποῖ whither? how long?
 πρέπω be conspicuous, preeminent
 ~refurbish
 προτιμάω (ἰ) prefer, pay attention to
 σκοπάω watch, observe
 σκοπέω behold, consider
 σπείρω sow ~diaspora
 συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion
 σύμφυτος congenital, innate
 σύνειμι be with; have sex ~ion
 συνίημι send together; hear, notice,
 understand ~jet
 συνουσία society, sex
 σφηκώ pinch, narrow ~sphexish
 σφήξ -κός (m) wasp ~sphexish
 σωφροσύνη discretion, moderation
 τάφος (m) funeral, grave; (n)
 astonishment
 τίνω (ἰ) pay, atone for; (mp) punish
 τοιγάρ therefore
 τρέμω tremble in fear ~tremble
 τροφή food, upkeep ~atrophy
 τυραννίς -δος (f) tyranny
 ὕβρις -εως (f) pride, insolence,
 outrage
 ὑφηγέομαι lead the way
 φάντασμα -τος (n, 3) ghost,
 apparition
 φαῦλος trifling
 φιλομαθής knowledge-loving
 φιλοσοφέω philosophize, study
 φιλόσοφος wisdom-loving

καὶ ἐρώσα καὶ γοητευομένη¹ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ὑπό τε τῶν ἐπιθυμιῶν καὶ ἡδονῶν, ὥστε μηδὲν ἄλλο δοκεῖν εἶναι ἀληθὲς ἀλλ' ἢ τὸ σωματοειδές, οὗ τις ἂν ἄψαιτο καὶ ἴδοι καὶ πίοι καὶ φάγοι καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἀφροδίσια² χρήσαιτο, τὸ δὲ τοῖς ὄμμασι σκοτῶδες καὶ αἰδές, νοητὸν δὲ καὶ φιλοσοφία αἰρετόν,³ τοῦτο δὲ εἰθισμένη μισεῖν τε καὶ τρέμειν⁴ καὶ φεύγειν, οὕτω δὴ ἔχουσιν οἷι ψυχὴν αὐτὴν καθ' αὐτὴν εἰλικρινῇ ἀπαλλάξεσθαι;

Οὐδ' ὅπωςτιοῦν, ἔφη.

Ἀλλὰ καὶ διελημμένην γε οἶμαι ὑπὸ τοῦ σωματοειδοῦς, ὃ αὐτῇ ἡ ὁμλία⁵ τε καὶ συνουσία τοῦ σώματος διὰ τὸ αἰεὶ συνεῖναι καὶ διὰ τὴν πολλὴν μελέτην ἐνεποίησε σύμφυτον;

Πάνυ γε.

Ἐμβριθεὶς δέ γε, ὦ φίλε, τοῦτο οἶεσθαι χρή εἶναι καὶ βαρὺ καὶ γεῶδες καὶ ὁρατόν· ὃ δὴ καὶ ἔχουσα ἡ τοιαύτη ψυχὴ βαρύνεται⁶ τε καὶ ἔλκεται πάλιν εἰς τὸν ὁρατὸν τόπον φόβῳ τοῦ αἰδοῦς τε καὶ Ἄιδου, ὥσπερ λέγεται, περὶ τὰ μνήματά τε καὶ τοὺς τάφους κυλινδουμένη, περὶ ἃ δὴ καὶ ὦφθη ἅττα ψυχῶν σκιοειδῆ φαντάσματα,⁷ οἷα παρέχονται αἱ τοιαῦται ψυχαὶ εἶδωλα, αἱ μὴ καθαρῶς ἀπολυθεῖσαι ἀλλὰ τοῦ ὁρατοῦ μετέχουσαι, διὸ καὶ ὁρῶνται.

Εἰκός γε, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Εἰκὸς μέντοι, ὦ Κέβης· καὶ οὐ τί γε τὰς τῶν ἀγαθῶν αὐτὰς εἶναι, ἀλλὰ τὰς τῶν φαύλων, αἱ περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀναγκάζονται πλανᾶσθαι δίκην τίνουσαι τῆς προτέρας τροφῆς κακῆς οὔσης. καὶ μέχρι γε τούτου πλανῶνται, ἕως ἂν τῇ τοῦ συνεπακολουθοῦντος, τοῦ σωματοειδοῦς, ἐπιθυμία πάλιν ἐνδεθῶσιν εἰς σῶμα· ἐνδοῦνται δέ, ὥσπερ εἰκός, εἰς τοιαῦτα ἥθη ὅποι' ἅτ' ἂν καὶ μεμελετηκῶσι τύχωσιν ἐν τῷ βίῳ.

Τὰ ποῖα δὴ ταῦτα λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες;

¹ bewitch ² sexual ³ takeable, desirable ⁴ tremble in fear

⁵ intercourse, company ⁶ oppress ⁷ ghost, apparition

Οἷον τοὺς μὲν γαστριμαργίας τε καὶ ὕβρεις καὶ φιλοποσίας
μεμελετηκότας καὶ μὴ διηυλαβημένους εἰς τὰ τῶν ὄνων γένη καὶ τῶν
τοιούτων θηρίων εἰκὸς ἐνδύεσθαι.

Ἦ οὐκ οἶει;

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν εἰκὸς λέγεις.

Τοὺς δέ γε ἀδικίας τε καὶ τυραννίδας καὶ ἀρπαγὰς⁸ προτετμηκότας
εἰς τὰ τῶν λύκων⁹ τε καὶ ἱεράκων¹⁰ καὶ ἰκτίνων¹¹ γένη· ἢ ποῖ¹² ἂν
ἄλλοσέ¹³ φαμεν τὰς τοιαύτας ἵεναι;

Ἀμέλει, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα.

Οὐκοῦν, ἦ δ' ὅς, δηλαδὴ καὶ τᾶλλα ἧ ἂν ἕκαστα ἴοι κατὰ τὰς αὐτῶν
ὁμοιότητος τῆς μελέτης;

Δήλον δῆ, ἔφη· πῶς δ' οὐ;

Οὐκοῦν εὐδαιμονέστατοι, ἔφη, καὶ τούτων εἰσὶ καὶ εἰς βέλτιστον τόπον
ἰόντες οἱ τὴν δημοτικὴν¹⁴ καὶ πολιτικὴν ἀρετὴν ἐπιτετηδευκότες, ἦν
δὴ καλοῦσι σωφροσύνην τε καὶ δικαιοσύνην, ἐξ ἑθους τε καὶ μελέτης
γεγονυῖαν ἄνευ φιλοσοφίας τε καὶ νοῦ;

Πῇ δὴ οὗτοι εὐδαιμονέστατοι;

Ὅτι τούτους εἰκὸς ἐστὶν εἰς τοιοῦτον πάλιν ἀφικνεῖσθαι πολιτικὸν
καὶ ἥμερον¹⁵ γένος, ἢ που μελιτῶν ἢ σφηκῶν ἢ μυρμήκων,¹⁶ καὶ εἰς
ταυτόν γε πάλιν τὸ ἀνθρώπινον γένος, καὶ γίγνεσθαι ἐξ αὐτῶν ἄνδρας
μετρίους.

Εἰκός.

Εἰς δέ γε θεῶν γένος μὴ φιλοσοφήσαντι καὶ παντελῶς καθαρῶ
ἀπιόντι οὐ θέμις ἀφικνεῖσθαι ἀλλ' ἢ τῷ φιλομαθεῖ. ἀλλὰ τούτων
ἔνεκα, ὦ ἐταῖρε Συμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, οἱ ὀρθῶς φιλόσοφοι ἀπέχονται

⁸ seizure; rape ⁹ wolf ¹⁰ hawk, falcon ¹¹ kite (bird) ¹² whither?
how long? ¹³ elsewhere ¹⁴ common, popular, democratic
¹⁵ gentle; (animals) domesticated ¹⁶ ant

τῶν κατὰ τὸ σῶμα ἐπιθυμῶν ἀπασῶν καὶ καρτεροῦσι καὶ οὐ παραδιδόασιν αὐταῖς ἑαυτούς, οὗ τι οἰκοφθορίαν τε καὶ πεινίαν φοβούμενοι, ὥσπερ οἱ πολλοὶ καὶ φιλοχρήματοι· οὐδὲ αὖ ἀτιμίαν¹⁷ τε καὶ ἀδοξίαν¹⁸ μοχθηρίας δεδιότες, ὥσπερ οἱ φίλαρχοί τε καὶ φιλότιμοι, ἔπειτα ἀπέχονται αὐτῶν.

Οὐ γὰρ ἂν πρόποι, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, ὁ Κέβης.

Οὐ μέντοι μὰ Δία, ἦ δ' ὅς. τοιγάρτοι τούτοις μὲν ἄπασιν, ὦ Κέβης, ἐκείνοι οἷς τι μέλει τῆς ἑαυτῶν ψυχῆς ἀλλὰ μὴ σώματι πλάττοντες ζῶσι, χαίρειν εἰπόντες, οὐ κατὰ ταῦτα πορεύονται αὐτοῖς ὥς οὐκ εἰδῶσιν ὅπῃ ἔρχονται, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἡγούμενοι οὐ δεῖν ἐναντία τῇ φιλοσοφίᾳ πράττειν καὶ τῇ ἐκείνης λύσει τε καὶ καθααρῶ ταύτῃ δὴ τρέπονται ἐκείνῃ ἐπόμενοι, ἦ ἐκείνῃ ὑφηγεῖται.

Πῶς, ὦ Σώκρατες;

Ἐγὼ ἐρῶ, ἔφη. γινώσκουσι γάρ, ἦ δ' ὅς, οἱ φιλομαθεῖς ὅτι παραλαβοῦσα αὐτῶν τὴν ψυχὴν ἢ φιλοσοφία ἀτεχνῶς διαδεδεμένην ἐν τῷ σώματι καὶ προσκεκολλημένην, ἀναγκαζομένην δὲ ὥσπερ διὰ εἵργμου διὰ τούτου σκοπεῖσθαι τὰ ὄντα ἀλλὰ μὴ αὐτὴν δι' αὐτῆς, καὶ ἐν πάσῃ ἀμαθίᾳ κυλινδουμένην, καὶ τοῦ εἵργμου τὴν δεινότητα¹⁹ κατιδοῦσα ὅτι δι' ἐπιθυμίας ἐστίν, ὥς ἂν μάλιστα αὐτὸς ὁ δεδεμένος συλλήπτωρ εἴῃ τοῦ δεδέσθαι, — ὅπερ οὖν λέγω, γινώσκουσιν οἱ φιλομαθεῖς ὅτι οὕτω παραλαβοῦσα ἢ φιλοσοφία ἔχουσιν αὐτῶν τὴν ψυχὴν ἡρέμα παραμυθεῖται καὶ λύειν ἐπιχειρεῖ, ἐνδεικνυμένη ὅτι ἀπάτης μὲν μεστή ἢ διὰ τῶν ὁμμάτων σκέψις, ἀπάτης δὲ ἢ διὰ τῶν ὥτων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων αἰσθήσεων, πείθουσα δὲ ἐκ τούτων μὲν ἀναχωρεῖν, ὅσον μὴ ἀνάγκη αὐτοῖς χρησθαι, αὐτὴν δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν συλλέγεσθαι καὶ ἀθροῖζεσθαι παρακελευομένη, πιστεύειν δὲ μηδενὶ ἄλλῳ ἄλλ' ἢ αὐτὴν αὐτῇ, ὅτι ἂν νοήσῃ αὐτὴ καθ' αὐτὴν αὐτὸ καθ' αὐτὸ τῶν ὄντων· ὅτι δ' ἂν δι' ἄλλων σκοπῇ ἐν ἄλλοις ὃν ἄλλο, μηδὲν ἡγεῖσθαι ἀληθές· εἶναι δὲ τὸ μὲν τοιοῦτον αἰσθητόν τε καὶ ὁρατόν, ὃ δὲ αὐτὴ ὁρᾶ νοητόν τε καὶ αἰδέσ. ταύτῃ οὖν τῇ λύσει οὐκ

¹⁷ dishonor ¹⁸ ill repute ¹⁹ harshness, cleverness

οιούμενη δεῖν ἐναντιοῦσθαι ἢ τοῦ ὡς ἀληθῶς φιλοσόφου ψυχὴ οὕτως ἀπέχεται τῶν ἡδονῶν τε καὶ ἐπιθυμιῶν καὶ λυπῶν καὶ φόβων καθ' ὅσον δύναται, λογιζομένη ὅτι, ἐπειδὴν τις σφόδρα ἡσθῇ ἢ φοβηθῇ ἢ λυπηθῇ ἢ ἐπιθυμήσῃ, οὐδὲν τοσοῦτον κακὸν ἔπαθεν ἀπ' αὐτῶν ὧν ἂν τις οἰηθείη, οἶον ἢ νοσήσας²⁰ ἢ τι ἀναλώσας διὰ τὰς ἐπιθυμίας, ἀλλ' ὁ πάντων μέγιστόν τε κακῶν καὶ ἔσχατόν ἐστι, τοῦτο πάσχει καὶ οὐ λογίζεται αὐτό.

Τί τοῦτο, ὦ Σώκρατες; ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

Ὅτι ψυχὴ παντὸς ἀνθρώπου ἀναγκάζεται ἅμα τε ἡσθῆναι σφόδρα ἢ λυπηθῆναι ἐπὶ τῷ καὶ ἡγείσθαι περὶ ὃ ἂν μάλιστα τοῦτο πάσχει, τοῦτο ἐναργέστατόν τε εἶναι καὶ ἀληθέστατον, οὐχ οὕτως ἔχον· ταῦτα δὲ μάλιστα τὰ ὁράτά· ἢ οὐ;

Πάνυ γε.

Οὐκοῦν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πάθει μάλιστα καταδεῖται ψυχὴ ὑπὸ σώματος;

Πῶς δῆ;

Ὅτι ἐκάστη ἡδονὴ καὶ λύπη ὥσπερ ἦλον ἔχουσα προσηλοῖ αὐτὴν πρὸς τὸ σῶμα καὶ προσπερονᾷ καὶ ποιεῖ σωματοειδῇ, δοξάζουσιν ταῦτα ἀληθῆ εἶναι ἅπερ ἂν καὶ τὸ σῶμα φῇ. ἐκ γὰρ τοῦ ὁμοδοξεῖν τῷ σώματι καὶ τοῖς αὐτοῖς χαίρειν ἀναγκάζεται οἶμαι ὁμότροπός²¹ τε καὶ ὁμότροφος²² γίνεσθαι καὶ οἷα μηδέποτε εἰς Ἄιδου καθαρῶς ἀφικέσθαι, ἀλλὰ αἰεὶ τοῦ σώματος ἀναπλέα ἐξιέναι, ὥστε ταχὺ πάλιν πίπτειν εἰς ἄλλο σῶμα καὶ ὥσπερ σπειρομένη ἐμφύεσθαι, καὶ ἐκ τούτων ἄμοιρος²³ εἶναι τῆς τοῦ θεοῦ τε καὶ καθαροῦ καὶ μονοειδοῦς συνουσίας.

Ἀληθέστατα, ἔφη, λέγεις, ὁ Κέβης, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Τούτων τοίνυν ἕνεκα, ὦ Κέβης, οἱ δικαίως φιλομαθεῖς κόσμοι²⁴ εἰσι καὶ ἀνδρεῖοι,²⁵ οὐχ ὧν οἱ πολλοὶ ἕνεκά φασιν· ἢ σὺ οἶε;

²⁰ be sick, be mad, suffer ²¹ of the same way, customs ²² reared or bred together ²³ bereft, exempt ²⁴ well-behaved ²⁵ of a man, manly

the time of her departure, and is the companion and servant of the body always, and is in love with and fascinated by the body and by the desires and pleasures of the body, until she is led to believe that the truth only exists in a bodily form, which a man may touch and see and taste, and use for the purposes of his lusts,—the soul, I mean, accustomed to hate and fear and avoid the intellectual principle, which to the bodily eye is dark and invisible, and can be attained only by philosophy;—do you suppose that such a soul will depart pure and unalloyed?

Impossible, he replied.

She is held fast by the corporeal, which the continual association and constant care of the body have wrought into her nature.

Very true.

And this corporeal element, my friend, is heavy and weighty and earthy, and is that element of sight by which a soul is depressed and dragged down again into the visible world, because she is afraid of the invisible and of the world below—prowling about tombs and sepulchres, near which, as they tell us, are seen certain ghostly apparitions of souls which have not departed pure, but are cloyed with sight and therefore visible.

(Compare Milton, *Comus*:—‘But when lust, By unchaste looks, loose gestures, and foul talk, But most by lewd and lavish act of sin, Lets in defilement to the inward parts, The soul grows clotted by contagion, Imbodies, and imbrutes, till she quite lose, The divine property of her first being. Such are those thick and gloomy shadows damp Oft seen in charnel vaults and sepulchres, Lingering, and sitting by a new made grave, As loath to leave the body that it lov’d, And linked itself by carnal sensuality To a degenerate and degraded state.’)

That is very likely, Socrates.

Yes, that is very likely, Cebes; and these must be the souls, not of the good, but of the evil, which are compelled to wander about such places in payment of the penalty of their former evil way of life; and they continue to wander until through the craving after the corporeal which never leaves them, they are imprisoned finally in another body. And they may be supposed to find their prisons in the same natures which they have had in their former lives.

What natures do you mean, Socrates?

What I mean is that men who have followed after gluttony, and wantonness, and drunkenness, and have had no thought of avoiding them, would pass into asses and animals of that sort. What do you think?

I think such an opinion to be exceedingly probable.

And those who have chosen the portion of injustice, and tyranny, and violence, will pass into wolves, or into hawks and kites; — whither else can we suppose them to go?

Yes, said Cebes; with such natures, beyond question.

And there is no difficulty, he said, in assigning to all of them places answering to their several natures and propensities?

There is not, he said.

Some are happier than others; and the happiest both in themselves and in the place to which they go are those who have practised the civil and social virtues which are called temperance and justice, and are acquired by habit and attention without philosophy and mind. (Compare Republic.)

Why are they the happiest?

Because they may be expected to pass into some gentle and social kind which is like their own, such as bees or wasps or ants, or back again into the form of man, and just and moderate men may be supposed to spring from them.

Very likely.

No one who has not studied philosophy and who is not entirely pure at the time of his departure is allowed to enter the company of the Gods, but the lover of knowledge only. And this is the reason, Simmias and Cebes, why the true votaries of philosophy abstain from all fleshly lusts, and hold out against them and refuse to give themselves up to them, — not because they fear poverty or the ruin of their families, like the lovers of money, and the world in general; nor like the lovers of power and honour, because they dread the dishonour or disgrace of evil deeds.

No, Socrates, that would not become them, said Cebes.

No indeed, he replied; and therefore they who have any care of their own souls, and do not merely live moulding and fashioning the body, say farewell to all this; they will not walk in the ways of the blind: and when philosophy offers them purification and release from evil, they feel that they ought not to resist her influence, and whither she leads they turn and follow.

What do you mean, Socrates?

I will tell you, he said. The lovers of knowledge are conscious that the soul was simply fastened and glued to the body — until philosophy received her, she could only view real existence through the bars of a prison, not

in and through herself; she was wallowing in the mire of every sort of ignorance; and by reason of lust had become the principal accomplice in her own captivity. This was her original state; and then, as I was saying, and as the lovers of knowledge are well aware, philosophy, seeing how terrible was her confinement, of which she was to herself the cause, received and gently comforted her and sought to release her, pointing out that the eye and the ear and the other senses are full of deception, and persuading her to retire from them, and abstain from all but the necessary use of them, and be gathered up and collected into herself, bidding her trust in herself and her own pure apprehension of pure existence, and to mistrust whatever comes to her through other channels and is subject to variation; for such things are visible and tangible, but what she sees in her own nature is intelligible and invisible. And the soul of the true philosopher thinks that she ought not to resist this deliverance, and therefore abstains from pleasures and desires and pains and fears, as far as she is able; reflecting that when a man has great joys or sorrows or fears or desires, he suffers from them, not merely the sort of evil which might be anticipated—as for example, the loss of his health or property which he has sacrificed to his lusts—but an evil greater far, which is the greatest and worst of all evils, and one of which he never thinks.

What is it, Socrates? said Cebes.

The evil is that when the feeling of pleasure or pain is most intense, every soul of man imagines the objects of this intense feeling to be then plainest and truest: but this is not so, they are really the things of sight.

Very true.

And is not this the state in which the soul is most enthralled by the body?

How so?

Why, because each pleasure and pain is a sort of nail which nails and rivets the soul to the body, until she becomes like the body, and believes that to be true which the body affirms to be true; and from agreeing with the body and having the same delights she is obliged to have the same habits and haunts, and is not likely ever to be pure at her departure to the world below, but is always infected by the body; and so she sinks into another body and there germinates and grows, and has therefore no part in the communion of the divine and pure and simple.

Most true, Socrates, answered Cebes.

vocabulary

ἀηδής unpleasant
 ἀηδών -όνος (f, 3) nightingale
 αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology
 ἀκίνδυνος (ῶ) safe
 ἄμετρος immeasurable, immoderate
 ἀνατίθηναι consecrate, lay on,
 impute; (mp) reproach
 ἀνθρώπινος human
 ἀόρατος (αᾶ) unseen, unseeing
 ἀπαλλαγὴ relief, escape
 ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
 ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be
 freed, depart
 ἀπεῖπον refuse, renounce, declare
 ἀπιστέω disbelieve ~stand
 ἀπιστία disbelief, distrust
 ἀποδείκνυμι (ῶ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
 ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
 ἀπορέω be confused, distressed
 ἀρμόζω fit together; be well fitted to
 ~harmony
 ἀρμονία fastener; agreement
 ~harmony
 ἄρνυμαι get, win
 ἀσθενής weak
 ἀσώματος incorporeal
 ἅτε as if; since
 ἀφοράω look away, at ~panorama
 βέβαιος steadfast; sure
 βέλτιστος best, noblest
 βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
 γαλήνη stillness of wind or sea
 γεώδης earthy
 γηθέω rejoice, exult ~joy
 γοῦν at least then
 δεσπότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot
 δημιουργός public worker
 ~ergonomics
 δῆτα emphatic δῆ

διάκειμαι be in a condition
 διαπέταμαι fly across, through
 ~petal
 διαπλέω sail through
 διαπορεύω carry over, through
 διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish
 ~practice
 διαρρήγνυμι (ῶ) break through
 διασπάω tear apart ~spatula
 διατέμνω cut apart
 διαφερόντως differently
 διέξιμι pass through; recount ~ion
 δύσκολος hard to please;
 troublesome
 ἐγγίγνομαι live in ~genus
 ἐγκαλέω demand payment; accuse
 ἔγκλημα -τος (n, 3) accusation
 εἰκὼν -όνος (f, 3) image, likeness
 εἴωθα be accustomed, in the habit
 ἐλέγχω shame; try, examine
 ἐνδεής inadequate
 ἑνδεκα eleven ~decimal
 ἐνθυμέομαι (ῶ) take to heart
 ἐντείνω tauten ~tend
 ἐπαισχύνομαι be ashamed of
 ἐπισκέπτομαι look upon, inspect
 ἐπισκοπέω look upon, inspect
 ἐπιτείνω intensify
 ἐπιτηδεύω practice, pursue
 ἔποψ hoopoe bird
 εὐπορέω prosper, abound in, supply
 εὐπορος easily passed; rich
 ἡδονή pleasure
 ἡρέμα quietly, gently, slowly
 θερμός warm, hot ~thermos
 θρηνέω sing a dirge ~threnody
 ἱστός mast, loom ~stand
 καίπερ even if
 κατάγνυμι (ῶ) break up, shatter
 κατάγω lead down/home; land
 ~demagogue
 κατακαίω burn down ~caustic

καταψεύδω (mp) lie about
 κεράννυμι (ῥ) mix ~crater
 κράς -τός (f, 3) head
 κύκνος swan ~Cygnus
 λείψανον remnant
 λογίζομαι reckon, consider
 λογισμός calculation
 λυπέω (ῥ) annoy, distress
 λύπη distress
 λύρα lyre
 μαλθακός soft, timid
 μαντικός prophetic
 μειδάω smile
 μειδιάω smile
 μεταχειρίζω handle; practice
 μέτριος medium, moderate
 μηχανή machine; mechanism, way
 νόσος (f) plague, pestilence
 ~noisome
 ξηρός dry, the land ~xeriscape
 ὀκνέω shrink from, hesitate; worry
 οὐδαμοῦ nowhere
 ὀχέω carry; be afflicted with
 ~wagon
 ὄχημα vehicle
 παγχάλεπος very difficult,
 impracticable, of persons and things
 πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
 πάλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
 πανταχῇ everywhere
 παραμένω stay with ~remain
 πεινάω be hungry

πη somewhere, somehow
 πολυχρόνιος ancient; long-lived
 πρεσβύτης -ου (ῥ, m, 1) old person
 πρόοιδα foresee
 προωθέω push forward
 ῥιγώω feel cold ~frigid
 σιγά silence
 σκοπάω watch, observe
 σκοπέω behold, consider
 σκοπός (f) lookout, overseer, spy,
 target ~telescope
 συγγενής inborn, kin to
 συγχωρέω accede, concede
 συμφορά collecting; accident,
 misfortune
 συνέχω keep together, constrain
 σύνθετος compound
 σχεδία raft
 τεκμήριον sign; proof
 τροφή food, upkeep ~atrophy
 τύχη fortune, act of a god
 ὑγρός wet
 ὑποψία suspicion ~panorama
 ὑφαίνω weave
 φαῦλος trifling
 φθόγγος voice ~diphthong
 φιλόσοφος wisdom-loving
 χείρων worse, more base, inferior,
 weaker
 χελιδών -όνος (ι, f, 3) swallow (bird)
 χορδή string of a lyre, etc.
 ψυχρός (ῥ) cold ~psychology

Οὐ δῆτα ἔγωγε.

Οὐ γάρ· ἀλλ' οὕτω λογίσαιτ' ἂν ψυχὴ ἀνδρὸς φιλοσόφου, καὶ οὐκ ἂν οἰηθείη τὴν μὲν φιλοσοφίαν χρῆναι αὐτὴν λύειν, λυούσης δὲ ἐκείνης, αὐτὴν παραδιδόναί ταῖς ἡδοναῖς καὶ λύπαις ἑαυτὴν πάλιν αὖ ἐγκαταδεῖν καὶ ἀνήνυτον ἔργον πράττειν Πηνελόπης τινὰ ἐναντίως ἱστὸν μεταχειριζομένης, ἀλλὰ γαλήνην¹ τούτων παρασκευάζουσα, ἐπομένη τῷ λογισμῷ καὶ αἰεὶ ἐν τούτῳ οὔσα, τὸ ἀληθὲς καὶ τὸ θεῖον καὶ τὸ ἀδόξαστον θεωμένη καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου τρεφομένη, ζῆν τε οἶεται οὕτω δεῖν ἕως ἂν ζῇ, καὶ ἐπειδὰν τελευτήσῃ, εἰς τὸ συγγενὲς καὶ εἰς τὸ τοιοῦτον ἀφικομένη ἀπηλλάχθαι τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων κακῶν. ἐκ δὴ τῆς τοιαύτης τροφῆς οὐδὲν δευνὸν μὴ φοβηθῇ, ταῦτα δ' ἐπιτηδεύσασα, ὦ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ὅπως μὴ διασπασθεῖσα ἐν τῇ ἀπαλλαγῇ τοῦ σώματος ὑπὸ τῶν ἀνέμων διαφυσηθεῖσα καὶ διαπτομένη οἴχηται καὶ οὐδὲν ἔτι οὐδαμοῦ ᾗ.

Σιγῇ² οὖν ἐγένετο ταῦτα εἰπόντος τοῦ Σωκράτους ἐπὶ πολὺν χρόνον, καὶ αὐτὸς τε πρὸς τῷ εἰρημένῳ λόγῳ ἦν ὁ Σωκράτης, ὡς ἰδεῖν ἐφαίνετο, καὶ ἡμῶν οἱ πλείστοι· Κέβης δὲ καὶ Σιμμία σμικρὸν πρὸς ἀλλήλῳ διελεγέσθην. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ἰδὼν αὐτὰ ἤρετο, τί· ἔφη, ὑμῖν τὰ λεχθέντα μῶν μὴ δοκεῖ ἐνδεῶς λέγεσθαι; πολλὰς γὰρ δὴ ἔτι ἔχει ὑποψίας καὶ ἀντιλαβάς, εἴ γε δὴ τις αὐτὰ μέλλει ἱκανῶς διεξιέναι. εἰ μὲν οὖν τι ἄλλο σκοπεῖσθον, οὐδὲν λέγω· εἰ δέ τι περὶ τούτων ἀπορεῖτον, μηδὲν ἀποκνήσητε καὶ αὐτοὶ εἰπεῖν καὶ διελθεῖν, εἴ πη ὑμῖν φαίνεται βέλτιον ἂν λεχθῆναι, καὶ αὐ καὶ ἐμὲ συμπααραλαβεῖν, εἴ τι μᾶλλον οἴεσθε μετ' ἐμοῦ εὐπορήσειν.

Καὶ ὁ Σιμμία ἔφη· καὶ μὴν, ὦ Σώκρατες, τάλιθῃ σοι ἔρω. πάλαι γὰρ ἡμῶν ἐκάτερος ἀπορῶν τὸν ἕτερον προωθεῖ καὶ κελεύει ἐρέσθαι διὰ τὸ ἐπιθυμεῖν μὲν ἀκοῦσαι, ὀκνεῖν³ δὲ ὄχλον παρέχειν, μὴ σοι ἀηδὲς ᾗ διὰ τὴν παροῦσαν συμφορὰν.

Καὶ ὁς ἀκούσας ἐγέλασέν τε ἡρέμα καὶ φησιν· Βαβαί, ὦ Σιμμία· ᾗ που χαλεπῶς ἂν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀνθρώπους πείσαιμι ὡς οὐ συμφορὰν

¹ stillness of wind or sea ² silence ³ shrink from, hesitate; worry

ἡγοῦμαι τὴν παροῦσαν τύχην, ὅτε γε μηδ' ὑμᾶς δύναμαι πείθειν, ἀλλὰ φοβεῖσθε μὴ δυσκολώτερόν τι νῦν διάκειμαι ἢ ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν βίῳ· καί, ὥς ἔοικε, τῶν κύκνων⁴ δοκῶ φαυλότερος ὑμῶν εἶναι τὴν μαντικὴν,⁵ οἷ ἐπειδὰν αἰσθωνται ὅτι δεῖ αὐτοὺς ἀποθανεῖν, ἄδοντες καὶ ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ, τότε δὴ πλείστα καὶ κάλλιστα ἄδουσι, γεγηθότες ὅτι μέλλουσι παρὰ τὸν θεὸν ἀπιέναι οὐπὲρ εἰσι θεράποντες.

Οἱ δ' ἄνθρωποι διὰ τὸ αὐτῶν δέος τοῦ θανάτου καὶ τῶν κύκνων καταψεύδονται, καὶ φασιν αὐτοὺς θρηνηοῦντας⁶ τὸν θάνατον ὑπὸ λύπης ἐξάδειν, καὶ οὐ λογιζονται ὅτι οὐδὲν ὄρνειον ἄδει ὅταν πεινῇ ἢ ῥιγῶ⁷ ἢ τινα ἄλλην λύπην λυπῇται, οὐδὲ αὐτὴ ἢ τε ἀηδῶν⁸ καὶ χελιδῶν⁹ καὶ ὁ ἔποψ,¹⁰ ἃ δὴ φασι διὰ λύπην θρηνηοῦντα ἄδειν. ἀλλ' οὔτε ταῦτά μοι φαίνεται λυπούμενα ἄδειν οὔτε οἱ κύκνοι, ἀλλ' ἅτε οἶμαι τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος ὄντες, μαντικοὶ τέ εἰσι καὶ προειδότες τὰ ἐν Ἄιδου ἀγαθὰ ἄδουσι καὶ τέρπονται ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν διαφερόντως ἢ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ. ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἡγοῦμαι ὁμόδουλός τε εἶναι τῶν κύκνων καὶ ἱερὸς τοῦ αὐτοῦ θεοῦ, καὶ οὐ χεῖρον ἐκείνων τὴν μαντικὴν ἔχειν παρὰ τοῦ δεσπότου, οὐδὲ δυσθυμότερον αὐτῶν τοῦ βίου ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. ἀλλὰ τούτου γ' ἔνεκα λέγειν τε χρὴ καὶ ἐρωτᾶν ὅτι ἂν βούλησθε, ἕως ἂν Ἀθηναίων ἑώσιν ἄνδρες ἔνδεκα.¹¹

Καλῶς, ἔφη, λέγεις, ὁ Συμμίας· καὶ ἐγὼ τέ σοι ἐρῶ ὁ ἀπορῶ, καὶ αὐτὸς οὐκ ἀποδέχεται τὰ εἰρημένα. ἐμοὶ γὰρ δοκεῖ, ὦ Σώκρατες, περὶ τῶν τοιούτων ἴσως ὥσπερ καὶ σοὶ τὸ μὲν σαφὲς εἰδέναι ἐν τῷ νῦν βίῳ ἢ ἀδύνατον εἶναι ἢ παγχάλεπόν¹² τι, τὸ μέντοι αὐτὰ τὰ λεγόμενα περὶ αὐτῶν μὴ οὐχὶ παντὶ τρόπῳ ἐλέγχειν καὶ μὴ προαφίστασθαι πρὶν ἂν πανταχῇ¹³ σκοπῶν ἀπείπη τις, πάννυ μάλθακόν¹⁴ εἶναι ἀνδρός· δεῖν γὰρ περὶ αὐτὰ ἐν γέ τι τούτων διαπράξασθαι, ἢ μαθεῖν ὅπῃ ἔχει ἢ εὐρεῖν ἢ, εἰ ταῦτα ἀδύνατον, τὸν γοῦν βέλτιστον τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων λόγων λαβόντα καὶ δυσσελεγκτότατον, ἐπὶ τούτου ὀχοῦμενον¹⁵ ὥσπερ ἐπὶ σχεδίας κινδυνεύοντα διαπλεῦσαι τὸν βίον, εἰ

⁴ swan ⁵ prophetic ⁶ sing a dirge ⁷ feel cold ⁸ nightingale
⁹ swallow (bird) ¹⁰ hoopoe bird ¹¹ eleven ¹² very difficult,
impracticable, of persons and things ¹³ everywhere ¹⁴ soft, timid
¹⁵ carry; be afflicted with

μή τις δύναιτο ἀσφαλέστερον καὶ ἀκινδυνότερον¹⁶ ἐπὶ βεβαιότερου ὀχήματος,¹⁷ ἢ λόγου θείου τινός, διαπορευθῆναι. καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν ἔγωγε οὐκ ἐπαισχυνθήσομαι ἐρέσθαι, ἐπειδὴ καὶ σὺ ταῦτα λέγεις, οὐδ' ἐμαυτὸν αἰτιάσομαι ἐν ὑστέρω χρόνῳ ὅτι νῦν οὐκ εἶπον ἃ μοι δοκεῖ. ἐμοὶ γάρ, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐπειδὴ καὶ πρὸς ἐμαυτὸν καὶ πρὸς τόνδε σκοπῶ τὰ εἰρημένα, οὐ πάνυ φαίνεται ἱκανῶς εἰρησθαι.

Καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης, ἴσως γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ ἑταῖρε, ἀληθὴ σοι φαίνεται· ἀλλὰ λέγε ὅπῃ δὴ οὐχ ἱκανῶς.

Ταύτη ἔμοιγε, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἦ δὴ καὶ περὶ ἀρμονίας ἂν τις καὶ λύρας τε καὶ χορδῶν τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον λόγον εἴποι, ὥς ἡ μὲν ἀρμονία ἀόρατον καὶ ἀσώματον¹⁸ καὶ πάγκαλόν τι καὶ θεῖόν ἐστιν ἐν τῇ ἡρμοσμένη λύρᾳ, αὐτὴ δ' ἡ λύρα καὶ αἱ χορδαὶ σώματά τε καὶ σωματοειδῆ καὶ σύνθετα καὶ γεώδη ἐστὶ καὶ τοῦ θνητοῦ συγγενῇ. ἐπειδὰν οὖν ἡ κατάξῃ τις τὴν λύραν ἢ διατέμῃ καὶ διαρρήξῃ τὰς χορδὰς, εἴ τις δισχυρίζοιτο τῷ αὐτῷ λόγῳ ὥσπερ σύ, ὥς ἀνάγκη ἔτι εἶναι τὴν ἀρμονίαν ἐκείνην καὶ μὴ ἀπολωλέναι— οὐδεμία γὰρ μηχανὴ ἂν εἴη τὴν μὲν λύραν ἔτι εἶναι διεργωγυῶν τῶν χορδῶν καὶ τὰς χορδὰς θνητοειδεῖς οὔσας, τὴν δὲ ἀρμονίαν ἀπολωλέναι τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ τε καὶ ἀθανάτου ὁμοφυῇ τε καὶ συγγενῇ, προτέραν τοῦ θνητοῦ ἀπολομένην— ἀλλὰ φαίη ἀνάγκη ἔτι πού εἶναι αὐτὴν τὴν ἀρμονίαν, καὶ πρότερον τὰ ξύλα καὶ τὰς χορδὰς κατασασπῆσθαι πρὶν τι ἐκείνην παθεῖν— καὶ γὰρ οὖν, ὦ Σώκρατες, οἶμαι ἔγωγε καὶ αὐτόν σε τοῦτο ἐντεθυμῆσθαι, ὅτι τοιοῦτόν τι μάλιστα ὑπολαμβάνομεν τὴν ψυχὴν εἶναι, ὥσπερ ἐντεταμένου τοῦ σώματος ἡμῶν καὶ συνεχομένου ὑπὸ θερμοῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ καὶ ὕγρου καὶ τοιούτων τινῶν, κρᾶσιν εἶναι καὶ ἀρμονίαν αὐτῶν τούτων τὴν ψυχὴν ἡμῶν, ἐπειδὰν ταῦτα καλῶς καὶ μετρίως κραθῇ πρὸς ἄλληλα— εἰ οὖν τυγχάνει ἡ ψυχὴ οὔσα ἀρμονία τις, δῆλον ὅτι, ὅταν χαλασθῇ τὸ σῶμα ἡμῶν ἀμέτρως¹⁹ ἢ ἐπιταθῇ ὑπὸ νόσων καὶ ἄλλων κακῶν, τὴν μὲν ψυχὴν ἀνάγκη εὐθὺς ὑπάρχει ἀπολωλέναι, καίπερ οὔσαν θειοτάτην, ὥσπερ καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι ἀρμονίαι αἷ τ' ἐν τοῖς φθόγγοις καὶ ἐν τοῖς τῶν δημιουργῶν ἔργοις πᾶσι, τὰ δὲ λείψανα²⁰ τοῦ σώματος ἐκάστου

¹⁶ safe ¹⁷ vehicle ¹⁸ incorporeal ¹⁹ immeasurable, immoderate

²⁰ remnant

πολὺν χρόνον παραμένειν, ἕως ἂν ἡ κατακαυθῇ ἢ κατασαπῇ— ὅρα οὖν πρὸς τοῦτον τὸν λόγον τί φήσομεν, ἐάν τις ἀξιοῖ κρᾶσιν οὖσαν τὴν ψυχὴν τῶν ἐν τῷ σώματι ἐν τῷ καλουμένῳ θανάτῳ πρώτην ἀπόλλυσθαι.

Διαβλέψας οὖν ὁ Σωκράτης, ὥσπερ τὰ πολλὰ εἰώθει, καὶ μειδιάσας, δίκαια μέντοι, ἔφη, λέγει ὁ Σιμμίας. εἰ οὖν τις ὑμῶν εὐπορώτερος²¹ ἐμοῦ, τί οὐκ ἀπεκρίνατο; καὶ γὰρ οὐ φαύλως ἔοικεν ἀπτομένῳ τοῦ λόγου. δοκεῖ μέντοι μοι χρῆναι πρὸ τῆς ἀποκρίσεως ἔτι πρότερον κέβητος ἀκοῦσαι τί αὐτῷ ὅδε ἐγκαλεῖ τῷ λόγῳ, ἵνα χρόνου ἐγγενομένου βουλευσώμεθα τί ἐροῦμεν, ἔπειτα δὲ ἀκούσαντας ἡ συγχωρεῖν αὐτοῖς ἐάν τι δοκῶσι προσάδειν, ἐὰν δὲ μή, οὕτως ἤδη ὑπερδικεῖν τοῦ λόγου. ἀλλ' ἄγε, ἡ δ' ὅς, ὦ Κέβης, λέγε, τί ἦν τὸ σὲ αὐτὸν θρᾶπτον ἀπιστίαν παρέχει.

Λέγω δὴ, ἡ δ' ὅς ὁ Κέβης.

Ἐμοὶ γὰρ φαίνεται ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ ὁ λόγος εἶναι, καί, ὅπερ ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν ἐλέγομεν, ταῦτόν ἐγκλημα ἔχειν. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ ἦν ἡμῶν ἡ ψυχὴ καὶ πρὶν εἰς τόδε τὸ εἶδος ἐλθεῖν, οὐκ ἀνατίθεται μὴ οὐχὶ πάνυ χαριέντως καί, εἰ μὴ ἐπαχθές ἐστιν εἰπεῖν, πάνυ ἱκανῶς ἀποδεδείχθαι· ὥς δὲ καὶ ἀποθανόντων ἡμῶν ἔτι που ἔστιν, οὐ μοι δοκεῖ τηρδε. ὥς μὲν οὐκ ἰσχυρότερον καὶ πολυχρονιώτερον ψυχὴν σώματος, οὐ συγχωρῶ τῇ Σιμμίῳ ἀντιλήψει· δοκεῖ γάρ μοι πᾶσι τούτοις πάνυ πολὺ διαφέρειν. τί οὖν, ἂν φαίῃ ὁ λόγος, ἔτι ἀπιστεῖς, ἐπειδὴ ὀρᾷς ἀποθανόντος τοῦ ἀνθρώπου τό γε ἀσθενέστερον ἔτι ὄν; τὸ δὲ πολυχρονιώτερον οὐ δοκεῖ σοι ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι ἔτι σώζεσθαι ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ; πρὸς δὲ τοῦτο τόδε ἐπίσκεψαι, εἴ τι λέγω· εἰκόνας γάρ τινος, ὥς ἔοικεν, καὶ γὰρ ὥσπερ Σιμμίας δέομαι. ἐμοὶ γὰρ δοκεῖ ὁμοίως λέγεσθαι ταῦτα ὥσπερ ἂν τις περὶ ἀνθρώπου ὑφάντου πρεσβύτου ἀποθανόντος λέγοι τοῦτον τὸν λόγον, ὅτι οὐκ ἀπόλωλεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀλλ' ἔστι που σῶς, τεκμήριον δὲ παρέχεται τοῖσιν ὁ ἡμπείχετο αὐτὸς ὑφηνάμενος ὅτι ἐστὶ σῶν καὶ οὐκ ἀπόλωλεν, καὶ εἴ τις ἀπιστοῖ

²¹ easily passed; rich

And this, Cebes, is the reason why the true lovers of knowledge are temperate and brave; and not for the reason which the world gives.

Certainly not.

Certainly not! The soul of a philosopher will reason in quite another way; she will not ask philosophy to release her in order that when released she may deliver herself up again to the thralldom of pleasures and pains, doing a work only to be undone again, weaving instead of unweaving her Penelope's web. But she will calm passion, and follow reason, and dwell in the contemplation of her, beholding the true and divine (which is not matter of opinion), and thence deriving nourishment. Thus she seeks to live while she lives, and after death she hopes to go to her own kindred and to that which is like her, and to be freed from human ills. Never fear, Simmias and Cebes, that a soul which has been thus nurtured and has had these pursuits, will at her departure from the body be scattered and blown away by the winds and be nowhere and nothing.

When Socrates had done speaking, for a considerable time there was silence; he himself appeared to be meditating, as most of us were, on what had been said; only Cebes and Simmias spoke a few words to one another. And Socrates observing them asked what they thought of the argument, and whether there was anything wanting? For, said he, there are many points still open to suspicion and attack, if any one were disposed to sift the matter thoroughly. Should you be considering some other matter I say no more, but if you are still in doubt do not hesitate to say exactly what you think, and let us have anything better which you can suggest; and if you think that I can be of any use, allow me to help you.

Simmias said: I must confess, Socrates, that doubts did arise in our minds, and each of us was urging and inciting the other to put the question which we wanted to have answered and which neither of us liked to ask, fearing that our importunity might be troublesome under present at such a time.

Socrates replied with a smile: O Simmias, what are you saying? I am not very likely to persuade other men that I do not regard my present situation as a misfortune, if I cannot even persuade you that I am no worse off now than at any other time in my life. Will you not allow that I have as much of the spirit of prophecy in me as the swans? For they, when they perceive that they must die, having sung all their life long, do then sing more lustily than ever, rejoicing in the thought that they are about to go away to the god whose ministers they are. But men, because they are themselves afraid of death, slanderously affirm of the swans that they sing a lament at the last, not considering that no bird sings when cold, or hungry, or in pain, not even

the nightingale, nor the swallow, nor yet the hoopoe; which are said indeed to tune a lay of sorrow, although I do not believe this to be true of them any more than of the swans. But because they are sacred to Apollo, they have the gift of prophecy, and anticipate the good things of another world, wherefore they sing and rejoice in that day more than they ever did before. And I too, believing myself to be the consecrated servant of the same God, and the fellow-servant of the swans, and thinking that I have received from my master gifts of prophecy which are not inferior to theirs, would not go out of life less merrily than the swans. Never mind then, if this be your only objection, but speak and ask anything which you like, while the eleven magistrates of Athens allow.

Very good, Socrates, said Simmias; then I will tell you my difficulty, and Cebes will tell you his. I feel myself, (and I daresay that you have the same feeling), how hard or rather impossible is the attainment of any certainty about questions such as these in the present life. And yet I should deem him a coward who did not prove what is said about them to the uttermost, or whose heart failed him before he had examined them on every side. For he should persevere until he has achieved one of two things: either he should discover, or be taught the truth about them; or, if this be impossible, I would have him take the best and most irrefragable of human theories, and let this be the raft upon which he sails through life—not without risk, as I admit, if he cannot find some word of God which will more surely and safely carry him. And now, as you bid me, I will venture to question you, and then I shall not have to reproach myself hereafter with not having said at the time what I think. For when I consider the matter, either alone or with Cebes, the argument does certainly appear to me, Socrates, to be not sufficient.

Socrates answered: I dare say, my friend, that you may be right, but I should like to know in what respect the argument is insufficient.

In this respect, replied Simmias:—Suppose a person to use the same argument about harmony and the lyre—might he not say that harmony is a thing invisible, incorporeal, perfect, divine, existing in the lyre which is harmonized, but that the lyre and the strings are matter and material, composite, earthy, and akin to mortality? And when some one breaks the lyre, or cuts and rends the strings, then he who takes this view would argue as you do, and on the same analogy, that the harmony survives and has not perished—you cannot imagine, he would say, that the lyre without the strings, and the broken strings themselves which are mortal remain, and yet that the harmony, which is of heavenly and immortal nature and kindred, has perished—perished before the mortal. The harmony must still be somewhere, and the wood and strings will decay before anything can happen to that. The thought, Socrates, must have occurred to your own

mind that such is our conception of the soul; and that when the body is in a manner strung and held together by the elements of hot and cold, wet and dry, then the soul is the harmony or due proportionate admixture of them. But if so, whenever the strings of the body are unduly loosened or overstrained through disease or other injury, then the soul, though most divine, like other harmonies of music or of works of art, of course perishes at once, although the material remains of the body may last for a considerable time, until they are either decayed or burnt. And if any one maintains that the soul, being the harmony of the elements of the body, is first to perish in that which is called death, how shall we answer him?

Socrates looked fixedly at us as his manner was, and said with a smile: Simmias has reason on his side; and why does not some one of you who is better able than myself answer him? for there is force in his attack upon me. But perhaps, before we answer him, we had better also hear what Cebes has to say that we may gain time for reflection, and when they have both spoken, we may either assent to them, if there is truth in what they say, or if not, we will maintain our position. Please to tell me then, Cebes, he said, what was the difficulty which troubled you?

Cebes said: I will tell you. My feeling is that the argument is where it was, and open to the same objections which were urged before; for I am ready to admit that the existence of the soul before entering into the bodily form has been very ingeniously, and, if I may say so, quite sufficiently proven; but the existence of the soul after death is still, in my judgment, unproven. Now my objection is not the same as that of Simmias; for I am not disposed to deny that the soul is stronger and more lasting than the body, being of opinion that in all such respects the soul very far excels the body. Well, then, says the argument to me, why do you remain unconvinced?—When you see that the weaker continues in existence after the man is dead, will you not admit that the more lasting must also survive during the same period of time? Now I will ask you to consider whether the objection, which, like Simmias, I will express in a figure, is of any weight. The analogy which I will adduce is that of an old weaver, who dies, and after his death somebody says:—He is not dead, he must be alive;—see, there is

vocabulary

ἀγάζω exalt, adore
ἄγαμαι wonder, admire; resent,
 begrudge
ἄδύνατος unable; impossible
ἀηδής unpleasant
αἰσχρός shameful
ἄκρα at the edge, extreme ~acute
ἄκρη at the edge, extreme
ἀκριβής (ι) exact
ἄκρις -ός (f) hilltop ~acute
ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute
ἀναβιώω be revived
ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἀνακαλέω call, summon, recall
ἀναμάχομαι retry a fight
ἀναταράσσω stir up, confuse
ἀνερωτάω question
ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
ἀνθρώπειος human
ἀνόητος foolish
ἀντέχω hold up as protection
 against ~ischemia
ἀντιλαμβάνω grasp; get instead, in
 turn
ἀπιστία disbelief, distrust
ἄπιστος not trusting, not
 trustworthy ~stand
ἀποδείκνυμι (οῦ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
ἀποκείρω shear, cut off
ἁρμονία fastener; agreement
 ~harmony
ἀσθένεια weakness
ἀσθενής weak
ἄτοπος strange, unnatural,
 disgusting
αὔριον tomorrow
αὐχὴν -ένος (m, 3) neck
ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful

ἄχθομαι be burdened with
βιάω use force against, overcome
βιός bow, bow-string
βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
βραδύς slow, dull, late ~Sp.~gordo
γένεσις -εως (f) source, origin
 ~genus
διάλυσις -εως (f) breaking up
διατίθημι arrange; set out goods for
 sale ~thesis
διατριβή (τι) wear down, delay
 ~tribology
διαφεύγω escape, survive
διέρχομαι pierce, traverse
εἰκός likely
εἰκόν -όνος (f, 3) image, likeness
εἴωθα be accustomed, in the habit
ἐνδεής inadequate
ἐνδηλος visible, manifest
ἐνδύω go into, put on
ἐνιοι some
ἐνίστε sometimes
ἐνταῦθα there, here
ἐξευρίσκω find; discover ~eureka
ἐπιδείκνυμι (οῦ) display, exhibit
ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
ἔσχατος farthest, last
εὐήθης good-hearted; simple
εὐμενής kind
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
ἡσάομαι (pass) be weaker, be
 overcome; (active) defeat
θαμά thickly
θαρρέω be of good heart
θαρσέω be of good heart
θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable
θρίξ hair ~tresses
ἰάομαι (ι) cure ~pediatrician
ἱμάτιον toga, cloth
καταβάλλω throw down, cast off
 ~ballistic

καταπίπτω fall down ~petal
 κατατριβώ (ι) wear out, use up
 κλίνη (ι) bed, couch ~clinic
 κομέω have long hair
 κόμη hair ~comet
 κριτής -οῦ (m, 1) judge
 κριτός chosen, appointed ~critic
 μεταξύ between
 μετέρχομαι seek, visit
 μέτριος medium, moderate
 μηκέτι no more
 ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
 νεανίσκος (ᾱ) young man
 ὄλεθρος ruin, destruction, death
 ὀλιγοχρόνιος short-lived; within a short time
 οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
 οὐπω no longer
 πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition
 παίζω play ~pediatrician
 παντάπασιν altogether; yes, certainly
 παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend ~genus
 παράπαν completely
 πη somewhere, somehow
 πῇ where? how?
 πιθανός persuasive
 πολυχρόνιος ancient; long-lived
 πονέω work; be busy ~osteopenia
 πότερος which, whichever of two
 πρᾶος soft, gentle
 προάγω lead forward, advance
 προλέγω prophecy, proclaim; preselect ~legion
 προσήκω belong to, it beseems
 προτίθημι set before ~thesis

προτρέπω prompt, urge, compel; (mp) go, flee to ~trophy
 πώποτε never
 ῥέω flow ~rheostat
 σήπω rot ~septic
 σκοπάω watch, observe
 σκοπέω behold, consider
 σπάνιος rare, scanty
 συγγνώμη sympathy, leniency
 συγχωρέω accede, concede
 συναποθνήσκω die along with
 τελευταῖος last, final
 τελευτάω bring about, finish
 ~apostle
 τελευτή conclusion, fulfilment
 ~apostle
 τέχνη craft, art, plan, contrivance
 ~technology
 τήμερον today
 ὑγιής sound, profitable ~hygiene
 ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's support, seize; speak up; imagine
 ~epilepsy
 ὑπομνήσκω remind of
 ~mnemonic
 ὑφαίνω weave
 ὕφασμα -τος (n, 3) piece of weaving
 φάος φῶς (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl) eyes ~photon
 φαῦλος trifling
 φορέω frequentative of φέρω, to carry ~bear
 φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)
 ~physics
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
 χαμαίζηλος low, prostrate
 χρηστός useful; brave, worthy
 ψευδής lying, false ~pseudo-

αὐτῷ, ἀνερωτῶν ἴσως πότερον πολυχρονιώτερόν ἐστι τὸ γένος ἀνθρώπου ἢ ἱματίου ἐν χρεῖα τε ὄντος καὶ φορουμένου, ἀποκριναμένου δὴ τινος ὅτι πολὺ τὸ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου, οἷοιτο ἀποδεδεῖχθαι ὅτι παντὸς ἄρα μᾶλλον ὃ γε ἄνθρωπος σῶς ἐστίν, ἐπειδὴ τό γε ὀλιγοχρονιώτερον¹ οὐκ ἀπόλωλεν. τὸ δ' οἶμαι, ὦ Σιμμία, οὐχ οὕτως ἔχει· σκόπει γὰρ καὶ σὺ ἃ λέγω. πᾶς γὰρ ἂν ὑπολάβοι ὅτι εὖθες² λέγει ὁ τοῦτο λέγων· ὁ γὰρ ὑφάντης οὗτος πολλὰ κατατράψας τοιαῦτα ἱμάτια καὶ ὑφηνάμενος ἐκείνων μὲν ὕστερος ἀπόλωλεν πολλῶν ὄντων, τοῦ δὲ τελευταίου οἶμαι πρότερος, καὶ οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον τούτου ἕνεκα ἄνθρωπός ἐστιν ἱματίου φαινώτερον οὐδ' ἀσθενέστερον. τὴν αὐτὴν δὲ ταύτην οἶμαι εἰκόνα δέξαιτ' ἂν ψυχὴ πρὸς σῶμα, καὶ τις λέγων αὐτὰ ταῦτα περὶ αὐτῶν μέτρι' ἂν μοι φαίνοιτο λέγειν, ὥς ἡ μὲν ψυχὴ πολυχρονιόν ἐστι, τὸ δὲ σῶμα ἀσθενέστερον καὶ ὀλιγοχρονιώτερον· ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἂν φαίη ἐκάστην τῶν ψυχῶν πολλὰ σώματα κατατρίβειν, ἄλλως τε καὶ πολλὰ ἔτη βιώ— εἰ γὰρ ῥέοι τὸ σῶμα καὶ ἀπολλύοιτο ἔτι ζῶντος τοῦ ἀνθρώπου, ἀλλ' ἡ ψυχὴ αἰεὶ τὸ κατατριβόμενον ἀνυφαίνοι— ἀναγκαῖον μεντὰν εἶη, ὅποτε ἀπολλύοιτο ἡ ψυχὴ, τὸ τελευταῖον ὕφασμα τυχεῖν αὐτὴν ἔχουσιν καὶ τούτου μόνου προτέραν ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἀπολομένης δὲ τῆς ψυχῆς τότ' ἤδη τὴν φύσιν τῆς ἀσθενείας ἐπιδεικνύει τὸ σῶμα καὶ ταχὺ σαπὲν διοίχοιτο.

Ὡστε τούτῳ τῷ λόγῳ οὐπω ἄξιον πιστεύσαντα θαρρεῖν ὥς ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνωμεν ἔτι που ἡμῶν ἡ ψυχὴ ἔστιν. εἰ γὰρ τις καὶ πλεον ἔτι τῷ λέγοντι ἢ ἃ σὺ λέγεις συγχωρήσειεν, δοὺς αὐτῷ μὴ μόνον ἐν τῷ πρὶν καὶ γενέσθαι ἡμᾶς χρόνῳ εἶναι ἡμῶν τὰς ψυχάς, ἀλλὰ μηδὲν κωλύειν καὶ ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνωμεν ἐνίων ἔτι εἶναι καὶ ἔσεσθαι καὶ πολλάκις γενήσεσθαι καὶ ἀποθανεῖσθαι αὖθις— οὕτω γὰρ αὐτὸ φύσει ἰσχυρόν ἐίναι, ὥστε πολλάκις γιγνομένην ψυχὴν ἀντέχειν— δοὺς δὲ ταῦτα ἐκείνῳ μηκέτι συγχωροῖ, μὴ οὐ πονεῖν αὐτὴν ἐν ταῖς πολλαῖς γενέσεσιν καὶ τελευτῶσάν γε ἐν τινι τῶν θανάτων παντάπασιν ἀπόλλυσθαι, τοῦτον δὲ τὸν θάνατον καὶ ταύτην τὴν διάλυσιν τοῦ σώματος ἢ τῇ ψυχῇ φέρει ὀλεθρον μηδένα φαίη εἶδέναι— ἀδύνατον γὰρ εἶναι ὁτῶοῦν

¹ short-lived; within a short time ² good-hearted; simple

αἰσθῆσθαι ἡμῶν— εἰ δὲ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει, οὐδενὶ προσήκει θάνατον θαρροῦντι μὴ οὐκ ἀνοήτως θαρρεῖν, ὅς ἂν μὴ ἔχη ἀποδείξει ὅτι ἔστι ψυχὴ παντάπασιν ἀθάνατόν τε καὶ ἀνώλεθρον· εἰ δὲ μή, ἀνάγκην εἶναι αἰεὶ τὸν μέλλοντα ἀποθανεῖσθαι δεδιέναι ὑπὲρ τῆς αὐτοῦ ψυχῆς μὴ ἐν τῇ νῦν τοῦ σώματος διαζεύξει παντάπασιν ἀπόληται.

Πάντες οὖν ἀκούσαντες εἰπόντων αὐτῶν ἀηδῶς διετέθημεν, ὥς ὕστερον ἐλέγομεν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ὅτι ὑπὸ τοῦ ἔμπροσθεν λόγου σφόδρα πεπεισμένους ἡμᾶς πάλιν ἐδόκουν ἀναταράξαι καὶ εἰς ἀπιστίαν καταβαλεῖν οὐ μόνον τοῖς προειρημένοις λόγοις, ἀλλὰ καὶ εἰς τὰ ὕστερον μέλλοντα ῥηθήσεσθαι, μὴ οὐδενὸς ἄξιοι εἶμεν κριταὶ ἢ καὶ τὰ πράγματα αὐτὰ ἄπιστα ἦ.

ΕΧΕΚΡΑΤΗΣ. νῆ τοὺς θεούς, ὦ Φαῖδων, συγγνώμην γε ἔχω ὑμῖν. καὶ γὰρ αὐτόν με νῦν ἀκούσαντά σου τοιοῦτόν τι λέγειν πρὸς ἑμαυτὸν ἐπέρχεται· τίνοι οὖν ἔτι πιστεύσομεν λόγῳ; ὥς γὰρ σφόδρα πιθανὸς³ ὢν, ὃν ὁ Σωκράτης ἔλεγε λόγον, νῦν εἰς ἀπιστίαν καταπέπτωκεν. θαυμαστῶς γάρ μου ὁ λόγος οὗτος ἀντιλαμβάνεται καὶ νῦν καὶ αἰεὶ, τὸ ἀρμονίαν τινὰ ἡμῶν εἶναι τὴν ψυχὴν, καὶ ὥσπερ ὑπέμνησέν με ῥηθεὶς ὅτι καὶ αὐτῷ μοι ταῦτα προυδέδοκτο. καὶ πάννυ δέομαι πάλιν ὥσπερ ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἄλλου τινὸς λόγου ὅς με πείσει ὥς τοῦ ἀποθανόντος οὐ συναποθνήσκει ἡ ψυχὴ. λέγε οὖν πρὸς Διὸς πῇ ὁ Σωκράτης μετῴθη τὸν λόγον; καὶ πότερον ἀκείνιος, ὥσπερ ὑμᾶς φῆς, ἔνδηλός τι ἐγένετο ἀχθόμενος ἢ οὐ, ἀλλὰ πράως ἐβοήθει τῷ λόγῳ; ἢ καὶ ἱκανῶς ἐβοήθησεν ἢ ἐνδεῶς; πάντα ἡμῖν δέειλε ὥς δύνασαι ἀκριβέστατα.

Καὶ μὴν, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες, πολλάκις θαυμάσας Σωκράτη οὐ πώποτε μᾶλλον ἡγάσθην ἢ τότε παραγενόμενος. τὸ μὲν οὖν ἔχειν ὅτι λέγοι ἀκείνιος ἴσως οὐδὲν ἄτοπον· ἀλλὰ ἔγωγε μάλιστα ἐθαύμασα αὐτοῦ πρῶτον μὲν τοῦτο, ὥς ἡδέως καὶ εὐμενῶς⁴ καὶ ἀγαμένως τῶν νεανίσκων τὸν λόγον ἀπεδέξατο, ἔπειτα ἡμῶν ὥς ὀξέως ἦσθετο ὁ πεπόνθεμεν ὑπὸ τῶν λόγων, ἔπειτα ὥς εὖ ἡμᾶς ἰάσατο καὶ ὥσπερ πεφευγότας καὶ ἡττημένους ἀνεκαλέσατο καὶ προύτρεψεν πρὸς τὸ παρέπεσθαί τε καὶ συσκοπεῖν τὸν λόγον.

³ persuasive ⁴ kind

ΕΧ. πῶς δῆ;

Ἐγὼ ἐρώ. ἔτυχον γὰρ ἐν δεξιᾷ αὐτοῦ καθήμενος παρὰ τὴν κλίνην ἐπὶ χαμαιζήλου⁵ τινός, ὃ δὲ ἐπὶ πολὺ ὑψηλοτέρου ἢ ἐγώ. καταψήσας οὖν μου τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ συμπίεσας τὰς ἐπὶ τῷ αὐχένι τρίχας— εἰώθει γάρ, ὅποτε τύχοι, παίζειν μου εἰς τὰς τρίχας— Αὔριον δῆ, ἔφη, ἴσως, ὦ Φαῖδων, τὰς καλὰς ταύτας κόμας ἀποκερῆ.

Ἔοικεν, ἦν δ' ἐγώ, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Οὐκ, ἄν γε ἐμοὶ πείθῃ.

Ἀλλὰ τί; ἦν δ' ἐγώ.

Τήμερον, ἔφη, καὶ γὰρ τὰς ἐμὰς καὶ σὺ ταύτας, εἴανπερ γε ἡμῖν ὁ λόγος τελευτήσῃ καὶ μὴ δυνώμεθα αὐτὸν ἀναβιώσασθαι. καὶ ἔγωγ' ἄν, εἰ σὺ εἶην καὶ με διαφεύγοι ὁ λόγος, ἔνορκον ἂν ποιησαίμην ὥσπερ Ἀργεῖοι, μὴ πρότερον κομήσειν, πρὶν ἂν νικήσω ἀναμαχόμενος τὸν Συμμίου τε καὶ Κέβητος λόγον.

Ἀλλ', ἦν δ' ἐγώ, πρὸς δύο λέγεται οὐδ' ὁ Ἡρακλῆς οἶός τε εἶναι.

Ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐμέ, ἔφη, τὸν Ἰόλεων παρακάλει, ἕως ἔτι φῶς ἔστιν.

Παρακαλῶ τοίνυν, ἔφην, οὐχ ὥς Ἡρακλῆς, ἀλλ' ὥς Ἰόλεως τὸν Ἡρακλῆ.

Οὐδὲν διοίσει, ἔφη. ἀλλὰ πρῶτον εὐλαβηθῶμέν τι πάθος μὴ πάθωμεν.

Τὸ ποῖον; ἦν δ' ἐγώ.

Μὴ γενώμεθα, ἦ δ' ὅς, μισόλογοι, ὥσπερ οἱ μισάνθρωποι γιγνόμενοι ὥς οὐκ ἔστιν, ἔφη, ὅτι ἂν τις μείζον τούτου κακὸν πάθοι ἢ λόγους μισήσας. γίγνεται δὲ ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ τρόπου μισολογία τε καὶ μισανθρωπία. ἢ τε γὰρ μισανθρωπία ἐνδύεται ἐκ τοῦ σφόδρα τινὲ πιστεῦσαι ἄνεν τέχνης, καὶ ἡγήσασθαι παντάπασί γε ἀληθῆ εἶναι καὶ ὑγιῆ καὶ πιστὸν τὸν ἄνθρωπον, ἔπειτα ὀλίγον ὕστερον εὑρεῖν τοῦτον πονηρόν τε καὶ ἄπιστον, καὶ αὖθις ἔτερον· καὶ ὅταν τοῦτο πολλάκις

⁵ low, prostrate

πάθῃ τις καὶ ὑπὸ τούτων μάλιστα οὓς ἂν ἡγήσαιτο οἰκειοτάτους τε καὶ ἑταιροτάτους, τελευτῶν δὴ θαμὰ⁶ προσκρούων μισεῖ τε πάντας καὶ ἡγείται οὐδενὸς οὐδὲν ὑγιὲς εἶναι τὸ παράπαν. ἢ οὐκ ἥσθησαι σὺ πῶ τοῦτο γιγνόμενον;

Πάνυ γε, ἦν δ' ἐγώ.

Οὐκοῦν, ἦ δ' ὅς, αἰσχρόν, καὶ δῆλον ὅτι ἄνευ τέχνης τῆς περὶ τὰνθρώπεια ὁ τοιοῦτος χρῆσθαι ἐπεχίρει τοῖς ἀνθρώποις;

Εἰ γάρ που μετὰ τέχνης ἐχρήτο, ὥσπερ ἔχει οὕτως ἂν ἡγήσατο, τοὺς μὲν χρηστοὺς καὶ πονηροὺς σφόδρα ὀλίγους εἶναι ἑκατέρους, τοὺς δὲ μεταξὺ πλείστους.

Πῶς λέγεις; ἔφην ἐγώ.

Ὅσπερ, ἦ δ' ὅς, περὶ τῶν σφόδρα σμικρῶν καὶ μεγάλων· οἷε τι σπανιώτερον⁷ εἶναι ἢ σφόδρα μέγαν ἢ σφόδρα σμικρὸν ἐξευρεῖν ἄνθρωπον ἢ κύνα ἢ ἄλλο ὅτιοῦν; ἢ αὖ ταχὺν ἢ βραδὺν⁸ ἢ αἰσχρόν ἢ καλὸν ἢ λευκὸν ἢ μέλανα; ἢ οὐχὶ ἥσθησαι ὅτι πάντων τῶν τοιούτων τὰ μὲν ἄκρα τῶν ἐσχάτων σπάνια καὶ ὀλίγα, τὰ δὲ μεταξὺ ἄφθονα καὶ πολλά;

Πάνυ γε, ἦν δ' ἐγώ.

Οὐκοῦν οἷε, ἔφη, εἰ πονηρίας ἀγῶν προτεθείη, πάννυ ἂν ὀλίγους καὶ ἐνταῦθα τοὺς πρώτους φανῆναι;

Εἰκὸς γε, ἦν δ' ἐγώ.

Εἰκὸς γάρ, ἔφη. ἀλλὰ ταύτη μὲν οὐχ ὅμοιοι οἱ λόγοι τοῖς ἀνθρώποις, ἀλλὰ σοῦ νυνδὴ προάγοντος ἐγὼ ἐφεσπόμεν, ἀλλ' ἐκείνη, ἦ, ἐπειδάν τις πιστεύσῃ λόγῳ τινὶ ἀληθεῖ εἶναι ἄνευ τῆς περὶ τοὺς λόγους τέχνης, κάπειτα ὀλίγον ὕστερον αὐτῷ δόξῃ ψευδῆς⁹ εἶναι, ἐνίστε μὲν ὢν, ἐνίστε δ' οὐκ ὢν, καὶ αὖθις ἕτερος καὶ ἕτερος·— καὶ μάλιστα δὴ οἱ περὶ τοὺς ἀντιλογικοὺς λόγους διατρίψαντες οἶσθ' ὅτι τελευτῶντες

⁶ thickly ⁷ rare, scanty ⁸ slow, dull, late ⁹ lying, false

the coat which he himself wove and wore, and which remains whole and undecayed. And then he proceeds to ask of some one who is incredulous, whether a man lasts longer, or the coat which is in use and wear; and when he is answered that a man lasts far longer, thinks that he has thus certainly demonstrated the survival of the man, who is the more lasting, because the less lasting remains. But that, Simmias, as I would beg you to remark, is a mistake; any one can see that he who talks thus is talking nonsense. For the truth is, that the weaver aforesaid, having woven and worn many such coats, outlived several of them, and was outlived by the last; but a man is not therefore proved to be slighter and weaker than a coat. Now the relation of the body to the soul may be expressed in a similar figure; and any one may very fairly say in like manner that the soul is lasting, and the body weak and shortlived in comparison. He may argue in like manner that every soul wears out many bodies, especially if a man live many years. While he is alive the body deliquesces and decays, and the soul always weaves another garment and repairs the waste. But of course, whenever the soul perishes, she must have on her last garment, and this will survive her; and then at length, when the soul is dead, the body will show its native weakness, and quickly decompose and pass away. I would therefore rather not rely on the argument from superior strength to prove the continued existence of the soul after death. For granting even more than you affirm to be possible, and acknowledging not only that the soul existed before birth, but also that the souls of some exist, and will continue to exist after death, and will be born and die again and again, and that there is a natural strength in the soul which will hold out and be born many times—nevertheless, we may be still inclined to think that she will weary in the labours of successive births, and may at last succumb in one of her deaths and utterly perish; and this death and dissolution of the body which brings destruction to the soul may be unknown to any of us, for no one of us can have had any experience of it: and if so, then I maintain that he who is confident about death has but a foolish confidence, unless he is able to prove that the soul is altogether immortal and imperishable. But if he cannot prove the soul's immortality, he who is about to die will always have reason to fear that when the body is disunited, the soul also may utterly perish.

All of us, as we afterwards remarked to one another, had an unpleasant feeling at hearing what they said. When we had been so firmly convinced before, now to have our faith shaken seemed to introduce a confusion and uncertainty, not only into the previous argument, but into any future one; either we were incapable of forming a judgment, or there were no grounds of belief.

ECHECRATES: There I feel with you—by heaven I do, Phaedo, and when

you were speaking, I was beginning to ask myself the same question: What argument can I ever trust again? For what could be more convincing than the argument of Socrates, which has now fallen into discredit? That the soul is a harmony is a doctrine which has always had a wonderful attraction for me, and, when mentioned, came back to me at once, as my own original conviction. And now I must begin again and find another argument which will assure me that when the man is dead the soul survives. Tell me, I implore you, how did Socrates proceed? Did he appear to share the unpleasant feeling which you mention? or did he calmly meet the attack? And did he answer forcibly or feebly? Narrate what passed as exactly as you can.

PHAEDO: Often, Echecrates, I have wondered at Socrates, but never more than on that occasion. That he should be able to answer was nothing, but what astonished me was, first, the gentle and pleasant and approving manner in which he received the words of the young men, and then his quick sense of the wound which had been inflicted by the argument, and the readiness with which he healed it. He might be compared to a general rallying his defeated and broken army, urging them to accompany him and return to the field of argument.

ECHECRATES: What followed?

PHAEDO: You shall hear, for I was close to him on his right hand, seated on a sort of stool, and he on a couch which was a good deal higher. He stroked my head, and pressed the hair upon my neck—he had a way of playing with my hair; and then he said: To-morrow, Phaedo, I suppose that these fair locks of yours will be severed.

Yes, Socrates, I suppose that they will, I replied.

Not so, if you will take my advice.

What shall I do with them? I said.

To-day, he replied, and not to-morrow, if this argument dies and we cannot bring it to life again, you and I will both shave our locks; and if I were you, and the argument got away from me, and I could not hold my ground against Simmias and Cebes, I would myself take an oath, like the Argives, not to wear hair any more until I had renewed the conflict and defeated them.

Yes, I said, but Heracles himself is said not to be a match for two.

Summon me then, he said, and I will be your Iolaus until the sun goes down.

I summon you rather, I rejoined, not as Heracles summoning Iolaus, but as Iolaus might summon Heracles.

That will do as well, he said. But first let us take care that we avoid a danger.

Of what nature? I said.

Lest we become misologists, he replied, no worse thing can happen to a man than this. For as there are misanthropists or haters of men, there are also misologists or haters of ideas, and both spring from the same cause, which is ignorance of the world. Misanthropy arises out of the too great confidence of inexperience;—you trust a man and think him altogether true and sound and faithful, and then in a little while he turns out to be false and knavish; and then another and another, and when this has happened several times to a man, especially when it happens among those whom he deems to be his own most trusted and familiar friends, and he has often quarreled with them, he at last hates all men, and believes that no one has any good in him at all. You must have observed this trait of character?

I have.

And is not the feeling discreditable? Is it not obvious that such an one having to deal with other men, was clearly without any experience of human nature; for experience would have taught him the true state of the case, that few are the good and few the evil, and that the great majority are in the interval between them.

What do you mean? I said.

I mean, he replied, as you might say of the very large and very small, that nothing is more uncommon than a very large or very small man; and this applies generally to all extremes, whether of great and small, or swift and slow, or fair and foul, or black and white: and whether the instances you select be men or dogs or anything else, few are the extremes, but many are in the mean between them. Did you never observe this?

Yes, I said, I have.

And do you not imagine, he said, that if there were a competition in evil, the worst would be found to be very few?

Yes, that is very likely, I said.

Yes, that is very likely, he replied; although in this respect arguments are unlike men—there I was led on by you to say more than I had intended; but the point of comparison was, that when a simple man who has no skill in dialectics believes an argument to be true which he afterwards imagines to be false, whether really false or not, and then another and another, he has no

vocabulary

ἄδηλος invisible, unknown
ἀηδής unpleasant
αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology
ἀλαζών -όνος (m, 3) charlatan, boaster
ἀλγέω suffer ~analgesic
ἄλλοθι elsewhere, abroad
ἀμφισβητέω dispute
ἄμφω both ~amphora
ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἀνάρμοστος inappropriate, not suited, immoderate
ἀνδρίζω make manlike
ἄνευ away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin
ἄνοια folly
ἀντιτείνω resist
ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea
ἀπαιδέυτος uneducated, loutish ~pediatrician
ἀπιστέω disbelieve ~stand
ἀποδείκνυμι (ὁ) show, point out; appoint; (mid) declare
ἀπόδειξις -εως (f) acceptance; (Ion) showing
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
ἀπωθέω repel, reject
ἄρα interrogative pcl
ἀρμόζω fit together; be well fitted to ~harmony
ἁρμονία fastener; agreement ~harmony
ἀτεχνία lack of skill
βέβαιος steadfast; sure
βεβαιόω secure, confirm
βίος life ~biology
βιόω live; (mp) make a living ~biology
γεωμετρία geometry, surveying, land tax

δῆτα emphatic δή
διατελέω accomplish; keep doing ~apostle
εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form ~-oid
εἰκός likely
εἴπερ if indeed
ἐλαχύς small; comp.: less ~light
ἐμμένω stay put, be faithful, fixed
ἐναντιόομαι oppose, contradict
ἐνδέχομαι accept, admit, be possible
ἐνδέω tie to, entangle; lack
ἐντείνω tauten ~tend
ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus
ἐπισκοπέω look upon, inspect
ἐπιστήμη skill, knowledge
ἐπωνύμιος called, named
ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism
θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable
καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon
κατανοέω notice, realize, learn
κατατρίβω (ι) wear out, use up
κέντρον goading rod?
κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf) there is a danger that
κινέω (ι) set in motion, move, remove ~kinetic
λογίζομαι reckon, consider
λοιδορέω abuse, revile
λύρα lyre
μέλισσα bee
μισέω (ι) hate, wish to prevent ~misogyny
μῖσος -εος (n, 3) hate
ναός (ἄ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
νῆ yea
ὀδύρομαι (ὁ) lament ~anodyne
ὄθεν whence
οἰκτρός pitiable
οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone

ὄλεθρος ruin, destruction, death
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
 ὅπη wherever, however
 ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just
 ~orthogonal
 ὀρθόω stand up
 οὐδαμός not anyone
 οὐδέπω not, not yet
 οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
 οὐπω no longer
 οὐσία property; essence
 πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience,
 passion, condition
 παραγίγνομαι be beside, attend
 ~genus
 πάρεργος incidental, secondary
 παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow
 ~jet
 πολυχρόνιος ancient; long-lived
 πότερος which, whichever of two
 πρέπω be conspicuous, preeminent
 ~refurbish
 προθυμέομαι (ὄ) be eager
 προθυμία (ὄ) zeal, alacrity ~fume
 προσδοκάω expect
 προσήκω belong to, it beseems
 σαυτοῦ yourself
 σοφός skilled, clever, wise
 στερέω steal, take
 στρέφω turn, veer ~atrophy
 σύγχειμαι be composed of, agreed
 on

συγχωρέω accede, concede
 σύμφημι assent, concede
 συναῖδω sing together, agree
 συναείδω sing together, agree
 συναίνυμαι gather up ~etiology
 συνδοκέω seem good also
 σύνθετος compound
 συνίστημι unite; confront in battle
 ~station
 σῦνοιδα know about someone;
 think proper
 συνομολογέω agree
 συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis
 τελευταῖος last, final
 τελευτάω bring about, finish
 ~apostle
 τελευτή conclusion, fulfilment
 ~apostle
 τοίνυν well, then
 τοτέ then ... now ...
 ὑγιής sound, profitable ~hygiene
 ὑπόθεσις -εως (f) proposal; subject;
 hypothesis
 ὑπομιμνήσκω remind of
 ~mnemonic
 φθέγγομαι make a sound, utter
 ~diphthong
 φθόγγος voice ~diphthong
 φροντίζω consider, ponder
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
 χορδή string of a lyre, etc.

οἶονται σοφώτατοι γεγονέναι καὶ κατανενοηκέναι μόνοι ὅτι οὔτε τῶν πραγμάτων οὐδενὸς οὐδὲν ὑγιὲς οὐδὲ βέβαιον οὔτε τῶν λόγων, ἀλλὰ πάντα τὰ ὄντα ἀτεχνῶς ὥσπερ ἐν Εὐρίπῳ ἄνω κάτω στρέφεται καὶ χρόνον οὐδένα ἐν οὐδενὶ μένει.

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφην ἐγώ, ἀληθῆ λέγεις.

Οὐκοῦν, ὦ Φαίδων, ἔφη, οἰκτρὸν¹ ἂν εἴη τὸ πάθος, εἰ ὄντος δὴ τινος ἀληθοῦς καὶ βεβαίου λόγου καὶ δυνατοῦ κατανοῆσαι, ἔπειτα διὰ τὸ παραγίνεσθαι τοιούτοις τισὶ λόγοις, τοῖς αὐτοῖς τοτὲ² μὲν δοκοῦσιν ἀληθέσιν εἶναι, τοτὲ δὲ μή, μὴ ἑαυτόν τις αἰτιῶτο μηδὲ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἀτεχνίαν,³ ἀλλὰ τελευτῶν διὰ τὸ ἀλγεῖν⁴ ἄσμενος ἐπὶ τοὺς λόγους ἀφ' ἑαυτοῦ τὴν αἰτίαν ἀπώσαιο καὶ ἤδη τὸν λοιπὸν βίον μισῶν τε καὶ λoidorῶν τοὺς λόγους διατελοῖ, τῶν δὲ ὄντων τῆς ἀληθείας τε καὶ ἐπιστήμης στειρηθείη.

Νῆ τὸν Δία, ἦν δ' ἐγώ, οἰκτρὸν δῆτα.

Πρῶτον μὲν τοῖνυν, ἔφη, τοῦτο εὐλαβηθῶμεν, καὶ μὴ παρίωμεν εἰς τὴν ψυχὴν ὡς τῶν λόγων κινδυνεύει οὐδὲν ὑγιὲς εἶναι, ἀλλὰ πολὺ μᾶλλον ὅτι ἡμεῖς οὐπω ὑγιῶς ἔχομεν, ἀλλὰ ἀνδριστέον⁵ καὶ προθυμητέον ὑγιῶς ἔχειν, σοὶ μὲν οὖν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ τοῦ ἔπειτα βίου παντὸς ἔνεκα, ἐμοὶ δὲ αὐτοῦ ἔνεκα τοῦ θανάτου, ὡς κινδυνεύω ἔγωγε ἐν τῷ παρόντι περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου οὐ φιλοσόφως ἔχειν ἀλλ' ὥσπερ οἱ πάνυ ἀπαιδευτοὶ φιλονίκως.

Καὶ γὰρ ἐκεῖνοι ὅταν περὶ τοῦ ἀμφισβητῶσιν, ὅπη μὲν ἔχει περὶ ὧν ἂν ὁ λόγος ἦ οὐ φροντίζουσιν, ὅπως δὲ ἂν αὐτοὶ ἔθεντο ταῦτα δόξει τοῖς παροῦσιν, τοῦτο προθυμοῦνται. καὶ ἐγώ μοι δοκῶ ἐν τῷ παρόντι τοσοῦτον μόνον ἐκείνων διοίσειν· οὐ γὰρ ὅπως τοῖς παροῦσιν ἂν ἐγὼ λέγω δόξει ἀληθῆ εἶναι προθυμήσομαι, εἰ μὴ εἴη πάρεργον, ἀλλ' ὅπως αὐτῷ ἐμοὶ ὅτι μάλιστα δόξει οὕτως ἔχειν. λογιζομαι γάρ, ὦ φίλε ἑταῖρε— θέασαι ὡς πλεονεκτικῶς— εἰ μὲν τυγχάνει ἀληθῆ ὄντα ἂν λέγω, καλῶς δὴ ἔχει τὸ πεισθῆναι· εἰ δὲ μηδὲν ἐστὶ τελευτήσαντι,

¹ pitiable ² then ... now ... ³ lack of skill ⁴ suffer ⁵ make manlike

ἀλλ' οὖν τοῦτόν γε τὸν χρόνον αὐτὸν τὸν πρὸ τοῦ θανάτου ἦττον τοῖς παροῦσιν ἀηδὴς ἔσομαι ὀδυρόμενος, ἢ δὲ ἄνοιά μοι αὕτη οὐ συνδιατελεῖ— κακὸν γὰρ ἂν ᾦν— ἀλλ' ὀλίγον ὕστερον ἀπολείται. παρεσκευασμένος δὴ, ἔφη, ὦ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, οὕτως ἔρχομαι ἐπὶ τὸν λόγον· ὑμεῖς μέντοι, ἂν ἐμοὶ πείθῃσθε, σμικρὸν φροντίσαντες Σωκράτους, τῆς δὲ ἀληθείας πολὺ μᾶλλον, ἂν μὲν τι ὑμῖν δοκῶ ἀληθὲς λέγειν, συνομολογήσατε, εἰ δὲ μή, παντὶ λόγῳ ἀντιτείνετε, εὐλαβούμενοι ὅπως μὴ ἐγὼ ὑπὸ προθυμίας ἅμα ἐμαυτὸν τε καὶ ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατήσας, ὥσπερ μέλιττα τὸ κέντρον⁶ ἐγκαταλιπὼν οἰχήσομαι.

Ἄλλ' ἰτέον, ἔφη. πρῶτόν με ὑπομνήσατε ἃ ἐλέγετε, ἂν μὴ φαίνωμαι μεμνημένος. Σιμμίας μὲν γάρ, ὡς ἐγῶμαι, ἀπιστεῖ τε καὶ φοβεῖται μὴ ἢ ψυχὴ ὅμως καὶ θειότερον καὶ κάλλιον ὢν τοῦ σώματος προαπολλύηται ἐν ἀρμονίας εἶδει οὔσα· Κέβης δέ μοι ἔδοξε τοῦτο μὲν ἐμοὶ συγχωρεῖν, πολυχρονιώτερόν γε εἶναι ψυχὴν σώματος, ἀλλὰ τόδε ἄδηλον παντί, μὴ πολλὰ δὴ σώματα καὶ πολλάκις κατατρίψασα ἢ ψυχὴ τὸ τελευταῖον σῶμα καταλιποῦσα νῦν αὕτη ἀπολλύηται, καὶ ἢ αὐτὸ τοῦτο θάνατος, ψυχῆς ὀλεθρος, ἐπεὶ σῶμά γε αἰεὶ ἀπολλύμενον οὐδὲν παύεται. ἄρα ἄλλ' ἢ ταῦτ' ἐστίν, ὦ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ἃ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἐπισκοπεῖσθαι;

Συνομολογεῖτην δὴ ταῦτ' εἶναι ἄμφω.

Πότερον οὖν, ἔφη, πάντας τοὺς ἔμπροσθε λόγους οὐκ ἀποδέχεσθε, ἢ τοὺς μὲν, τοὺς δ' οὔ;

Τοὺς μὲν, ἐφάτην, τοὺς δ' οὔ.

Τί οὖν, ἢ δ' ὅς, περὶ ἐκείνου τοῦ λόγου λέγετε ἐν ᾧ ἔφαμεν τὴν μάθησιν ἀνάμνησιν εἶναι, καὶ τούτου οὕτως ἔχοντος ἀναγκαίως ἔχειν ἄλλοθι⁷ πρότερον ἡμῶν εἶναι τὴν ψυχὴν, πρὶν ἐν τῷ σώματι ἐνδεθῆναι;

Ἐγὼ μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, καὶ τότε θαυμαστῶς ὡς ἐπέισθην ὑπ' αὐτοῦ καὶ νῦν ἐμμένω ὡς οὐδενὶ λόγῳ.

⁶ goading rod? ⁷ elsewhere, abroad

Καὶ μὴν, ἔφη ὁ Συμμίας, καὶ αὐτὸς οὕτως ἔχω, καὶ πάνν ἄν θαυμάζοιμι εἴ μοι περὶ γε τούτου ἄλλο ποτέ τι δόξειεν.

Καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης, ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκη σοι, ἔφη, ὦ ξένη Θηβαῖε, ἄλλα δόξαι, ἐάνπερ μείνη ἡδε ἡ οἴσις, τὸ ἁρμονίαν μὲν εἶναι σύνθετον πρᾶγμα, ψυχὴν δὲ ἁρμονίαν τινὰ ἐκ τῶν κατὰ τὸ σῶμα ἐντεταμένων συγκεῖσθαι· οὐ γάρ που ἀποδέξῃ γε σαυτοῦ λέγοντος ὡς πρότερον ἦν ἁρμονία συγκειμένη, πρὶν ἐκεῖνα εἶναι ἐξ ὧν ἔδει αὐτὴν συντεθῆναι. ἢ ἀποδέξῃ;

Οὐδαμῶς, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Αἰσθάνη οὖν, ἡ δ' ὅς, ὅτι ταῦτά σοι συμβαίνει λέγειν, ὅταν φῆς μὲν εἶναι τὴν ψυχὴν πρὶν καὶ εἰς ἀνθρώπου εἶδος τε καὶ σῶμα ἀφικέσθαι, εἶναι δὲ αὐτὴν συγκειμένην ἐκ τῶν οὐδέπω⁸ ὄντων; οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἁρμονία γέ σοι τοιοῦτόν ἐστιν ὧ ἀπεικάζεις, ἀλλὰ πρότερον καὶ ἡ λύρα καὶ αἱ χορδαὶ καὶ οἱ φθόγγοι ἔτι ἀνάρμοστοι ὄντες γίνονται, τελευταῖον δὲ πάντων συνίσταται ἡ ἁρμονία καὶ πρῶτον ἀπόλλυται. οὗτος οὖν σοι ὁ λόγος ἐκείνῳ πῶς συνάσεται;

Οὐδαμῶς, ἔφη ὁ Συμμίας.

Καὶ μὴν, ἡ δ' ὅς, πρέπει γε εἶπερ τῷ ἄλλῳ λόγῳ συνωδῶ εἶναι καὶ τῷ περὶ ἁρμονίας.

Πρέπει γάρ, ἔφη ὁ Συμμίας.

Οὗτος τοίνυν, ἔφη, σοὶ οὐ συνωδός· ἀλλ' ὅρα πότερον αἰρῇ τῶν λόγων, τὴν μάθησιν ἀνάμνησιν εἶναι ἢ ψυχὴν ἁρμονίαν;

Πολὺ μᾶλλον, ἔφη, ἐκείνον, ὦ Σώκρατες. ὅδε μὲν γάρ μοι γέγονεν ἄνευ ἀποδείξεως μετὰ εἰκότος τινὸς καὶ εὐπρεπείας, ὅθεν καὶ τοῖς πολλοῖς δοκεῖ ἀνθρώποις· ἐγὼ δὲ τοῖς διὰ τῶν εἰκότων τὰς ἀποδείξεις ποιουμένοις λόγοις σύνοιδα οὖσιν ἀλαζόσιν,⁹ καὶ ἂν τις αὐτοὺς μὴ φυλάττηται, εὖ μάλα ἐξαπατῶσι, καὶ ἐν γεωμετρίᾳ¹⁰ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις ἄπασιν. ὁ δὲ περὶ τῆς ἀναμνήσεως καὶ μαθήσεως λόγος δι'

⁸ not, not yet ⁹ charlatan, boaster ¹⁰ geometry, surveying, land tax

ὑποθέσεως ἀξίας ἀποδέξασθαι εἴρηται. ἐρρήθη γάρ που οὕτως ἡμῶν εἶναι ἢ ψυχὴ καὶ πρὶν εἰς σῶμα ἀφικέσθαι, ὥσπερ αὐτῆς ἐστὶν ἢ οὐσία ἔχουσα τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν τὴν τοῦ ὃ ἐστὶν ἐγὼ δὲ ταύτην, ὡς ἐμαυτὸν πείθω, ἱκανῶς τε καὶ ὀρθῶς ἀποδέδεγμαι. ἀνάγκη οὖν μοι, ὡς ἔοικε, διὰ ταῦτα μῆτε ἐμαυτοῦ μῆτε ἄλλου ἀποδέχεσθαι λέγοντος ὡς ψυχὴ ἐστὶν ἀρμονία.

Τί δέ, ἦ δ' ὅς, ὦ Συμμία, τῇδε;

Δοκεῖ σοι ἀρμονία ἢ ἄλλη τινὶ συνθέσει προσήκειν ἄλλως πως ἔχειν ἢ ὡς ἂν ἐκεῖνα ἔχη ἐξ ὧν ἂν συγκέηται;

Οὐδαμῶς.

Οὐδὲ μὴν ποιεῖν τι, ὡς ἐγῶμαι, οὐδέ τι πάσχειν ἄλλο παρ' ἃ ἂν ἐκεῖνα ἢ ποιῇ ἢ πάσχη; συνέφη.

Οὐκ ἄρα ἡγείσθαι γε προσήκει ἀρμονίαν τούτων ἐξ ὧν ἂν συντεθῇ, ἀλλ' ἔπεσθαι. συνεδόκει.

Πολλοῦ ἄρα δεῖ ἐναντία γε ἀρμονία κινηθῆναι ἂν ἢ φθέγγασθαι ἢ τι ἄλλο ἐναντιωθῆναι τοῖς αὐτῆς μέρεσιν.

Πολλοῦ μέντοι, ἔφη.

Τί δέ; οὐχ οὕτως ἀρμονία πέφυκεν εἶναι ἐκάστη ἀρμονία ὡς ἂν ἀρμοσθῇ;

Οὐ μανθάνω, ἔφη.

Ἡ οὐχί, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἂν μὲν μᾶλλον ἀρμοσθῇ καὶ ἐπὶ πλέον, εἴπερ ἐνδέχεται τοῦτο γίγνεσθαι, μᾶλλον τε ἂν ἀρμονία εἴη καὶ πλείων, εἰ δ' ἡττόν τε καὶ ἐπ' ἔλαττον, ἡττων τε καὶ ἐλάττων;

Πάνυ γε.

Ἡ οὖν ἔστι τοῦτο περὶ ψυχὴν, ὥστε καὶ κατὰ τὸ σμικρότατον μᾶλλον ἐτέραν ἐτέρας ψυχῆς ἐπὶ πλέον καὶ μᾶλλον ἢ ἐπ' ἔλαττον καὶ ἡττον αὐτὸ τοῦτο εἶναι, ψυχὴν;

longer any faith left, and great disputers, as you know, come to think at last that they have grown to be the wisest of mankind; for they alone perceive the utter unsoundness and instability of all arguments, or indeed, of all things, which, like the currents in the Euripus, are going up and down in never-ceasing ebb and flow.

That is quite true, I said.

Yes, Phaedo, he replied, and how melancholy, if there be such a thing as truth or certainty or possibility of knowledge—that a man should have lighted upon some argument or other which at first seemed true and then turned out to be false, and instead of blaming himself and his own want of wit, because he is annoyed, should at last be too glad to transfer the blame from himself to arguments in general: and for ever afterwards should hate and revile them, and lose truth and the knowledge of realities.

Yes, indeed, I said; that is very melancholy.

Let us then, in the first place, he said, be careful of allowing or of admitting into our souls the notion that there is no health or soundness in any arguments at all. Rather say that we have not yet attained to soundness in ourselves, and that we must struggle manfully and do our best to gain health of mind—you and all other men having regard to the whole of your future life, and I myself in the prospect of death. For at this moment I am sensible that I have not the temper of a philosopher; like the vulgar, I am only a partisan. Now the partisan, when he is engaged in a dispute, cares nothing about the rights of the question, but is anxious only to convince his hearers of his own assertions. And the difference between him and me at the present moment is merely this—that whereas he seeks to convince his hearers that what he says is true, I am rather seeking to convince myself; to convince my hearers is a secondary matter with me. And do but see how much I gain by the argument. For if what I say is true, then I do well to be persuaded of the truth, but if there be nothing after death, still, during the short time that remains, I shall not distress my friends with lamentations, and my ignorance will not last, but will die with me, and therefore no harm will be done. This is the state of mind, Simmias and Cebes, in which I approach the argument. And I would ask you to be thinking of the truth and not of Socrates: agree with me, if I seem to you to be speaking the truth; or if not, withstand me might and main, that I may not deceive you as well as myself in my enthusiasm, and like the bee, leave my stinging in you before I die.

And now let us proceed, he said. And first of all let me be sure that I have in my mind what you were saying. Simmias, if I remember rightly, has fears and misgivings whether the soul, although a fairer and diviner thing

than the body, being as she is in the form of harmony, may not perish first. On the other hand, Cebes appeared to grant that the soul was more lasting than the body, but he said that no one could know whether the soul, after having worn out many bodies, might not perish herself and leave her last body behind her; and that this is death, which is the destruction not of the body but of the soul, for in the body the work of destruction is ever going on. Are not these, Simmias and Cebes, the points which we have to consider?

They both agreed to this statement of them.

He proceeded: And did you deny the force of the whole preceding argument, or of a part only?

Of a part only, they replied.

And what did you think, he said, of that part of the argument in which we said that knowledge was recollection, and hence inferred that the soul must have previously existed somewhere else before she was enclosed in the body?

Cebes said that he had been wonderfully impressed by that part of the argument, and that his conviction remained absolutely unshaken. Simmias agreed, and added that he himself could hardly imagine the possibility of his ever thinking differently.

But, rejoined Socrates, you will have to think differently, my Theban friend, if you still maintain that harmony is a compound, and that the soul is a harmony which is made out of strings set in the frame of the body; for you will surely never allow yourself to say that a harmony is prior to the elements which compose it.

Never, Socrates.

But do you not see that this is what you imply when you say that the soul existed before she took the form and body of man, and was made up of elements which as yet had no existence? For harmony is not like the soul, as you suppose; but first the lyre, and the strings, and the sounds exist in a state of discord, and then harmony is made last of all, and perishes first. And how can such a notion of the soul as this agree with the other?

Not at all, replied Simmias.

And yet, he said, there surely ought to be harmony in a discourse of which harmony is the theme.

There ought, replied Simmias.

But there is no harmony, he said, in the two propositions that knowledge is recollection, and that the soul is a harmony. Which of them will you retain?

I think, he replied, that I have a much stronger faith, Socrates, in the first of the two, which has been fully demonstrated to me, than in the latter, which has not been demonstrated at all, but rests only on probable and plausible grounds; and is therefore believed by the many. I know too well that these arguments from probabilities are impostors, and unless great caution is observed in the use of them, they are apt to be deceptive—in geometry, and in other things too. But the doctrine of knowledge and recollection has been proven to me on trustworthy grounds; and the proof was that the soul must have existed before she came into the body, because to her belongs the essence of which the very name implies existence. Having, as I am convinced, rightly accepted this conclusion, and on sufficient grounds, I must, as I suppose, cease to argue or allow others to argue that the soul is a harmony.

Let me put the matter, Simmias, he said, in another point of view: Do you imagine that a harmony or any other composition can be in a state other than that of the elements, out of which it is compounded?

Certainly not.

Or do or suffer anything other than they do or suffer?

He agreed.

Then a harmony does not, properly speaking, lead the parts or elements which make up the harmony, but only follows them.

He assented.

For harmony cannot possibly have any motion, or sound, or other quality which is opposed to its parts.

That would be impossible, he replied.

And does not the nature of every harmony depend upon the manner in which the elements are harmonized?

I do not understand you, he said.

I mean to say that a harmony admits of degrees, and is more of a harmony, and more completely a harmony, when more truly and fully harmonized, to any extent which is possible; and less of a harmony, and less completely a harmony, when less truly and fully harmonized.

True.

But does the soul

vocabulary

ἄγχι near, nigh ~angina
 ᾄδω sing
 αἰδῶ sing
 ἀθανασία immortality
 ἀμήχανος helpless, impossible
 ~mechanism
 ἀναλαμβάνω take up, recover, resume
 ἀνάρμοστος inappropriate, not suited, immoderate
 ἀνόητος foolish
 ἄνοια folly
 ἅπαξ once
 ἀπειλέω vow, threaten, boast
 ἀπορέω be confused, distressed
 ἀποφαίνω display, declare
 ἀρετή goodness, excellence
 ἀρμόζω fit together; be well fitted to
 ~harmony
 ἁρμονία fastener; agreement
 ~harmony
 ἄτοπος strange, unnatural, disgusting
 ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy
 βασκανία malignity, witchery
 βίος life ~biology
 βιός bow, bow-string
 βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
 γοῦν at least then
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous
 δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
 διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
 διανοέω have in mind
 διαφερόντως differently
 διαφεύγω escape, survive
 ἐγγύς near
 εἴπερ if indeed
 εἴτε if, whenever; either/or
 ἔλκω drag, pull, hoist; rape
 ἐναντιόομαι oppose, contradict

ἔνειμι be in ~ion
 ἐνίπτω scold, chide; revile
 ἐξευρίσκω find; discover ~eureka
 ἐπιδείκνυμι (ἰ) display, exhibit
 ἐπιθυμία (ἰ) desire, thing desired
 ἐπιτείνω intensify
 ἔφοδος accessible; inspector; entrance; attack
 ζῶον being, animal; picture
 ἡγεμονεύω lead ~hegemony
 ἡλίθιος idle, vain, foolish
 θαρρέω be of good heart
 θαρσέω be of good heart
 θάρσος boldness, over-boldness
 θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable
 θεοειδής godlike ~theology
 ἱατρικός medicine, medical skill
 ἰλάσκομαι appease
 ἰσχυρός (ἰ) strong, forceful, violent
 καῦμα -τος (n, 3) heat ~caustic
 κεφάλαιος main point; chief
 κολάζω punish
 κύντερος most dog-like ~hound
 κωλύω (ἰ) hinder, prevent
 μέλω concern, interest, be one's responsibility
 μετέχω partake of
 μέτριος medium, moderate
 μηνύω disclose, betray, accuse
 μήποτε absolutely never
 μυρίος (ἰ) 10,000 ~myriad
 ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
 νή yea
 νόσος (f) plague, pestilence
 ~noisome
 νουθετέω remind, warn
 ὀλεθρος ruin, destruction, death
 ὁμολογέω agree with/to
 ὀργή urge, impulse; anger
 ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just
 ~orthogonal
 οὐδαμῇ nowhere

οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
 πάθημα -τος (n, 3) suffering,
 condition
 πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience,
 passion, condition
 παντελής complete, absolute
 πείνα hunger, famine
 περιτρέπω divert, flip over
 πλήσσω hit ~plectrum
 ποιητής -οῦ (m, 1) maker, author
 ποιητός made, well-made ~poet
 πολυχρόνιος ancient; long-lived
 πότερος which, whichever of two
 προερέω say beforehand
 προλέγω prophecy, proclaim;
 preselect ~legion
 προσήκω belong to, it beseems

προσθέω run to
 προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp)
 agree; side with ~thesis
 συγχωρέω accede, concede
 τελευτάω bring about, finish
 ~apostle
 τλάω take upon oneself ~talent
 τοιόσδε such
 ὑπόθεσις -εως (f) proposal; subject;
 hypothesis
 ὑποτίθηναι suggest, advise
 ~hypothesis
 φιλόσοφος wisdom-loving
 φρόνιμος sensible, prudent
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
 ψάλλω pluck

Οὐδ' ὅπωςτιοῦν, ἔφη.

Φέρε δὴ, ἔφη, πρὸς Διός· λέγεται ψυχὴ ἢ μὲν νοῦν τε ἔχειν καὶ ἀρετὴν καὶ εἶναι ἀγαθὴ, ἢ δὲ ἀνοιάν τε καὶ μοχθηρίαν καὶ εἶναι κακὴ; καὶ ταῦτα ἀληθῶς λέγεται;

Ἀληθῶς μέντοι.

Τῶν οὖν θεμένων ψυχὴν ἀρμονίαν εἶναι τί τις φήσῃ ταῦτα ὄντα εἶναι ἐν ταῖς ψυχαῖς, τὴν τε ἀρετὴν καὶ τὴν κακίαν; πότερον ἀρμονίαν αὐτὰ ἀλλήν καὶ ἀναρμωστίαν; καὶ τὴν μὲν ἡρμόσθαι, τὴν ἀγαθὴν, καὶ ἔχειν ἐν αὐτῇ ἀρμονίᾳ οὖσῃ ἄλλην ἀρμονίαν, τὴν δὲ ἀναρμωστον αὐτὴν τε εἶναι καὶ οὐκ ἔχειν ἐν αὐτῇ ἄλλην;

Οὐκ ἔχω ἔγωγ', ἔφη ὁ Συμμίας, εἰπεῖν· δηλὸν δ' ὅτι τοιαῦτ' ἄττ' ἂν λέγοι ὁ ἐκείνῳ ὑποθέμενος.

Ἀλλὰ προωμολόγηται, ἔφη, μὴδὲν μᾶλλον μὴδ' ἦττον ἐτέραν ἐτέρας ψυχὴν ψυχῆς εἶναι· τοῦτο δ' ἔστι τὸ ὁμολόγημα, μὴδὲν μᾶλλον μὴδ' ἐπὶ πλεόν μὴδ' ἦττον μὴδ' ἐπ' ἔλαττον ἐτέραν ἐτέρας ἀρμονίαν ἀρμονίας εἶναι. ἢ γάρ;

Πάνυ γε.

Τὴν δέ γε μὴδὲν μᾶλλον μὴδὲ ἦττον ἀρμονίαν οὐσαν μήτε μᾶλλον μήτε ἦττον ἡρμόσθαι· ἔστιν οὕτως;

Ἦστιν.

Ἡ δὲ μήτε μᾶλλον μήτε ἦττον ἡρμωσμένη ἔστιν ὅτι πλεόν ἢ ἔλαττον ἀρμονίας μετέχει, ἢ τὸ ἴσον;

Τὸ ἴσον.

Οὐκοῦν ψυχὴ ἐπειδὴ οὐδὲν μᾶλλον οὐδ' ἦττον ἄλλη ἄλλης αὐτὸ τοῦτο, ψυχὴ, ἐστίν, οὐδὲ δὴ μᾶλλον οὐδὲ ἦττον ἡρμωσταί;

Οὕτω.

Τοῦτο δέ γε πεπονθυῖα οὐδὲν πλέον ἀναρμοστίας οὐδὲ ἀρμονίας μετέχου ἄν;

Οὐ γὰρ οὖν.

Τοῦτο δ' αὖ πεπονθυῖα ἄρ' ἂν τι πλέον κακίας ἢ ἀρετῆς μετέχου ἑτέρα ἑτέρας, εἴπερ ἢ μὲν κακία ἀναρμοστία, ἢ δὲ ἀρετὴ ἀρμονία εἴη;

Οὐδὲν πλέον.

Μᾶλλον δέ γέ που, ὦ Συμμία, κατὰ τὸν ὀρθὸν λόγον κακίας οὐδεμία ψυχὴ μεθέξει, εἴπερ ἀρμονία ἐστίν· ἀρμονία γὰρ δήπου παντελῶς αὐτὸ τοῦτο οὐσα, ἀρμονία, ἀναρμοστίας οὐποτ' ἂν μετάσχοι.

Οὐ μέντοι.

Οὐδέ γε δήπου ψυχὴ, οὐσα παντελῶς ψυχὴ, κακίας.

Πῶς γὰρ ἓκ γε τῶν προειρημένων;

Ἐκ τούτου ἄρα τοῦ λόγου ἡμῖν πᾶσαι ψυχαὶ πάντων ζώων ὁμοίως ἀγαθαὶ ἔσσονται, εἴπερ ὁμοίως ψυχαὶ πεφύκασιν αὐτὸ τοῦτο, ψυχαί, εἶναι.

Ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Ἡ καὶ καλῶς δοκεῖ, ἦ δ' ὅς, οὕτω λέγεσθαι, καὶ πᾶσχειν ἂν ταῦτα ὁ λόγος εἰ ὀρθὴ ἢ ὑπόθεσις ἦν, τὸ ψυχὴν ἀρμονίαν εἶναι;

Οὐδ' ὅπωςτιοῦν, ἔφη.

Τί δέ; ἦ δ' ὅς· τῶν ἐν ἀνθρώπῳ πάντων ἔσθ' ὅτι ἄλλο λέγεις ἄρχειν ἢ ψυχὴν ἄλλως τε καὶ φρόνιμον;

Οὐκ ἔγωγε.

Πότερον συγχωροῦσαν τοῖς κατὰ τὸ σῶμα πάθεσιν ἢ καὶ ἐναντιουμένῃν; λέγω δὲ τὸ τοιόνδε, οἶον καύματος¹ ἐνόητος καὶ δίψους ἐπὶ τοῦναντίον ἔλκειν, τὸ μὴ πίνειν, καὶ πείνης² ἐνούσης ἐπὶ τὸ μὴ

¹ heat ² hunger, famine

ἐσθίειν, καὶ ἄλλα μυρία που ὀρώμεν ἐναντιουμένην τὴν ψυχὴν τοῖς
κατὰ τὸ σῶμα· ἢ οὐ;

Πάνν μὲν οὖν.

Οὐκοῦν αὖ ὠμολογήσαμεν ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν μήποτ' ἂν αὐτὴν, ἀρμονίαν
γε οὖσαν, ἐναντία ἄδειν οἷς ἐπιτείνοιτο καὶ χαλῶτο καὶ ψάλλοιτο³ καὶ
ἄλλο ὅτιοῦν πάθος πάσχοι ἐκεῖνα ἐξ ὧν τυγχάνοι οὖσα, ἀλλ' ἔπεσθαι
ἐκείνοις καὶ οὐποτ' ἂν ἡγεμονεύειν;

Ὡμολογήσαμεν, ἔφη· πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

Τί οὖν; νῦν οὐ πᾶν τοῦναντίον ἡμῖν φαίνεται ἐργαζομένη,
ἡγεμονεύουσά τε ἐκείνων πάντων ἐξ ὧν φησί τις αὐτὴν εἶναι, καὶ
ἐναντιουμένη ὀλίγου πάντα διὰ παντὸς τοῦ βίου καὶ δεσπόζουσα
πάντας τρόπους, τὰ μὲν χαλεπώτερον κολάζουσα καὶ μετ'
ἀλγηδόνων, τὰ τε κατὰ τὴν γυμναστικὴν καὶ τὴν ἰατρικὴν,⁴ τὰ δὲ
πρότερον, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀπειλοῦσα, τὰ δὲ νουθετοῦσα,⁵ ταῖς ἐπιθυμίαις
καὶ ὀργαῖς καὶ φόβοις ὡς ἄλλη οὖσα ἄλλω πράγματι διαλεγόμενη;
οἷόν που καὶ Ὅμηρος ἐν Ὀδυσσεΐα πεποίηκεν, οὗ λέγει τὸν Ὀδυσσεΐα·
στήθος δὲ πλήξας κραδίην ἠνίπαπε μύθω· τέτλαθι δῆ, κραδίη· καὶ
κύντερον⁶ ἄλλο ποτ' ἔτλης. . 20.17-18^αρ' οἷε αὐτὸν ταῦτα
ποιῆσαι διανοούμενον ὡς ἀρμονίας αὐτῆς οὐσης καὶ οἷας ἄγεσθαι
ὑπὸ τῶν τοῦ σώματος παθημάτων, ἀλλ' οὐχ οἷας ἄγειν τε ταῦτα καὶ
δεσπόζειν, καὶ οὐσης αὐτῆς πολὺν θειότερου τινὸς πράγματος ἢ καθ'
ἀρμονίαν;

Νὴ Δία, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ.

Οὐκ ἄρα, ὦ ἄριστε, ἡμῖν οὐδαμῇ καλῶς ἔχει ψυχὴν ἀρμονίαν τινὰ
φάναι εἶναι· οὔτε γὰρ ἂν, ὡς ἔοικεν, Ὅμηρῳ θείῳ ποιητῇ ὁμολογοῖμεν
οὔτε αὐτοὶ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς.

Ἐχει οὕτως, ἔφη.

Εἶεν δῆ, ἢ δ' ὅς ὁ Σωκράτης, τὰ μὲν Ἀρμονίας ἡμῖν τῆς Θεβαϊκῆς Ἰλέα

³ pluck ⁴ medicine, medical skill ⁵ remind, warn ⁶ most dog-like

πως, ὥς ἔοικε, μετρίως γέγονεν· τί δὲ δὴ τὰ Κάδμου, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, πῶς ἱλασόμεθα καὶ τίνι λόγῳ;

Σύ μοι δοκεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, ἐξευρήσῃν· τουτονὶ γοῦν τὸν λόγον τὸν πρὸς τὴν ἁρμονίαν θαυμαστώσ μοι εἶπες ὥς παρὰ δόξαν. Συμμίου γὰρ λέγοντος ὅτε ἡπόρει, πάνυ ἐθαύμαζον εἴ τι ἔξει τις χρήσασθαι τῷ λόγῳ αὐτοῦ· πάνυ οὖν μοι ἀτόπως ἔδοξεν εὐθὺς τὴν πρώτην ἔφοδον οὐ δέξασθαι τοῦ σοῦ λόγου. ταῦτά δὴ οὐκ ἂν θαυμάσαιμι καὶ τὸν τοῦ Κάδμου λόγον εἰ πάθοι.

Ὡγαθέ, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, μὴ μέγα λέγε, μή τις ἡμῖν βασκανία⁷ περιτρέψῃ τὸν λόγον τὸν μέλλοντα ἔσεσθαι. ἀλλὰ δὴ ταῦτα μὲν τῷ θεῷ μελήσει, ἡμεῖς δὲ Ὀμηρικῶς ἐγγὺς ἰόντες πειρώμεθα εἰ ἄρα τι λέγεις. ἔστι δὲ δὴ τὸ κεφάλαιον ὧν ζητεῖς· ἀξιοῖς ἐπιδειχθῆναι ἡμῶν τὴν ψυχὴν ἀνώλεθρόν τε καὶ ἀθάνατον οὖσαν, εἰ φιλόσοφος ἀνὴρ μέλλων ἀποθανεῖσθαι, θαρρῶν τε καὶ ἡγούμενος ἀποθανὼν ἐκεῖ εὖ πράξειν διαφερόντως ἢ εἰ ἐν ἄλλῳ βίῳ βιοὺς ἐτελεύτα, μὴ ἀνόητόν τε καὶ ἡλίθιον⁸ θάρρος θαρρήσει. τὸ δὲ ἀποφαίνειν ὅτι ἰσχυρόν τί ἐστὶν ἡ ψυχὴ καὶ θεοειδὲς καὶ ἦν ἔτι πρότερον, πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἀνθρώπους γενέσθαι, οὐδὲν κωλύειν φῆς πάντα ταῦτα μνηύειν⁹ ἀθανασίαν¹⁰ μὲν μή, ὅτι δὲ πολυχρόνιον τέ ἐστὶν ψυχὴ καὶ ἦν που πρότερον ἀμήχανον ὅσον χρόνον καὶ ἦδει τε καὶ ἔπραττεν πολλὰ ἄττα· ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὐδὲν τι μᾶλλον ἦν ἀθάνατον, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ εἰς ἀνθρώπου σῶμα ἐλθεῖν ἀρχὴ ἦν αὐτῇ ὀλέθρου, ὥσπερ νόσος· καὶ ταλαιπωρουμένη τε δὴ τοῦτον τὸν βίον ζῶν καὶ τελευτώσά γε ἐν τῷ καλουμένῳ θανάτῳ ἀπολλύοιτο. διαφέρειν δὲ δὴ φῆς οὐδὲν εἶτε ἅπαξ εἰς σῶμα ἔρχεται εἶτε πολλάκις, πρὸς γε τὸ ἕκαστον ἡμῶν φοβεῖσθαι· προσήκει γὰρ φοβεῖσθαι, εἰ μὴ ἀνόητος εἴη, τῷ μὴ εἰδότει μηδὲ ἔχοντι λόγον διδόναι ὥς ἀθάνατόν ἐστι. τοιαῦτ' ἄττα ἐστίν, οἶμαι, ὦ Κέβης, ἃ λέγεις· καὶ ἐξεπίτηδες πολλάκις ἀναλαμβάνω, ἵνα μή τι διαφύγῃ ἡμᾶς, εἴ τέ τι βούλει, προσθῆς ἢ ἀφέλῃς.

Καὶ ὁ Κέβης, ἀλλ' οὐδὲν ἔγωγε ἐν τῷ παρόντι, ἔφη, οὔτε ἀφελεῖν οὔτε

⁷ malignity, witchery ⁸ idle, vain, foolish ⁹ disclose, betray, accuse
¹⁰ immortality

admit of degrees? or is one soul in the very least degree more or less, or more or less completely, a soul than another?

Not in the least.

Yet surely of two souls, one is said to have intelligence and virtue, and to be good, and the other to have folly and vice, and to be an evil soul: and this is said truly?

Yes, truly.

But what will those who maintain the soul to be a harmony say of this presence of virtue and vice in the soul?—will they say that here is another harmony, and another discord, and that the virtuous soul is harmonized, and herself being a harmony has another harmony within her, and that the vicious soul is inharmonical and has no harmony within her?

I cannot tell, replied Simmias; but I suppose that something of the sort would be asserted by those who say that the soul is a harmony.

And we have already admitted that no soul is more a soul than another; which is equivalent to admitting that harmony is not more or less harmony, or more or less completely a harmony?

Quite true.

And that which is not more or less a harmony is not more or less harmonized?

True.

And that which is not more or less harmonized cannot have more or less of harmony, but only an equal harmony?

Yes, an equal harmony.

Then one soul not being more or less absolutely a soul than another, is not more or less harmonized?

Exactly.

And therefore has neither more nor less of discord, nor yet of harmony?

She has not.

And having neither more nor less of harmony or of discord, one soul has no more vice or virtue than another, if vice be discord and virtue harmony?

Not at all more.

Or speaking more correctly, Simmias, the soul, if she is a harmony, will never have any vice; because a harmony, being absolutely a harmony, has no part in the inharmonical.

No.

And therefore a soul which is absolutely a soul has no vice?

How can she have, if the previous argument holds?

Then, if all souls are equally by their nature souls, all souls of all living creatures will be equally good?

I agree with you, Socrates, he said.

And can all this be true, think you? he said; for these are the consequences which seem to follow from the assumption that the soul is a harmony?

It cannot be true.

Once more, he said, what ruler is there of the elements of human nature other than the soul, and especially the wise soul? Do you know of any?

Indeed, I do not.

And is the soul in agreement with the affections of the body? or is she at variance with them? For example, when the body is hot and thirsty, does not the soul incline us against drinking? and when the body is hungry, against eating? And this is only one instance out of ten thousand of the opposition of the soul to the things of the body.

Very true.

But we have already acknowledged that the soul, being a harmony, can never utter a note at variance with the tensions and relaxations and vibrations and other affections of the strings out of which she is composed; she can only follow, she cannot lead them?

It must be so, he replied.

And yet do we not now discover the soul to be doing the exact opposite—leading the elements of which she is believed to be composed; almost always opposing and coercing them in all sorts of ways throughout life, sometimes more violently with the pains of medicine and gymnastic; then again more gently; now threatening, now admonishing the desires, passions, fears, as if talking to a thing which is not herself, as Homer in the *Odyssey* represents Odysseus doing in the words—‘He beat his breast, and thus reproached his heart: Endure, my heart; far worse hast thou endured!’

Do you think that Homer wrote this under the idea that the soul is a harmony capable of being led by the affections of the body, and not rather of a nature which should lead and master them—herself a far diviner thing than any harmony?

Yes, Socrates, I quite think so.

Then, my friend, we can never be right in saying that the soul is a harmony, for we should contradict the divine Homer, and contradict ourselves.

True, he said.

Thus much, said Socrates, of Harmonia, your Theban goddess, who has graciously yielded to us; but what shall I say, Cebes, to her husband Cadmus, and how shall I make peace with him?

I think that you will discover a way of propitiating him, said Cebes; I am sure that you have put the argument with Harmonia in a manner that I could never have expected. For when Simmias was mentioning his difficulty, I quite imagined that no answer could be given to him, and therefore I was surprised at finding that his argument could not sustain the first onset of yours, and not impossibly the other, whom you call Cadmus, may share a similar fate.

Nay, my good friend, said Socrates, let us not boast, lest some evil eye should put to flight the word which I am about to speak. That, however, may be left in the hands of those above, while I draw near in Homeric fashion, and try the mettle of your words. Here lies the point:—You want to have it proven to you that the soul is imperishable and immortal, and the philosopher who is confident in death appears to you to have but a vain and foolish confidence, if he believes that he will fare better in the world below than one who has led another sort of life, unless he can prove this; and you say that the demonstration of the strength and divinity of the soul, and of her existence prior to our becoming men, does not necessarily imply her immortality. Admitting the soul to be longlived, and to have known and done much in a former state, still she is not on that account immortal; and her entrance into the human form may be a sort of disease which is the beginning of dissolution, and may at last, after the toils of life are over, end in that which is called death. And whether the soul enters into the body once only or many times, does not, as you say, make any difference in the fears of individuals. For any man, who is not devoid of sense, must fear, if he has no knowledge and can give no account of the soul's immortality. This, or something like this, I suspect to be your notion, Cebes; and I designedly recur to it in order that nothing may escape us,

vocabulary

αἰθήρ ether, air, sky ~ether

αἵρεσις -εως (f) choice, plan

αἴσθησις -εως (f) sense perception

αἰτιάομαι blame ~etiology

αἰωρέω lift; (mp) hang

ἄκοή hearing ~acoustic

ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course

ἀναγιγνώσκω recognize, read, understand, persuade

ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery

ἄνευ away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin

ἀνίημι urge, impel; release ~jet

ἄνω (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea

ἀπάγω lead away, back

~demagogue

ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine

ἀποδιδράσκω escape

ἀποφαίνω display, declare

ἄστρον star

ἄτοπος strange, unnatural, disgusting

βάθρον step, base, bench

βέλτιστος best, noblest

βιβλίον paper, book

γένεσις -εως (f) source, origin

~genus

δέρμα -τος (n, 3) skin, hide

~dermatology

διαιρέω divide, distinguish, distribute

διακοσμέω marshal ~cosmos

διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion

διασχιζω tear to pieces ~schism

διαφυή natural break, joint

δίνη (i) whirlpool, eddy

δίπηχυς 2 cubits long

ἐγκέφαλος brain

εἰκῇ haphazardly; in vain

ἐναργής visible, clear ~Argentina

ἐπαιτιάομαι accuse

ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail

ἐπιστήμη skill, knowledge

ἐπιτείνω intensify

ἐπιφέρω bestow, impute ~bear

ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral

ζῶον being, animal; picture

ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy

~hedonism

ἥμισυς half ~hemisphere

θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable

θερμός warm, hot ~thermos

ἱστορία science, history

κάμπτω bend, bend in exhaustion

καταψηφίζομαι vote against

κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos

λίαν very

λογίζομαι reckon, consider

μέθοδος investigation

μεταβάλλω alter, transform

μέτριος medium, moderate

μνήμη reminder, memorial

μυρίος (ο) 10,000 ~myriad

ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia

νεῦρον tendon ~neuro

ὄγκος barb of an arrow

ὀκτώ eight ~octopus

ὅπη wherever, however

ὀστέον bone ~osteoporosis

ὀσφραίνομαι catch scent of

οὐδαμῇ nowhere

πάθημα -τος (n, 3) suffering, condition

πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience, passion, condition

πάλαι long ago ~paleo

πάλη wrestling ~Pallas

πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas

παραμένω stay with ~remain

πειθός persuasive

περιτίθηναι put around, endow with

~thesis

πη somewhere, somehow

πῇ where? how?

πηχυαῖος a cubit long

πλατύς extensive, wide

πλησιάζω bring/be near; have sex

ποθέω miss, long for, notice an absence; lose ~bid

πότε when?

πότερος which, whichever of two

πρόειμι to have been before, earlier

~ion

προσαγορεύω address, call by name

προσγίγνομαι become ally to

προσδοκάω expect

πρόσειμι approach, draw near; add

~ion

προσήκω belong to, it seems

προσθέω run to

προσίημι be allowed near

πρόσω forward, in the future; far

ῥαθυμία (ᾠα) carelessness, ease

σελήνη moon

σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch

~skeptical

σκοπάω watch, observe

σκοπέω behold, consider

σκοπός (f) lookout, overseer, spy, target ~telescope

σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry

σπουδή zeal; (dat) with difficulty, hastily ~repudiate

στερεός solid, firm ~stereo

στρογγύλος round; merchant ship

συχάμπτω bend

σύγκειμαι be composed of, agreed on

συγχέω entangle, destroy, confound

συμβολή encounter; contribution

συνέχω keep together, constrain

σύνοδος meeting, conjunction

συχνός long; many; extensive

τάχος -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer

τεκμήριον sign; proof

τελευτή conclusion, fulfilment

~apostle

τοιόσδε such

τροπέω turn, wheel

τροπή rout, turning of an enemy

~trophy

τρόπις -ος (f) keel

τροπός oar strap

τυφλώ blind

ὑπερείδω prop up

ὑπερέχω be over; protect

ὑπερήφανος arrogant

ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand; submit to

ὑποχέω spread under

φαῦλος trifling

φθορά ruin, rape

φύρω (ῶ) moisten, stain

φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)

~physics

χείρων worse, more base, inferior, weaker

χρήσιμος useful

χωρίζω divide; distinguish, pull down

χωρίς separately; except, other than

~heir

ψηλαφάω grope blindly

ψυχρός (ῶ) cold ~psychology

ὡσαύτως in the same way

προσθεῖναι δέομαι· ἔστι δὲ ταῦτα ἃ λέγω.

Ὁ οὖν Σωκράτης συχνὸν χρόνον ἐπισχὼν καὶ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν τι σκεψάμενος, οὐ φαῦλον πρᾶγμα, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, ζητεῖς· ὅλως γὰρ δεῖ περὶ γενέσεως καὶ φθορᾶς τὴν αἰτίαν διαπραγματεῦσασθαι.

Ἐγὼ οὖν σοι δίεμι περὶ αὐτῶν, ἐὰν βούλῃ, τά γε ἐμὰ πάθη· ἔπειτα ἂν τί σοι χρήσιμον φαίνεται ὧν ἂν λέγω, πρὸς τὴν πειθὼν περὶ ὧν δὴ λέγεις χρήση.

Ἀλλὰ μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, βούλομαί γε.

Ἄκουε τοίνυν ὡς ἐροῦντος. ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, νέος ὢν θαυμαστῶς ὡς ἐπεθύμησα ταύτης τῆς σοφίας ἦν δὴ καλοῦσι περὶ φύσεως ἱστορίαν· ὑπερήφανος γάρ μοι ἐδόκει εἶναι, εἰδέναι τὰς αἰτίας ἐκάστου, διὰ τί γίγνεται ἕκαστον καὶ διὰ τί ἀπόλλυται καὶ διὰ τί ἔστι. καὶ πολλάκις ἐμαυτὸν ἄνω κάτω μετέβαλλον σκοπῶν πρῶτον τὰ τοιάδε· ἄρ' ἐπειδὴν τὸ θερμὸν καὶ τὸ ψυχρὸν σηπεδόνα τινα λάβῃ, ὥς τινες ἔλεγον, τότε δὴ τὰ ζῶα συντρέφεται; καὶ πότερον τὸ αἷμά ἐστιν ᾧ φρονοῦμεν, ἢ ὁ ἀήρ ἢ τὸ πῦρ; ἢ τούτων μὲν οὐδέν, ὁ δ' ἐγκέφαλός ἐστιν ὁ τὰς αἰσθήσεις παρέχων τοῦ ἀκοῦειν καὶ ὁρᾶν καὶ ὁσφραίνεισθαι,¹ ἐκ τούτων δὲ γίγνοιτο μνήμη καὶ δόξα, ἐκ δὲ μνήμης καὶ δόξης λαβούσης τὸ ἡρεμεῖν, κατὰ ταῦτα γίνεσθαι ἐπιστήμην; καὶ αὖ τούτων τὰς φθορὰς² σκοπῶν, καὶ τὰ περὶ τὸν οὐρανόν τε καὶ τὴν γῆν πάθη, τελευτῶν οὕτως ἐμαυτῷ ἔδοξα πρὸς ταύτην τὴν σκέψιν ἀφυῆς εἶναι ὡς οὐδὲν χρήμα. τεκμήριον δέ σοι ἐρῶ ἱκανόν· ἐγὼ γὰρ ἃ καὶ πρότερον σαφῶς ἠπιστάμην, ὥς γε ἐμαυτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκουν, τότε ὑπὸ ταύτης τῆς σκέψεως οὕτω σφόδρα ἐτυφλώθην, ὥστε ἀπέμαθον καὶ ταῦτα ἃ πρὸ τοῦ ὥμην εἰδέναι, περὶ ἄλλων τε πολλῶν καὶ διὰ τί ἄνθρωπος αὐξάνεται. τοῦτο γὰρ ὥμην πρὸ τοῦ παντὶ δήλον εἶναι, ὅτι διὰ τὸ ἐσθίειν καὶ πίνειν· ἐπειδὴν γὰρ ἐκ τῶν σιτίων ταῖς μὲν σαρκὶ σάρκες προσγένωνται, τοῖς δὲ ὀστοῖς ὀστᾶ, καὶ οὕτω κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις τὰ αὐτῶν οἰκεῖα ἐκάστοις προσγένηται, τότε δὴ τὸν ὀλίγον ὄγκον ὄντα ὕστερον πολὺν

¹ catch scent of ² ruin, rape

γεγονέναι, καὶ οὕτω γίνεσθαι τὸν σμικρὸν ἄνθρωπον μέγαν. οὕτως τότε ὦμην· οὐ δοκῶ σοι μετρίως;

Ἔμουγε, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

Σκέψαι δὴ καὶ τάδε ἔτι. ὦμην γὰρ ἱκανῶς μοι δοκεῖν, ὅποτε τις φαίνοιτο ἄνθρωπος παραστὰς μέγας σμικρῷ μείζων εἶναι αὐτῇ τῇ κεφαλῇ, καὶ ἵππος ἵππου· καὶ ἔτι γε τούτων ἐναργέστερα, τὰ δέκα μοι ἐδόκει τῶν ὀκτῶ πλέονα εἶναι διὰ τὸ δύο αὐτοῖς προσεῖναι, καὶ τὸ δίπηχυν τοῦ πηχυαίου μείζον εἶναι διὰ τὸ ἡμίσει αὐτοῦ ὑπερέχειν.

Νῦν δὲ δὴ, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, τί σοι δοκεῖ περὶ αὐτῶν;

Πόρρω που, ἔφη, νῆ Δία ἐμὲ εἶναι τοῦ οἶεσθαι περὶ τούτων του τὴν αἰτίαν εἰδέναι, ὅς γε οὐκ ἀποδέχομαι ἐμαυτοῦ οὐδὲ ὡς ἐπειδὰν ἐνί τις προσθῇ ἔν, ἢ τὸ ἐν ᾧ προσετέθη δύο γέγονεν, ἢ τὸ προστεθέν, ἢ τὸ προστεθὲν καὶ ᾧ προσετέθη διὰ τὴν πρόσθεσιν τοῦ ἐτέρου τῷ ἐτέρῳ δύο ἐγένετο· θαυμάζω γὰρ εἰ ὅτε μὲν ἐκάτερον αὐτῶν χωρὶς ἀλλήλων ἦν, ἐν ἄρα ἐκάτερον ἦν καὶ οὐκ ἦσθην τότε δύο, ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπλησίασαν³ ἀλλήλοις, αὕτη ἄρα αἰτία αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο τοῦ δύο γενέσθαι, ἢ σύνοδος τοῦ πλησίον ἀλλήλων τεθῆναι. οὐδέ γε ὡς ἐάν τις ἐν διασχίσει, δύναμαι ἔτι πείθεσθαι ὡς αὕτη αὐ αἰτία γέγονεν, ἢ σχίσις, τοῦ δύο γεγονέναι· ἐναντία γὰρ γίνεταί ἢ τότε αἰτία τοῦ δύο γίνεσθαι. τότε μὲν γὰρ ὅτι συνήγετο πλησίον ἀλλήλων καὶ προσετίθετο ἕτερον ἐτέρῳ, νῦν δ' ὅτι ἀπάγεται καὶ χωρίζεται ἕτερον ἀφ' ἐτέρου. οὐδέ γε δι' ὅτι ἐν γίνεταί ὡς ἐπίσταμαι, ἔτι πείθω ἐμαυτόν, οὐδ' ἄλλο οὐδὲν ἐνὶ λόγῳ δι' ὅτι γίνεταί ἢ ἀπόλλυται ἢ ἔστι, κατὰ τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον τῆς μεθόδου,⁴ ἀλλὰ τιν' ἄλλον τρόπον αὐτὸς εἰκῇ⁵ φύρω, τοῦτον δὲ οὐδαμῇ προσίεμαι.

Ἄλλ' ἀκούσας μὲν ποτε ἐκ βιβλίου τινός, ὡς ἔφη, Ἀναξαγόρου ἀναγινώσκοντος, καὶ λέγοντος ὡς ἄρα νοῦς ἐστίν ὁ διακοσμῶν τε καὶ πάντων αἴτιος, ταύτη δὴ τῇ αἰτίᾳ ἦσθην τε καὶ ἔδοξέ μοι τρόπον τινὰ εὖ ἔχειν τὸ τὸν νοῦν εἶναι πάντων αἴτιον, καὶ ἡγησάμην, εἰ τοῦθ'

³ bring/be near; have sex ⁴ investigation ⁵ haphazardly; in vain

οὕτως ἔχει, τὸν γε νοῦν κοσμοῦντα πάντα κοσμεῖν καὶ ἕκαστον τιθέναι ταύτη ὅπῃ ἂν βέλτιστα ἔχῃ· εἰ οὖν τις βούλοιτο τὴν αἰτίαν εὐρεῖν περὶ ἐκάστου ὅπῃ γίνεταί ἢ ἀπόλλυται ἢ ἔστι, τοῦτο δεῖν περὶ αὐτοῦ εὐρεῖν, ὅπῃ βέλτιστον αὐτῷ ἐστὶν ἢ εἶναι ἢ ἄλλο ὅτιοῦν πᾶσχειν ἢ ποιεῖν· ἐκ δὲ δὴ τοῦ λόγου τούτου οὐδὲν ἄλλο σκοπεῖν προσήκειν ἀνθρώπῳ καὶ περὶ αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου καὶ περὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀλλ' ἢ τὸ ἄριστον καὶ τὸ βέλτιστον. ἀναγκαῖον δὲ εἶναι τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον καὶ τὸ χεῖρον εἰδέναι· τὴν αὐτὴν γὰρ εἶναι ἐπιστήμην περὶ αὐτῶν. ταῦτα δὴ λογιζόμενος ἄσμενος ἠύρηκέναι ὥμην διδάσκαλον τῆς αἰτίας περὶ τῶν ὄντων κατὰ νοῦν ἐμαυτῷ, τὸν Ἀναξαγόραν, καί μοι φράσειν πρῶτον μὲν πότερον ἢ γῇ πλατεῖά ἐστιν ἡ στρογγύλη,⁶ ἐπειδὴ δὲ φράσειεν, ἐπεκδιηγέσθαι τὴν αἰτίαν καὶ τὴν ἀνάγκην, λέγοντα τὸ ἄμεινον καὶ ὅτι αὐτὴν ἄμεινον ἦν τοιαύτην εἶναι· καὶ εἰ ἐν μέσῳ φαίη εἶναι αὐτήν, ἐπεκδιηγέσθαι ὡς ἄμεινον ἦν αὐτὴν ἐν μέσῳ εἶναι· καὶ εἰ μοι ταῦτα ἀποφαίνοι, παρεσκευάσμην ὡς οὐκέτι ποθεσόμενος αἰτίας ἄλλο εἶδος.

Καὶ δὴ καὶ περὶ ἡλίου οὕτω παρεσκευάσμην ὡσαύτως πευσόμενος, καὶ σελήνης καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἄστρον, τάχους τε πέρι πρὸς ἄλληλα καὶ τροπῶν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων παθημάτων, πῇ ποτε ταῦτ' ἄμεινόν ἐστιν ἕκαστον καὶ ποιεῖν καὶ πᾶσχειν ἢ πᾶσχει. οὐ γὰρ ἂν ποτε αὐτὸν ὥμην, φάσκοντά γε ὑπὸ νοῦ αὐτὰ κεκοσμηθῆναι, ἄλλην τινὰ αὐτοῖς αἰτίαν ἐπενεγκεῖν ἢ ὅτι βέλτιστον αὐτὰ οὕτως ἔχειν ἐστὶν ὥσπερ ἔχει· ἐκάστῳ οὖν αὐτῶν ἀποδιδόντα τὴν αἰτίαν καὶ κοινῇ πᾶσι τὸ ἐκάστῳ βέλτιστον ὥμην καὶ τὸ κοινὸν πᾶσιν ἐπεκδιηγέσθαι ἀγαθόν· καὶ οὐκ ἂν ἀπεδόμην πολλοῦ τὰς ἐλπίδας, ἀλλὰ πάντῃ σπουδῇ λαβὼν τὰς βίβλους ὡς τάχιστα οἷός τ' ἢ ἀνεγίγνωσκον, ἵν' ὡς τάχιστα εἰδείην τὸ βέλτιστον καὶ τὸ χεῖρον.

Ἀπὸ δὴ θαυμαστῆς ἐλπίδος, ὦ ἐταῖρε, ὠχόμεν φερόμενος, ἐπειδὴ προῖων καὶ ἀναγινώσκων ὁρῶ ἄνδρα τῷ μὲν νῷ οὐδὲν χρώμενον οὐδέ τινος αἰτίας ἐπαιτιώμενον εἰς τὸ διακοσμεῖν τὰ πράγματα, ἀέρας δὲ καὶ αἰθέρας καὶ ὕδατα αἰτιώμενον καὶ ἄλλα πολλὰ καὶ ἄτοπα. καί μοι ἔδοξεν ὁμοιότατον πεπονθέναι ὥσπερ ἂν εἴ τις

⁶ round; merchant ship

λέγων ὅτι Σωκράτης πάντα ὅσα πράττει νῶν πράττει, κάπειτα ἐπιχειρήσας λέγειν τὰς αἰτίας ἐκάστων ὧν πράττω, λέγοι πρῶτον μὲν ὅτι διὰ ταῦτα νῦν ἐνθάδε κάθημαι, ὅτι σύγκειταί μου τὸ σῶμα ἐξ ὀσῶν καὶ νεύρων,⁷ καὶ τὰ μὲν ὀσῶ ἐστὶν στερεὰ⁸ καὶ διαφυὰς ἔχει χωρὶς ἀπ' ἀλλήλων, τὰ δὲ νεῦρα οἷα ἐπιτείνεσθαι καὶ ἀνίεσθαι, περιαμπέχοντα τὰ ὀσῶ μετὰ τῶν σαρκῶν καὶ δέρματος ὃ συνέχει αὐτά· αἰωρουμένων⁹ οὖν τῶν ὀσῶν ἐν ταῖς αὐτῶν συμβολαῖς χαλῶντα καὶ συντείνοντα τὰ νεῦρα κάμπτεσθαι¹⁰ πού ποιεῖ οἷόν τ' εἶναι ἐμὲ νῦν τὰ μέλη, καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν αἰτίαν συγκαμφθεὶς ἐνθάδε κάθημαι· καὶ αὖ περὶ τοῦ διαλέγεσθαι ὑμῖν ἐτέρας τοιαύτας αἰτίας λέγοι, φωνάς τε καὶ ἀέρας καὶ ἀκοὰς καὶ ἄλλα μυρία τοιαῦτα αἰτιώμενος, ἀμελήσας τὰς ὡς ἀληθῶς αἰτίας λέγειν, ὅτι, ἐπειδὴ Ἀθηναίοις ἔδοξε βέλτιον εἶναι ἐμοῦ καταψηφίσασθαι, διὰ ταῦτα δὴ καὶ ἐμοὶ βέλτιον αὖ δέδοκται ἐνθάδε καθῆσθαι, καὶ δικαιότερον παραμένοντα ὑπέχειν τὴν δίκην ἢν ἂν κελεύσωσιν· ἐπεὶ νῆ τὸν κύνα, ὡς ἐγὼμαι, πάλαι ἂν ταῦτα τὰ νεῦρα καὶ τὰ ὀσῶ ἢ περὶ Μέγαρα ἢ Βοιωτοὺς ἢν, ὑπὸ δόξης φερόμενα τοῦ βελτίστου, εἰ μὴ δικαιότερον ὦμην καὶ κάλλιον εἶναι πρὸ τοῦ φεύγειν τε καὶ ἀποδιδράσκειν ὑπέχειν τῇ πόλει δίκην ἢντιν' ἂν τάττη.

Ἄλλ' αἷται μὲν τὰ τοιαῦτα καλεῖν λίαν ἄτοπον· εἰ δέ τις λέγοι ὅτι ἄνευ τοῦ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔχειν καὶ ὀσῶ καὶ νεῦρα καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα ἔχω οὐκ ἂν οἶός τ' ἢ ποιεῖν τὰ δόξαντά μοι, ἀληθῆ ἂν λέγοι· ὡς μέντοι διὰ ταῦτα ποιῶ ἃ ποιῶ, καὶ ταῦτα νῶν πράττων, ἀλλ' οὐ τῇ τοῦ βελτίστου αἰρέσει,¹¹ πολλῇ ἂν καὶ μακρὰ ραθυμία¹² εἴη τοῦ λόγου. τὸ γὰρ μὴ διελέσθαι οἷόν τ' εἶναι ὅτι ἄλλο μὲν τί ἐστὶ τὸ αἷτιον τῷ ὄντι, ἄλλο δὲ ἐκείνο ἄνευ οὗ τὸ αἷτιον οὐκ ἂν ποτ' εἴη αἷτιον· ὃ δὴ μοι φαίνονται ψηλαφῶντες¹³ οἱ πολλοὶ ὥσπερ ἐν σκοτεινῇ, ἀλλοτρίῳ ὀνόματι προσχρώμενοι, ὡς αἷτιον αὐτὸ προσαγορεύειν. διὸ δὴ καὶ ὁ μὲν τις δίνην¹⁴ περιτιθεὶς τῇ γῇ ὑπὸ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ μένειν δὴ ποιεῖ τὴν γῆν, ὃ δὲ ὥσπερ καρδόσῳ πλατεῖα βάθρον¹⁵ τὸν ἀέρα ὑπερείδει· τὴν

⁷ tendon ⁸ solid, firm ⁹ lift; (mp) hang ¹⁰ bend, bend in exhaustion ¹¹ choice, plan ¹² carelessness, ease ¹³ grope blindly
¹⁴ whirlpool, eddy ¹⁵ step, base, bench

and that you may, if you wish, add or subtract anything.

But, said Cebes, as far as I see at present, I have nothing to add or subtract: I mean what you say that I mean.

Socrates paused awhile, and seemed to be absorbed in reflection. At length he said: You are raising a tremendous question, Cebes, involving the whole nature of generation and corruption, about which, if you like, I will give you my own experience; and if anything which I say is likely to avail towards the solution of your difficulty you may make use of it.

I should very much like, said Cebes, to hear what you have to say.

Then I will tell you, said Socrates. When I was young, Cebes, I had a prodigious desire to know that department of philosophy which is called the investigation of nature; to know the causes of things, and why a thing is and is created or destroyed appeared to me to be a lofty profession; and I was always agitating myself with the consideration of questions such as these:—Is the growth of animals the result of some decay which the hot and cold principle contracts, as some have said? Is the blood the element with which we think, or the air, or the fire? or perhaps nothing of the kind—but the brain may be the originating power of the perceptions of hearing and sight and smell, and memory and opinion may come from them, and science may be based on memory and opinion when they have attained fixity. And then I went on to examine the corruption of them, and then to the things of heaven and earth, and at last I concluded myself to be utterly and absolutely incapable of these enquiries, as I will satisfactorily prove to you. For I was fascinated by them to such a degree that my eyes grew blind to things which I had seemed to myself, and also to others, to know quite well; I forgot what I had before thought self-evident truths; e. g. such a fact as that the growth of man is the result of eating and drinking; for when by the digestion of food flesh is added to flesh and bone to bone, and whenever there is an aggregation of congenial elements, the lesser bulk becomes larger and the small man great. Was not that a reasonable notion?

Yes, said Cebes, I think so.

Well; but let me tell you something more. There was a time when I thought that I understood the meaning of greater and less pretty well; and when I saw a great man standing by a little one, I fancied that one was taller than the other by a head; or one horse would appear to be greater than another horse: and still more clearly did I seem to perceive that ten is two more than eight, and that two cubits are more than one, because two is the double of one.

And what is now your notion of such matters? said Cebes.

I should be far enough from imagining, he replied, that I knew the cause of any of them, by heaven I should; for I cannot satisfy myself that, when one is added to one, the one to which the addition is made becomes two, or that the two units added together make two by reason of the addition. I cannot understand how, when separated from the other, each of them was one and not two, and now, when they are brought together, the mere juxtaposition or meeting of them should be the cause of their becoming two: neither can I understand how the division of one is the way to make two; for then a different cause would produce the same effect,—as in the former instance the addition and juxtaposition of one to one was the cause of two, in this the separation and subtraction of one from the other would be the cause. Nor am I any longer satisfied that I understand the reason why one or anything else is either generated or destroyed or is at all, but I have in my mind some confused notion of a new method, and can never admit the other.

Then I heard some one reading, as he said, from a book of Anaxagoras, that mind was the disposer and cause of all, and I was delighted at this notion, which appeared quite admirable, and I said to myself: If mind is the disposer, mind will dispose all for the best, and put each particular in the best place; and I argued that if any one desired to find out the cause of the generation or destruction or existence of anything, he must find out what state of being or doing or suffering was best for that thing, and therefore a man had only to consider the best for himself and others, and then he would also know the worse, since the same science comprehended both. And I rejoiced to think that I had found in Anaxagoras a teacher of the causes of existence such as I desired, and I imagined that he would tell me first whether the earth is flat or round; and whichever was true, he would proceed to explain the cause and the necessity of this being so, and then he would teach me the nature of the best and show that this was best; and if he said that the earth was in the centre, he would further explain that this position was the best, and I should be satisfied with the explanation given, and not want any other sort of cause. And I thought that I would then go on and ask him about the sun and moon and stars, and that he would explain to me their comparative swiftness, and their returnings and various states, active and passive, and how all of them were for the best. For I could not imagine that when he spoke of mind as the disposer of them, he would give any other account of their being as they are, except that this was best; and I thought that when he had explained to me in detail the cause of each and the cause of all, he would go on to explain to me what was best for each and what was good for all. These hopes I would not have sold for a large sum of money, and I seized the books and read them as fast as I could in my eagerness to know the better and the worse.

What expectations I had formed, and how grievously was I disappointed! As I proceeded, I found my philosopher altogether forsaking mind or any other principle of order, but having recourse to air, and ether, and water, and other eccentricities. I might compare him to a person who began by maintaining generally that mind is the cause of the actions of Socrates, but who, when he endeavoured to explain the causes of my several actions in detail, went on to show that I sit here because my body is made up of bones and muscles; and the bones, as he would say, are hard and have joints which divide them, and the muscles are elastic, and they cover the bones, which have also a covering or environment of flesh and skin which contains them; and as the bones are lifted at their joints by the contraction or relaxation of the muscles, I am able to bend my limbs, and this is why I am sitting here in a curved posture—that is what he would say, and he would have a similar explanation of my talking to you, which he would attribute to sound, and air, and hearing, and he would assign ten thousand other causes of the same sort, forgetting to mention the true cause, which is, that the Athenians have thought fit to condemn me, and accordingly I have thought it better and more right to remain here and undergo my sentence; for I am inclined to think that these muscles and bones of mine would have gone off long ago to Megara or Boeotia—by the dog they would, if they had been moved only by their own idea of what was best, and if I had not chosen the better and nobler part, instead of playing truant and running away, of enduring any punishment which the state inflicts. There is surely a strange confusion of causes and conditions in all this. It may be said, indeed, that without bones and muscles and the other parts of the body I cannot execute my purposes. But to say that I do as I do because of them, and that this is the way in which mind acts, and not from the choice of the best, is a very careless and idle mode of speaking. I wonder that they cannot distinguish the cause from the condition, which the many, feeling about in the dark, are always mistaking and misnaming. And thus one man makes a vortex

vocabulary

αἴσθησις -εως (f) sense perception
ἄλλοτε at another time ~alien
ἀνευρίσκω discover
ἄνωθεν from above, the beginning
ἀπαντάω encounter, come upon
ἁπλός single; simple ~haploid
ἀποδέχομαι accept ~doctrine
ἄπτω set on fire; attach; mid: touch, seize ~haptic
ἀρέσκω please, satisfy; make amends
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
βέλτιστος best, noblest
βοάω shout
γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at
δαιμόνιος voc: you crazy guy
διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
διανοέω have in mind
διασχιζω tear to pieces ~schism
διότι because; that
δίπηγος 2 cubits long
εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form ~-oid
εἰκάζω liken; conjecture
εἰκός likely
εἰκών -όνος (f, 3) image, likeness
εἴπερ if indeed
εἴτε if, whenever; either/or
ἐκάστοτε each time
ἐκλείπω leave out, pass over
ἐλπίζω (mid, pf) hope, expect; (act) cause to do so (rare) ~voluptuary
ἐναργής visible, clear ~Argentina
ἐνιοι some
ἐξευρίσκω find; discover ~eureka
ἐξῆς in turn
εὐοκώς like; fairly
ἐπιδείκνυμι (ū) display, exhibit
ἐπίδειξις -τος (f) display
ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
ἐπωνύμιος called, named

ἐρρωμένος vigorous, powerful
ἐρωτάω ask about something
εὐανθής flowering, luxuriant
εὐήθης good-hearted; simple
ζήτησις -εως (f) search, inquiry
ἡδέως pleasantly ~hedonism
ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism
ἡμισυς half ~hemisphere
ἡώς ἡῶθι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene
θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable
θεωρέω be sent to consult an oracle; observe, contemplate
ἰσχυρός (ū) strong, forceful, violent
ἰσχύς -ος (f) strength; body of troops
ἴσχω restrain, hold back ~ischemia
καινός new, fresh, strange
καταφεύγω resort to, flee to, appeal to ~fugitive
κοινωνία association
κυκάω stir, mix
μέγεθος -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person) ~megaton
μεταλαμβάνω share in; swap
μετέχω partake of
ναί yea
ναός (ā) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
νή yea
ὀκτώ eight ~octopus
ὄμμα -τος (n, 3) eye
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὁμός same ~homoeerotic
ὁμοῦ together
ὁμόω unite ~homoeerotic
ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
ὅπη wherever, however
οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
οὐσία property; essence
παντάπασιν altogether; yes, certainly
παρέρχομαι pass, escape
περαίνω finish, accomplish
πηχυαῖος a cubit long

πότε when?
 πραγματεύομαι work at
 προσγίγνομαι become ally to
 προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp)
 agree; side with ~thesis
 ῥήμα -τος (n, 3) a thing said
 σουτοῦ yourself
 σαφής clear, understandable
 σεαυτοῦ yourself
 σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptical
 σκιά shadow ~shadow
 σκοπᾶω watch, observe
 σκοπέω behold, consider
 σκοπός (f) lookout, overseer, spy,
 target ~telescope
 σοφία skill; wisdom ~sophistry
 σοφός skilled, clever, wise
 στερέω steal, take
 συγχέω entangle, destroy, confound
 συγχωρέω accede, concede
 συνδέω bind together
 συνδοκέω seem good also
 συνέχω keep together, constrain

σφόδρα very much
 σχῆμα -τος (n, 3) form, figure
 σχίζω split ~schism
 ταρασσω mess things up ~trachea
 τέρας -ως (n, 3) omen, fetish
 τοίνυν well, then
 τοιόσδε such
 τυφλῶ blind
 ὑπερβάλλω cause to go beyond;
 delay ~ballistic
 ὑπέρχω be over; protect
 ὑπερφυής overgrown; gigantic
 ὑπόθεσις -εως (f) proposal; subject;
 hypothesis
 ὑποτίθηναι suggest, advise
 ~hypothesis
 φθάνω (ᾱ) do first, outstrip
 φιλόσοφος wisdom-loving
 φροντίς -τος (f) thought, care
 φύρω (υ) moisten, stain
 φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
 χρῶμα -τος (n, 3) color
 ὡσαύτως in the same way

δὲ τοῦ ὡς οἶόν τε βέλτιστα αὐτὰ τεθῆναι δύναμιν οὕτω νῦν κείσθαι, ταύτην οὔτε ζητοῦσιν οὔτε τινὰ οἴονται δαμονίαν ἰσχὺν ἔχειν, ἀλλὰ ἡγοῦνται τούτου Ἄτλαντα ἂν ποτε ἰσχυρότερον καὶ ἀθανατώτερον καὶ μᾶλλον ἅπαντα συνέχοντα ἐξευρεῖν, καὶ ὡς ἀληθῶς τὸ ἀγαθὸν καὶ δέον συνδεῖν καὶ συνέχειν οὐδὲν οἴονται. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν τῆς τοιαύτης αἰτίας ὅπῃ ποτὲ ἔχει μαθητῆς ὅτουοῦν ἥδιστ' ἂν γενοίμην· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ταύτης ἐστερήθη καὶ οὐτ' αὐτὸς εὑρεῖν οὔτε παρ' ἄλλου μαθεῖν οἷός τε ἐγενόμην, τὸν δεύτερον πλοῦν ἐπὶ τὴν τῆς αἰτίας ζήτησιν¹ ἢ πεπραγμάτευμαι βούλει σοι, ἔφη, ἐπίδειξιν ποιήσωμαι, ὦ Κέβης;

Ὑπερφυῶς μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, ὡς βούλομαι.

Ἔδοξε τοίνυν μοι, ἡ δ' ὅς, μετὰ ταῦτα, ἐπειδὴ ἀπειρήκη τὰ ὄντα σκοπῶν, δεῖν εὐλαβηθῆναι μὴ πάθοιμι ὅπερ οἱ τὸν ἥλιον ἐκλείποντα θεωροῦντες καὶ σκοπούμενοι πάσχουσιν· διαφθείρονται γάρ που ἔνιοι τὰ ὄμματα,² ἐὰν μὴ ἐν ὕδατι ἢ τινι τοιούτῳ σκοπῶνται τὴν εἰκόνα αὐτοῦ. τοιοῦτόν τι καὶ ἐγὼ διενσήθην, καὶ ἔδεια μὴ παντάπασιν τὴν ψυχὴν τυφλωθεῖν βλέπων πρὸς τὰ πράγματα τοῖς ὄμμασι καὶ ἐκάστη τῶν αἰσθήσεων ἐπιχειρῶν ἄπτεσθαι αὐτῶν. ἔδοξε δὴ μοι χρῆναι εἰς τοὺς λόγους καταφυγόντα ἐν ἐκείνοις σκοπεῖν τῶν ὄντων τὴν ἀλήθειαν.

Ἵσως μὲν οὖν ᾧ εἰκάζω τρόπον τινὰ οὐκ ἔοικεν· οὐ γὰρ πάννυ συγχωρῶ τὸν ἐν τοῖς λόγοις σκοπούμενον τὰ ὄντα ἐν εἰκόσι μᾶλλον σκοπεῖν ἢ τὸν ἐν τοῖς ἔργοις. ἀλλ' οὖν δὴ ταύτη γέ ὥρμησα, καὶ ὑποθέμενος ἐκάστοτε λόγον ὃν ἂν κρίνω ἐρρωμενέστατον³ εἶναι, ἃ μὲν ἂν μοι δοκῇ τούτῳ συμφωνεῖν τίθημι ὡς ἀληθῆ ὄντα, καὶ περὶ αἰτίας καὶ περὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάντων ὄντων, ἃ δ' ἂν μή, ὡς οὐκ ἀληθῆ. βούλομαι δέ σοι σαφέστερον εἰπεῖν ἃ λέγω· οἶμαι γάρ σε νῦν οὐ μανθάνειν.

Οὐ μὰ τὸν Δία, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, οὐ σφόδρα.

Ἄλλ', ἡ δ' ὅς, ὥδε λέγω, οὐδὲν καινόν, ἀλλ' ἅπερ αἰεὶ τε ἄλλοτε καὶ

¹ search, inquiry ² eye ³ vigorous, powerful

ἐν τῷ παρεληλυθότι λόγῳ οὐδὲν πέπαυμαι λέγων. ἔρχομαι γὰρ δὴ ἐπιχειρῶν σοι ἐπιδείξασθαι τῆς αἰτίας τὸ εἶδος ὃ πεπραγμάτευμαι, καὶ εἰμι πάλιν ἐπ' ἐκείνα τὰ πολυθρύλητα καὶ ἄρχομαι ἀπ' ἐκείνων, ὑποθέμενος εἶναι τι καλὸν αὐτὸ καθ' αὐτὸ καὶ ἀγαθὸν καὶ μέγα καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα· ἃ εἰ μοι δίδως τε καὶ συγχωρεῖς εἶναι ταῦτα, ἐλπίζω σοι ἐκ τούτων τὴν αἰτίαν ἐπιδείξειν καὶ ἀνευρήσειν ὡς ἀθάνατον ἢ ψυχή.

Ἀλλὰ μὴν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, ὡς διδόντος σοι οὐκ ἂν φθάνοις περαίνων.

Σκόπει δὴ, ἔφη, τὰ ἐξῆς ἐκείνοις ἐάν σοι συνδοκῇ ὥσπερ ἐμοί. φαίνεται γάρ μοι, εἴ τί ἐστιν ἄλλο καλὸν πλὴν αὐτὸ τὸ καλόν, οὐδὲ δι' ἐν ἄλλο καλὸν εἶναι ἢ διότι μετέχει ἐκείνου τοῦ καλοῦ· καὶ πάντα δὴ οὕτως λέγω. τῇ τοιαύτῃ αἰτία συγχωρεῖς;

Συγχωρῶ, ἔφη.

Οὐ τοίνυν, ἡ δ' ὅς, ἔτι μανθάνω οὐδὲ δύναμαι τὰς ἄλλας αἰτίας τὰς σοφὰς ταύτας γινώσκειν· ἀλλ' ἐάν τις μοι λέγῃ δι' ὅτι καλόν ἐστιν ὅτιοῦν, ἡ χρῶμα εὐανθές⁴ ἔχον ἢ σχῆμα ἢ ἄλλο ὅτιοῦν τῶν τοιούτων, τὰ μὲν ἄλλα χαίρειν ἐῷ,— ταραττομαι γὰρ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι— τοῦτο δὲ ἀπλῶς καὶ ἀτέχνως καὶ ἴσως εὐήθως⁵ ἔχω παρ' ἐμαυτῷ, ὅτι οὐκ ἄλλο τι ποιεῖ αὐτὸ καλὸν ἢ ἡ ἐκείνου τοῦ καλοῦ εἴτε παρουσία εἴτε κοινωνία εἴτε ὅπη δὴ καὶ ὅπως προσγενομένη· οὐ γὰρ ἔτι τοῦτο διυσχυρίζομαι, ἀλλ' ὅτι τῷ καλῷ πάντα τὰ καλὰ γίγνεται καλά. τοῦτο γάρ μοι δοκεῖ ἀσφαλέστατον εἶναι καὶ ἐμαυτῷ ἀποκρίνασθαι καὶ ἄλλω, καὶ τούτου ἐχόμενος ἡγοῦμαι οὐκ ἂν ποτε πεσεῖν, ἀλλ' ἀσφαλές εἶναι καὶ ἐμοὶ καὶ ὅτῳ οὖν ἄλλω ἀποκρίνασθαι ὅτι τῷ καλῷ τὰ καλὰ γίγνεται καλά· ἢ οὐ καὶ σοὶ δοκεῖ;

Δοκεῖ.

Καὶ μεγέθει ἄρα τὰ μεγάλα μεγάλα καὶ τὰ μείζω μείζω, καὶ συμκρότητι τὰ ἐλάττω ἐλάττω;

⁴ flowering, luxuriant ⁵ good-hearted; simple

Ναί.

Οὐδὲ σὺν ἄρ' ἂν ἀποδέχοιο εἴ τίς τινα φαίη ἕτερον ἐτέρου τῇ κεφαλῇ μείζω εἶναι, καὶ τὸν ἐλάττω τῷ αὐτῷ τούτῳ ἐλάττω, ἀλλὰ διαμαρτύροιο ἂν ὅτι σὺ μὲν οὐδὲν ἄλλο λέγεις ἢ ὅτι τὸ μείζον πᾶν ἕτερον ἐτέρου οὐδενὶ ἄλλῳ μείζον ἔστιν ἢ μεγέθει, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μείζον, διὰ τὸ μέγεθος, τὸ δὲ ἔλαττον οὐδενὶ ἄλλῳ ἔλαττον ἢ σμικρότητι, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἔλαττον, διὰ τὴν σμικρότητα, φοβούμενος οἶμαι μή τίς σοι ἐναντίος λόγος ἀπαντήσῃ, ἐὰν τῇ κεφαλῇ μείζονά τινα φῇς εἶναι καὶ ἐλάττω, πρῶτον μὲν τῷ αὐτῷ τὸ μείζον μείζον εἶναι καὶ τὸ ἔλαττον ἔλαττον, ἔπειτα τῇ κεφαλῇ σμικρᾷ οὕσῃ τὸν μείζω μείζω εἶναι, καὶ τοῦτο δὴ τέρας εἶναι, τὸ σμικρῷ τινι μέγαν τινὰ εἶναι· ἢ οὐκ ἂν φοβοῖο ταῦτα;

Καὶ ὁ Κέβης γελάσας, ἔγωγε, ἔφη.

Οὐκοῦν, ἦ δ' ὅς, τὰ δέκα τῶν ὀκτῶ δυοῖν πλείω εἶναι, καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν αἰτίαν ὑπερβάλλειν, φοβοῖο ἂν λέγειν, ἀλλὰ μὴ πληθῇ καὶ διὰ τὸ πληθὺς; καὶ τὸ δίπηχυ τοῦ πηχυαίου ἡμίσει μείζον εἶναι ἀλλ' οὐ μεγέθει; ὁ αὐτὸς γάρ που φόβος.

Πάνυ γ', ἔφη.

Τί δέ; ἐνὶ ἐνὸς προστεθέντος τὴν πρόσθεσιν αἰτίαν εἶναι τοῦ δύο γενέσθαι ἢ διασχιθέντος τὴν σχίσιν οὐκ εὐλαβοῖο ἂν λέγειν; καὶ μέγα ἂν βοῶῃς ὅτι οὐκ οἶσθα ἄλλως πως ἕκαστον γιγνόμενον ἢ μετασχὼν τῆς ἰδίας οὐσίας⁶ ἐκάστου οὗ ἂν μετάσχη, καὶ ἐν τούτοις οὐκ ἔχεις ἄλλην τινὰ αἰτίαν τοῦ δύο γενέσθαι ἀλλ' ἢ τὴν τῆς δυνάδος μετάσχεσιν, καὶ δεῖν τούτου μετασχεῖν τὰ μέλλοντα δύο ἔσεσθαι, καὶ μονάδος ὃ ἂν μέλλῃ ἐν ἔσεσθαι, τὰς δὲ σχίσεις ταύτας καὶ προσθέσεις καὶ τὰς ἄλλας τὰς τοιαύτας κομψείας ἐώης ἂν χαίρειν, παρὲς ἀποκρίνασθαι τοῖς σεαυτοῦ σοφωτέροις· σὺ δὲ δεδιὼς ἄν, τὸ λεγόμενον, τὴν σαυτοῦ σκιάν⁷ καὶ τὴν ἀπειρίαν, ἐχόμενος ἐκείνου τοῦ ἀσφαλοῦς τῆς ὑποθέσεως, οὕτως ἀποκρίναιο ἄν. εἰ δέ τις αὐτῆς τῆς ὑποθέσεως ἔχοιτο, χαίρειν ἐώης ἂν καὶ οὐκ ἀποκρίναιο ἕως ἂν τὰ

⁶ property; essence ⁷ shadow

ἀπ' ἐκείνης ὀρμηθέντα σκέψαιο εἴ σοι ἀλλήλοις συμφωνεῖ ἢ διαφωνεῖ· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐκείνης αὐτῆς δέοι σε διδόναι λόγον, ὡσαύτως ἂν διδοίης, ἄλλην αὖ ὑπόθεσιν ὑποθέμενος ἥτις τῶν ἄνωθεν βελτίστη φαίνοιτο, ἕως ἐπὶ τι ἱκανὸν ἔλθοις, ἅμα δὲ οὐκ ἂν φύριοι ὥσπερ οἱ ἀντιλογικοὶ περὶ τε τῆς ἀρχῆς διαλεγόμενος καὶ τῶν ἐξ ἐκείνης ὠρμημένων, εἴπερ βούλοιο τι τῶν ὄντων εὐρεῖν; ἐκείνοις μὲν γὰρ ἴσως οὐδὲ εἰς περὶ τούτου λόγος οὐδὲ φροντίς.⁸ ἱκανοὶ γὰρ ὑπὸ σοφίας ὁμοῦ πάντα κυκλώντες⁹ ὅμως δύνασθαι αὐτοὶ αὐτοῖς ἀρέσκειν· σὺ δ', εἴπερ εἰ τῶν φιλοσόφων, οἶμαι ἂν ὡς ἐγὼ λέγω ποιοῖς.

Ἀληθέστατα, ἔφη, λέγεις, ὅ τε Συμμίας ἅμα καὶ ὁ Κέβης.

ΕΧΕΚΡΑΤΗΣ. νῆ Δία, ὦ Φαῖδων, εἰκότως¹⁰ γε· θαυμαστῶς γάρ μοι δοκεῖ ὡς ἐναργῶς τῷ καὶ σμικρὸν νῦν ἔχοντι εἰπεῖν ἐκείνος ταῦτα.

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες, καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς παροῦσιν ἔδοξεν.

ΕΧ. καὶ γὰρ ἡμῖν τοῖς ἀποῦσι, νῦν δὲ ἀκούουσιν. ἀλλὰ τίνα δὴ ἦν τὰ μετὰ ταῦτα λεχθέντα;

Ὡς μὲν ἐγὼ οἶμαι, ἐπεὶ αὐτῷ ταῦτα συνεχωρήθη, καὶ ὁμολογεῖτο εἶναι τι ἕκαστον τῶν εἰδῶν καὶ τούτων τὰλλα μεταλαμβάνοντα αὐτῶν τούτων τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἴσχειν, τὸ δὴ μετὰ ταῦτα ἡρώτα, εἰ δὴ, ἦ δ' ὅς, ταῦτα οὕτως λέγεις, ἄρ' οὐχ, ὅταν Συμμίαν Σωκράτους φῆς μεῖζω εἶναι, Φαῖδωνος δὲ ἐλάττω, λέγεις τότε εἶναι ἐν τῷ Συμμιά ἀμφοτέρα, καὶ μέγεθος καὶ σμικρότητα;

Ἐγώ γε.

Ἀλλὰ γάρ, ἦ δ' ὅς, ὁμολογεῖς τὸ τὸν Συμμίαν ὑπερέχειν Σωκράτους οὐχ ὡς τοῖς ῥήμασι λέγεται οὕτω καὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς ἔχειν; οὐ γάρ που πεφυκέναι Συμμίαν ὑπερέχειν τούτῳ, τῷ Συμμίαν εἶναι, ἀλλὰ τῷ μεγέθει ὃ τυγχάνει ἔχων· οὐδ' αὖ Σωκράτους ὑπερέχειν ὅτι Σωκράτης ὁ Σωκράτης ἐστίν, ἀλλ' ὅτι σμικρότητα ἔχει ὁ Σωκράτης πρὸς τὸ ἐκείνου μέγεθος;

⁸ thought, care ⁹ stir, mix ¹⁰ like; fairly

all round and steadies the earth by the heaven; another gives the air as a support to the earth, which is a sort of broad trough. Any power which in arranging them as they are arranges them for the best never enters into their minds; and instead of finding any superior strength in it, they rather expect to discover another Atlas of the world who is stronger and more everlasting and more containing than the good;—of the obligatory and containing power of the good they think nothing; and yet this is the principle which I would fain learn if any one would teach me. But as I have failed either to discover myself, or to learn of any one else, the nature of the best, I will exhibit to you, if you like, what I have found to be the second best mode of enquiring into the cause.

I should very much like to hear, he replied.

Socrates proceeded:—I thought that as I had failed in the contemplation of true existence, I ought to be careful that I did not lose the eye of my soul; as people may injure their bodily eye by observing and gazing on the sun during an eclipse, unless they take the precaution of only looking at the image reflected in the water, or in some similar medium. So in my own case, I was afraid that my soul might be blinded altogether if I looked at things with my eyes or tried to apprehend them by the help of the senses. And I thought that I had better have recourse to the world of mind and seek there the truth of existence. I dare say that the simile is not perfect—for I am very far from admitting that he who contemplates existences through the medium of thought, sees them only ‘through a glass darkly,’ any more than he who considers them in action and operation. However, this was the method which I adopted: I first assumed some principle which I judged to be the strongest, and then I affirmed as true whatever seemed to agree with this, whether relating to the cause or to anything else; and that which disagreed I regarded as untrue. But I should like to explain my meaning more clearly, as I do not think that you as yet understand me.

No indeed, replied Cebes, not very well.

There is nothing new, he said, in what I am about to tell you; but only what I have been always and everywhere repeating in the previous discussion and on other occasions: I want to show you the nature of that cause which has occupied my thoughts. I shall have to go back to those familiar words which are in the mouth of every one, and first of all assume that there is an absolute beauty and goodness and greatness, and the like; grant me this, and I hope to be able to show you the nature of the cause, and to prove the immortality of the soul.

Cebes said: You may proceed at once with the proof, for I grant you this.

Well, he said, then I should like to know whether you agree with me in the next step; for I cannot help thinking, if there be anything beautiful other than absolute beauty should there be such, that it can be beautiful only in as far as it partakes of absolute beauty—and I should say the same of everything. Do you agree in this notion of the cause?

Yes, he said, I agree.

He proceeded: I know nothing and can understand nothing of any other of those wise causes which are alleged; and if a person says to me that the bloom of colour, or form, or any such thing is a source of beauty, I leave all that, which is only confusing to me, and simply and singly, and perhaps foolishly, hold and am assured in my own mind that nothing makes a thing beautiful but the presence and participation of beauty in whatever way or manner obtained; for as to the manner I am uncertain, but I stoutly contend that by beauty all beautiful things become beautiful. This appears to me to be the safest answer which I can give, either to myself or to another, and to this I cling, in the persuasion that this principle will never be overthrown, and that to myself or to any one who asks the question, I may safely reply, That by beauty beautiful things become beautiful. Do you not agree with me?

I do.

And that by greatness only great things become great and greater greater, and by smallness the less become less?

True.

Then if a person were to remark that A is taller by a head than B, and B less by a head than A, you would refuse to admit his statement, and would stoutly contend that what you mean is only that the greater is greater by, and by reason of, greatness, and the less is less only by, and by reason of, smallness; and thus you would avoid the danger of saying that the greater is greater and the less less by the measure of the head, which is the same in both, and would also avoid the monstrous absurdity of supposing that the greater man is greater by reason of the head, which is small. You would be afraid to draw such an inference, would you not?

Indeed, I should, said Cebes, laughing.

In like manner you would be afraid to say that ten exceeded eight by, and by reason of, two; but would say by, and by reason of, number; or you would say that two cubits exceed one cubit not by a half, but by magnitude?—for there is the same liability to error in all these cases.

Very true, he said.

Again, would you not be cautious of affirming that the addition of one to one, or the division of one, is the cause of two? And you would loudly asseverate that you know of no way in which anything comes into existence except by participation in its own proper essence, and consequently, as far as you know, the only cause of two is the participation in duality—this is the way to make two, and the participation in one is the way to make one. You would say: I will let alone puzzles of division and addition—wiser heads than mine may answer them; inexperienced as I am, and ready to start, as the proverb says, at my own shadow, I cannot afford to give up the sure ground of a principle. And if any one assails you there, you would not mind him, or answer him, until you had seen whether the consequences which follow agree with one another or not, and when you are further required to give an explanation of this principle, you would go on to assume a higher principle, and a higher, until you found a resting-place in the best of the higher; but you would not confuse the principle and the consequences in your reasoning, like the Eristics—at least if you wanted to discover real existence. Not that this confusion signifies to them, who never care or think about the matter at all, for they have the wit to be well pleased with themselves however great may be the turmoil of their ideas. But you, if you are a philosopher, will certainly do as I say.

What you say is most true, said Simmias and Cebes, both speaking at once.

ECHECRATES: Yes, Phaedo; and I do not wonder at their assenting. Any one who has the least sense will acknowledge the wonderful clearness of Socrates' reasoning.

PHAEDO: Certainly, Echecrates; and such was the feeling of the whole company at the time.

ECHECRATES: Yes, and equally of ourselves, who were not of the company, and are now listening to your recital. But what followed?

PHAEDO: After all this had been admitted, and they had that ideas exist, and that other things participate in them and derive their names from them, Socrates, if I remember rightly, said:—This is your way of speaking; and yet when you say that Simmias is greater than Socrates and less than Phaedo, do you not predicate of Simmias both greatness and smallness?

Yes, I do.

But still you allow that Simmias does not really exceed Socrates, as the words may seem to imply, because he is Simmias, but by reason of the size

vocabulary

ἀθρέω observe, gaze
ἀναγκάζω force, compel
ἄπλῶς single; simple ~haploid
ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse
ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail
ἀπομνημονεύω remember, record
ἄρα interrogative pcl
ἀριθμέω to count ~arithmetic
ἀριθμός number
ἄρτι at the same time
ἄρτιος suitable
αὐτως just so, merely; in vain ~after
γένεσις -εως (f) source, origin
 ~genus
δηλώω show, disclose
δήπου perhaps; is it not so?
εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form
 ~-oid
ἐλαχύς small; comp.: less ~light
ἐνεμι be in ~ion
ἐνιοι some
ἐννοέω consider
ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion
ἐπονομάζω to name
ἐπώνυμιος called, named
ἐρωτάω ask about something
ἥμισυς half ~hemisphere
ἦτοι truly; either, or
θερμός warm, hot ~thermos
ιδέα ἰδῆς semblance; kind, style
ἴσχω restrain, hold back ~ischemia
καίτοι and yet; and in fact; although
μέγεθος -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)
 ~megaton
μειδάω smile
μειδιάω smile
μηδέποτε never
μορφή beauty
ναί yea
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
ὀνομάζω to address, name ~name

ὅποῖος whatever kind
ὀρίζω divide; ordain, define
 ~horizon
οὐδέποτε never
οὔτις nobody, nothing
πάθημα -τος (n, 3) suffering, condition
παντάπασιν altogether; yes, certainly
παραβάλλω put at risk ~ballistic
περισσός prodigious, superfluous
πότε when?
προσαγορεύω address, call by name
προσδέχομαι await
πρόσειμι approach, draw near; add
 ~ion
προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender, come in
προσίημι be allowed near
σαφής clear, understandable
σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch
 ~skeptical
σκοπᾶω watch, observe
σκοπέω behold, consider
στίχος line of soldiers, writing
συγχωρέω accede, concede
σύμφημι assent, concede
συνομολογέω agree
ταράσσω mess things up ~trachea
τέσσαρες four ~trapezoid
τοίνυν well, then
ὑπέξειμι withdraw; go out
ὑπερέχω be over; protect
ὑπέχω promise; hold out one's hand; submit to
ὑπομένω stay behind, await
 ~remain
φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)
 ~physics
φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics
χιών χιόνος (f, 3) snow
ψυχρός (ῶ) cold ~psychology

Ἀληθῆ.

Οὐδέ γε αὖ ὑπὸ Φαίδωνος ὑπερέχεσθαι τῷ ὅτι Φαίδων ὁ Φαίδων ἐστίν, ἀλλ' ὅτι μέγεθος ἔχει ὁ Φαίδων πρὸς τὴν Συμμίον σμικρότητα;

Ἔστι ταῦτα.

Οὕτως ἄρα ὁ Συμμίας ἐπωνυμίαν ἔχει σμικρός τε καὶ μέγας εἶναι, ἐν μέσῳ ὦν ἀμφοτέρων, τοῦ μὲν τῷ μεγέθει ὑπερέχειν τὴν σμικρότητα ὑπέχων, τῷ δὲ τὸ μέγεθος τῆς σμικρότητος παρέχων ὑπερέχον. καὶ ἅμα μειδιάσας, ἔοικα, ἔφη, καὶ συγγραφικῶς ἐρεῖν, ἀλλ' οὖν ἔχει γέ που ὡς λέγω. συνέφη.

Λέγω δὴ τοῦδ' ἔνεκα, βουλόμενος δόξαι σοὶ ὅπερ ἐμοί. ἐμοὶ γὰρ φαίνεται οὐ μόνον αὐτὸ τὸ μέγεθος οὐδέποτε ἐθέλειν ἅμα μέγα καὶ σμικρὸν εἶναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ ἐν ἡμῖν μέγεθος οὐδέποτε προσδέχεσθαι τὸ σμικρὸν οὐδ' ἐθέλειν ὑπερέχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ δυοῖν τὸ ἕτερον, ἢ φεύγειν καὶ ὑπεκχωρεῖν ὅταν αὐτῷ προσίῃ τὸ ἐναντίον, τὸ σμικρὸν, ἢ προσελθόντος ἐκείνου ἀπολωλέναι· ὑπομένον δὲ καὶ δεξάμενον τὴν σμικρότητα οὐκ ἐθέλειν εἶναι ἕτερον ἢ ὅπερ ἦν. ὥσπερ ἐγὼ δεξάμενος καὶ ὑπομείνας τὴν σμικρότητα, καὶ ἔτι ὦν ὅσπερ εἰμί, οὗτος ὁ αὐτὸς σμικρός εἰμι· ἐκεῖνο δὲ οὐ тетόλμηκεν μέγα ὄν σμικρὸν εἶναι· ὡς δ' αὕτως καὶ τὸ σμικρὸν τὸ ἐν ἡμῖν οὐκ ἐθέλει ποτὲ μέγα γίνεσθαι οὐδὲ εἶναι, οὐδ' ἄλλο οὐδὲν τῶν ἐναντίων, ἔτι ὄν ὅπερ ἦν, ἅμα τοῦναντίον γίνεσθαι τε καὶ εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἥτοι ἀπέρχεται ἢ ἀπόλλυται ἐν τούτῳ τῷ παθήματι.

Παντάπασιν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, οὕτω φαίνεται μοι.

Καὶ τις εἶπε τῶν παρόντων ἀκούσας— ὅστις δ' ἦν, οὐ σαφῶς μέμνημαι— πρὸς θεῶν, οὐκ ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν ἡμῖν λόγοις αὐτὸ τὸ ἐναντίον τῶν νυνὶ λεγομένων ὡμολογεῖτο, ἐκ τοῦ ἐλάττονος τὸ μείζον γίνεσθαι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ μείζονος τὸ ἐλάττον, καὶ ἀτεχνῶς αὕτη εἶναι ἢ γένεσις τοῖς ἐναντίοις, ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων; νῦν δέ μοι δοκεῖ λέγεσθαι ὅτι τοῦτο οὐκ ἂν ποτε γένοιτο.

Καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης παραβαλὼν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ ἀκούσας, ἀνδρικῶς,

ἔφη, ἀπεμνημόνευκας, οὐ μέντοι ἐννοεῖς τὸ διαφέρον τοῦ τε νῦν λεγομένου καὶ τοῦ τότε. τότε μὲν γὰρ ἐλέγετο ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου πράγματος τὸ ἐναντίον πρᾶγμα γίγνεσθαι, νῦν δέ, ὅτι αὐτὸ τὸ ἐναντίον ἑαυτῷ ἐναντίον οὐκ ἂν ποτε γένοιτο, οὔτε τὸ ἐν ἡμῖν οὔτε τὸ ἐν τῇ φύσει. τότε μὲν γάρ, ὦ φίλε, περὶ τῶν ἐχόντων τὰ ἐναντία ἐλέγομεν, ἐπονομάζοντες αὐτὰ τῇ ἐκείνων ἐπωνυμία, νῦν δὲ περὶ ἐκείνων αὐτῶν ὧν ἐνόντων ἔχει τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν τὰ ὀνομαζόμενα· αὐτὰ δ' ἐκεῖνα οὐκ ἂν ποτέ φαμεν ἐθελῆσαι γένεσιν ἀλλήλων δέξασθαι. καὶ ἅμα βλέψας πρὸς τὸν Κέβητα εἶπεν, ἄρα μή που, ὦ Κέβης, ἔφη, καὶ σέ τι τούτων ἐτάραξεν ὧν ὅδε εἶπεν;

Οὐδ' αὖ, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, οὕτως ἔχω· καίτοι οὔτι λέγω ὥς οὐ πολλά με ταραττει.

Συνωμολογήκαμεν ἄρα, ἡ δ' ὅς, ἀπλῶς τοῦτο, μηδέποτε ἐναντίον ἑαυτῷ τὸ ἐναντίον ἔσεσθαι.

Παντάπασιν, ἔφη.

Ἐπι δὴ μοι καὶ τόδε σκέψαι, ἔφη, εἰ ἄρα συνωμολογήσεις. θερμόν τι καλεῖς καὶ ψυχρόν;

Ἐγωγε.

Ἄρ' ὅπερ χιόνα καὶ πῦρ;

Μὰ Δί' οὐκ ἔγωγε.

Ἄλλ' ἕτερόν τι πυρὸς τὸ θερμόν καὶ ἕτερόν τι χιόνος τὸ ψυχρόν;

Ναί.

Ἀλλὰ τόδε γ' οἶμαι δοκεῖ σοι, οὐδέποτε χιόνα γ' οὔσαν δεξαμένην τὸ θερμόν, ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν ἐλέγομεν, ἔτι ἔσεσθαι ὅπερ ἦν, χιόνα καὶ θερμόν, ἀλλὰ προσιόντος τοῦ θερμοῦ ἢ ὑπεκχωρήσειν αὐτῷ ἢ ἀπολείσθαι.

Πάνυ γε.

Καὶ τὸ πῦρ γε αὖ προσιώντος τοῦ ψυχροῦ αὐτῷ ἢ ὑπεξιώναι ἢ ἀπολείσθαι, οὐ μέντοι ποτὲ τολμήσειν δεξάμενον τὴν ψυχρότητα ἔτι εἶναι ὅπερ ἦν, πῦρ καὶ ψυχρόν.

Ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, λέγεις.

Ἦσθιν ἄρα, ἢ δ' ὅς, περὶ ἓνια τῶν τοιούτων, ὥστε μὴ μόνον αὐτὸ τὸ εἶδος ἀξιουῖσθαι τοῦ αὐτοῦ ὀνόματος εἰς τὸν αἰὲ χρόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλο τι ὃ ἔστι μὲν οὐκ ἐκεῖνο, ἔχει δὲ τὴν ἐκείνου μορφήν αἰεί, ὅτανπερ ἦ. ἔτι δὲ ἐν τῷδε ἴσως ἔσται σαφέστερον ὃ λέγω· τὸ γὰρ περιττὸν αἰεί που δεῖ τούτου τοῦ ὀνόματος τυγχάνειν ὅπερ νῦν λέγομεν· ἢ οὐ;

Πάνυ γε.

Ἄρα μόνον τῶν ὄντων— τοῦτο γὰρ ἐρωτῶ— ἢ καὶ ἄλλο τι ὃ ἔστι μὲν οὐχ ὅπερ τὸ περιττόν, ὅμως δὲ δεῖ αὐτὸ μετὰ τοῦ ἑαυτοῦ ὀνόματος καὶ τοῦτο καλεῖν αἰεί διὰ τὸ οὕτω πεφυκέναι ὥστε τοῦ περιττοῦ μηδέποτε ἀπολείπεσθαι; λέγω δὲ αὐτὸ εἶναι οἶον καὶ ἡ τριάς πέπονθε καὶ ἄλλα πολλά. σκοπεῖ δὲ περὶ τῆς τριάδος. ἄρα οὐ δοκεῖ σοι τῷ τε αὐτῆς ὀνόματι αἰεί προσαγορευτέα εἶναι καὶ τῷ τοῦ περιττοῦ, ὄντος οὐχ ὅπερ τῆς τριάδος; ἀλλ' ὅμως οὕτως πέφυκε καὶ ἡ τριάς καὶ ἡ πεμπτὰς καὶ ὁ ἥμις τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ ἅπας, ὥστε οὐκ ὦν ὅπερ τὸ περιττὸν αἰεί ἕκαστος αὐτῶν ἔστι περιττός· καὶ αὖ τὰ δύο καὶ τὰ τέτταρα καὶ ἅπας ὁ ἕτερος αὖ στίχος¹ τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ οὐκ ὦν ὅπερ τὸ ἄρτιον ὅμως ἕκαστος αὐτῶν ἄρτιός ἐστιν αἰεί· συγχωρεῖς ἢ οὐ;

Πῶς γὰρ οὐκ; ἔφη.

Ὁ τοῖνυν, ἔφη, βούλομαι δηλῶσαι, ἄθρει.² ἔστιν δὲ τόδε, ὅτι φαίνεται οὐ μόνον ἐκεῖνα τὰ ἐναντία ἀλλήλα οὐ δεχόμενα, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅσα οὐκ ὄντ' ἀλλήλοις ἐναντία ἔχει αἰεί τάναντία, οὐδὲ ταῦτα ἔοικε δεχομένοις ἐκείνην τὴν ἰδέαν ἢ ἂν τῇ ἐν αὐτοῖς οὔσῃ ἐναντία ἦ, ἀλλ' ἐπιούσης αὐτῆς ἦτοι ἀπολλύμενα ἢ ὑπεκχωροῦντα. ἢ οὐ φήσομεν τὰ τρία καὶ ἀπολείσθαι πρότερον καὶ ἄλλο ὅτιοῦν πείσεσθαι, πρὶν ὑπομεῖναι ἔτι τρία ὄντα ἄρτια γενέσθαι;

¹ line of soldiers, writing ² observe, gaze

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

Οὐδὲ μὴν, ἦ δ' ὅς, ἐναντίον γέ ἐστι δυὰς τριάδι.

Οὐ γὰρ οὖν.

Οὐκ ἄρα μόνον τὰ εἶδη τὰ ἐναντία οὐχ ὑπομένει ἐπιόντα ἄλληλα, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλ' ἅττα τὰ ἐναντία οὐχ ὑπομένει ἐπιόντα.

Ἀληθέστατα, ἔφη, λέγεις.

Βούλει οὖν, ἦ δ' ὅς, εἰν οἰοί τ' ὦμεν, ὀρισώμεθα ὅποια ταῦτά ἐστιν;

Πάνυ γε.

Ἄρ' οὖν, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, τάδε εἴη ἅν, ἃ ὅτι ἂν κατάσχη μὴ μόνον ἀναγκάζει τὴν αὐτοῦ ιδέαν αὐτὸ ἴσχειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐναντίου αὐτῷ αἰέτινος;

Πῶς λέγεις;

Ὡσπερ ἄρτι ἐλέγομεν. οἶσθα γὰρ δήπου ὅτι ἃ ἂν ἡ τῶν τριῶν ιδέα κατάσχη, ἀνάγκη αὐτοῖς οὐ μόνον τρισὶν εἶναι ἀλλὰ καὶ περιττοῖς.

Πάνυ γε.

Ἐπὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον δὴ, φαμέν, ἡ ἐναντία ιδέα ἐκείνη τῇ μορφῇ ἣ ἂν τοῦτο ἀπεργάζεται οὐδέποτε ἂν ἔλθοι.

Οὐ γάρ.

Εἰργάζετο δέ γε ἡ περιττή;

Ναί.

Ἐναντία δὲ ταύτῃ ἡ τοῦ ἀρτίου;

Ναί.

Ἐπὶ τὰ τρία ἄρα ἡ τοῦ ἀρτίου ιδέα οὐδέποτε ἥξει.

which he has; just as Simmias does not exceed Socrates because he is Simmias, any more than because Socrates is Socrates, but because he has smallness when compared with the greatness of Simmias?

True.

And if Phaedo exceeds him in size, this is not because Phaedo is Phaedo, but because Phaedo has greatness relatively to Simmias, who is comparatively smaller?

That is true.

And therefore Simmias is said to be great, and is also said to be small, because he is in a mean between them, exceeding the smallness of the one by his greatness, and allowing the greatness of the other to exceed his smallness. He added, laughing, I am speaking like a book, but I believe that what I am saying is true.

Simmias assented.

I speak as I do because I want you to agree with me in thinking, not only that absolute greatness will never be great and also small, but that greatness in us or in the concrete will never admit the small or admit of being exceeded: instead of this, one of two things will happen, either the greater will fly or retire before the opposite, which is the less, or at the approach of the less has already ceased to exist; but will not, if allowing or admitting of smallness, be changed by that; even as I, having received and admitted smallness when compared with Simmias, remain just as I was, and am the same small person. And as the idea of greatness cannot condescend ever to be or become small, in like manner the smallness in us cannot be or become great; nor can any other opposite which remains the same ever be or become its own opposite, but either passes away or perishes in the change.

That, replied Cebes, is quite my notion.

Hereupon one of the company, though I do not exactly remember which of them, said: In heaven's name, is not this the direct contrary of what was admitted before—that out of the greater came the less and out of the less the greater, and that opposites were simply generated from opposites; but now this principle seems to be utterly denied.

Socrates inclined his head to the speaker and listened. I like your courage, he said, in reminding us of this. But you do not observe that there is a difference in the two cases. For then we were speaking of opposites in the concrete, and now of the essential opposite which, as is affirmed, neither in us nor in nature can ever be at variance with itself: then, my friend, we were

speaking of things in which opposites are inherent and which are called after them, but now about the opposites which are inherent in them and which give their name to them; and these essential opposites will never, as we maintain, admit of generation into or out of one another. At the same time, turning to Cebes, he said: Are you at all disconcerted, Cebes, at our friend's objection?

No, I do not feel so, said Cebes; and yet I cannot deny that I am often disturbed by objections.

Then we are agreed after all, said Socrates, that the opposite will never in any case be opposed to itself?

To that we are quite agreed, he replied.

Yet once more let me ask you to consider the question from another point of view, and see whether you agree with me: — There is a thing which you term heat, and another thing which you term cold?

Certainly.

But are they the same as fire and snow?

Most assuredly not.

Heat is a thing different from fire, and cold is not the same with snow?

Yes.

And yet you will surely admit, that when snow, as was before said, is under the influence of heat, they will not remain snow and heat; but at the advance of the heat, the snow will either retire or perish?

Very true, he replied.

And the fire too at the advance of the cold will either retire or perish; and when the fire is under the influence of the cold, they will not remain as before, fire and cold.

That is true, he said.

And in some cases the name of the idea is not only attached to the idea in an eternal connection, but anything else which, not being the idea, exists only in the form of the idea, may also lay claim to it. I will try to make this clearer by an example: — The odd number is always called by the name of odd?

Very true.

But is this the only thing which is called odd? Are there not other things which have their own name, and yet are called odd, because, although not

the same as oddness, they are never without oddness?—that is what I mean to ask—whether numbers such as the number three are not of the class of odd. And there are many other examples: would you not say, for example, that three may be called by its proper name, and also be called odd, which is not the same with three? and this may be said not only of three but also of five, and of every alternate number—each of them without being oddness is odd, and in the same way two and four, and the other series of alternate numbers, has every number even, without being evenness. Do you agree?

Of course.

Then now mark the point at which I am aiming:—not only do essential opposites exclude one another, but also concrete things, which, although not in themselves opposed, contain opposites; these, I say, likewise reject the idea which is opposed to that which is contained in them, and when it approaches them they either perish or withdraw. For example; Will not the number three endure annihilation or anything sooner than be converted into an even number, while remaining three?

Very true, said Cebes.

And yet, he said, the number two is certainly not opposed to the number three?

It is not.

Then not only do opposite ideas repel the advance of one another, but also there are other natures which repel the approach of opposites.

Very true, he said.

Suppose, he said, that we endeavour, if possible, to determine what these are.

By all means.

Are they not, Cebes, such as compel the things of which they have possession, not only to take their own form, but also the form of some opposite?

What do you mean?

I mean, as I was just now saying, and as I am sure that you know, that those things which are possessed by the number three must not only be three in number, but must also be odd.

Quite true.

And on this oddness, of which the number three has the impress, the opposite idea will never intrude?

No.

And this impress was given by the odd principle?

Yes.

vocabulary

ἄδικος unfair; obstinate, bad
ἄδύνατος unable; impossible
ἄμαθής ignorant
ἄμοιρος bereft, exempt
ἄμουσος unmusical, unrefined
ἀναβάλλω delay; lift up ~ballistic
ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
ἀπιστέω disbelieve ~stand
ἀποδείκνυμι (ὁ) show, point out;
 appoint; (mid) declare
ἀποσβέννυμι (ὁ) extinguish
ἀριθμός number
ἄρτιος suitable
ἀσφάλεια safeguard
ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful
αὐτως just so, merely; in vain ~after
δῆτα emphatic δῆ
διαμάχομαι fight hard, contend
διπλάσιος twofold, double
ἐγγίγνομαι live in ~genus
εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form
 ~-oid
εἴπερ if indeed
ἐπάγω drive game; induce belief
 ~demagogue
ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion
ἐπέρχομαι approach, arrive
ἐπιφέρω bestow, impute ~bear
ἔραμαι love, aor. fall in love; long
 for, covet ~erotic
ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go
 searching through
ἐρωτάω ask about something
ἡμιόλιος 1.5 times ~hemisphere
ἡμισυς half ~hemisphere
θερμός warm, hot ~thermos
θερμότης -τος (f, 3) heat
θνητός mortal ~euthanasia
ιδέα ἰδῆς semblance; kind, style
κωλύω (ὁ) hinder, prevent

μηδέποτε never
μιμέομαι (ἰ) imitate, represent
μονή staying, delaying
μουσικός musical, aesthetic
ναί yea
ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia
νή yea
νοσέω be sick, be mad, suffer
νόσος (f) plague, pestilence
 ~noisome
οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone
ὁμολογέω agree with/to
ὅμως anyway, nevertheless
ὀνομάζω to address, name ~name
ὀρίζω divide; ordain, define
 ~horizon
οὐκοῦν not so?; and so
οὐκουν certainly not
πάμπολυς very great
περισσός prodigious, superfluous
πη somewhere, somehow
ποῖος what kind
πότε when?
πότερος which, whichever of two
προερέω say beforehand
προλέγω prophecy, proclaim;
 preselect ~legion
πυρετός fever ~pyre
συνδοκέω seem good also
σφόδρα very much
σχολή rest, leisure
τοίνυν well, then
τριτημόριος 1/3
ὕπεξιμι withdraw; go out
ὕπομένω stay behind, await
 ~remain
φθορά ruin, rape
χείρων worse, more base, inferior,
 weaker
χιών χιόνος (f, 3) snow
ψυχρός (ὁ) cold ~psychology

Οὐ δῆτα.¹

Ἄμοιρα² δὴ τοῦ ἀρτίου τὰ τρία.

Ἄμοιρα.

Ἀνάρτιος ἄρα ἢ τριάς.

Ναί.

Ὁ τοίνυν ἔλεγον ὀρίσασθαι, ποῖα οὐκ ἐναντία τινὶ ὄντα ὅμως οὐ δέχεται αὐτό, τὸ ἐναντίον— οἷον νῦν ἢ τριάς τῷ ἀρτίῳ οὐκ οὔσα ἐναντία οὐδέν τι μᾶλλον αὐτὸ δέχεται, τὸ γὰρ ἐναντίον αἰεὶ αὐτῷ ἐπιφέρει, καὶ ἡ δυὰς τῷ περιττῷ καὶ τὸ πῦρ τῷ ψυχρῷ καὶ ἄλλα πάμπολλα— ἀλλ' ὅρα δὴ εἰ οὕτως ὀρίζῃ, μὴ μόνον τὸ ἐναντίον τὸ ἐναντίον μὴ δέχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκείνο, ὃ ἂν ἐπιφέρει τι ἐναντίον ἐκείνῳ, ἐφ' ὅτι ἂν αὐτὸ ἴη, αὐτὸ τὸ ἐπιφέρον τὴν τοῦ ἐπιφερομένου ἐναντιότητα μηδέποτε δέξασθαι. πάλιν δὲ ἀναμνησκον· οὐ γὰρ χεῖρον πολλάκις ἀκούειν. τὰ πέντε τὴν τοῦ ἀρτίου οὐ δέξεται, οὐδὲ τὰ δέκα τὴν τοῦ περιττοῦ, τὸ διπλάσιον. τοῦτο μὲν οὖν καὶ αὐτὸ ἄλλω ἐναντίον, ὅμως δὲ τὴν τοῦ περιττοῦ οὐ δέξεται· οὐδὲ δὴ τὸ ἡμόλιον³ οὐδὲ τᾶλλα τὰ τοιαῦτα, τὸ ἡμισυ, τὴν τοῦ ὅλου, καὶ τριτημόριον⁴ αὖ καὶ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα, εἴπερ ἔπη τε καὶ συνδοκεῖ σοι οὕτως.

Πάνυ σφόδρα καὶ συνδοκεῖ, ἔφη, καὶ ἔπομαι.

Πάλιν δὴ μοι, ἔφη, ἐξ ἀρχῆς λέγε. καὶ μή μοι ὃ ἂν ἐρωτῶ ἀποκρίνου, ἀλλὰ μιμούμενος⁵ ἐμέ. λέγω δὴ παρ' ἣν τὸ πρῶτον ἔλεγον ἀπόκρισιν, τὴν ἀσφαλῆ ἐκείνην, ἐκ τῶν νῦν λεγομένων ἄλλην ὁρῶν ἀσφάλειαν. εἰ γὰρ ἔροιο με ᾧ ἂν τί ἐν τῷ σώματι ἐγγένηται θερμὸν ἔσται, οὐ τὴν ἀσφαλῆ σοι ἐρῶ ἀπόκρισιν ἐκείνην τὴν ἀμαθῆ,⁶ ὅτι ᾧ ἂν θερμότης, ἀλλὰ κομψοτέραν ἐκ τῶν νῦν, ὅτι ᾧ ἂν πῦρ· οὐδὲ ἂν ἔρη ᾧ ἂν σώματι τί ἐγγένηται νοσήσει,⁷ οὐκ ἐρῶ ὅτι ᾧ ἂν νόσος, ἀλλ' ᾧ ἂν πυρετός·⁸ οὐδ' ᾧ ἂν ἀριθμῷ τί ἐγγένηται περιττὸς ἔσται, οὐκ ἐρῶ ᾧ

¹ emphatic δῆ ² bereft, exempt ³ 1.5 times ⁴ 1/3 ⁵ imitate, represent ⁶ ignorant ⁷ be sick, be mad, suffer ⁸ fever

ἂν περιπτώγῃς, ἀλλ' ὧ ἂν μονάς, καὶ τᾶλλα οὕτως. ἀλλ' ὅρα εἰ ἤδη
 ἱκανῶς οἶσθ' ὅτι βούλομαι.

Ἀλλὰ πάνν ἱκανῶς, ἔφη.

Ἀποκρίνου δῆ, ἦ δ' ὅς, ὧ ἂν τί ἐγγένηται σώματι ζῶν ἔσται;

ὦι ἂν ψυχῇ, ἔφη.

Οὐκοῦν ἀεὶ τοῦτο οὕτως ἔχει;

Πῶς γὰρ οὐχί; ἦ δ' ὅς.

Ψυχὴ ἄρα ὅτι ἂν αὐτὴ κατὰσχη, ἀεὶ ἦκει ἐπ' ἐκείνο φέρουσα ζωὴν;

Ἦκει μέντοι, ἔφη.

Πότερον δ' ἔστι τι ζωῇ ἐναντίον ἢ οὐδέν;

Ἔστιν, ἔφη.

Τί;

Θάνατος.

Οὐκοῦν ψυχὴ τὸ ἐναντίον ὧ αὐτὴ ἐπιφέρει ἀεὶ οὐ μὴ ποτε δέξεται, ὥς
 ἐκ τῶν πρόσθεν ὡμολόγηται;

Καὶ μάλα σφόδρα, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

Τί οὖν; τὸ μὴ δεχόμενον τὴν τοῦ ἀρτίου ιδέαν τί νυνδὴ ὠνομάζομεν;

Ἀνάρτιον, ἔφη.

Τὸ δὲ δίκαιον μὴ δεχόμενον καὶ ὃ ἂν μουσικὸν⁹ μὴ δέχεται;

Ἄμουσον,¹⁰ ἔφη, τὸ δὲ ἄδικον.

Εἶεν· ὃ δ' ἂν θάνατον μὴ δέχεται τί καλοῦμεν;

Ἀθάνατον, ἔφη.

⁹ musical, aesthetic ¹⁰ unmusical, unrefined

Οὐκοῦν ψυχὴ οὐ δέχεται θάνατον;

Οὐ.

Ἄθάνατον ἄρα ψυχή.

Ἄθάνατον.

Εἶεν, ἔφη· τοῦτο μὲν δὴ ἀποδεδείχθαι φῶμεν; ἢ πῶς δοκεῖ;

Καὶ μάλα γε ἱκανῶς, ὦ Σώκρατες.

Τί οὖν, ἡ δ' ὅς, ὦ Κέβης; εἰ τῷ ἀναρτίῳ ἀναγκαῖον ἦν ἀνωλέθρῳ εἶναι, ἄλλο τι τὰ τρία ἢ ἀνώλεθρα ἂν ἦν;

Πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

Οὐκοῦν εἰ καὶ τὸ ἄθερμον ἀναγκαῖον ἦν ἀνώλεθρον εἶναι, ὁπότε τις ἐπὶ χιόνα θερμὸν ἐπάγοι, ὑπεξήκει ἂν ἡ χιών οὔσα σῶς καὶ ἄτηκτος; οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἀπώλετό γε, οὐδ' αὖ ὑπομένουσα ἐδέξατο ἂν τὴν θερμότητα.

Ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, λέγεις.

᾽Ως δ' αὐτως οἶμαι καὶ εἰ τὸ ἄψυκτον ἀνώλεθρον ἦν, ὁπότε ἐπὶ τὸ πῦρ ψυχρόν τι ἐπήει, οὐποτ' ἂν ἀπεσβέννυτο οὐδ' ἀπώλλυτο, ἀλλὰ σὼν ἂν ἀπελθὼν ὥχετο.

Ἀνάγκη, ἔφη.

Οὐκοῦν καὶ ὦδε, ἔφη, ἀνάγκη περὶ τοῦ ἀθανάτου εἰπεῖν; εἰ μὲν τὸ ἀθάνατον καὶ ἀνώλεθρόν ἐστιν, ἀδύνατον ψυχῇ, ὅταν θάνατος ἐπ' αὐτὴν ἦ, ἀπόλλυσθαι· θάνατον μὲν γὰρ δὴ ἐκ τῶν προειρημένων οὐ δέξεται οὐδ' ἔσται τεθνηκυῖα, ὥσπερ τὰ τρία οὐκ ἔσται, ἔφαμεν, ἄρτιον, οὐδὲ γ' αὖ τὸ περιττόν, οὐδὲ δὴ πῦρ ψυχρόν, οὐδέ γε ἡ ἐν τῷ πυρὶ θερμότης. ἀλλὰ τί κωλύει, φαίη ἂν τις, ἄρτιον μὲν τὸ περιττόν μὴ γίγνεσθαι ἐπιόντος τοῦ ἀρτίου, ὥσπερ ὁμολόγηται, ἀπολομένου δὲ αὐτοῦ ἀντ' ἐκείνου ἄρτιον γεγενέαι; τῷ ταῦτα λέγοντι οὐκ ἂν ἔχομεν διαμαχέσασθαι ὅτι οὐκ ἀπόλλυται· τὸ γὰρ ἀνάρτιον οὐκ ἀνώλεθρόν ἐστιν· ἐπεὶ εἰ τοῦτο ὁμολόγητο ἡμῖν, ῥαδίως ἂν διεμαχόμεθα ὅτι

ἐπελθόντος τοῦ ἀρτίου τὸ περιττὸν καὶ τὰ τρία οἴχεται ἀπιόντα· καὶ περὶ πυρὸς καὶ θερμοῦ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων οὕτως ἂν διεμαχόμεθα. ἢ οὐ;

Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

Οὐκοῦν καὶ νῦν περὶ τοῦ ἀθανάτου, εἰ μὲν ἡμῖν ὁμολογείται καὶ ἀνώλεθρον εἶναι, ψυχὴν ἂν εἴη πρὸς τῷ ἀθάνατος εἶναι καὶ ἀνώλεθρος· εἰ δὲ μή, ἄλλου ἂν δέοι λόγου.

Ἄλλ' οὐδὲν δεῖ, ἔφη, τούτου γε ἔνεκα· σχολῇ¹¹ γὰρ ἂν τι ἄλλο φθορὰν μὴ δέχοιτο, εἰ τό γε ἀθάνατον αἰδίων ὃν φθορὰν δέξεται.

Ὅ δέ γε θεὸς οἶμαι, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ τῆς ζωῆς εἶδος καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο ἀθάνατόν ἐστιν, παρὰ πάντων ἂν ὁμολογηθεῖ μὴδέποτε ἀπόλλυσθαι.

Παρὰ πάντων μέντοι νῆ Δι', ἔφη, ἀνθρώπων τέ γε καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον, ὥς ἐγῶμαι, παρὰ θεῶν.

Ὅποτε δὴ τὸ ἀθάνατον καὶ ἀδιάφθορόν ἐστιν, ἄλλο τι ψυχὴ ἢ, εἰ ἀθάνατος τυγχάνει οὐσα, καὶ ἀνώλεθρος ἂν εἴη;

Πολλὴ ἀνάγκη.

Ἐπιόντος ἄρα θανάτου ἐπὶ τὸν ἄνθρωπον τὸ μὲν θνητόν, ὥς ἔοικεν, αὐτοῦ ἀποθνήσκει, τὸ δ' ἀθάνατον σῶν καὶ ἀδιάφθορον οἴχεται ἀπιόν, ὑπεκχωρήσαν τῷ θανάτῳ.

Φαίνεται.

Παντὸς μᾶλλον ἄρα, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, ψυχὴ ἀθάνατον καὶ ἀνώλεθρον, καὶ τῷ ὄντι ἔσονται ἡμῶν αἱ ψυχαὶ ἐν Ἄιδου.

Οὐκ οὐν¹² ἔγωγε, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη, ἔχω παρὰ ταῦτα ἄλλο τι λέγειν οὐδέ πη ἀπιστεῖν τοῖς λόγοις. ἀλλ' εἰ δὴ τι Συμμίας ὁδε ἢ τις ἄλλος ἔχει λέγειν, εὖ ἔχει μὴ κατασιγῆσαι· ὥς οὐκ οἶδα εἰς ὄντινά τις ἄλλον καιρὸν ἀναβάλλοιτο ἢ τὸν νῦν παρόντα, περὶ τῶν τοιούτων βουλόμενος ἢ τι εἰπεῖν ἢ ἀκοῦσαι.

¹¹ rest, leisure ¹² certainly not

And to the odd is opposed the even?

True.

Then the idea of the even number will never arrive at three?

No.

Then three has no part in the even?

None.

Then the triad or number three is uneven?

Very true.

To return then to my distinction of natures which are not opposed, and yet do not admit opposites—as, in the instance given, three, although not opposed to the even, does not any the more admit of the even, but always brings the opposite into play on the other side; or as two does not receive the odd, or fire the cold—from these examples (and there are many more of them) perhaps you may be able to arrive at the general conclusion, that not only opposites will not receive opposites, but also that nothing which brings the opposite will admit the opposite of that which it brings, in that to which it is brought. And here let me recapitulate—for there is no harm in repetition. The number five will not admit the nature of the even, any more than ten, which is the double of five, will admit the nature of the odd. The double has another opposite, and is not strictly opposed to the odd, but nevertheless rejects the odd altogether. Nor again will parts in the ratio 3:2, nor any fraction in which there is a half, nor again in which there is a third, admit the notion of the whole, although they are not opposed to the whole: You will agree?

Yes, he said, I entirely agree and go along with you in that.

And now, he said, let us begin again; and do not you answer my question in the words in which I ask it: let me have not the old safe answer of which I spoke at first, but another equally safe, of which the truth will be inferred by you from what has been just said. I mean that if any one asks you ‘what that is, of which the inherence makes the body hot,’ you will reply not heat (this is what I call the safe and stupid answer), but fire, a far superior answer, which we are now in a condition to give. Or if any one asks you ‘why a body is diseased,’ you will not say from disease, but from fever; and instead of saying that oddness is the cause of odd numbers, you will say that the monad is the cause of them: and so of things in general, as I dare say that you will understand sufficiently without my adducing any further examples.

Yes, he said, I quite understand you.

Tell me, then, what is that of which the inherence will render the body alive?

The soul, he replied.

And is this always the case?

Yes, he said, of course.

Then whatever the soul possesses, to that she comes bearing life?

Yes, certainly.

And is there any opposite to life?

There is, he said.

And what is that?

Death.

Then the soul, as has been acknowledged, will never receive the opposite of what she brings.

Impossible, replied Cebes.

And now, he said, what did we just now call that principle which repels the even?

The odd.

And that principle which repels the musical, or the just?

The unmusical, he said, and the unjust.

And what do we call the principle which does not admit of death?

The immortal, he said.

And does the soul admit of death?

No.

Then the soul is immortal?

Yes, he said.

And may we say that this has been proven?

Yes, abundantly proven, Socrates, he replied.

Supposing that the odd were imperishable, must not three be imperishable?

Of course.

And if that which is cold were imperishable, when the warm principle came attacking the snow, must not the snow have retired whole and unmelted—for it could never have perished, nor could it have remained and admitted the heat?

True, he said.

Again, if the uncooling or warm principle were imperishable, the fire when assailed by cold would not have perished or have been extinguished, but would have gone away unaffected?

Certainly, he said.

And the same may be said of the immortal: if the immortal is also imperishable, the soul when attacked by death cannot perish; for the preceding argument shows that the soul will not admit of death, or ever be dead, any more than three or the odd number will admit of the even, or fire or the heat in the fire, of the cold. Yet a person may say: 'But although the odd will not become even at the approach of the even, why may not the odd perish and the even take the place of the odd?' Now to him who makes this objection, we cannot answer that the odd principle is imperishable; for this has not been acknowledged, but if this had been acknowledged, there would have been no difficulty in contending that at the approach of the even the odd principle and the number three took their departure; and the same argument would have held good of fire and heat and any other thing.

Very true.

And the same may be said of the immortal: if the immortal is also imperishable, then the soul will be imperishable as well as immortal; but if not, some other proof of her imperishableness will have to be given.

No other proof is needed, he said; for if the immortal, being eternal, is liable to perish, then nothing is imperishable.

Yes, replied Socrates, and yet all men will agree that God, and the essential form of life, and the immortal in general, will never perish.

Yes, all men, he said—that is true; and what is more, gods, if I am not mistaken, as well as men.

Seeing then that the immortal is indestructible, must not the soul, if she is immortal, be also imperishable?

Most certainly.

Then when death attacks a man, the mortal portion of him may be supposed to die, but the immortal retires at the approach of death and is preserved safe and sound?

True.

Then, Cebes, beyond question, the soul is immortal and imperishable, and our souls will truly exist in another world!

I am convinced, Socrates, said Cebes, and have nothing more to object; but if my friend Simmias, or any one else, has any further objection to make, he had better speak out,

vocabulary

ἄγνοέω be ignorant of ~gnostic
 ἀδελφή sister
 αἰθήρ ether, air, sky ~ether
 ἀκάθαρτος not pure
 ἄκρῖς -ός (f) hilltop ~acute
 ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute
 ἀληθινός honest, genuine
 ἄλλοθι elsewhere, abroad
 ἅλμη brine, sea salt ~halogen
 ἀλουργής sea-purple
 ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of
 course
 ἀμήχανος helpless, impossible
 ~mechanism
 ἀνάπτω bind; blame; kindle
 ~haptic
 ἄνθος flower
 ἀνθρώπινος human
 ἀντιτείνω resist
 ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
 upwards, out to sea
 ἄνωθεν from above, the beginning
 ἀπαλλαγή relief, escape
 ἀπαλλαξείω wish to get rid of
 ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be
 freed, depart
 ἀπιστέω disbelieve ~stand
 ἀπιστία disbelief, distrust
 ἀπορία difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce
 ἀρκέω satisfy; ward off, defend;
 suffice
 ἀσθένεια weakness
 ἄστρον star
 ἀτιμάζω (ι) insult, dishonor
 βάτραχος frog
 βέλτιστος best, noblest
 βόρβορος mud, filth
 βραδυτής -τος (f, 3) slowness
 ~Sp.~gordo
 γραφεύς -ος (m) painter
 γυφώ plaster with gypsum

δαίμων -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate,
 doom ~demon
 δένδρον tree
 διαιρέω divide, distinguish,
 distribute
 διαλαμβάνω distribute
 διαμαρτάνω miss, fail utterly
 διανοέω have in mind
 διεξέρχομαι go through
 διηγέομαι detail, describe
 εἴπερ if indeed
 εἴωθα be accustomed, in the habit
 ἐκδύω take off; leave; avoid
 ἐκεῖσε thither
 ἔκπλεος full of, abundant
 ἐνθένδε hence
 ἐξαρκέω be enough; be satisfied
 ἐπακολουθέω chase; accrue
 ἐπανίημι let go, relax
 ἐπιμέλεια attention; assigned task
 ἐπισκέπτομαι look upon, inspect
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral
 ἔπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act,
 uncommon) handle, take care of
 ἔρμαιον (f) of Hermes; windfall
 ἔσχατος farthest, last
 θαυμαστός wonderful; admirable
 θυσία sacrifice
 ἰδέα ἰδῆς semblance; kind, style
 ἵσχω restrain, hold back ~ischemia
 καθαρός clean, pure
 κάλλος -εος (n, 3) beauty
 ~kaleidoscope
 καταβιβρώσκω devour
 καταίρω swoop; land
 καταράομαι (αἶα) curse
 καταχράομαι (mp) abuse, use up;
 (act) be enough
 κατεῖδον look upon
 κλίνω (ι) lean, recline ~incline
 κοῖλος hollow ~hollow
 κόσμιος well-behaved

λαγχάνω be allotted; (esp. λελα-
forms) allot; receive

λαμπρός brilliant ~lamp

λίθος made of stone ~monolith

μέτριος medium, moderate

μηδεπώποτε never yet

μήκος -ους (n, 3) length, stature

μόγισ with difficulty, barely

μόριον piece, member; part of
speech

μύρμηξ ant

νόμιμος customary, legal, natural

οἰκεύς -ος (m) house servant
~economics

οἶκησις -εως (f) habitation

οἶμος stripe

ομίχλη fog, cloud ~mist

ὁμοιότης -τος (f, 3) resemblance

ὅπη wherever, however

ὀρθόω stand up

παιδεία child-rearing, education

πανταχῇ everywhere

πάντη everywhere

παντοδαπῆς of every kind, manifold

παντοδαπός of every kind, manifold

πέλαγος -ους (n, 3) the open sea
~pelagic

πελάζω bring/come to, near, into
contact with

περίοδος picket, circuit

περιφερέης round, amid

πηλός clay, mud

πλανάω lead astray; (mp) wander
~plankton

ποικίλος ornamented; various

πορεία gait, march

πρέπω be conspicuous, preeminent
~refurbish

προσδοκάω expect

προσῆκω belong to, it befits

πτοέω scare

πυθμήν -ένος (m, 3) base, bottom

στήλη post, column

στίλβω shine ~stilbene

σύγκειμαι be composed of, agreed
on

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion

συνεχής (ῶ) continuously

συρρέω flow together

σφαῖρα ball

σχίζω split ~schism

σωτηρία saving, preservation

τεκμαίρομαι conclude, declare from
evidence

τέλειος finished ~apostle

τέλμα pond, swamp; mud for
mortar

τροφή food, upkeep ~atrophy

ὑπόθεσις -εως (f) proposal; subject;
hypothesis

φαντάζω make visible; imagine

φονεύς -ως (m) killer ~offend

φρόνιμος sensible, prudent

φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)
~physics

φύω produce, beget; clasp ~physics

χιών χιόνος (f, 3) snow

χρῶμα -τος (n, 3) color

χωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)
~heir

ὡσαύτως in the same way

ὠφελέω help, be useful

Ἀλλὰ μὴν, ἦ δ' ὅς ὁ Συμμίας, οὐδ' αὐτὸς ἔχω ἔτι ὅπη ἀπιστῶ ἔκ γε τῶν λεγομένων· ὑπὸ μέντοι τοῦ μεγέθους περὶ ὧν οἱ λόγοι εἰσὶν, καὶ τὴν ἀνθρωπίνην ἀσθένειαν ἀτιμάζων, ἀναγκάζομαι ἀπιστίαν ἔτι ἔχειν παρ' ἐμαυτῷ περὶ τῶν εἰρημένων.

Οὐ μόνον γ', ἔφη, ὦ Συμμία, ὁ Σωκράτης, ἀλλὰ ταῦτά τε εὖ λέγεις καὶ τὰς γε ὑποθέσεις τὰς πρώτας, καὶ εἰ πισταὶ ὑμῖν εἰσιν, ὅμως ἐπισκεπτέαι σαφέστερον· καὶ ἐὰν αὐτὰς ἱκανῶς διέλγητε, ὡς ἐγὼμαι, ἀκολουθήσετε τῷ λόγῳ, καθ' ὅσον δυνατόν μάλιστ' ἀνθρώπων ἐπακολουθήσαι· κἂν τοῦτο αὐτὸ σαφὲς γένηται, οὐδὲν ζητήσετε περαιτέρω.

Ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, λέγεις.

Ἀλλὰ τόδε γ', ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, δίκαιον διανοηθῆναι, ὅτι, εἴπερ ἡ ψυχὴ ἀθάνατος, ἐπιμελείας δὴ δεῖται οὐχ ὑπὲρ τοῦ χρόνου τούτου μόνον ἐν ᾧ καλοῦμεν τὸ ζῆν, ἀλλ' ὑπὲρ τοῦ παντός, καὶ ὁ κίνδυνος νῦν δὴ καὶ δόξειεν ἂν δεινὸς εἶναι, εἴ τις αὐτῆς ἀμελήσει. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ἦν ὁ θάνατος τοῦ παντός ἀπαλλαγὴ, ἔρμαιον¹ ἂν ἦν τοῖς κακοῖς ἀποθανοῦσι τοῦ τε σώματος ἅμ' ἀπῆλλάχθαι καὶ τῆς αὐτῶν κακίας μετὰ τῆς ψυχῆς· νῦν δ' ἐπειδὴ ἀθάνατος φαίνεται οὐσα, οὐδεμία ἂν εἴη αὐτῇ ἄλλη ἀποφυγὴ κακῶν οὐδὲ σωτηρία πλὴν τοῦ ὡς βελτίστην τε καὶ φρονιμωτάτην γενέσθαι. οὐδὲν γὰρ ἄλλο ἔχουσα εἰς Ἄιδου ἡ ψυχὴ ἔρχεται πλὴν τῆς παιδείας τε καὶ τροφῆς, ἃ δὴ καὶ μέγιστα λέγεται ὠφελεῖν ἢ βλάπτειν τὸν τελευτήσαντα εὐθὺς ἐν ἀρχῇ τῆς ἐκείσε πορείας. λέγεται δὲ οὕτως, ὡς ἄρα τελευτήσαντα ἕκαστον ὁ ἐκάστου δαίμων, ὅσπερ ζῶντα εἰλήχει, οὗτος ἄγειν ἐπιχειρεῖ εἰς δὴ τινα τόπον, οἱ δὲ τοὺς συλλεγέντας διαδικασαμένους εἰς Ἄιδου πορεύεσθαι μετὰ ἡγεμόνος ἐκείνου ᾧ δὴ προστέτακται τοὺς ἐνθὲνδε ἐκείσε πορεύσαι· τυχόντας δὲ ἐκεῖ ὧν δὴ τυχεῖν καὶ μέιναντας ὧν χρὴ χρόνον ἄλλος δεῦρο πάλιν ἡγεμῶν κομίζει ἐν πολλαῖς χρόνῳ καὶ μακραῖς περιόδοις.

Ἔστι δὲ ἄρα ἡ πορεία οὐχ ὡς ὁ Αἰσχύλου Τήλεφος λέγει· ἐκεῖνος μὲν γὰρ ἀπλὴν οἰμόν² φησιν εἰς Ἄιδου φέρειν, ἦ δ' οὔτε ἀπλὴ οὔτε

¹ of Hermes; windfall ² stripe

μία φαίνεται μοι εἶναι. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν ἡγεμόνων ἔδει· οὐ γάρ πού τις ἂν διαμάρτοι οὐδαμῶσε μιᾷς ὁδοῦ οὔσης. νῦν δὲ ἔοικε σχίσεις τε καὶ τριόδους πολλὰς ἔχειν· ἀπὸ τῶν θυσίων τε καὶ νομίμων τῶν ἐνθάδε τεκμαιρόμενος λέγω. ἢ μὲν οὖν κοσμία³ τε καὶ φρόνιμος ψυχὴ ἔπεται τε καὶ οὐκ ἀγνοεῖ τὰ παρόντα· ἢ δ' ἐπιθυμητικῶς τοῦ σώματος ἔχουσα, ὅπερ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν εἶπον, περὶ ἐκεῖνο πολλὸν χρόνον ἐπτοημένη⁴ καὶ περὶ τὸν ὁρατὸν τόπον, πολλὰ ἀντιτείνασα καὶ πολλὰ παθοῦσα, βία καὶ μόγισ ὑπὸ τοῦ προστεταγμένου δαίμονος οἴχεται ἀγομένη. ἀφικομένην δὲ ὅθιπερ αἱ ἄλλαι, τὴν μὲν ἀκάθαρτον καὶ τι πεποιηκυῖαν τοιοῦτον, ἢ φόνων ἀδίκων ἡμμένην ἢ ἄλλ' ἄττα τοιαῦτα εἰργασμένην, ἃ τούτων ἀδελφά τε καὶ ἀδελφῶν ψυχῶν ἔργα τυγχάνει ὄντα, ταύτην μὲν ἅπας φεύγει τε καὶ ὑπεκτρέπεται καὶ οὔτε συνέμπορος οὔτε ἡγεμὼν ἐθέλει γίγνεσθαι, αὐτὴ δὲ πλανᾶται ἐν πάσῃ ἐχομένη ἀπορία ἕως ἂν δὴ τινες χρόνοι γένωνται, ὧν ἐλθόντων ὑπ' ἀνάγκης φέρεται εἰς τὴν αὐτῇ πρέπουσαν οἴκησιν· ἢ δὲ καθαρῶς τε καὶ μετρίως τὸν βίον διεξελθοῦσα, καὶ συνεμπόρων καὶ ἡγεμόνων θεῶν τυχοῦσα, ὥκησεν τὸν αὐτῇ ἐκάστη τόπον προσήκοντα. εἰσὶν δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ θαυμαστοὶ τῆς γῆς τόποι, καὶ αὐτῇ οὔτε οἷα οὔτε ὅση δοξάζεται ὑπὸ τῶν περὶ γῆς εἰωθότων λέγειν, ὥς ἐγὼ ὑπό τινος πέπεισμαι.

Καὶ ὁ Συμμίας, πῶς ταῦτα, ἔφη, λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες; περὶ γάρ τοι γῆς καὶ αὐτὸς πολλὰ δὴ ἀκήκοα, οὐ μέντοι ταῦτα ἃ σὲ πείθει· ἡδέως οὖν ἂν ἀκούσαιμι.

Ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ὦ Συμμία, οὐχ ἡ Γλαύκου τέχνη γέ μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι διηγήσασθαι ἃ γ' ἐστίν· ὥς μέντοι ἀληθῆ, χαλεπώτερόν μοι φαίνεται ἢ κατὰ τὴν Γλαύκου τέχνην, καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐγὼ ἴσως οὐδ' ἂν οἶός τε εἶην, ἅμα δέ, εἰ καὶ ἡπιστάμην, ὁ βίος μοι δοκεῖ ὁ ἐμός, ὦ Συμμία, τῷ μήκει τοῦ λόγου οὐκ ἐξαρκεῖν. τὴν μὲντοι ἰδέαν τῆς γῆς οἷαν πέπεισμαι εἶναι, καὶ τοὺς τόπους αὐτῆς οὐδὲν με κωλύει λέγειν.

Ἄλλ', ἔφη ὁ Συμμίας, καὶ ταῦτα ἀρκεῖ.

³ well-behaved ⁴ scare

Πέπεισμαι τοῖνυν, ἡ δ' ὅς, ἐγὼ ὡς πρῶτον μὲν, εἰ ἔστιν ἐν μέσῳ τῷ οὐρανῷ περιφερῆς οὐσα, μηδὲν αὐτῇ δεῖν μήτε ἀέρος πρὸς τὸ μὴ πεσεῖν μήτε ἄλλης ἀνάγκης μηδεμιᾶς τοιαύτης, ἀλλὰ ἱκανὴν εἶναι αὐτὴν ἴσχειν τὴν ὁμοιότητα⁵ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ αὐτοῦ ἑαυτῷ πάντῃ καὶ τῆς γῆς αὐτῆς τὴν ἰσορροπίαν· ἰσόρροπον γὰρ πρᾶγμα ὁμοίου τινὸς ἐν μέσῳ τεθὲν οὐχ ἔξει μᾶλλον οὐδ' ἦττον οὐδαμῶσε κλιθῆναι, ὁμοίως δ' ἔχον ἀκλινὲς μενεῖ. πρῶτον μὲν τοῖνυν, ἡ δ' ὅς, τοῦτο πέπεισμαι.

Καὶ ὀρθῶς γε, ἔφη ὁ Συμμίας.

Ἦτι τοῖνυν, ἔφη, πάμμεγά τι εἶναι αὐτό, καὶ ἡμᾶς οἰκεῖν τοὺς μέχρι Ἑρακλείων στηλῶν ἀπὸ Φάσιδος ἐν σμικρῷ τινι μορίῳ, ὥσπερ περὶ τέλμα⁶ μύρμηκας⁷ ἢ βατράχους⁸ περὶ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντας, καὶ ἄλλους ἄλλοθι πολλοὺς ἐν πολλοῖσι τοιούτοις τόποις οἰκεῖν. εἶναι γὰρ πανταχῇ⁹ περὶ τὴν γῆν πολλὰ κοῖλα καὶ παντοδαπὰ καὶ τὰς ἰδέας καὶ τὰ μεγέθη, εἰς ἃ συνερρηκέναι τό τε ὕδωρ καὶ τὴν ὀμίχλην¹⁰ καὶ τὸν ἀέρα· αὐτὴν δὲ τὴν γῆν καθαρὰν ἐν καθαρῷ κείσθαι τῷ οὐρανῷ ἐν ᾧπερ ἔστι τὰ ἄστρα, ὃν δὴ αἰθέρα ὀνομάζουσιν τοὺς πολλοὺς τῶν περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα εἰωθότων λέγειν· οὗ δὴ ὑποστάθμην ταῦτα εἶναι καὶ συρρεῖν αἰεὶ εἰς τὰ κοῖλα τῆς γῆς. ἡμᾶς οὖν οἰκοῦντας ἐν τοῖς κοίλοις αὐτῆς λεληθέναι καὶ οἰεσθαι ἄνω ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς οἰκεῖν, ὥσπερ ἂν εἴ τις ἐν μέσῳ τῷ πυθμένι τοῦ πελάγους οἰκῶν οἴοιτό τε ἐπὶ τῆς θαλάττης οἰκεῖν καὶ διὰ τοῦ ὕδατος ὀρώων τὸν ἥλιον καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἄστρα τὴν θάλατταν ἡγοῖτο οὐρανὸν εἶναι, διὰ δὲ βραδυτῆτά¹¹ τε καὶ ἀσθενείαν μηδεπώποτε¹² ἐπὶ τὰ ἄκρα τῆς θαλάττης ἀφικόμενος μηδὲ ἑωρακῶς εἶη, ἐκδὺς καὶ ἀνακύψας ἐκ τῆς θαλάττης εἰς τὸν ἐνθάδε τόπον, ὅσῳ καθαρώτερος καὶ καλλίων τυγχάνει ὢν τοῦ παρὰ σφίσι, μηδὲ ἄλλου ἀκηκοὺς εἶη τοῦ ἑωρακότος. ταῦτόν δὲ τοῦτο καὶ ἡμᾶς πεπονθέναι· οἰκοῦντας γὰρ ἔν τινι κοίλῳ τῆς γῆς οἰεσθαι ἐπάνω αὐτῆς οἰκεῖν, καὶ τὸν ἀέρα οὐρανὸν καλεῖν, ὡς διὰ τούτου οὐρανοῦ ὄντος τὰ ἄστρα χωροῦντα· τὸ δὲ εἶναι ταῦτόν, ὑπ' ἀσθενείας καὶ βραδυτῆτος οὐχ οἴους τε εἶναι ἡμᾶς διεξελθεῖν ἐπ' ἔσχατον τὸν ἀέρα· ἐπεὶ, εἴ τις αὐτοῦ ἐπ'

⁵ resemblance ⁶ pond, swamp; mud for mortar ⁷ ant ⁸ frog

⁹ everywhere ¹⁰ fog, cloud ¹¹ slowness ¹² never yet

ἄκρα ἔλθοι ἢ πτηνὸς γενόμενος ἀνάπτοιτο, κατιδεῖν ἂν ἀνακύψαντα, ὥσπερ ἐνθάδε οἱ ἐκ τῆς θαλάττης ἰχθύες ἀνακύπτοντες ὁρῶσι τὰ ἐνθάδε, οὕτως ἂν τινα καὶ τὰ ἐκεῖ κατιδεῖν, καὶ εἰ ἡ φύσις ἱκανὴ εἴη ἀνασχέσθαι θεωροῦσα, γινῶναι ἂν ὅτι ἐκείνός ἐστιν ὁ ἀληθῶς οὐρανὸς καὶ τὸ ἀληθινὸν φῶς καὶ ἡ ὥς ἀληθῶς γῆ.

Ἦδε μὲν γὰρ ἡ γῆ καὶ οἱ λίθοι καὶ ἅπας ὁ τόπος ὁ ἐνθάδε διεφθαρμένα ἐστίν καὶ καταβεβρωμένα, ὥσπερ τὰ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ὑπὸ τῆς ἄλμης, καὶ οὔτε φύεται ἄξιον λόγου οὐδὲν ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, οὔτε τέλειον ὡς ἔπος εἰπεῖν οὐδὲν ἐστι, σήραγγες δὲ καὶ ἄμμος καὶ πηλὸς¹³ ἀμήχανος καὶ βόρβοροι¹⁴ εἰσιν, ὅπου ἂν καὶ ἡ γῆ ᾗ, καὶ πρὸς τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν κάλλι κρίνεσθαι οὐδ' ὅπωςτιοῦν ἄξια. ἐκεῖνα δὲ αὖ τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν πολὺ ἂν ἔτι πλέον φανεῖ διαφέρειν· εἰ γὰρ δὴ καὶ μῦθον λέγειν καλόν, ἄξιον ἀκοῦσαι, ὦ Συμμία, οἷα τυγχάνει τὰ ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς ὑπὸ τῷ οὐρανῷ ὄντα.

Ἀλλὰ μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Συμμίας, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἡμεῖς γε τούτου τοῦ μύθου ἡδέως ἂν ἀκούσαιμεν.

Λέγεται τοίνυν, ἔφη, ὦ ἐταῖρε, πρῶτον μὲν εἶναι τοιαύτη ἡ γῆ αὐτὴ ἰδεῖν, εἴ τις ἄνωθεν θεῶτο, ὥσπερ αἱ δωδεκάσκυτοι σφαῖραι,¹⁵ ποικίλη, χρώμασιν διελημμένη, ὧν καὶ τὰ ἐνθάδε εἶναι χρώματα ὥσπερ δείγματα, οἷς δὴ οἱ γραφῆς καταχρῶνται. ἐκεῖ δὲ πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν ἐκ τοιούτων εἶναι, καὶ πολὺ ἔτι ἐκ λαμπροτέρων καὶ καθαρωτέρων ἢ τούτων· τὴν μὲν γὰρ ἀλουργῇ¹⁶ εἶναι καὶ θανυμαστὴν τὸ κάλλος, τὴν δὲ χρυσοειδῇ, τὴν δὲ ὅση λευκὴ γύψου ἢ χιόνος λευκοτέραν, καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων χρωμάτων συγκεκλιμένην ὡσαύτως, καὶ ἔτι πλείονων καὶ καλλιόνων ἢ ὅσα ἡμεῖς ἐωράκαμεν. καὶ γὰρ αὐτὰ ταῦτα τὰ κοῖλα αὐτῆς, ὕδατός τε καὶ αἰέρος ἔκπλεα ὄντα, χρώματός τι εἶδος παρέχεσθαι στίλβοντα ἐν τῇ τῶν ἄλλων χρωμάτων ποικίλῃ, ὥστε ἐν τι αὐτῆς εἶδος συνεχὲς ποικίλον φαντάζεσθαι.¹⁷ ἐν δὲ ταύτῃ οὔσῃ τοιαύτῃ ἀνὰ λόγον τὰ φυόμενα φύεσθαι, δένδρα τε καὶ ἄνθη καὶ τοὺς καρπούς· καὶ αὖ τὰ ὄρη ὡσαύτως καὶ τοὺς λίθους ἔχειν ἀνὰ τὸν

¹³ clay, mud ¹⁴ mud, filth ¹⁵ ball ¹⁶ sea-purple ¹⁷ make visible; imagine

and not keep silence, since I do not know to what other season he can defer the discussion, if there is anything which he wants to say or to have said.

But I have nothing more to say, replied Simmias; nor can I see any reason for doubt after what has been said. But I still feel and cannot help feeling uncertain in my own mind, when I think of the greatness of the subject and the feebleness of man.

Yes, Simmias, replied Socrates, that is well said: and I may add that first principles, even if they appear certain, should be carefully considered; and when they are satisfactorily ascertained, then, with a sort of hesitating confidence in human reason, you may, I think, follow the course of the argument; and if that be plain and clear, there will be no need for any further enquiry.

Very true.

But then, O my friends, he said, if the soul is really immortal, what care should be taken of her, not only in respect of the portion of time which is called life, but of eternity! And the danger of neglecting her from this point of view does indeed appear to be awful. If death had only been the end of all, the wicked would have had a good bargain in dying, for they would have been happily quit not only of their body, but of their own evil together with their souls. But now, inasmuch as the soul is manifestly immortal, there is no release or salvation from evil except the attainment of the highest virtue and wisdom. For the soul when on her progress to the world below takes nothing with her but nurture and education; and these are said greatly to benefit or greatly to injure the departed, at the very beginning of his journey thither.

For after death, as they say, the genius of each individual, to whom he belonged in life, leads him to a certain place in which the dead are gathered together, whence after judgment has been given they pass into the world below, following the guide, who is appointed to conduct them from this world to the other: and when they have there received their due and remained their time, another guide brings them back again after many revolutions of ages. Now this way to the other world is not, as Aeschylus says in the *Telephus*, a single and straight path—if that were so no guide would be needed, for no one could miss it; but there are many partings of the road, and windings, as I infer from the rites and sacrifices which are offered to the gods below in places where three ways meet on earth. The wise and orderly soul follows in the straight path and is conscious of her surroundings; but the soul which desires the body, and which, as I was relating before, has long been fluttering about the lifeless frame and the world of sight, is after many struggles and many

sufferings hardly and with violence carried away by her attendant genius, and when she arrives at the place where the other souls are gathered, if she be impure and have done impure deeds, whether foul murders or other crimes which are the brothers of these, and the works of brothers in crime—from that soul every one flees and turns away; no one will be her companion, no one her guide, but alone she wanders in extremity of evil until certain times are fulfilled, and when they are fulfilled, she is borne irresistibly to her own fitting habitation; as every pure and just soul which has passed through life in the company and under the guidance of the gods has also her own proper home.

Now the earth has divers wonderful regions, and is indeed in nature and extent very unlike the notions of geographers, as I believe on the authority of one who shall be nameless.

What do you mean, Socrates? said Simmias. I have myself heard many descriptions of the earth, but I do not know, and I should very much like to know, in which of these you put faith.

And I, Simmias, replied Socrates, if I had the art of Glaucus would tell you; although I know not that the art of Glaucus could prove the truth of my tale, which I myself should never be able to prove, and even if I could, I fear, Simmias, that my life would come to an end before the argument was completed. I may describe to you, however, the form and regions of the earth according to my conception of them.

That, said Simmias, will be enough.

Well, then, he said, my conviction is, that the earth is a round body in the centre of the heavens, and therefore has no need of air or any similar force to be a support, but is kept there and hindered from falling or inclining any way by the equability of the surrounding heaven and by her own equipoise. For that which, being in equipoise, is in the centre of that which is equably diffused, will not incline any way in any degree, but will always remain in the same state and not deviate. And this is my first notion.

Which is surely a correct one, said Simmias.

Also I believe that the earth is very vast, and that we who dwell in the region extending from the river Phasis to the Pillars of Heracles inhabit a small portion only about the sea, like ants or frogs about a marsh, and that there are other inhabitants of many other like places; for everywhere on the face of the earth there are hollows of various forms and sizes, into which the water and the mist and the lower air collect. But the true earth is pure and situated in the pure heaven—there are the stars also; and it is the heaven which is

commonly spoken of by us as the ether, and of which our own earth is the sediment gathering in the hollows beneath. But we who live in these hollows are deceived into the notion that we are dwelling above on the surface of the earth; which is just as if a creature who was at the bottom of the sea were to fancy that he was on the surface of the water, and that the sea was the heaven through which he saw the sun and the other stars, he having never come to the surface by reason of his feebleness and sluggishness, and having never lifted up his head and seen, nor ever heard from one who had seen, how much purer and fairer the world above is than his own. And such is exactly our case: for we are dwelling in a hollow of the earth, and fancy that we are on the surface; and the air we call the heaven, in which we imagine that the stars move. But the fact is, that owing to our feebleness and sluggishness we are prevented from reaching the surface of the air: for if any man could arrive at the exterior limit, or take the wings of a bird and come to the top, then like a fish who puts his head out of the water and sees this world, he would see a world beyond; and, if the nature of man could sustain the sight, he would acknowledge that this other world was the place of the true heaven and the true light and the true earth. For our earth, and the stones, and the entire region which surrounds us, are spoilt and corroded, as in the sea all things are corroded by the brine, neither is there any noble or perfect growth, but caverns only, and sand, and an endless slough of mud: and even the shore is not to be compared to the fairer sights of this world. And still less is this our world to be compared with the other. Of that upper earth which is under the heaven, I can tell you a charming tale, Simmias, which is well worth hearing.

And we, Socrates, replied Simmias, shall be charmed to listen to you.

The tale, my friend, he said, is as follows: — In the first place, the earth, when looked at from above, is in appearance streaked like one of those balls which have leather coverings in twelve pieces, and is decked with various colours, of which the colours used by painters on earth are in a manner samples. But there the whole earth is made up of them, and they are brighter far and clearer than ours; there is a purple of wonderful lustre, also the radiance of gold, and the white which is in the earth is whiter than any chalk or snow. Of these and other colours the earth is made up, and they are more in number and fairer than the eye of man has ever seen; the very hollows (of which I was speaking) filled with air and water have a colour of their own, and are seen like light gleaming amid the diversity of the other colours, so that the whole presents a single and continuous appearance

vocabulary

ἄγριος wild, savage ~agriculture
 ἀδίκημα -τος (n, 3) wrong, misdeed
 ἀενάων (ἄα) ever-flowing
 αἰθήρ ether, air, sky ~ether
 αἴσθησις -εως (f) sense perception
 αἶσχος -εος (n, 3) insult; disgrace
 αἰωρέω lift; (mp) hang
 ἀκοή hearing ~acoustic
 ἀκόλουθος following, attending
 ἄλλοθι elsewhere, abroad
 ἄλλοσε elsewhere ~alien
 ἅλμη brine, sea salt ~halogen
 ἄλσος -εος (n, 3) grove, sacred place
 ἀμάρτημα -τος (n, 3) failure, fault
 ἀμήχανος helpless, impossible
 ~mechanism
 ἀναπνέω catch one's breath ~apnea
 ἀνδροφόνος murderous ~offend
 ἄνοσος disease-free ~noisome
 ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
 upwards, out to sea
 ἀπαντάω encounter, come upon
 ἅπαξ once
 ἀπόστασις -εως (f) revolt;
 separation
 ἄργυρος silver, money ~Argentina
 ἄστρον star
 βάθος -ους (n, 3) depth, height
 βαθύς high, deep ~bathysphere
 βάραθρον gulf, pit ~voracious
 βίαιος by force
 βιάω use force against, overcome
 βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
 γένεσις -εως (f) source, origin
 ~genus
 δαίμων -ονος (m, 3) a god, fate,
 doom ~demon
 διαμπερές right through; all the
 time, forever
 διαφαίνω seem, show through

~photon
 διέξοδος διαξόδου (f) outlet, path;
 narrative
 εἴσεμι go in; come in range; come
 to mind ~ion
 εἰσρέω flow into
 ἐκάστοτε each time
 ἐκατέρωθεν on both sides
 ἐκατέρωσε to either side, both ways
 ἐκβαίνω come forth, disembark
 ~basis
 ἐκβολή throwing out
 ἐκπίπτω fall out of ~petal
 ἐκπίτνω fall out of
 ἐκρέω flow out, be shed
 ἐμπίπτω fall into; attack ~petal
 ἔνειμι be in ~ion
 ἔνιοι some
 ἐντεῦθεν thence
 ἔξεμι go forth; is possible ~ion
 ἐξεργάζομαι accomplish; undo
 ἐπονομάζω to name
 ἐρήμιος empty
 ἔσχατος farthest, last
 εὐδαιμονία prosperity
 εὐδαίμων blessed with a good
 genius
 εὐεργεσία good deed, public service
 ~ergonomics
 ζέω boil ~eczema
 ζῶον being, animal; picture
 θέαμα -τος (ἄα, n, 3) sight, spectacle
 θεατής -οῦ (ἄ, m, 1) spectator,
 witness
 θερμός warm, hot ~thermos
 θερμόω to heat
 ἵκετεύω approach to beg
 καθαίρω clean
 καθίημι (ιι) speed down upon; take
 down ~jet
 καταπνικρύ (ιῶ) right down from
 κατεσθίω devour ~eat

κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos
κραίνω accomplish; (rare) rule
κράς -τός (f, 3) head
κρατήρ -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine
κρέας -ως (n) meat ~creatine
κρήνη well, spring
κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle
κυμαίνω (ū) billow, swell
 ~accumulate
κωκυτός (ū) lamentation
λήγω cease, (+gen+ppl) cause to cease ~lax
λίθεος made of stone ~monolith
λίμνη lake, marsh, basin, sea
 ~limnic
μαντεία oracular power
μείρομαι receive as a portion
 ~Moirā
μεσόγαιος inland
μεταμέλομαι (impers.+dat.) cause regret to; (mp) regret
μόριον piece, member; part of speech
νόσος (f) plague, pestilence
 ~noisome
ὁδοποιέω make a path
ὅπη wherever, however
ὄφης ὄφεως (m) serpent ~ophidian
ὄχετός water pipe
ὄχημα vehicle
παντάπασιν altogether; yes, certainly
πανταχοῦ everywhere; completely
παντοδαπής of every kind, manifold
παντοδαπός of every kind, manifold
παράνομος lawless, unlawful
πέρας -τος (n, 3) cord; bound, crux,

outcome ~prove
περάω cross over, drive across; sell as a slave ~pierce
περιέρχομαι go around; come next to
περιρρέω flow around ~rheostat
πηλός clay, mud
πλατύς extensive, wide
ποιητής -οῦ (m, 1) maker, author
ποιητός made, well-made ~poet
πολλαχῇ in many places or ways
πολλαχῇ in many places or ways
προσδοκάω expect
προσῆκω belong to, it beseems
πυθμῖν -ένος (m, 3) base, bottom
ῥεῦμα -τος (n, 3) flow
ρίπτέω hurl
ρίπτω hurl
σελήνη moon
σμάραγδος emerald
συνέπομαι go along with ~sequel
συνουσία society, sex
συντετραίνω connect with a passage
συρρέω flow together
τέταρτος fourth ~trapezoid
τετραίνω pierce ~tribulation
τῆλε distant ~telescope
ὕβριζω insult, treat outrageously
ὕγρός wet
ὕποχωρέω recoil ~heir
φήμη speech, rumor ~fame
φύσις -εως (f) nature (of a thing)
 ~physics
φυτός natural
χάσμα -τος (n, 3) chasm, gaping opening
χρῶμα -τος (n, 3) color
ψυχρός (ū) cold ~psychology

αὐτὸν λόγον τὴν τε λειότητα καὶ τὴν διαφάνειαν καὶ τὰ χρώματα καλλίω· ὦν καὶ τὰ ἐνθάδε λιθίδια εἶναι ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαπώμενα μόρια, σάρδιά τε καὶ ἰάσπιδας καὶ σμαράγδους¹ καὶ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα· ἐκεῖ δὲ οὐδὲν ὅτι οὐ τοιοῦτον εἶναι καὶ ἔτι τούτων καλλίω. τὸ δ' αἴτιον τούτου εἶναι ὅτι ἐκείνοι οἱ λίθοι εἰσὶ καθαροὶ καὶ οὐ κατεδηδεσμένοι οὐδὲ διεφθαρμένοι ὥσπερ οἱ ἐνθάδε ὑπὸ σηπεδόνης καὶ ἄλμης ὑπὸ τῶν δεῦρο συνερρυηκότων, ἃ καὶ λίθοις καὶ γῇ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ζώοις τε καὶ φυτοῖς² αἰσχυ³ τε καὶ νόσους παρέχει.

Τὴν δὲ γῆν αὐτὴν κεκοσμηθῆαι τούτοις τε ἅπασι καὶ ἔτι χρυσῷ τε καὶ ἀργύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις αὐ τοῖς τοιούτοις. ἐκφανῇ γὰρ αὐτὰ πεφυκέναι, ὄντα πολλὰ πλήθει καὶ μεγάλα καὶ πανταχοῦ τῆς γῆς, ὥστε αὐτὴν ἰδεῖν εἶναι θέαμα⁴ εὐδαιμόνων⁵ θεατῶν. ζῶα δ' ἐπ' αὐτῇ εἶναι ἄλλα τε πολλὰ καὶ ἀνθρώπους, τοὺς μὲν ἐν μεσογαίᾳ⁶ οἰκοῦντας, τοὺς δὲ περὶ τὸν ἀέρα ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς περὶ τὴν θάλατταν, τοὺς δ' ἐν νήσοις ὡς περιρρεῖν τὸν ἀέρα πρὸς τῇ ἡπείρῳ οὕσας· καὶ ἐνὶ λόγῳ, ὅπερ ἡμῖν τὸ ὕδωρ τε καὶ ἡ θάλαττά ἐστι πρὸς τὴν ἡμετέραν χρεῖαν, τοῦτο ἐκεῖ τὸν ἀέρα, ὃ δὲ ἡμῖν ἀήρ, ἐκείνοις τὸν αἰθέρα. τὰς δὲ ὥρας αὐτοῖς κρᾶσιν ἔχειν τοιαύτην ὥστε ἐκείνους ἀνόσους εἶναι καὶ χρόνον τε ζῆν πολὺ πλείω τῶν ἐνθάδε, καὶ ὄψει καὶ ἀκοῇ καὶ φρονήσει καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς τοιούτοις ἡμῶν ἀφεστάναι τῇ αὐτῇ ἀποστάσει ἥπερ ἀήρ τε ὕδατος ἀφέστηκεν καὶ αἰθὴρ ἀέρος πρὸς καθαρότητα. καὶ δὴ καὶ θεῶν ἄλση⁷ τε καὶ ἱερὰ αὐτοῖς εἶναι, ἐν οἷς τῷ ὄντι οἰκητὰς θεοὺς εἶναι, καὶ φήμας⁸ τε καὶ μαντείας καὶ αἰσθήσεις τῶν θεῶν καὶ τοιαύτας συνουσίας γίνεσθαι αὐτοῖς πρὸς αὐτούς· καὶ τὸν γε ἥλιον καὶ σελήνην καὶ ἄστρα ὀράσθαι ὑπ' αὐτῶν οἷα τυγχάνει ὄντα, καὶ τὴν ἄλλην εὐδαιμονίαν τούτων ἀκόλουθον⁹ εἶναι.

Καὶ ὅλην μὲν δὴ τὴν γῆν οὕτω πεφυκέναι καὶ τὰ περὶ τὴν γῆν· τόπους δ' ἐν αὐτῇ εἶναι κατὰ τὰ ἔγκοιλα αὐτῆς κύκλῳ περὶ ὅλην πολλοὺς, τοὺς μὲν βαθυτέρους καὶ ἀναπεπταμένους μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν ᾧ

¹ emerald ² natural ³ insult; disgrace ⁴ sight, spectacle

⁵ blessed with a good genius ⁶ inland ⁷ grove, sacred place

⁸ speech, rumor ⁹ following, attending

ἡμεῖς οἰκοῦμεν, τοὺς δὲ βαθυτέρους ὄντας τὸ χάσμα αὐτοὺς ἔλαττον ἔχειν τοῦ παρ' ἡμῖν τόπου, ἔστι δ' οὗς καὶ βραχυτέρους τῷ βάθει¹⁰ τοῦ ἐνθάδε εἶναι καὶ πλατυτέρους. τούτους δὲ πάντας ὑπὸ γῆν εἰς ἀλλήλους συντετρησθαι τε πολλαχῇ καὶ κατὰ στενότερα καὶ εὐρύτερα καὶ διεξόδους ἔχειν, ἥ πολὺ μὲν ὕδωρ ρεῖν ἐξ ἀλλήλων εἰς ἀλλήλους ὥσπερ εἰς κρατήρας, καὶ ἀενάων ποταμῶν ἀμήχανα μεγέθη ὑπὸ τὴν γῆν καὶ θερμῶν ὑδάτων καὶ ψυχρῶν, πολὺ δὲ πῦρ καὶ πυρὸς μεγάλους ποταμούς, πολλοὺς δὲ ὕγρου πηλοῦ καὶ καθαρωτέρου καὶ βορβορωδεστέρου, ὥσπερ ἐν Σικελίᾳ οἱ πρὸ τοῦ ρύακος πηλοῦ ρέοντες ποταμοὶ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ ρύαξ· ὦν δὴ καὶ ἐκάστους τοὺς τόπους πληροῦσθαι, ὡς ἂν ἐκάστοις τύχῃ ἐκάστοτε ἡ περιρροή γιγνομένη. ταῦτα δὲ πάντα κινεῖν ἄνω καὶ κάτω ὥσπερ αἰώραν τινὰ ἐνοῦσαν ἐν τῇ γῇ· ἔστι δὲ ἄρα αὕτη ἡ αἰώρα διὰ φύσιν τοιάνδε τινά.

Ἐν τι τῶν χασμάτων¹¹ τῆς γῆς ἄλλως τε μέγιστον τυγχάνει ὃν καὶ διαμπερὲς τετρημένον¹² δι' ὅλης τῆς γῆς, τοῦτο ὅπερ Ὅμηρος εἶπε, λέγων αὐτό τῇλε μάλ', ἥχι βάθιστον ὑπὸ χθονός ἐστι βέρεθρον.¹³

. 8.14 ὁ καὶ ἄλλοι καὶ ἐκεῖνος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶν ποιητῶν Τάρταρον κεκλήκασιν. εἰς γὰρ τοῦτο τὸ χάσμα συρρέουσι τε πάντες οἱ ποταμοὶ καὶ ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἐκρέουσιν· γίνονται δὲ ἕκαστοι τοιοῦτοι δι' οἷας ἂν καὶ τῆς γῆς ρέωσιν. ἡ δὲ αἰτία ἐστὶν τοῦ ἐκρεῖν τε ἐντεῦθεν καὶ εἰσερεῖν πάντα τὰ ρεύματα, ὅτι πυθμένα οὐκ ἔχει οὐδὲ βάσιν τὸ ὕγρον τοῦτο. αἰωρεῖται¹⁴ δὴ καὶ κυμαίνει¹⁵ ἄνω καὶ κάτω, καὶ ὁ ἀῆρ καὶ τὸ πνεῦμα τὸ περὶ αὐτὸ ταῦτόν ποιεῖ· συνέπεται γὰρ αὐτῷ καὶ ὅταν εἰς τὸ ἐπ' ἐκεῖνα τῆς γῆς ὀρμήσῃ καὶ ὅταν εἰς τὸ ἐπὶ τάδε, καὶ ὥσπερ τῶν ἀναπνεόντων αἰεὶ ἐκπνεῖ τε καὶ ἀναπνεῖ ρέον τὸ πνεῦμα, οὕτω καὶ ἐκεῖ συναιωρούμενον τῷ ὑγρῷ τὸ πνεῦμα δεινούς τινας ἀνέμους καὶ ἀμηχάνους παρέχεται καὶ εἰσὸν καὶ ἐξίον. ὅταν τε οὖν ὑποχωρήσῃ τὸ ὕδωρ εἰς τὸν τόπον τὸν δὴ κάτω καλούμενον, τοῖς κατ' ἐκεῖνα τὰ ρεύματα διὰ τῆς γῆς εἰσρεῖ τε καὶ πληροῖ αὐτὰ ὥσπερ οἱ ἐπαντλοῦντες· ὅταν τε αὖ ἐκεῖθεν μὲν ἀπολίπη, δεῦρο δὲ ὀρμήσῃ, τὰ ἐνθάδε πληροῖ αὖθις, τὰ δὲ πληρωθέντα ῥεῖ διὰ τῶν

¹⁰ depth, height ¹¹ chasm, gaping opening ¹² pierce ¹³ gulf, pit

¹⁴ lift; (mp) hang ¹⁵ billow, swell

ὀχετῶν¹⁶ καὶ διὰ τῆς γῆς, καὶ εἰς τοὺς τόπους ἕκαστα ἀφικνούμενα, εἰς οὓς ἐκάστοις ὥδοποιῆται,¹⁷ θαλάττας τε καὶ λίμνας καὶ ποταμούς καὶ κρήνας ποιεῖ· ἐντεῦθεν δὲ πάλιν δυόμενα κατὰ τῆς γῆς, τὰ μὲν μακροτέρους τόπους περιελθόντα καὶ πλείους, τὰ δὲ ἐλάττους καὶ βραχυτέρους, πάλιν εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον ἐμβάλλει, τὰ μὲν πολὺ κατωτέρω ἢ ἡ ἐπιγντλείτω, τὰ δὲ ὀλίγον· πάντα δὲ ὑποκάτω εἰσρεῖ τῆς ἐκροῆς, καὶ ἔνια μὲν καταντικρὺ ἢ ἡ εἰσρεῖ ἐξέπεσεν, ἔνια δὲ κατὰ τὸ αὐτὸ μέρος· ἔστι δὲ ἅ παντάπασιν κύκλῳ περιελθόντα, ἢ ἅπαξ ἢ καὶ πλεονάκις περιελιχθέντα περὶ τὴν γῆν ὥσπερ οἱ ὄφεις, εἰς τὸ δυνατὸν κάτω καθέντα πάλιν ἐμβάλλει. δυνατὸν δὲ ἔστιν ἐκατέρωσε¹⁸ μέχρι τοῦ μέσου καθιέναι, πέρα δ' οὐ· ἄναντες γὰρ ἀμφοτέροις τοῖς ρεύμασι τὸ ἐκατέρωθεν¹⁹ γίγνεται μέρος.

Τὰ μὲν οὖν δὴ ἄλλα πολλὰ τε καὶ μεγάλα καὶ παντοδαπὰ ρεύματά ἐστι· τυγχάνει δ' ἄρα ὄντα ἐν τούτοις τοῖς πολλοῖς τέτταρ' ἄττα ρεύματα, ὧν τὸ μὲν μέγιστον καὶ ἐξωτάτω ρέον περὶ κύκλῳ ὁ καλούμενος Ὀκεανὸς ἐστίν, τούτου δὲ καταντικρὺ καὶ ἐναντίως ρέων Ἀχέρων, ὃς δι' ἐρήμων τε τόπων ρεῖ ἄλλων καὶ δὴ καὶ ὑπὸ γῆν ρέων εἰς τὴν λίμνην ἀφικνεῖται τὴν Ἀχερουσιάδα, οὗ αἱ τῶν τετελευτηκότων ψυχαὶ τῶν πολλῶν ἀφικνοῦνται καὶ τινες εἰμαρμένους χρόνους μέινασαι, αἱ μὲν μακροτέρους, αἱ δὲ βραχυτέρους, πάλιν ἐκπέμπονται εἰς τὰς τῶν ζώων γενέσεις. τρίτος δὲ ποταμὸς τούτων κατὰ μέσον ἐκβάλλει, καὶ ἐγγὺς τῆς ἐκβολῆς ἐκπίπτει εἰς τόπον μέγαν πυρὶ πολλῷ καόμενον, καὶ λίμνην ποιεῖ μείζω τῆς παρ' ἡμῖν θαλάττης, ζέουσιν²⁰ ὕδατος καὶ πηλοῦ· ἐντεῦθεν δὲ χωρεῖ κύκλῳ θολερὸς καὶ πηλώδης, περιελιττόμενος δὲ τῇ γῇ ἄλλοσε²¹ τε ἀφικνεῖται καὶ παρ' ἔσχατα τῆς Ἀχερουσιάδος λίμνης, οὐ συμμειγνύμενος τῷ ὕδατι· περιελιχθεὶς δὲ πολλάκις ὑπὸ γῆς ἐμβάλλει κατωτέρω τοῦ Ταρτάρου· οὗτος δ' ἐστὶν ὃν ἐπονομάζουσιν Πυριφλεγέθοντα, οὗ καὶ οἱ ῥύακες ἀποσπάσματα ἀναφυσώσων ὅπῃ ἂν τύχωσι τῆς γῆς. τούτου δὲ αὖ καταντικρὺ ὁ τέταρτος ἐκπίπτει εἰς τόπον πρῶτον δεινόν τε καὶ ἄγριον, ὡς λέγεται, χρώμα δ' ἔχοντα ὄλον

¹⁶ water pipe ¹⁷ make a path ¹⁸ to either side, both ways ¹⁹ on both sides ²⁰ boil ²¹ elsewhere

οἶον ὁ κυανός, ὃν δὴ ἐπονομάζουσι Στύγιον, καὶ τὴν λίμνην ἣν ποιεῖ ὁ ποταμὸς ἐμβάλλον, Στύγα· ὁ δ' ἐμπεσὼν ἐνταῦθα καὶ δεινὰς δυνάμεις λαβὼν ἐν τῷ ὕδατι, δὺς κατὰ τῆς γῆς, περιελιπτόμενος χωρεῖ ἐναντίος τῷ Πυριφλεγέθοντι καὶ ἀπαντᾷ ἐν τῇ Ἀχερουσιᾷ λίμνῃ ἐξ ἐναντίας· καὶ οὐδὲ τὸ τούτου ὕδωρ οὐδενὶ μείγνυται, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὗτος κύκλω περιελθὼν ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον ἐναντίος τῷ Πυριφλεγέθοντι· ὄνομα δὲ τούτῳ ἐστίν, ὥς οἱ ποιηταὶ λέγουσιν, κωκυτός.

Τούτων δὲ οὕτως πεφυκότων, ἐπειδὰν ἀφίκωνται οἱ τετελευτηκότες εἰς τὸν τόπον οἱ ὁ δαίμων ἕκαστον κομίζει, πρῶτον μὲν διεδικάσαντο οἷ τε καλῶς καὶ ὁσίως βιώσαντες²² καὶ οἱ μὴ. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἂν δόξωσι μέσως βεβιωκέναι, πορευθέντες ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀχέροντα, ἀναβάντες ἃ δὴ αὐτοῖς ὀχήματά²³ ἐστίν, ἐπὶ τούτων ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὴν λίμνην, καὶ ἐκεῖ οἰκοῦσί τε καὶ καθαιρόμενοι τῶν τε ἀδικημάτων διδόντες δίκας ἀπολύονται, εἴ τις τι ἡδίκηκεν, τῶν τε εὐεργεσιῶν τιμὰς φέρονται κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν ἕκαστος· οἱ δ' ἂν δόξωσιν ἀνιάτως ἔχειν διὰ τὰ μεγέθη τῶν ἁμαρτημάτων, ἢ ἱεροσυλίας πολλὰς καὶ μεγάλας ἢ φόνους ἀδίκους καὶ παρανόμους πολλοὺς ἐξεργασμένοι ἢ ἄλλα ὅσα τοιαῦτα τυγχάνει ὄντα, τούτους δὲ ἢ προσήκουσα μοῖρα ρίπτει εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον, ὅθεν οὐποτε ἐκβαίνουσιν.

Οἱ δ' ἂν ἰσμία μὲν μεγάλα δὲ δόξωσιν ἡμαρτηκέναι ἁμαρτήματα, οἶον πρὸς πατέρα ἢ μητέρα ὑπ' ὀργῆς βίαιόν τι πράξαντες, καὶ μεταμέλον αὐτοῖς τὸν ἄλλον βίον βιώσιν, ἢ ἀνδροφόνου τοιούτῳ τινὶ ἄλλῳ τρόπῳ γένωνται, τούτους δὲ ἐμπεσεῖν μὲν εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον ἀνάγκη, ἐμπεσόντας δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐνιαυτὸν ἐκεῖ γενομένους ἐκβάλλει τὸ κῦμα, τοὺς μὲν ἀνδροφόνους κατὰ τὸν Κωκυτόν, τοὺς δὲ πατραλοίας καὶ μητραλοίας κατὰ τὸν Πυριφλεγέθοντα· ἐπειδὰν δὲ φερόμενοι γένωνται κατὰ τὴν λίμνην τὴν Ἀχερουσιάδα, ἐνταῦθα βοᾶσί τε καὶ καλοῦσιν, οἱ μὲν οὖς ἀπέκτειναν, οἱ δὲ οὖς ὕβρισαν, καλέσαντες δ' ἰκετεύουσι καὶ δέονται ἑᾶσαι σφᾶς ἐκβῆναι εἰς τὴν λίμνην καὶ δέξασθαι, καὶ ἐὰν μὲν πείσωσιν, ἐκβαίνουσί τε καὶ λήγουσι τῶν κακῶν, εἰ δὲ μὴ, φέρονται αὖθις εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον καὶ ἐκείθεν

²² live; (mp) make a living ²³ vehicle

of variety in unity. And in this fair region everything that grows—trees, and flowers, and fruits—are in a like degree fairer than any here; and there are hills, having stones in them in a like degree smoother, and more transparent, and fairer in colour than our highly-valued emeralds and sardonyxes and jaspers, and other gems, which are but minute fragments of them: for there all the stones are like our precious stones, and fairer still (compare Republic). The reason is, that they are pure, and not, like our precious stones, infected or corroded by the corrupt briny elements which coagulate among us, and which breed foulness and disease both in earth and stones, as well as in animals and plants. They are the jewels of the upper earth, which also shines with gold and silver and the like, and they are set in the light of day and are large and abundant and in all places, making the earth a sight to gladden the beholder's eye. And there are animals and men, some in a middle region, others dwelling about the air as we dwell about the sea; others in islands which the air flows round, near the continent: and in a word, the air is used by them as the water and the sea are by us, and the ether is to them what the air is to us. Moreover, the temperament of their seasons is such that they have no disease, and live much longer than we do, and have sight and hearing and smell, and all the other senses, in far greater perfection, in the same proportion that air is purer than water or the ether than air. Also they have temples and sacred places in which the gods really dwell, and they hear their voices and receive their answers, and are conscious of them and hold converse with them, and they see the sun, moon, and stars as they truly are, and their other blessedness is of a piece with this.

Such is the nature of the whole earth, and of the things which are around the earth; and there are divers regions in the hollows on the face of the globe everywhere, some of them deeper and more extended than that which we inhabit, others deeper but with a narrower opening than ours, and some are shallower and also wider. All have numerous perforations, and there are passages broad and narrow in the interior of the earth, connecting them with one another; and there flows out of and into them, as into basins, a vast tide of water, and huge subterranean streams of perennial rivers, and springs hot and cold, and a great fire, and great rivers of fire, and streams of liquid mud, thin or thick (like the rivers of mud in Sicily, and the lava streams which follow them), and the regions about which they happen to flow are filled up with them. And there is a swinging or see-saw in the interior of the earth which moves all this up and down, and is due to the following cause:—There is a chasm which is the vastest of them all, and pierces right through the whole earth; this is that chasm which Homer describes in the words,—‘Far off, where is the inmost depth beneath the earth;’

And which he in other places, and many other poets, have called Tartarus.

And the see-saw is caused by the streams flowing into and out of this chasm, and they each have the nature of the soil through which they flow. And the reason why the streams are always flowing in and out, is that the watery element has no bed or bottom, but is swinging and surging up and down, and the surrounding wind and air do the same; they follow the water up and down, hither and thither, over the earth — just as in the act of respiration the air is always in process of inhalation and exhalation; — and the wind swinging with the water in and out produces fearful and irresistible blasts: when the waters retire with a rush into the lower parts of the earth, as they are called, they flow through the earth in those regions, and fill them up like water raised by a pump, and then when they leave those regions and rush back hither, they again fill the hollows here, and when these are filled, flow through subterranean channels and find their way to their several places, forming seas, and lakes, and rivers, and springs. Thence they again enter the earth, some of them making a long circuit into many lands, others going to a few places and not so distant; and again fall into Tartarus, some at a point a good deal lower than that at which they rose, and others not much lower, but all in some degree lower than the point from which they came. And some burst forth again on the opposite side, and some on the same side, and some wind round the earth with one or many folds like the coils of a serpent, and descend as far as they can, but always return and fall into the chasm. The rivers flowing in either direction can descend only to the centre and no further, for opposite to the rivers is a precipice.

Now these rivers are many, and mighty, and diverse, and there are four principal ones, of which the greatest and outermost is that called Oceanus, which flows round the earth in a circle; and in the opposite direction flows Acheron, which passes under the earth through desert places into the Acherusian lake: this is the lake to the shores of which the souls of the many go when they are dead, and after waiting an appointed time, which is to some a longer and to some a shorter time, they are sent back to be born again as animals. The third river passes out between the two, and near the place of outlet pours into a vast region of fire, and forms a lake larger than the Mediterranean Sea, boiling with water and mud; and proceeding muddy and turbid, and winding about the earth, comes, among other places, to the extremities of the Acherusian Lake, but mingles not with the waters of the lake, and after making many coils about the earth plunges into Tartarus at a deeper level. This is that Pyriphlegethon, as the stream is called, which throws up jets of fire in different parts of the earth. The fourth river goes out on the opposite side, and falls first of all into a wild and savage region, which is all of a dark-blue colour, like lapis lazuli; and this is that river which is called the Stygian river, and falls into and forms the Lake Styx, and after falling into the lake and receiving strange powers in the waters, passes

under the earth, winding round in the opposite direction, and comes near the Acherusian lake from the opposite side to Pyriphlegethon. And the water of this river too mingles with no other, but flows round in a circle and falls into Tartarus over against Pyriphlegethon; and the name of the river, as the poets say, is Cocytus.

Such is the nature of the other world; and when the dead arrive at the place to which the genius of each severally guides them, first of all, they have sentence passed upon them, as they have lived well and piously or not. And those who appear to have lived neither well nor ill, go to the river Acheron, and embarking in any vessels which they may find, are carried in them to the lake, and there they dwell and are purified of their evil deeds, and having suffered the penalty of the wrongs which they have done to others, they are absolved, and receive the rewards of their good deeds, each of them according to his deserts. But those who appear to be incurable by reason of the greatness of their crimes—who have committed many and terrible deeds of sacrilege, murders foul and violent, or the like—such are hurled into Tartarus which is their suitable destiny, and they never come out. Those again who have committed crimes, which, although great, are not irremediable—who in a moment of anger, for example, have done violence to a father or a mother, and have repented for the remainder of their lives, or, who have taken the life of another under the like extenuating circumstances—these are plunged into Tartarus, the pains of which they are compelled to undergo for a year, but at the end of the year the wave casts them forth—mere homicides by way of Cocytus, parricides and matricides by Pyriphlegethon—and they are borne to the Acherusian lake, and there they lift up their voices and call upon the victims whom they have slain or wronged, to have pity on

vocabulary

ἀγανακτέω be vexed, in a ferment
 ἀγγέλλω carry a message, announce
 ~angel
 ἄθλον ἀέθλου prize ~athlete
 ἄθλος ἀέθλου contest, trial ~athlete
 ἀλλότριος someone else's; alien
 ~alien
 ἀναβλέπω look up; gain sight, open
 one's eyes
 ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery
 ἀνδρεία courage
 ἀνδρεῖος of a man, manly
 ἄνευ away from; not having; not
 needing ~Sp. sin
 ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;
 upwards, out to sea
 ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be
 freed, depart
 ἀποβλέπω stare at, adore
 ἀποσπένδω libate; (mid) make a
 treaty ~spontaneous
 ἀστεῖος urbane, refined
 βάρος -ους (n, 3) weight, burden
 βέλτιστος best, noblest
 βιόω live; (mp) make a living
 ~biology
 γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at
 γέλως laughter
 γενναῖος noble, sincere ~genesis
 γλίχομαι cling to, long for
 δακρύω weep
 δειπνέω eat, dine
 δεσμωτήριον prison
 διάγω lead through; pass a time
 ~demagogue
 διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion
 διατάσσω arrange, array
 διατρίβω (u) wear down, delay
 ~tribology
 διαφερόντως differently
 διέξιμι pass through; recount ~ion

διέρχομαι pierce, traverse
 δικάζω judge
 δυσμή sunset
 ἐγγυάω undertake
 ἐγγύη pledge, undertaking
 εἴωθα be accustomed, in the habit
 ἐκεῖσε thither
 ἐκπίνω (ι) drink up, consume
 ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear
 ἐκφεύγω flee from, escape ~fugitive
 ἐκχωρέω depart, back off, cede
 ἐλευθερία freedom
 ἐλευθερόω set free
 ἐμποιέω make inside of ~poet
 ἔνδεκα eleven ~decimal
 ἐνείμι be in ~ion
 ἐνθένδε hence
 ἐνιοι some
 ἐνίστε sometimes
 ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion
 ἐοικότως like; fairly
 ἐπαιδίδω sing with, to; charm
 ἐπείγω weigh upon, drive; (mid)
 hurry
 ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail
 ἐπεικής fitting ~icon
 ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee
 ἐπιστέλλω send to, order
 ἐπιστήμων skillful, clever ~station
 ἐπίσχω aim; restrain
 εὐδαιμονία prosperity
 εὐκόλος contented
 εὐτυχής fortunate
 ἡδονή pleasure
 ἡσυχῇ quietly; somewhat
 θάπτω bury ~epitaph
 θαρρέω be of good heart
 θαρσέω be of good heart
 ἱλεως propitious, gracious
 ἵχνος -εος (n, 3) track, trace
 καθαίρω clean
 καινός new, fresh, strange

καταγιγνώσκω judge negatively
 κατάκειμαι lie down
 καταράομαι (αἶα) curse
 κατορύσσω bury
 κερδαίνω profit, take advantage
 κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos
 κύλιξ -κος (f) cup
 λουτρόν bathing water
 λούω wash, bathe
 μείρομαι receive as a portion
 ~Moirā
 μεταστρέφω turn around, change
 one's mind ~atrophy
 μετέχω partake of
 μέτριος medium, moderate
 μηκύνω lengthen
 νεύω nod
 νέω spin; swim ~neuro
 νόμιμος customary, legal, natural
 οἶκημα -τος (n, 3) room
 οἶκησις -εως (f) habitation
 οἰκίζω colonize, settle
 ὀρέγω hold out, offer, thrust ~reach
 ὀρφανός orphan
 ὀψέ late, in evening ~epitaph
 πάλαι long ago ~paleo
 πάλη wrestling ~Pallas
 πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas
 παραμένω stay with ~remain
 παραμυθέομαι (ὀ) urge, advise
 παράπαν completely
 περίειμι be superior to; be left over;
 still exist
 περιμένω wait for
 πορεία gait, march

πρᾶος soft, gentle
 πρέπω be conspicuous, preeminent
 ~refurbish
 προθυμέομαι (ὀ) be eager
 προσδοκάω expect
 πρόσσειμι approach, draw near; add
 ~ion
 προτίθημι set before ~thesis
 πῶμα -τος (n, 3) cover; drink
 ~pastor
 πῶποτε never
 σκέλος -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis
 σπουδάζω be busy, earnest
 ~repudiate
 στερέω steal, take
 συγγίγνομαι associate with, meet,
 have sex ~genus
 συμφορά collecting; accident,
 misfortune
 συχνός long; many; extensive
 σωφροσύνη discretion, moderation
 ταφή burial, grave
 τότε then ... now ...
 τρέω flee in fear ~tremor
 τρίβω (ι) rub; (mid) be worn out
 ~tribulation
 ὑπηρέτης -ου (m, 1) servant, officer
 ὑποβλέπω look angrily
 φάρμακον drug, potion ~pharmacy
 φείδομαι spare, not use/harm
 ~aphid
 χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage
 χρώμα -τος (n, 3) color
 χωρέω withdraw, give way to (+dat)
 ~heir

πάλιν εἰς τοὺς ποταμούς, καὶ ταῦτα πάσχοντες οὐ πρότερον παύονται πρὶν ἂν πείσωσιν οὓς ἡδίκησαν· αὕτη γὰρ ἡ δίκη ὑπὸ τῶν δικαστῶν αὐτοῖς ἐτάχθη. οἳ δὲ δὴ ἂν δόξωσι διαφερόντως πρὸς τὸ ὁσίως βιῶναι, οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ τῶνδε μὲν τῶν τόπων τῶν ἐν τῇ γῇ ἐλευθερούμενοί τε καὶ ἀπαλλαττόμενοι ὥσπερ δεσμοτηρίων,¹ ἄνω δὲ εἰς τὴν καθαρὰν οἴκησιν ἀφικνούμενοι καὶ ἐπὶ γῆς οἰκίζόμενοι. τούτων δὲ αὐτῶν οἱ φιλοσοφία ἱκανῶς καθηράμενοι ἄνευ τε σωμάτων ζῶσι τὸ παράπαν εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον, καὶ εἰς οἰκήσεις ἔτι τούτων καλλίους ἀφικνοῦνται, ἃς οὔτε ῥάδιον δηλῶσαι οὔτε ὁ χρόνος ἱκανὸς ἐν τῷ παρόντι. ἀλλὰ τούτων δὴ ἔνεκα χρή ὦν διεληλύθαμεν, ὦ Συμμία, πᾶν ποιεῖν ὥστε ἀρετῆς καὶ φρονήσεως ἐν τῷ βίῳ μετασχεῖν· καλὸν γὰρ τὸ ἄθλον καὶ ἡ ἐλπίς μεγάλη.

Τὸ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα δυσχυρίσασθαι οὕτως ἔχειν ὡς ἐγὼ διελέλυθα, οὐ πρέπει νοῦν ἔχοντι ἀνδρὶ ὅτι μέντοι ἢ ταῦτ' ἐστὶν ἢ τοιαῦτ' ἅττα περὶ τὰς ψυχὰς ἡμῶν καὶ τὰς οἰκήσεις, ἐπεὶπερ ἀθάνατόν γε ἡ ψυχὴ φαίνεται οὕσα, τοῦτο καὶ πρέπει μοι δοκεῖ καὶ ἄξιον κινδυνεύσαι οἰομένῳ οὕτως ἔχειν— καλὸς γὰρ ὁ κίνδυνος— καὶ χρή τὰ τοιαῦτα ὥσπερ ἐπάδειν ἑαυτῷ, διὸ δὴ ἔγωγε καὶ πάλαι μηχανῶ² τὸν μῦθον. ἀλλὰ τούτων δὴ ἔνεκα θαρρεῖν χρή περὶ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ ψυχῇ ἄνδρα ὅστις ἐν τῷ βίῳ τὰς μὲν ἄλλας ἡδονὰς τὰς περὶ τὸ σῶμα καὶ τοὺς κόσμους εἶασε χαίρειν, ὡς ἄλλοτρίους τε ὄντας, καὶ πλέον θάτερον ἡγήσάμενος ἀπεργάζεσθαι, τὰς δὲ περὶ τὸ μανθάνειν ἐσπούδασέ τε καὶ κοσμήσας τὴν ψυχὴν οὐκ ἄλλοτρίῳ ἀλλὰ τῷ αὐτῆς κόσμῳ, σωφροσύνη τε καὶ δικαιοσύνη καὶ ἀνδρεία καὶ ἐλευθερία καὶ ἀληθεία, οὕτω περιμένει τὴν εἰς Ἄιδου πορείαν ὡς πορευσόμενος ὅταν ἡ εἰμαρμένη καλῇ.

Ὑμεῖς μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, ὦ Συμμία τε καὶ Κέβης καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, εἰς ἀθλὸς ἔντιν χρόνῳ ἕκαστοι πορεύσεσθε· ἐμὲ δὲ νῦν ἤδη καλεῖ, φαίη ἂν ἀνὴρ τραγικός, ἡ εἰμαρμένη, καὶ σχεδὸν τί μοι ὥρα τραπέσθαι πρὸς τὸ λουτρόν·³ δοκεῖ γὰρ δὴ βέλτιον εἶναι λουσάμενον πιεῖν τὸ φάρμακον καὶ μὴ πράγματα ταῖς γυναιξὶ παρέχειν νεκρὸν λούειν.

Ταῦτα δὴ εἰπόντος αὐτοῦ ὁ Κρίτων, εἶεν, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες· τί δὲ

¹ prison ² lengthen ³ bathing water

τούτοις ἢ ἐμοὶ ἐπιστέλλεις ἢ περὶ τῶν παίδων ἢ περὶ ἄλλου του, ὅτι ἄν σοι ποιοῦντες ἡμεῖς ἐν χάριτι μάλιστα ποιοῦμεν;

Ἄπερ αἰὲ λέγω, ἔφη, ὦ Κρίτων, οὐδὲν καινότερον· ὅτι ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἐπιμελούμενοι ὑμεῖς καὶ ἐμοὶ καὶ τοῖς ἐμοῖς καὶ ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς ἐν χάριτι ποιήσετε ἅττ' ἂν ποιῆτε, κἂν μὴ νῦν ὁμολογήσητε· ἐὰν δὲ ὑμῶν μὲν αὐτῶν ἀμελήτε καὶ μὴ θέλητε ὥσπερ κατ' ἔχνη κατὰ τὰ νῦν τε εἰρημένα καὶ τὰ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ ζῆν, οὐδὲ ἐὰν πολλὰ ὁμολογήσητε ἐν τῷ παρόντι καὶ σφόδρα, οὐδὲν πλέον ποιήσετε.

Ταῦτα μὲν τοίνυν προθυμησόμεθα, ἔφη, οὕτω ποιεῖν· θάπτωμεν δέ σε τίνα τρόπον;

Ὅπως ἄν, ἔφη, βούλησθε, ἑάνπερ γε λάβητέ με καὶ μὴ ἐκφύγω ὑμᾶς. γελάσας δὲ ἅμα ἡσυχῇ⁴ καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀποβλέψας εἶπεν· οὐ πείθω, ὦ ἄνδρες, Κρίτωνα, ὥς ἐγὼ εἶμι οὗτος Σωκράτης, ὁ νυνὶ διαλεγόμενος καὶ διατάττων ἕκαστον τῶν λεγομένων, ἀλλ' οἶεταί με ἐκείνον εἶναι ὃν ὄψεται ὀλίγον ὕστερον νεκρόν, καὶ ἐρωτᾷ δὴ πῶς με θάπτῃ. ὅτι δὲ ἐγὼ πάλαι πολὺν λόγον πεποιήμαι, ὥς, ἐπειδὴν πῶ τὸ φάρμακον, οὐκέτι ὑμῖν παραμενῶ, ἀλλ' οἰχήσομαι ἀπιὼν εἰς μακάρων δὴ τινὰς εὐδαιμονίας, ταῦτά μοι δοκῶ αὐτῷ ἄλλως λέγειν, παραμυθούμενος ἅμα μὲν ὑμᾶς, ἅμα δ' ἐμαυτόν. ἐγγυήσασθε οὖν με πρὸς Κρίτωνα, ἔφη, τὴν ἐναντίαν ἐγγύην ἢ ἣν οὗτος πρὸς τοὺς δικαστὰς ἡγγυᾶτο. οὗτος μὲν γὰρ ἢ μὴν παραμενεῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ ἢ μὴν μὴ παραμενεῖν ἐγγυήσασθε ἐπειδὴν ἀποθάνω, ἀλλὰ οἰχήσεσθαι ἀπιόντα, ἵνα Κρίτων ῥᾶον φέρῃ, καὶ μὴ ὀρῶν μου τὸ σῶμα ἢ καόμενον ἢ κατορυπτόμενον ἀγανακτῇ ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ ὥς δεινὰ πάσχοντος, μηδὲ λέγῃ ἐν τῇ ταφῇ ὥς ἢ προτίθεται Σωκράτῃ ἢ ἐκφέρει ἢ κατορύττει. εὖ γὰρ ἴσθι, ἢ δ' ὅς, ὦ ἄριστε Κρίτων, τὸ μὴ καλῶς λέγειν οὐ μόνον εἰς αὐτὸ τοῦτο πλημμελές, ἀλλὰ καὶ κακόν τι ἐμποιεῖ ταῖς ψυχαῖς.

Ἀλλὰ θαρρεῖν τε χρὴ καὶ φάναι τοῦμὸν σῶμα θάπτειν, καὶ θάπτειν οὕτως ὅπως ἂν σοι φίλον ἢ καὶ μάλιστα ἡγή νόμιμον εἶναι.

Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐκείνος μὲν ἀνίστατο εἰς οἴκημά⁵ τι ὥς λουσόμενος, καὶ

⁴ quietly; somewhat ⁵ room

ὁ Κρίτων εἶπετο αὐτῷ, ἡμᾶς δ' ἐκέλευε περιμένειν. περιεμένομεν οὖν πρὸς ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς διαλεγόμενοι περὶ τῶν εἰρημένων καὶ ἀνασκοποῦντες, τοτὲ⁶ δ' αὖ περὶ τῆς συμφορᾶς διεξιόντες ὅση ἡμῖν γεγонуῖα εἴη, ἀτεχνῶς ἡγούμενοι ὥσπερ πατρὸς στερηθέντες διάξειν ὀρφανοὶ⁷ τὸν ἔπειτα βίον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐλούσατο καὶ ἡνέχθη παρ' αὐτὸν τὰ παιδιά— δύο γὰρ αὐτῷ υἱεῖς μικροὶ ἦσαν, εἰς δὲ μέγας— καὶ αἱ οἰκεῖαι γυναῖκες ἀφίκοντο ἐκεῖναι, ἐναντίον τοῦ Κρίτωνος διαλεχθεῖς τε καὶ ἐπιστείλας ἅττα ἐβούλετο, τὰς μὲν γυναῖκας καὶ τὰ παιδιά ἀπιέναι ἐκέλευσεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἦκε παρ' ἡμᾶς. καὶ ἦν ἡδη ἐγγὺς ἡλίου δυσμῶν⁸ χρόνον γὰρ πολὺν διέτριψεν ἔνδον. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκαθέζετο λελουμένος καὶ οὐ πολλὰ ἅττα μετὰ ταῦτα διελέχθη, καὶ ἦκεν ὁ τῶν ἔνδεκα⁹ ὑπέρτης καὶ στὰς παρ' αὐτόν, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔφη, οὐ καταγνώσομαι γε σοῦ ὅπερ ἄλλων καταγινώσκω, ὅτι μοι χαλεπαίνουνσι καὶ καταρῶνται ἐπειδὰν αὐτοῖς παραγγείλω πίνειν τὸ φάρμακον ἀναγκαζόντων τῶν ἀρχόντων. σὲ δὲ ἐγὼ καὶ ἄλλως ἔγνωκα ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ γενναιότατον καὶ πρατότατον καὶ ἄριστον ἄνδρα ὄντα τῶν πώποτε δεῦρο ἀφικομένων, καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι οὐκ ἐμοὶ χαλεπαίνεις, γινώσκεις γὰρ τοὺς αἰτίους, ἀλλὰ ἐκείνους. νῦν οὖν, οἶσθα γὰρ ἂ ἦλθον ἀγγέλλων, χαῖρέ τε καὶ πειρῶ ὡς ῥᾶστα φέρειν τὰ ἀναγκαῖα. καὶ ἅμα δακρύσας μεταστρεφόμενος ἀπῆι.

Καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ἀναβλέψας πρὸς αὐτόν, καὶ σύ, ἔφη, χαῖρε, καὶ ἡμεῖς ταῦτα ποιήσομεν. καὶ ἅμα πρὸς ἡμᾶς, ὡς ἀστείος,¹⁰ ἔφη, ὁ ἄνθρωπος· καὶ παρὰ πάντα μοι τὸν χρόνον προσήει καὶ διελέγετο ἐνίοτε καὶ ἦν ἀνδρῶν λῶστος, καὶ νῦν ὡς γενναίως με ἀποδακρύνει. ἀλλ' ἄγε δὴ, ὦ Κρίτων, πειθώμεθα αὐτῷ, καὶ ἐνεγκάτω τις τὸ φάρμακον, εἰ τέτριπται.¹¹ εἰ δὲ μή, τριψάτω ὁ ἄνθρωπος.

Καὶ ὁ Κρίτων, ἀλλ' οἶμαι, ἔφη, ἔγωγε, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἔτι ἥλιον εἶναι ἐπὶ τοῖς ὅρεσιν καὶ οὐπω δεδυκέναι. καὶ ἅμα ἐγὼ οἶδα καὶ ἄλλους πάνν ὀψὲ πίνοντας, ἐπειδὰν παραγγεληῖ αὐτοῖς, δειπνήσαντάς τε καὶ πίνοντας εὖ μάλα, καὶ συγγενομένους γ' ἐνίους ὧν ἂν τύχωσιν

⁶ then ... now ... ⁷ orphan ⁸ sunset ⁹ eleven ¹⁰ urbane, refined

¹¹ rub; (mid) be worn out

ἐπιθυμοῦντες. ἀλλὰ μηδὲν ἐπείγου· ἔτι γὰρ ἐγχαρεῖ.

Καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης, εἰκότως¹² γε, ἔφη, ὦ Κρίτων, ἐκεῖνοί τε ταῦτα ποιοῦσιν, οὓς σὺ λέγεις—οἶονται γὰρ κερδαίνειν ταῦτα ποιήσαντες—καὶ ἔγωγε ταῦτα εἰκότως οὐ ποιήσω· οὐδὲν γὰρ οἶμαι κερδανεῖν ὀλίγον ὕστερον πῶν ἄλλο γε ἢ γέλωτα ὀφλήσειν παρ' ἐμαυτῷ, γλιχόμενος¹³ τοῦ ζῆν καὶ φειδόμενος οὐδενὸς ἔτι ἐνότος. ἀλλ' ἴθι, ἔφη, πείθου καὶ μὴ ἄλλως ποίει.

Καὶ ὁ Κρίτων ἀκούσας ἔνευσε τῷ παιδί πλησίον ἐστῶτι. καὶ ὁ παῖς ἐξελθὼν καὶ συχρὸν χρόνον διατρίψας ἦκεν ἄγων τὸν μέλλοντα δώσειν τὸ φάρμακον, ἐν κύλικι¹⁴ φέροντα τετριμμένον. ἰδὼν δὲ ὁ Σωκράτης τὸν ἄνθρωπον, εἶεν, ἔφη, ὦ βέλτιστε, σὺ γὰρ τούτων ἐπιστήμων, τί χρὴ ποιεῖν;

Οὐδὲν ἄλλο, ἔφη, ἢ πίνοντα περιμέναι, ἕως ἄν σου βάρος ἐν τοῖς σκέλεσι γένηται, ἔπειτα κατακεῖσθαι· καὶ οὕτως αὐτὸ ποιήσει. καὶ ἅμα ὥρεξε τὴν κύλικα τῷ Σωκράτει.

Καὶ ὃς λαβὼν καὶ μάλα ἵλεως,¹⁵ ὦ Ἐχέκρατες, οὐδὲν τρέσας οὐδὲ διαφθείρας οὔτε τοῦ χρώματος οὔτε τοῦ προσώπου, ἀλλ' ὥσπερ εἰώθει ταυρηδὸν ὑποβλέψας πρὸς τὸν ἄνθρωπον, τί λέγεις, ἔφη, περὶ τοῦδε τοῦ πώματος¹⁶ πρὸς τὸ ἀποσπεῖσαί τινι; ἔξεστιν ἢ οὐ;

Τοσοῦτον, ἔφη, ὦ Σώκρατες, τρίβομεν ὅσον οἰόμεθα μέτριον εἶναι πιεῖν.

Μανθάνω, ἦ δ' ὅς· ἀλλ' εὐχεσθαί γέ πού τοις θεοῖς ἔξεστί τε καὶ χρή, τὴν μετοίκησιν τὴν ἐνθένδε ἐκείσε εὐτυχῇ¹⁷ γενέσθαι· ἂ δὴ καὶ ἐγὼ εὐχομαί τε καὶ γένοιτο ταύτῃ. καὶ ἅμ' εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἐπισχόμενος καὶ μάλα εὐχερῶς καὶ εὐκόλως¹⁸ ἐξέπιεν. καὶ ἡμῶν οἱ πολλοὶ τῶς μὲν ἐπικεικῶς οἰοί τε ἦσαν κατέχουν τὸ μὴ δακρύνειν, ὥς δὲ εἶδομεν πίνοντά τε καὶ πεπωκότα, οὐκέτι, ἀλλ' ἐμοῦ γε βία καὶ αὐτοῦ ἀστακτὶ ἐχώρει

¹² like; fairly ¹³ cling to, long for ¹⁴ cup ¹⁵ propitious, gracious
¹⁶ cover; drink ¹⁷ fortunate ¹⁸ contented

them, and to be kind to them, and let them come out into the lake. And if they prevail, then they come forth and cease from their troubles; but if not, they are carried back again into Tartarus and from thence into the rivers unceasingly, until they obtain mercy from those whom they have wronged: for that is the sentence inflicted upon them by their judges. Those too who have been pre-eminent for holiness of life are released from this earthly prison, and go to their pure home which is above, and dwell in the purer earth; and of these, such as have duly purified themselves with philosophy live henceforth altogether without the body, in mansions fairer still which may not be described, and of which the time would fail me to tell.

Wherefore, Simmias, seeing all these things, what ought not we to do that we may obtain virtue and wisdom in this life? Fair is the prize, and the hope great!

A man of sense ought not to say, nor will I be very confident, that the description which I have given of the soul and her mansions is exactly true. But I do say that, inasmuch as the soul is shown to be immortal, he may venture to think, not improperly or unworthily, that something of the kind is true. The venture is a glorious one, and he ought to comfort himself with words like these, which is the reason why I lengthen out the tale. Wherefore, I say, let a man be of good cheer about his soul, who having cast away the pleasures and ornaments of the body as alien to him and working harm rather than good, has sought after the pleasures of knowledge; and has arrayed the soul, not in some foreign attire, but in her own proper jewels, temperance, and justice, and courage, and nobility, and truth—in these adorned she is ready to go on her journey to the world below, when her hour comes. You, Simmias and Cebes, and all other men, will depart at some time or other. Me already, as the tragic poet would say, the voice of fate calls. Soon I must drink the poison; and I think that I had better repair to the bath first, in order that the women may not have the trouble of washing my body after I am dead.

When he had done speaking, Crito said: And have you any commands for us, Socrates—anything to say about your children, or any other matter in which we can serve you?

Nothing particular, Crito, he replied: only, as I have always told you, take care of yourselves; that is a service which you may be ever rendering to me and mine and to all of us, whether you promise to do so or not. But if you have no thought for yourselves, and care not to walk according to the rule which I have prescribed for you, not now for the first time, however much you may profess or promise at the moment, it will be of no avail.

We will do our best, said Crito: And in what way shall we bury you?

In any way that you like; but you must get hold of me, and take care that I do not run away from you. Then he turned to us, and added with a smile:—I cannot make Crito believe that I am the same Socrates who have been talking and conducting the argument; he fancies that I am the other Socrates whom he will soon see, a dead body—and he asks, How shall he bury me? And though I have spoken many words in the endeavour to show that when I have drunk the poison I shall leave you and go to the joys of the blessed,—these words of mine, with which I was comforting you and myself, have had, as I perceive, no effect upon Crito. And therefore I want you to be surety for me to him now, as at the trial he was surety to the judges for me: but let the promise be of another sort; for he was surety for me to the judges that I would remain, and you must be my surety to him that I shall not remain, but go away and depart; and then he will suffer less at my death, and not be grieved when he sees my body being burned or buried. I would not have him sorrow at my hard lot, or say at the burial, Thus we lay out Socrates, or, Thus we follow him to the grave or bury him; for false words are not only evil in themselves, but they infect the soul with evil. Be of good cheer, then, my dear Crito, and say that you are burying my body only, and do with that whatever is usual, and what you think best.

When he had spoken these words, he arose and went into a chamber to bathe; Crito followed him and told us to wait. So we remained behind, talking and thinking of the subject of discourse, and also of the greatness of our sorrow; he was like a father of whom we were being bereaved, and we were about to pass the rest of our lives as orphans. When he had taken the bath his children were brought to him—(he had two young sons and an elder one); and the women of his family also came, and he talked to them and gave them a few directions in the presence of Crito; then he dismissed them and returned to us.

Now the hour of sunset was near, for a good deal of time had passed while he was within. When he came out, he sat down with us again after his bath, but not much was said. Soon the jailer, who was the servant of the Eleven, entered and stood by him, saying:—To you, Socrates, whom I know to be the noblest and gentlest and best of all who ever came to this place, I will not impute the angry feelings of other men, who rage and swear at me, when, in obedience to the authorities, I bid them drink the poison—indeed, I am sure that you will not be angry with me; for others, as you are aware, and not I, are to blame. And so fare you well, and try to bear lightly what must needs be—you know my errand. Then bursting into tears he turned away and went out.

Socrates looked at him and said: I return your good wishes, and will do as you bid. Then turning to us, he said, How charming the man is: since I have

been in prison he has always been coming to see me, and at times he would talk to me, and was as good to me as could be, and now see how generously he sorrows on my account. We must do as he says, Crito; and therefore let the cup be brought, if the poison is prepared: if not, let the attendant prepare some.

Yet, said Crito, the sun is still upon the hill-tops, and I know that many a one has taken the draught late, and after the announcement has been made to him, he has eaten and drunk, and enjoyed the society of his beloved; do not hurry—there is time enough.

Socrates said: Yes, Crito, and they of whom you speak are right in so acting, for they think that they will be gainers by the delay; but I am right in not following their example, for I do not think that I should gain anything by drinking the poison a little later; I should only be ridiculous in my own eyes for sparing and saving a life which is already forfeit. Please then to do as I say, and not to refuse me.

Crito made a sign to the servant, who was standing by; and he went out, and having been absent for some time, returned with the jailer carrying the cup of poison. Socrates said: You, my good friend, who are experienced in these matters, shall give me directions how I am to proceed. The man answered: You have only to walk about until your legs are heavy, and then to lie down, and the poison will act. At the same time he handed the cup to Socrates, who in the easiest and gentlest manner, without the least fear or change of colour or feature, looking at the man with all his eyes, Echecrates, as his manner was, took the cup and said: What do you say about making a libation out of this cup to any god? May I, or not? The man answered: We only prepare, Socrates, just so much as we deem enough. I understand, he said: but I may and must ask the gods to prosper my journey from this to the other world—even so—and so be it according to my prayer. Then raising the cup to his lips, quite readily and cheerfully he drank off the poison. And hitherto

vocabulary

ἀγανακτέω be vexed, in a ferment

αἰσχύνω (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar

ἀλεκτρούων -όνος (m, 3) chicken

ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course

ἀναβρυχάομαι (ῶ) roar through

ἀποκλαίω cry out loud

ἀποκλάω (ᾶα) cry out loud

ἀποπέμπω send away ~pomp

ἄπτω set on fire; attach; mid: touch, seize ~haptic

ἄρνυμαι get, win

βαρύνω (ῶ) oppress ~baritone

δάκρυον tear

δακρύνω weep

διαλείπω leave a gap, space apart

ἐγκαλύπτω veil, hide

ἐκκαλύπτω disclose, reveal

ἐξανίστημι raise, bring/send out

ἐπάνειμι return

ἐπειδάν when, after

ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail

ἐπιδείκνυμι (ῶ) display, exhibit

ἐπισκοπέω look upon, inspect

ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go searching through

εὐφημία speaking auspiciously

ἐφάπτω fasten upon ~haptic

ἥκιστος least; above all

ἡσυχία peace and quiet

ἦτρον belly

θαυμάσιος wonderful

καρτερέω be patient

κατακλάω break off, break short
~iconoclast

κατακλίνω (ι) lay down ~incline

κινέω (ι) set in motion, move, remove ~kinetic

κλαίω weep

κλάω break, break off ~iconoclast

κνήμη lower leg

οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone

ὄμμα -τος (n, 3) eye

ὀφείλω owe, should, if only

περιέρομαι go around; come next to

πιέζω press, squeeze ~piezoelectric

σκέλος -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis

στερέω steal, take

συλλαμβάνω seize, capture;

understand ~epilepsy

σφόδρα very much

σχεδόν near, approximately at
~ischemia

τελευταῖος last, final

τελευταῶ bring about, finish

~apostle

τελευτή conclusion, fulfilment

~apostle

τύχη fortune, act of a god

ὑπτιος lying on one's back; flipped; flat

φάρμακον drug, potion ~pharmacy

φθέγγομαι make a sound, utter
~diphthong

φρόνιμος sensible, prudent

ψύχω (ῶ) breathe, blow

~psychology

τὰ δάκρυα, ὥστε ἐγκαλυψάμενος ἀπέκλαον ἑμαυτόν— οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐκεῖνόν γε, ἀλλὰ τὴν ἑμαυτοῦ τύχην, οἷου ἀνδρὸς ἐταίρου ἐστερημένος εἶην. ὁ δὲ Κρίτων ἔτι πρότερος ἐμοῦ, ἐπειδὴ οὐχ οἷός τ' ἦν κατέχειν τὰ δάκρυα, ἐξανέστη. Ἀπολλόδωρος δὲ καὶ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ οὐδὲν ἐπαύετο δακρύων, καὶ δὴ καὶ τότε ἀναβρυχησάμενος κλάων καὶ ἀγανακτῶν οὐδένα ὄντινα οὐ κατέκλασε τῶν παρόντων πλήν γε αὐτοῦ Σωκράτους.

Ἐκεῖνος δέ, οἶα, ἔφη, ποιεῖτε, ὦ θανμάσιοι. ἐγὼ μέντοι οὐχ ἥκιστα τοῦτου ἔνεκα τὰς γυναικάς ἀπέπεμψα, ἵνα μὴ τοιαῦτα πλημμελοῖεν· καὶ γὰρ ἀκήκοα ὅτι ἐν εὐφημία¹ χρὴ τελευτᾶν. ἀλλ' ἡσυχίαν τε ἄγετε καὶ καρτερεῖτε.²

Καὶ ἡμεῖς ἀκούσαντες ἡσχύνημέν τε καὶ ἐπέσχομεν τοῦ δακρύειν. ὁ δὲ περιελθὼν, ἐπειδὴ οἱ βαρύνεσθαι³ ἔφη τὰ σκέλη, κατεκλίνη ὕπτιος— οὕτω γὰρ ἐκέλευεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος— καὶ ἅμα ἐφαπτόμενος αὐτοῦ οὗτος ὁ δοὺς τὸ φάρμακον, διαλιπὼν χρόνον ἐπεσκοπεῖ τοὺς πόδας καὶ τὰ σκέλη, κᾶπειτα σφόδρα πιέσας αὐτοῦ τὸν πόδα ἤρετο εἰ αἰσθάνοιτο, ὁ δ' οὐκ ἔφη.

Καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο αὐθις τὰς κνήμας· καὶ ἐπανιών οὕτως ἡμῖν ἐπεδείκνυτο ὅτι ψύχοιτό⁴ τε καὶ πῆγνυτο. καὶ αὐτὸς ἤπτετο καὶ εἶπεν ὅτι, ἐπειδὰν πρὸς τῇ καρδίᾳ γένηται αὐτῷ, τότε οἰχίσηται.

Ἦδη οὖν σχεδόν τι αὐτοῦ ἦν τὰ περὶ τὸ ἦτρον⁵ ψυχόμενα, καὶ ἐγκαλυψάμενος— ἐνεκεκάλυπτο γάρ— εἶπεν— ὁ δὴ τελευταῖον ἐφθέγγετο— ὦ Κρίτων, ἔφη, τῷ Ἀσκληπιῷ ὀφείλομεν ἀλεκτρυνόνα·⁶ ἀλλὰ ἀπόδοτε καὶ μὴ ἀμελήσητε.

Ἄλλὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ἔσται, ὁ Κρίτων· ἀλλ' ὅρα εἴ τι ἄλλο λέγεις.

Ταῦτα ἐρομένου αὐτοῦ οὐδὲν ἔτι ἀπεκρίνατο, ἀλλ' ὀλίγον χρόνον διαλιπὼν ἐκινήθη τε καὶ ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἐξεκάλυψεν αὐτόν, καὶ ὥς τὰ ὄμματα⁷ ἔστησεν· ἰδὼν δὲ ὁ Κρίτων συνέλαβε τὸ στόμα καὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς.

Ἦδε ἡ τελευτή, ὦ Ἐχέκρατες, τοῦ ἐταίρου ἡμῖν ἐγένετο, ἀνδρός,

¹ speaking auspiciously ² be patient ³ oppress ⁴ breathe, blow
⁵ belly ⁶ chicken ⁷ eye

ὥς ἡμεῖς φαῖμεν ἄν, τῶν τότε ὧν ἐπειράθημεν ἀρίστου καὶ ἄλλως
φρονιμωτάτου καὶ δικαιοτάτου.

most of us had been able to control our sorrow; but now when we saw him drinking, and saw too that he had finished the draught, we could no longer forbear, and in spite of myself my own tears were flowing fast; so that I covered my face and wept, not for him, but at the thought of my own calamity in having to part from such a friend. Nor was I the first; for Crito, when he found himself unable to restrain his tears, had got up, and I followed; and at that moment, Apollodorus, who had been weeping all the time, broke out in a loud and passionate cry which made cowards of us all. Socrates alone retained his calmness: What is this strange outcry? he said. I sent away the women mainly in order that they might not misbehave in this way, for I have been told that a man should die in peace. Be quiet, then, and have patience. When we heard his words we were ashamed, and refrained our tears; and he walked about until, as he said, his legs began to fail, and then he lay on his back, according to the directions, and the man who gave him the poison now and then looked at his feet and legs; and after a while he pressed his foot hard, and asked him if he could feel; and he said, No; and then his leg, and so upwards and upwards, and showed us that he was cold and stiff. And he felt them himself, and said: When the poison reaches the heart, that will be the end. He was beginning to grow cold about the groin, when he uncovered his face, for he had covered himself up, and said—they were his last words—he said: Crito, I owe a cock to Asclepius; will you remember to pay the debt? The debt shall be paid, said Crito; is there anything else? There was no answer to this question; but in a minute or two a movement was heard, and the attendants uncovered him; his eyes were set, and Crito closed his eyes and mouth.

Such was the end, Echecrates, of our friend; concerning whom I may truly say, that of all the men of his time whom I have known, he was the wisest and justest and best.